AUTODESK® REVIT® 2017 FOR ARCHITECTURE

NO EXPERIENCE REQUIRED

www.allitebooks.com

AUTODESK® REVIT® 2017 FOR ARCHITECTURE

NO EXPERIENCE REQUIRED

Eric Wing

SYBEX® A Wiley Brand

AUTODESK. Authorized Publisher

www.allitebooks.com

Executive Editor: Jody Lefevere
Development Editor: Tom Cirtin
Technical Editor: Eric Bogenschutz
Production Editor: Dassi Zeidel
Copy Editor: Kim Wimpsett
Editorial Manager: Mary Beth Wakefield
Production Manager: Kathleen Wisor
Book Designer: Franz Baumhackl
Proofreader: Amy J. Schneider
Indexer: Ted Laux
Project Coordinator, Cover: Brent Savage
Cover Designer: Wiley
Cover Image: ©iurii/Shutterstock

Copyright © 2016 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana
Published simultaneously in Canada
ISBN: 978-1-119-24330-4
ISBN: 978-1-119-24332-8 (ebk.)
ISBN: 978-1-119-24331-1 (ebk.)
Manufactured in the United States of America

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at `http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions`.

Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty: The publisher and the author make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this work and specifically disclaim all warranties, including without limitation warranties of fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales or promotional materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for every situation. This work is sold with the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering legal, accounting, or other professional services. If professional assistance is required, the services of a competent professional person should be sought. Neither the publisher nor the author shall be liable for damages arising herefrom. The fact that an organization or Web site is referred to in this work as a citation and/or a potential source of further information does not mean that the author or the publisher endorses the information the organization or Web site may provide or recommendations it may make. Further, readers should be aware that Internet Web sites listed in this work may have changed or disappeared between when this work was written and when it is read.

For general information on our other products and services or to obtain technical support, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at (877) 762-2974, outside the U.S. at (317) 572-3993 or fax (317) 572-4002.

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at `http://booksupport.wiley.com`. For more information about Wiley products, visit `www.wiley.com`.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2016944943

TRADEMARKS: Wiley, the Wiley logo, and the Sybex logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates, in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. Autodesk and Revit are registered trademarks of Autodesk, Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

www.allitebooks.com

To my offspring,
Cassidy and Jacob.
Thanks for waiting
patiently on the
weekends as I
work away.

www.allitebooks.com

Acknowledgments

Before I ever even pondered writing a technical book such as this one, I was the guy who bought them and studied them from the front to the back. This specific page, however, I always thought was somewhat superfluous . . . bordering on self-indulgent. As I sit here now, after finishing 14 chapters (and 8 online bonus chapters), I can categorically say that the 750-word allotment only scratches the surface of the list of people close to me who have been tremendously inconvenienced by my unavailability and, conversely, by my temperament during the rare occasions when I was available. Of course, topping this list are my wife, Jennifer, and the kids, Cassidy and Jacob. You guys always come through for me, and there is no way I could have written a single chapter without your support; and yes, you get to go to Disney World again like the last 10 years!

Also, I'd like to thank Grandma, Baci, and Dziadziu for constantly watching and being with the kids.

On the technical side, thanks to Stephanie McComb for acquiring the book and working with me on my manuscript and for her constant patience as I constantly fell behind schedule. Thanks to Eric Bogenschutz for his thorough technical edits and for keeping the images making sense with the lessons. I would really like to thank Tom Cirtin for keeping it all on track.

www.allitebooks.com

About the Author

Eric Wing lives in Syracuse, New York, with his family. He is the BIM services manager for C&S Companies, which is a full-service engineering/architectural firm headquartered in Syracuse. Eric's degree is in construction engineering; he earned it from Delhi University. In addition to writing this book, Eric has written *Autodesk® Revit® Architecture: No Experience Required 2010* through *2017* and *Revit Structure Fundamentals 2010*, and he co-wrote *Mastering Revit Structure 2009*. Eric also authors Revit, AutoCAD, and Navisworks videos for Lynda.com. Eric is an adjunct professor at Syracuse University. In addition to his writing, Eric is a globally recognized speaker, consultant, and trainer.

www.allitebooks.com

Contents at a Glance

	Introduction	*xix*
CHAPTER 1	The Autodesk Revit World	1
CHAPTER 2	Creating a Model	45
CHAPTER 3	Creating Views	105
CHAPTER 4	Working with the Autodesk Revit Tools	165
CHAPTER 5	Dimensioning and Annotating	213
CHAPTER 6	Floors	255
CHAPTER 7	Roofs	303
CHAPTER 8	Structural Items	353
CHAPTER 9	Ceilings and Interiors	407
CHAPTER 10	Stairs, Ramps, and Railings	463
CHAPTER 11	Detailing	529
CHAPTER 12	Creating Specific Views and Match Lines	595
CHAPTER 13	Creating Sheets and Printing	611
CHAPTER 14	Creating Rooms and Area Plans	641
	Index	*665*

www.allitebooks.com

Contents

Introduction *xix*

Chapter 1 The Autodesk Revit World 1

The Revit Interface . . . 2
The Revit Workflow . . . 4
Using the Ribbon . . . 5
The View Window . . . 13
Object Selection . . . 17
Modifying and Mirroring . . . 19
Building on Existing Geometry . . . 21
View Control and Object Display . . . 24
The Project Browser . . . 31
Windows . . . 33
File Types and Families . . . 36
System and Hosted Families (*.rfa*) . . . 37
Using Revit Template Files (*.rte*) . . . 41
Using Revit Family Files (*.rft*) . . . 42
Are You Experienced? . . . 43

Chapter 2 Creating a Model 45

Placing Walls . . . 45
Adding Exterior Walls . . . 45
Using Reference Planes . . . 46
Adding More Walls . . . 49
Adding Interior Walls . . . 58
Using Temporary Dimensions to Gain Control of Your Model . . . 60
Editing Wall Joins . . . 79
Displaying Wall Joins . . . 82
Disallowing Wall Joins . . . 84
Placing Doors and Windows . . . 90
Adding Doors . . . 90
Placing Openings in Your Walls . . . 98

www.allitebooks.com

Adding Windows 100
Are You Experienced? 104

Chapter 3 Creating Views 105

Creating Levels 105
Adding Levels 108
Understanding the Composition of a Level 110
Making Other Level Adjustments 114
Creating and Modifying Building Sections 122
Adding a Building Section 122
Making Building Modifications in a Section 129
Adding Wall Sections 135
Creating Detail Sections 138
Using Crop Regions 139
Splitting a Section Segment 140
Creating Callouts 143
Creating and Modifying a Camera View 148
Adding a Camera View 149
Modifying the Camera 151
Creating an Elevation 152
Interior Elevations 156
Elevation Properties 159
Annotation Properties 161
Are You Experienced? 163

Chapter 4 Working with the Autodesk Revit Tools 165

The Basic Edit Commands 166
The Move Command 166
The Copy Command 169
The Rotate Command 171
The Array Command 175
Radial Array 175
Linear Array 180
The Mirror Command 185
The Align Tool 188
Locking an Alignment 193
The Split Element Command 194

www.allitebooks.com

The Trim Command 200
The Offset Command 203
Copy/Paste 205
Creating the Plans 208
Are You Experienced? 212

Chapter 5 Dimensioning and Annotating 213

Selecting and Applying Dimensioning 213
Aligned Dimensions 214
Linear Dimensions 225
Angular Dimensions 227
Radial Dimensions 228
Arc Length Dimensions 230
Using Dimensions as a Layout Tool 232
Constraining the Model 237
Using Dimensions to Move Objects 241
Using Dimension Text Overrides 244
Placing Text and Annotations 247
Adding Leader Text 250
Changing the Leader Type 251
Modifying the Text Placement 253
Changing Text Properties 253
Are You Experienced? 254

Chapter 6 Floors 255

Placing a Floor Slab 255
Creating the Slab 256
Sketching the Slab 262
Building a Floor by Layers 271
Adding Materials 272
Adding a Layer 273
Splitting the Floor Materials 283
Adding an Alternate Material 283
Splitting and Painting 286
Pitching a Floor to a Floor Drain 291
Creating Shaft Openings 296
Are You Experienced? 302

www.allitebooks.com

CHAPTER 7 Roofs 303

Placing Roofs by Footprint 303
Flat Roofs by Footprint 304
Pitched Roofs by Footprint 319
Creating a Sloping Roof 332
Creating Roofs by Extrusion 338
Adding a Roof Dormer 347
Are You Experienced? 352

CHAPTER 8 Structural Items 353

Adding Structural Grids 353
Placing a Grid 354
Adding Structural Columns 368
Using Structural Framing 376
Adding a Beam System 380
Adding Bracing 383
Understanding Foundation Systems 387
Adding Structural Footings 393
Structural Slabs 396
Piers and Spread Footings 400
Using Structural Views 403
Are You Experienced? 406

CHAPTER 9 Ceilings and Interiors 407

Creating Ceilings 407
Modifying Ceiling Grids 412
Setting Ceiling Element Properties 414
Creating a Plan Region 417
Creating a Custom Ceiling 419
Creating Ceiling Openings and Soffits 423
Creating a Ceiling Opening 423
Creating a Soffit 426
Adding Light Fixtures to Ceilings 431
Adding Interior Design 435
Adding Plumbing Fixtures and Furniture 435
Adding Parabolic Troffers 443
Adding Casework and Furniture 447

Adding Alternate Floor Materials 457
Separating the Floor 457
Creating a Tile Material 459
Are You Experienced? 462

Chapter 10 Stairs, Ramps, and Railings 463

Creating Stairs by Using the Rise/Run Function 463
Modifying Boundaries 467
Configuring Railings 470
Creating a Winding Staircase 486
Stair and Railing Families 501
Creating a Custom Railing System 502
Creating Custom Stairs 507
Adding a Custom Landing 512
Adding a Gooseneck 513
Adding Ramps 520
Are You Experienced? 526

Chapter 11 Detailing 529

Working with Line Weights 529
Drafting on Top of the Detail 532
Using Predefined Detail Components 532
Masking Regions 534
Repeating Details 536
Modifying a Detail Component 541
Modifying Filled Regions 542
Drawing Detail Lines 566
Specifying Drafting Line Weights 568
Adding Notes 570
Adding Textual Notations 570
Creating Blank Drafting Views 572
Creating a Detail Group 581
Adding a Section to Another View 587
Importing AutoCAD Files into a Drafting View 589
Adding 2D and 3D Lines to the Model 590
Are You Experienced? 593

Chapter 12 Creating Specific Views and Match Lines 595

Duplicating Views 595
Creating Dependent Views 597
Adjusting the Crop Regions 598
Adjusting the Annotation Crop Region 601
Adding Match Lines 604
Match-Line Appearance 605
Adding View References to a Match Line 606
Using View Templates 609
Are You Experienced? 610

Chapter 13 Creating Sheets and Printing 611

Creating and Populating Sheets 611
Sheet Organization 614
Modifying a Viewport 619
Viewport Properties 624
Adding Revisions to a Sheet 625
Addressing Project Parameters 629
Generating a Cover Sheet 631
Printing from Revit Architecture 637
Are You Experienced? 640

Chapter 14 Creating Rooms and Area Plans 641

Creating Rooms 641
Configuring Properties 646
Placing and Manipulating Room Tags 651
Adding a Room Schedule 652
Adding a Color-Fill Plan 655
Adding Room Separators 657
Creating an Area Plan 659
Are You Experienced? 663

Index *665*

Introduction

Why do you need a big, thick technical book? Well, it's true that the best way to learn is to just do it. But do you ever just *do* it and not fully *get* it? Books can serve either as the basis for learning or as supplements for your learning. No one book will teach you everything you need to know about a specific application, but you may never learn everything you need to know about an application without a book. When written appropriately, the book you purchase is there to start you off using good practices. If you have already begun, the book serves as a desktop reference. And last, a book can serve as confirmation that you're approaching an application in the correct manner.

The Autodesk® Revit® Architecture tool is no exception. Although this application has proven to be easy to learn and easy to get a feel for, it's still a deep, sometimes complicated application with many procedures that require step-by-step instructions to fully understand. And to be honest, some of these features just don't work in the real world.

This book has been written by an author who is "in the trenches" using Revit Architecture, Revit Structure, and Revit MEP simultaneously every day. So, yes, you could figure out all this information on your own, but sometimes it's nice to let someone else figure it out for you and pass that knowledge along to you in the form of a book.

Instead of lengthy paragraphs of text that ultimately lead to nontangible information, this book addresses each subject in a step-by-step approach with more than 1,000 pictures and screenshots to make sure you're on track.

Also, this book also uses an actual project and relates to real-world scenarios. As you're following the step-by-step procedures in the book, you'll be encouraged to try many techniques on your own and also to embellish the procedure to fit your own needs. If you would rather stick to the instructions, this book allows you to do so as well. The book's project uses a five-story office building with a link (corridor) to a three-story multiuse building. The book's website provides the model (plus additional families) you'll need for each chapter so that you can open the book, jump to your chapter of interest, and learn something! In addition, this book is flexible enough that you can substitute your own project if you don't want to follow the book's examples.

Although it has over 700 pages, this book doesn't waste time and space with examples of other people's triumphs but is designed for you to open it to any random page and learn something.

Who Should Read This Book

Autodesk® Revit® 2017 for Architecture: No Experience Required. Does that mean that if you've used Revit, you won't find this book advanced enough? No. This book is designed for anyone who wants to learn more about Revit Architecture. The book is also intended for architects, architectural designers, and anyone who is using a CAD-based platform to produce architectural-based drawings.

What You Need

BIM can be tough on hardware. This book recommends that you have 8 GB of RAM with a 4 GHz processor. You should also be running at least 1 GB for your graphics. If you're under these specifications (within reason), in some cases you'll be fine. Just realize, however, that when your model is loaded, your system may start slowing down and crashing.

All Revit applications are intended to run on a PC-based system. Windows 10 is recommended.

Free Autodesk Software for Students and Educators

The Autodesk Education Community is an online resource with more than five million members that enables educators and students to download—for free (see website for terms and conditions)—the same software used by professionals worldwide. You can also access additional tools and materials to help you design, visualize, and simulate ideas. Connect with other learners to stay current with the latest industry trends and get the most out of your designs. Get started today at `www.autodesk.com/joinedu`.

What Is Covered in This Book

Autodesk® Revit® 2017 for Architecture: No Experience Required covers the full gamut of using the software and is organized as follows:

Chapter 1: The Autodesk Revit World This chapter introduces you to the Revit Architecture 2017 interface and jumps right into modeling your first building.

Chapter 2: Creating a Model This chapter begins with placing walls, doors, and windows. It's designed to point you in the right directions in terms of using reference planes and all-around best practices.

Chapter 3: Creating Views This chapter shows you how to navigate the Revit Project Browser and create new views of the model. Also, you'll learn how to create specific views such as elevations, sections, callouts, plans, and, our favorite, 3D perspectives.

Chapter 4: Working with the Autodesk Revit Tools In this chapter, you'll learn how to use the everyday drafting tools needed in any modeling application. You'll become familiar with such actions as trim, array, move, and copy. Although it seems remedial, this is one of the most important chapters of the book. It gets you on your way to the "Revit feel."

Chapter 5: Dimensioning and Annotating In this chapter, you'll learn how to annotate your model. This includes adding and setting up dimensions, adding and setting up text, and using dimensions to physically adjust objects in your model.

Chapter 6: Floors Yes! Just floors. In this chapter, you'll learn how to place a floor. You'll also learn how to add materials to a floor and how to pitch a floor to a drain.

Chapter 7: Roofs In this chapter, we'll discuss the ins and outs of placing roofs. You'll learn how to model flat roofs, sloping roofs, pitched roofs, and roof dormers. In addition, you'll learn how to pitch roof insulation to roof drains.

Chapter 8: Structural Items In this chapter, you'll delve into the structural module of Revit Architecture. The topics we'll cover include placing structural framing, placing structural foundations, and creating structural views.

Chapter 9: Ceilings and Interiors This chapter focuses predominately on interior design. Placing and modifying ceilings will be covered as well as adding specific materials to portions of walls and floors. You'll also learn how to create soffits.

Chapter 10: Stairs, Ramps, and Railings This chapter focuses on the creation of circulation items. You'll learn how to create a simple U-shaped multistory staircase to start; then you'll move on to creating a custom winding staircase. From there, you'll learn how to create a custom wood railing. You'll add ramps to the model in this chapter, as well.

Chapter 11: Detailing In this chapter, you'll learn how to draft in Revit. The procedures allow you to draft over the top of a Revit-generated section or create your own drafting view independent of the model. You'll also learn how to import CAD to use as a detail.

Chapter 12: Creating Specific Views and Match Lines In this chapter, you'll learn how to take advantage of the multitude of views you can create and how to control the visibility graphics of those views to create plans such as furniture and dimensional plans.

Chapter 13: Creating Sheets and Printing This chapter explores how to produce construction documents using Revit. The procedures include creating a new drawing sheet, adding views to a sheet, creating a title block and a cover sheet, and plotting these documents.

Chapter 14: Creating Rooms and Area Plans The focus of this chapter is creating rooms and areas. The procedures lead you through the placement of rooms, and you'll learn how to set the properties of those rooms. This chapter also discusses how to create room separators and how to create gross area plans. This chapter also guides you through the creation of a color-fill floor plan.

Bonus Chapter 1: Advanced Wall Topics This chapter focuses specifically on the creation of compound walls. By using the Edit Assembly dialog, you'll learn how to add materials, split walls, and add sweeps and reveals such as parapet caps, brick ledges, and brick reveals. Creating stacked walls is also addressed.

Bonus Chapter 2: Creating Families This chapter focuses on the topic of creating families. The procedures start with a simple wall-sweep family and then move on to creating a door family with an arched header. You'll also learn how to create an in-place family.

Bonus Chapter 3: Site and Topography In this chapter, you'll learn how to place a topographical surface into your model. You'll see how to control point-by-point elevations in your site. Splitting and then creating subregions to create swales and berms will be covered. You'll also learn how to utilize an imported CAD site plan and place a toposurface over the top of the CAD lines. Finally, you'll explore rotating your project to true north.

Bonus Chapter 4: Rendering and Presentation In this chapter, you'll learn how to use the Revit rendering tools built into the Revit GUI. This chapter also shows you how to create walkthroughs as well as solar studies.

Bonus Chapter 5: Schedules and Tags In this chapter, you'll start bringing BIM into your model. This chapter focuses on adding schedules and adding annotation tags to specific objects and materials in your model. Most important, in this chapter you'll learn how your model is parameter driven and how these parameters influence the annotations.

Bonus Chapter 6: Importing and Coordinating Models This chapter focuses on the ins and outs (pun intended) of importing and exporting CAD formats

as well as linking Revit Structure models. The procedures include configuring CAD layering settings as well as linking and importing AutoCAD for plans and sections. You'll also learn how to link Revit Structure and perform a Copy/Monitor operation as well as use Revit interference detection.

Bonus Chapter 7: Phasing and Design Options This chapter explains how to create an existing floor plan and then moves through demolition into new construction. You'll also learn how to create alternates using design options.

Bonus Chapter 8: Project Collaboration In this chapter, you'll learn how to use Revit in a multiuser environment. The procedures in the chapter will lead you through activating worksharing and then creating a central model. You'll move to creating local user files as well as saving to the central model and placing requests to relinquish.

Included with the book are Revit Architecture project files that follow along with the instructions. Each chapter has one or more actual Revit models that have been completed up to the point of the instruction in that specific chapter—or even that specific section of the chapter—to allow you to jump in at any moment. Also included with the book are custom families that accompany the lessons as well as additional families and projects that you can download as a bonus. You can download the accompanying files at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`.

Contacting the Author

As you're reading along, please feel free to contact me at `ewing@cscos.com` or `ewing@syr.edu` and I will be glad to answer any question you have. In addition, if you would like me to come speak or train at your firm, feel free to give me a shout. You can visit my company's website at `www.cscos.com`.

Sybex strives to keep you supplied with the latest tools and information you need for your work. Please check the website at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`, where I'll post additional content and updates that supplement this book if the need arises.

AUTODESK® REVIT® 2017 FOR ARCHITECTURE

NO EXPERIENCE REQUIRED

CHAPTER 1

The Autodesk Revit World

I'm sure you've seen plenty of presentations on how wonderful and versatile this 3D Autodesk® Revit® Architecture revolution is. You may be thinking, "This all seems too complicated for what I do. Why do I need 3D anyway?"

The answer is: you don't need 3D. What do you do to get a job out—that is, after the presentation when you're awarded the project? First, you redraw the plans. Next comes the detail round-up game we have all come to love: pull the specs together and then plot. This is a simple process that works.

Well, it worked until 3D showed up. Now we have no real clue where things come from, drawings don't look very good, and getting a drawing out the door takes three times as long.

That's the perception anyway. I've certainly seen all of this happen, but I've also seen some incredibly coordinated sets of drawings with almost textbook adherence to standards and graphics. Revit can go both ways—it depends on you to make it go the right way.

I'm sure you've heard about *building information modeling (BIM)*. Although some say BIM is a process, not an application, I don't fully buy into that position. Right now, you're on the first page of BIM. BIM starts with Revit. If you understand Revit, you'll understand building information modeling.

This chapter will dive into the Revit graphical user interface (GUI) and tackle the three topics that make Revit, well, Revit.

- **The Revit interface**
- **The Project Browser**
- **File types and families**

The Revit Interface

Toto, we aren't in CAD anymore!

If you just bought this book, then welcome to the Revit world. In Revit, the vast majority of the processes you encounter are in a flat 2D platform. Instead of drafting, you're placing components into a model. Yes, these components have a so-called third dimension to them, but a logical methodology drives the process. If you need to see the model in 3D, it's simply a click away. That being said, remember this: there is a big difference between 3D drafting and modeling.

With that preamble behind us, let's get on with it.

First, Revit has no command prompt and no crosshairs. Stop! Don't go away just yet. You'll get used to it, I promise. Unlike most CAD applications, Revit is heavily pared down, so to speak. It's this way for a reason. Revit was designed for architects and engineers. You don't need every command that a mechanical engineer would need. An electrical engineer wouldn't need the functionality that an architect would require. In the Revit Architecture 2017 interface, the functionality I just mentioned is available, but it's tucked away so as not to interfere with your architectural pursuits.

NOTE This book is designed to cut to the chase and show you how to use Revit Architecture in a step-by-step fashion without having to read through paragraph after paragraph of theory just to find the answer you're seeking. Datasets are provided on the book's accompanying website (`www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`), but you can also use your own model as you go through the book. If you don't want to read this book cover to cover, don't! Although I recommend going from front to back, you can use the book as a desk reference by jumping to a desired topic. The datasets will be added in phases to accommodate this type of usage. Either way, get ready to learn Revit!

You'll find that, as you get comfortable with Revit, there are many, many choices and options behind each command.

1. To open Revit, click the icon on your desktop (see Figure 1.1).

FIGURE 1.1: You can launch Revit Architecture from the desktop icon.

2. After you start Revit, you'll see the Recent Files window, as shown in Figure 1.2. The top row shows any projects on which you've been working; the bottom row shows any families with which you've been working. The column to the right allows you to view some tutorial videos. If you have time, I recommend investigating this feature.

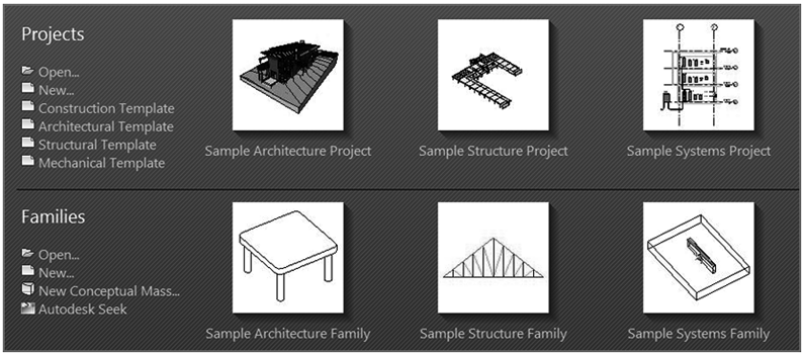


FIGURE 1.2: The Recent Files window shows any recent projects or families on which you've worked.

3. In the upper-left corner of the Revit window, you'll see a big blue *R*. This is commonly known as the *Application icon*. Click the blue *R*, and choose New ➢ Project.

4. The New Project dialog shown in Figure 1.3 opens. Click the Template File drop-down menu, and select Architectural Template. If you're a metric user, click the Browse button. This will open Windows Explorer. Go up one level, and choose the `US Metric` folder. Select the file called `DefaultMetric.rte`. If you cannot find this file, go to the book's accompanying website (`www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`) and download all files pertaining to the entire book, especially the files for Chapter 1.

Now that the task of physically opening the application is out of the way, you can delve into Revit. Revit has a certain feel that Autodesk® AutoCAD® converts (and MicroStation converts) will need to grasp. At first, if you're already a AutoCAD user, you'll notice many differences between Revit and AutoCAD. Some of these differences may be off-putting, while others will make you say, "I wish AutoCAD did that." Either way, you'll have to adjust to a new workflow.

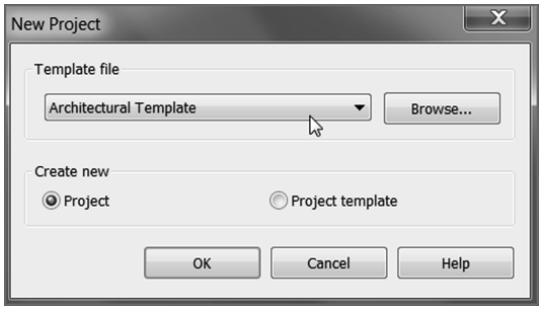


FIGURE 1.3: The New Project dialog allows you to start a new project using a preexisting template file, or you can create a new template file.

The Revit Workflow

This new workflow may be easy for some to adopt, whereas others will find it excruciatingly foreign. (To be honest, I found the latter to be the case at first.) Either way, it's a simple concept. You just need to slow down a bit from your CAD habits. If you're new to the entire modeling/drafting notion and you feel you're going too slowly, don't worry. You do a lot with each click of the mouse.

Executing a command in Revit is a three-step process.

1. At the top of the Revit window is the Ribbon, which contains a series of tabs. Each tab contains a panel. This Ribbon will be your Revit launch pad! Speaking of launch pads, click the Wall button on the Architecture tab, as shown in Figure 1.4.

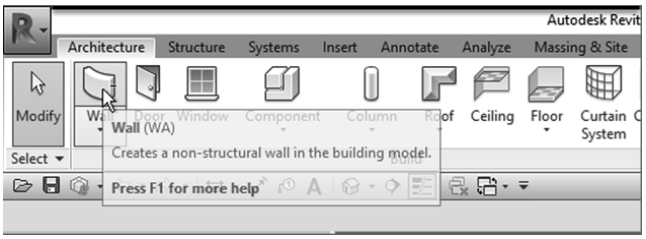


FIGURE 1.4: The Ribbon is the backbone of Revit.

2. After you click the Wall button, notice that Revit adds a tab to the Ribbon with additional choices specific to the command you're running, as shown in Figure 1.5. You may also notice that Revit places an additional Options bar below the Ribbon for even more choices.

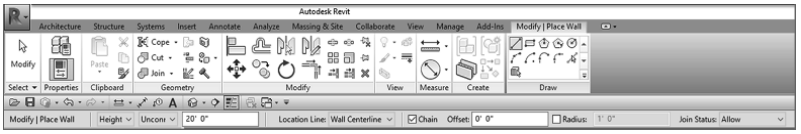


FIGURE 1.5: The Options bar allows you to have additional choices for the current command.

3. After you make your choices from the Ribbon and the Options bar, you can place the object into the view window. This is the large drawing area that takes up two-thirds of the Revit interface. To place the wall, simply pick a point in the window and move your pointer in the direction that you want the wall to travel. The wall starts to form. Once you see that, you can press the Esc key to exit the command. (I just wanted to illustrate the behavior of Revit during a typical command.)

You'll hear this throughout the book: always remember to look at your options. With no command prompt, the Options bar will be one of your few guides.

Using Revit isn't always as easy as this, but just keep the following basic three-step process in mind and you'll be OK:

1. Start a command.
2. Choose an option from the temporary tab or the Options bar that appears.
3. Place the item in the view window.

Thus, on the surface Revit appears to offer a fraction of the choices and functionality offered by AutoCAD (or any drafting program, for that matter). This is true in a way. Revit does offer fewer choices to start a command, but the choices that Revit does offer are much more robust and powerful.

Revit keeps its functionality focused on designing and constructing buildings. Revit gets its robust performance from the dynamic capabilities of the application during the placement of the items and the functionality of the objects after you place them in the model. You know what they say: never judge a book by its cover—unless, of course, it's the book you're reading right now.

Let's keep going with the main focus of the Revit interface: the Ribbon. You'll be leaning on the Ribbon extensively in Revit.

Using the Ribbon

You'll use the Ribbon for the majority of the commands you execute in Revit. As you can see, you have little choice but to do so. However, this is good because it narrows your attention to what is right in front of you.

When you click an icon on the Ribbon, Revit will react to that icon with a new tab, giving you the specific additional commands and options you need. Revit also keeps the existing tabs that can help you in the current command, as shown in Figure 1.6. Again, the focus is on keeping your eyes in one place.

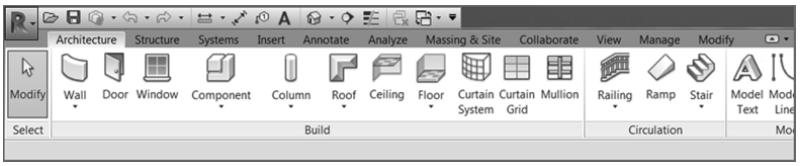


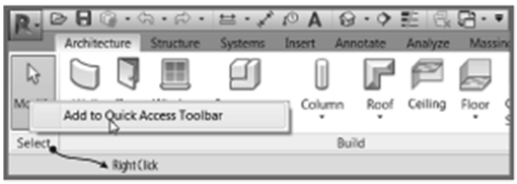
FIGURE 1.6: The Ribbon breakdown showing the panels

In this book, I'll throw quite a few new terms at you, but you'll get familiar with them quickly. I just discussed the Ribbon, but mostly you'll be directed to choose a tab in the Ribbon and to find a panel on that tab.

To keep the example familiar, when you select the Wall button, your instructions will read: "On the Build panel of the Architecture tab, click the Wall button."

What's That Toolbar Above the Ribbon?

This toolbar is called the *Quick Access toolbar*. I'm sure you've seen a similar toolbar in other applications. It comes filled with some popular commands. If you want to add commands to this toolbar, simply right-click any icon and select Add To Quick Access Toolbar. To the left of this toolbar is the Application icon. Clicking this icon gives you access to more Revit functions that will be covered later in the book. One great icon that I like to have docked on the Quick Access toolbar is the Select Objects (or Modify) icon. I like to add this icon as shown here:



Now that you can see how the Ribbon and the tabs flow together, let's look at another feature in the Ribbon panels that allows you to reach beyond the immediate Revit interface.

The Properties Interface

When you click the Wall button, a new set of commands appears on the Ribbon. This new set of commands combines the basic Modify commands with a tab specific to your immediate process. In this case, that process is adding a wall.

You'll also notice that the Properties dialog near the left of the screen changes, as shown in Figure 1.7. The Properties dialog shows a picture of the wall you're about to place. If you click this picture, Revit displays all the walls that are available in the model. This display is called the Type Selector drop-down (see Figure 1.8).

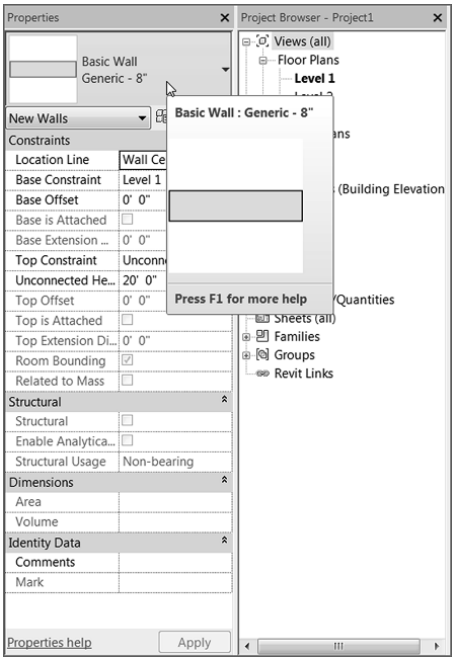


FIGURE 1.7: Click the Properties button to display the Properties dialog. Typically, the dialog is shown by default.

The objective of the next exercise is to start placing walls into the model.

1. Close Revit by clicking the close button in the upper-right corner.
2. Reopen Revit, and start a new project using the Architectural template (Default.rvt) (Metric or Imperial).
3. On the Architecture tab, click the Wall button.
4. In the Properties dialog, select Exterior – Brick And CMU On MTL. Stud from the Type Selector. (Metric users, select Basic

Wall – Exterior Brick On Mtl. Stud. This will look somewhat different throughout the book, but you get a break. It is slightly easier to work with than the Imperial wall type.)

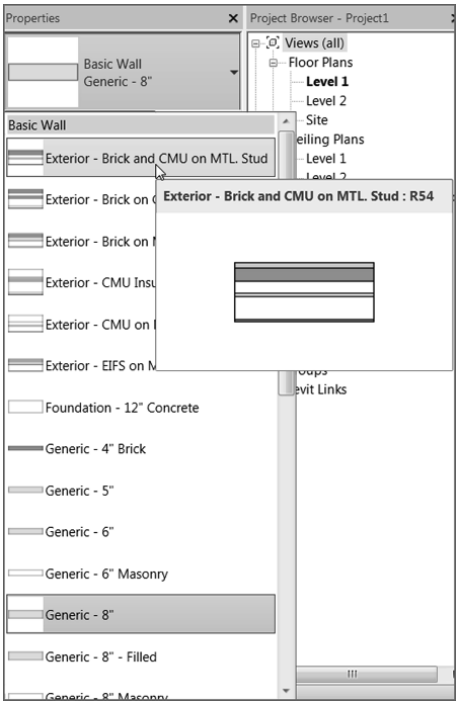


FIGURE 1.8: The Properties dialog gives you access to many variables associated with the item you're adding to the model.

Element Properties

There are two different sets of properties in Revit: instance properties and type properties. Instance properties are available immediately in the Properties dialog when you place or select an item. If you make a change to an element property, the only items that are affected in the model are the items you've selected.

The Properties Dialog

As just mentioned, the Properties dialog displays the instance properties of the item you've selected. If no item is selected, this dialog displays the properties of the current view in which you happen to be.

You also have the ability to combine the Properties dialog with the adjacent dialog, which is called the Project Browser (you'll examine the Project Browser shortly). Simply click the top of the Properties dialog, as shown in Figure 1.9, and drag it onto the Project Browser. Once you do this, you'll see a tab that contains the properties and a tab that contains the Project Browser (also shown in Figure 1.9).

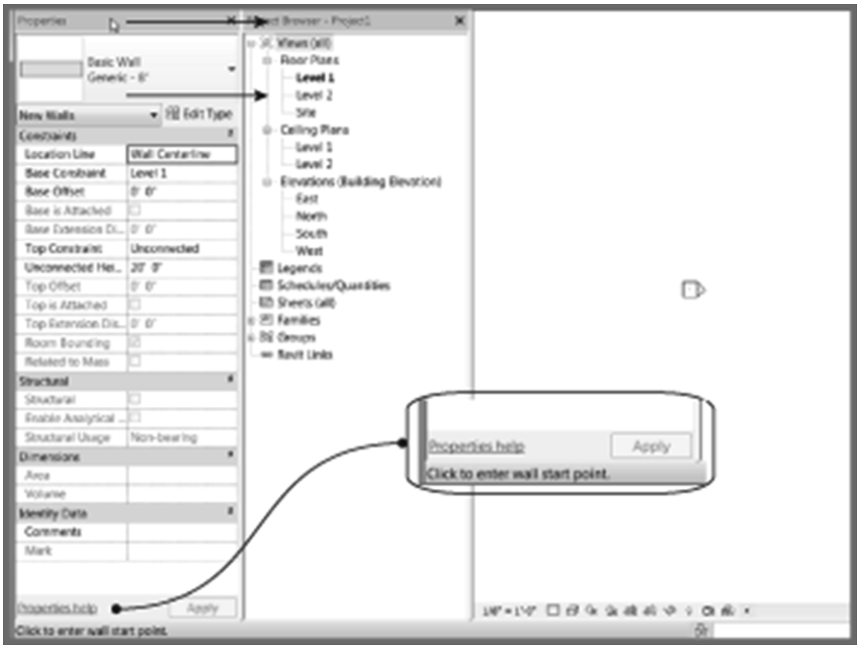


FIGURE 1.9: Dragging the Properties dialog onto the Project Browser

Let's take a closer look at the two categories of element properties in Revit.

Instance Properties

The items that you can edit immediately are called *parameters* or *instance properties*. These parameters change only the object being added to the model at this time. Also, if you select an item that has already been placed in the model, the parameters you see immediately in the Instance Properties dialog change only that item you've selected. This makes sense—not all items are built equally in the real world. Figure 1.10 illustrates the instance properties of a typical wall.

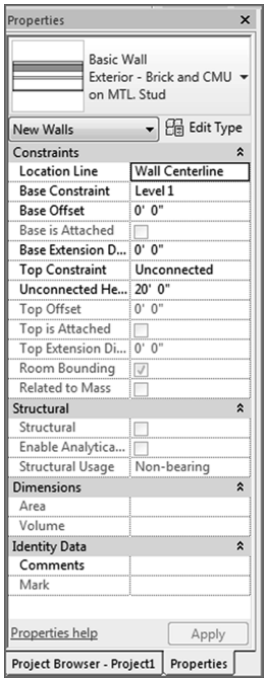


FIGURE 1.10: The instance properties change only the currently placed item or the currently selected item.

Type Properties

Type properties (see Figure 1.11), when edited, alter every item of that type in the entire model. To access the type properties, click the Edit Type button in the Properties dialog, as Figure 1.12 shows.

At this point, you have two choices. You can make a new wall type (leaving this specific wall unmodified) by clicking the Duplicate button at the upper right of the dialog, or you can start editing the wall's type properties, as shown in Figure 1.13.

WARNING I can't stress enough that if you start modifying type properties without duplicating the type, you need to do so in a very deliberate manner. You can easily affect the model in unintended ways. We'll discuss the specifics of all the wall's type properties in Chapter 15, "Advanced Wall Topics."

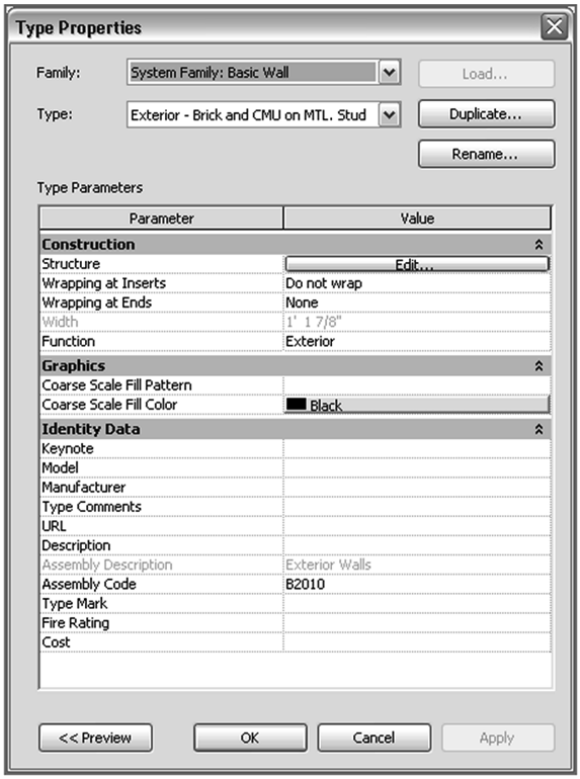


FIGURE 1.11: The type properties, when modified, alter every occurrence of this specific wall in the entire model.

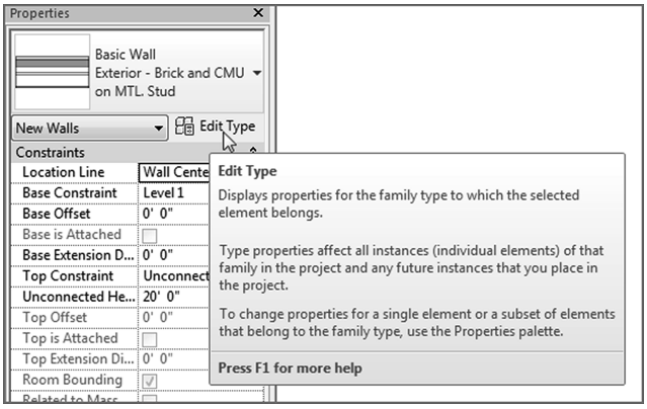


FIGURE 1.12: The Edit Type button allows you to access the type properties.

www.allitebooks.com

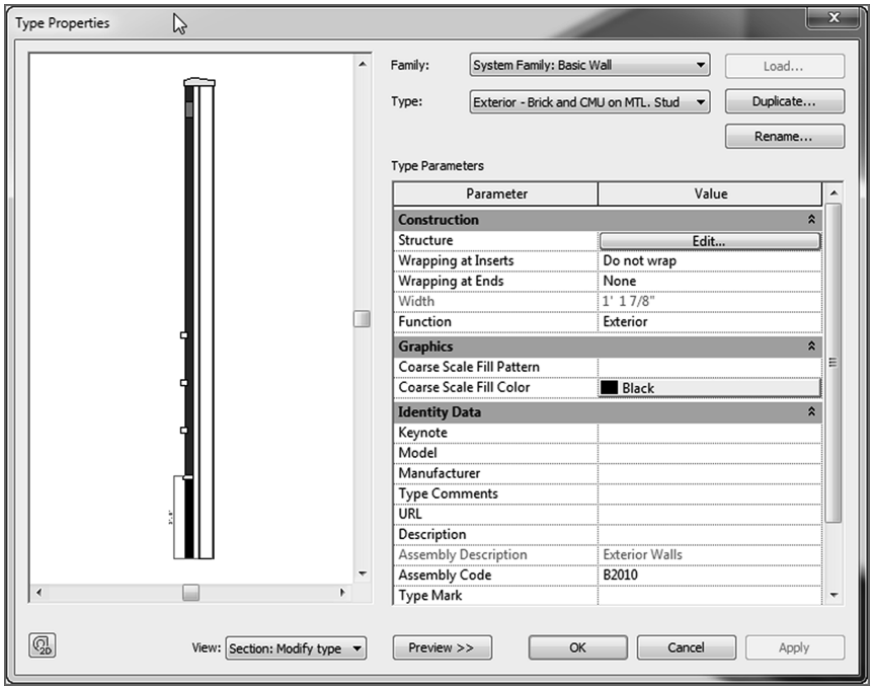


FIGURE 1.13: The type properties modify the wall system's global settings. Click the Preview button at the bottom of the dialog to see the image that is displayed.

Now that you've gained experience with the Type Properties dialog, it's time to go back and study the Options bar as it pertains to placing a wall.

1. Because you're only exploring the element properties, click the Cancel button to return to the model.
2. Back in the Options bar, find the Location Line menu. Through this menu, you can set the wall justification. Select Finish Face: Exterior (see Figure 1.14).
3. On the Options bar, be sure the Chain check box is selected, as Figure 1.14 shows. This will allow you to draw the walls continuously.
4. The Draw panel has a series of sketch options. Because this specific wall is straight, make sure the Line button is selected, as shown in Figure 1.15.

Get used to studying the Ribbon and the Options bar—they will be your crutch as you start using Revit! Of course, at some point you need to begin placing items physically in the model. This is where the view window comes into play.

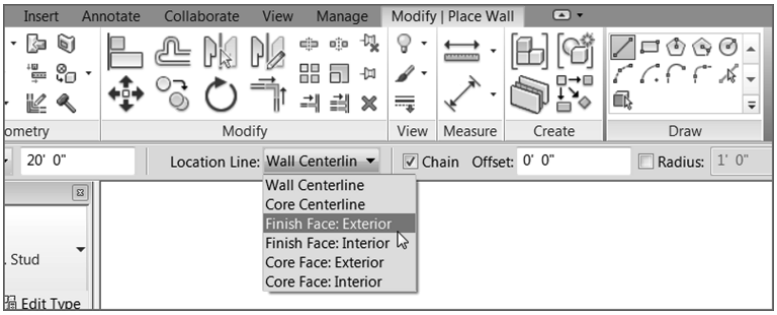


FIGURE 1.14: By selecting Finish Face: Exterior, you know the wall will be dimensioned from the outside finish.

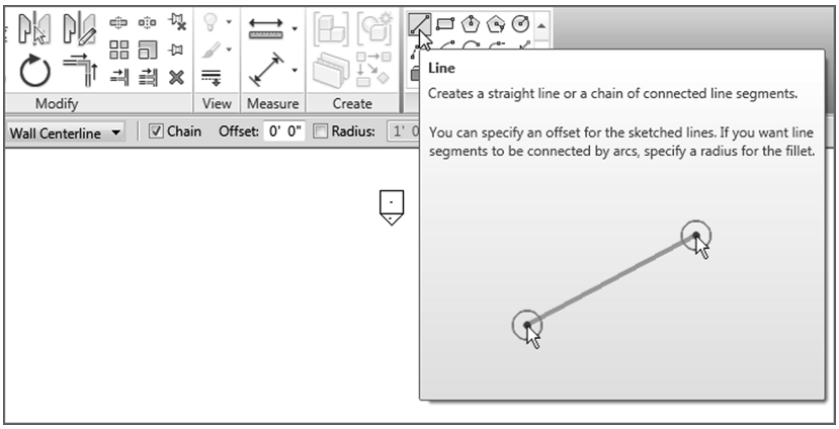


FIGURE 1.15: You can draw any shape you need.

The View Window

To put it simply, the big white area where the objects go is the view window. As a result of your actions, this area will become populated with your model. Notice that the background is white—this is because the sheets you plot on are white. In Revit, what you see is what you get … literally. Line weights in Revit are driven by the object, not by the layer. In Revit, you aren't counting on color #5, which is blue, for example, to be a specific line width when you plot. You can immediately see the thickness that all your lines will be before you plot (see Figure 1.16). What a novel idea.

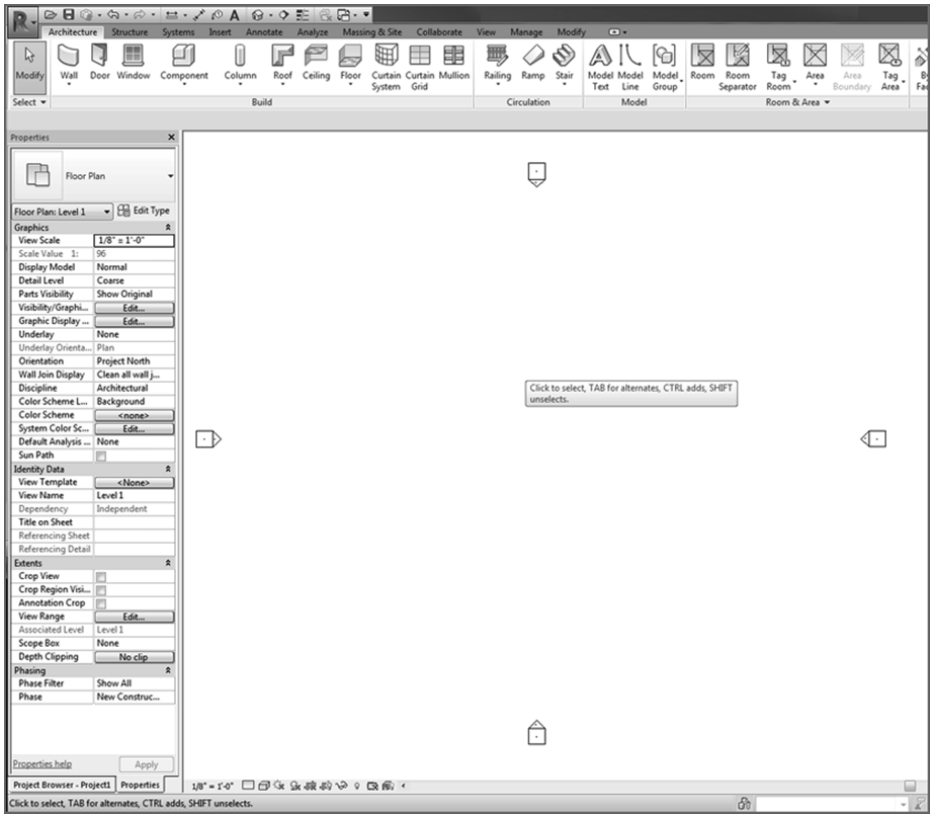


FIGURE 1.16: The view window collects the results of your actions.

WARNING Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit won't accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.

To continue placing some walls in the model, keep going with the exercise. (If you haven't been following along, you can start by clicking the Wall button on the Architecture tab. In the Properties dialog box, select Exterior – Brick And CMU On MTL. Stud (or Basic Wall – Exterior Brick On Mtl. Stud for metric users). Make sure the wall is justified to the finish face exterior.) You may now proceed.

1. With the Wall command still running and the correct wall type selected, position your cursor in a location similar to the illustration in Figure 1.17. Pick a point in the view window.

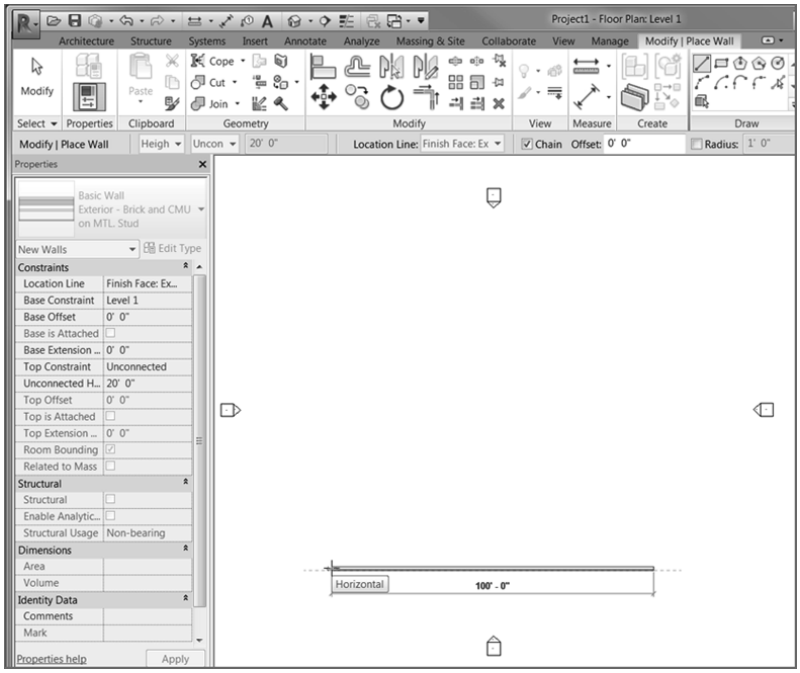


FIGURE 1.17: The procedure for drawing a wall in Revit Architecture

2. With the first point picked, move your cursor to the left. Notice that two things happen: the wall seems to snap in a horizontal plane, and a blue dashed line locks the horizontal position. In Revit, there is no Ortho. Revit aligns the typical compass increments to 0°, 90°, 180°, 270°, and 45°.
3. Also notice the blue dimension extending from the first point to the last point. Although dimensions can't be typed over, this type of dimension is a temporary dimension for you to use as you place items. Type **100′** (**30000** mm), and press the Enter key. Notice that you didn't need to type the foot mark (′) or mm. Revit thinks in terms of feet or millimeters. The wall is now 100′ (30000 mm) long (see Figure 1.17).
4. With the Wall command still running, move your cursor straight up from the endpoint of your 100′-long wall. Look at Figure 1.18.
5. Type 80′ (**24000** mm), and press Enter. You now have two walls.
6. Move your cursor to the right until you run into another blue alignment line. Notice that your temporary dimension says 100′–0″ (30000.0). Revit understands symmetry. After you see this alignment line and the temporary dimension says 100′–0″ (30000.0), pick this point.

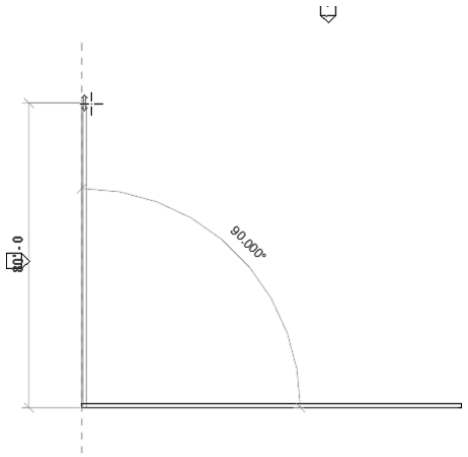


FIGURE 1.18: How Revit Architecture works is evident in this procedure.

7. Move your cursor straight down, type **16′** (**4800** mm), and press Enter.
8. Move your cursor to the right, type **16′** (**4800** mm), and press Enter.
9. Press the Esc key twice.

Do your walls look like Figure 1.19? If not, try it again. You need to be comfortable with this procedure (as much as possible).

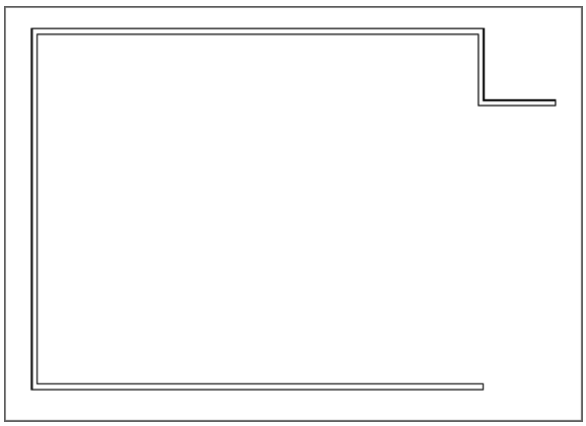


FIGURE 1.19: Working with Revit starts with the ability to work with the view window and learn the quirks and feel of the interface.

To get used to the Revit flow, always remember these three steps:

1. Start a command.
2. Focus on your options.
3. Move to the view window, and add the elements to the model.

If you start a command and then focus immediately on the view, you'll be sitting there wondering what to do next. Don't forget to check your Options bar and the appropriate Ribbon tab.

Let's keep going and close this building by using a few familiar commands. If you've never drafted on a computer before, don't worry. These commands are simple. The easiest but most important topic is how to select an object.

Object Selection

Revit has a few similarities to AutoCAD and MicroStation. One of those similarities is the ability to perform simple object selection and to execute common modify commands. For this example, you'll mirror the two 16′–0″ (4800 mm) L-shaped walls to the bottom of the building:

1. Type ZA (zoom all).
2. Near the two 16′–0″ (4800 mm) L-shaped walls, pick (left-click) and hold down the left mouse button when the cursor is at a point to the right of the walls but above the long, 100′–0″ (30000 mm) horizontal wall.
3. You see a window start to form. Run that selection window down and to the left past the two walls. After you highlight the walls, as shown in Figure 1.20, let go of the mouse button, and you've selected the walls.

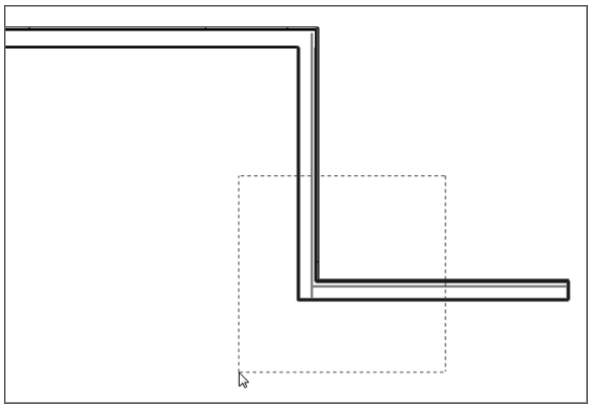


FIGURE 1.20: Using a crossing window to select two walls

There are two ways to select an object: by using a crossing window or by using a box. Each approach plays an important role in how you select items in a model.

Crossing Windows

A *crossing window* is an object-selection method in which you select objects by placing a window that crosses through the objects. A crossing window always starts from the right and ends to the left. When you place a crossing window, it's represented by a dashed-line composition (as you saw in Figure 1.20).

Boxes

With a box object-selection method, you select only items that are 100 percent inside the window you place. This method is useful when you want to select specific items while passing through larger objects that you may not want in the selection set. A box always starts from the left and works to the right. The line type for a selection window is a continuous line (see Figure 1.21).

Now that you have experience selecting items, you can execute some basic modify commands. Let's begin with mirroring, one of the most popular modify commands.

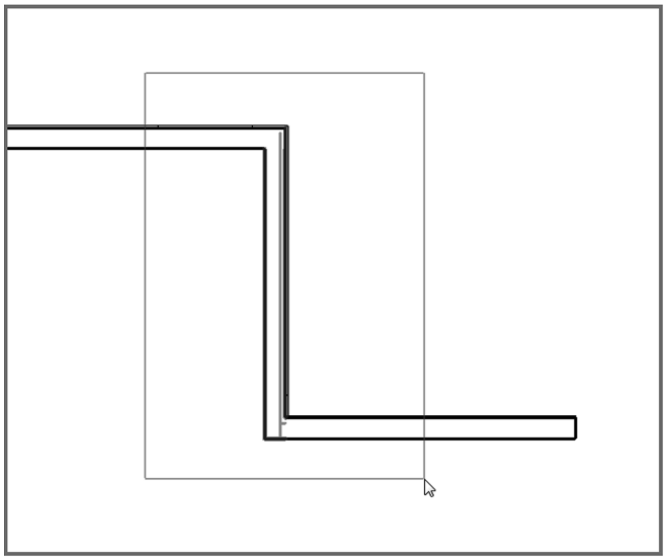


FIGURE 1.21: To select only objects that are surrounded by the window, use a box. This will leave out any item that may be partially within the box.

Modifying and Mirroring

Revit Architecture allows you either to select the item first and then execute the command or to start the command and then select the objects to be modified. This is true for most action items and is certainly true for every command on the Modify toolbar.

1. Make sure only the two 16′–0″ (4800 mm) walls are selected.
2. When the walls are selected, the Modify | Walls tab appears. On the Modify panel, click the Mirror – Draw Axis button, as shown in Figure 1.22.

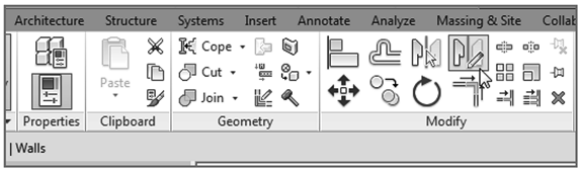


FIGURE 1.22: The Ribbon adds the appropriate commands.

3. Your cursor changes to a crosshair with the mirror icon, illustrating that you're ready to draw a mirror plane.
4. Make sure the Copy check box is selected (see Figure 1.23).

FIGURE 1.23: There are options you must choose for every command in Revit.

5. Hover your cursor over the inside face of the 80′–0″ (24000 mm) vertical wall until you reach the midpoint. Revit displays a triangular icon, indicating that you've found the midpoint of the wall (see Figure 1.24).

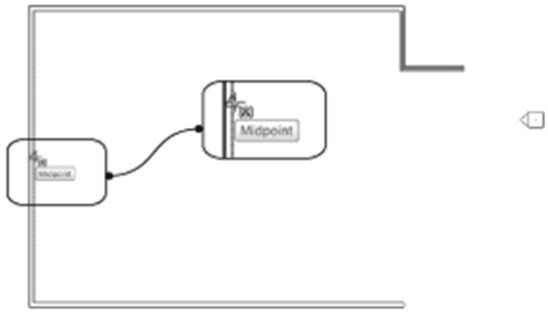


FIGURE 1.24: Revit has snaps similar to most CAD applications. In Revit, you'll get snaps only if you choose the Draw icon from the Options bar during a command.

6. When the triangular midpoint snap appears, pick this point. After you pick the point where the triangle appears, you can move your cursor directly to the right of the wall. An alignment line appears, as shown in Figure 1.25. When it does, you can pick another point along the path. When you pick the second point, the walls are mirrored and joined with the south wall (see Figure 1.26).

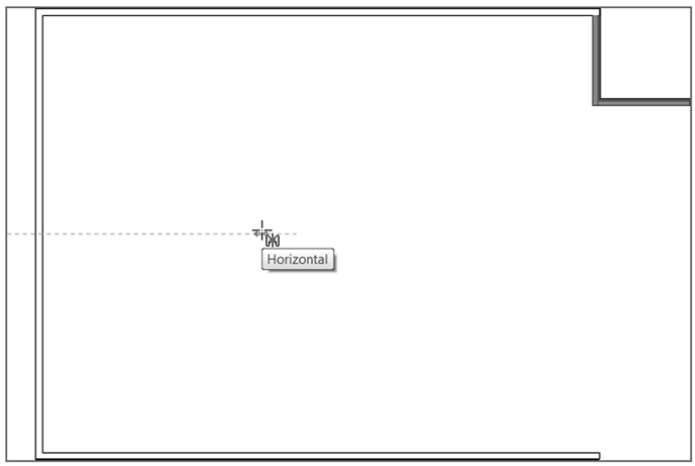


FIGURE 1.25: Mirroring these walls involves (1) picking the midpoint of the vertical wall and (2) picking a horizontal point along the plane.

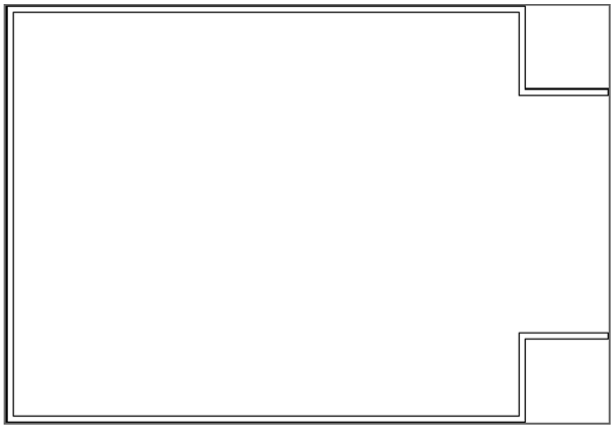


FIGURE 1.26: Your building should look like this illustration.

Now that you have some experience mirroring items, it's time to start adding components to your model by using the items that you placed earlier. If you're having trouble following the process, retry these first few procedures. Rome wasn't built in a day. (Well, perhaps if they'd had Revit, it would have sped things up!) You want your first few walls to look like Figure 1.26.

Building on Existing Geometry

You have some geometry with which to work, and you have some objects placed in your model. Now Revit starts to come alive. The benefits of using building information modeling will become apparent quickly, as explained later in this chapter. For example, because Revit knows that walls are walls, you can add identical geometry to the model by simply selecting an item and telling Revit to create a similar item.

Suppose you want a radial wall of the same type as the other walls in the model. Perform the following steps:

1. Type ZA to zoom the entire screen.
2. Press the Esc key.
3. Select one of the walls in the model—it doesn't matter which one.
4. Right-click the wall.
5. Select Create Similar, as shown in Figure 1.27.

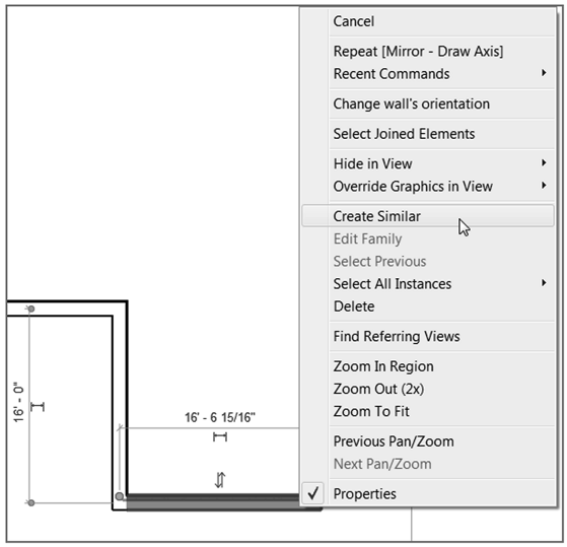


FIGURE 1.27: You can select any item in Revit and create a similar object by right-clicking and selecting Create Similar.

6. On the Modify | Place Wall tab, click the Start-End-Radius Arc button, as shown in Figure 1.28.

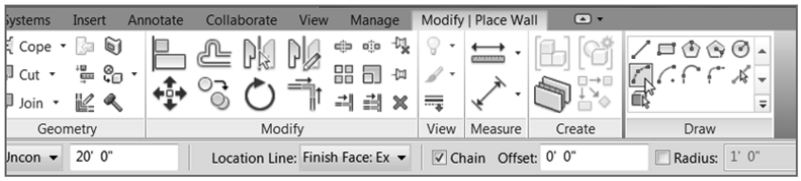


FIGURE 1.28: Just because you started the command from the view window doesn't mean you can ignore your options.

NOTE When you right-click an item, you can choose to repeat the last command. You can also select all items that are only in the current view or in the entire project.

7. Again with the options? Yes. Make sure Location Line is set to Finish Face: Exterior (it should be so already).
8. With the wheel button on your mouse, zoom into the upper corner of the building and select the top endpoint of the wall, as shown in Figure 1.29. The point you're picking is the corner of the heavy lines. The topmost, thinner line represents a concrete belt course below. If you're having trouble picking the correct point, don't be afraid to zoom into the area by scrolling the mouse wheel. (Metric users do not have the concrete belt. Just pick the outside heavy line representing the brick face.)
9. Select the opposite, outside corner of the bottom wall. Again, to be more accurate you'll probably have to zoom into each point as you're making your picks.

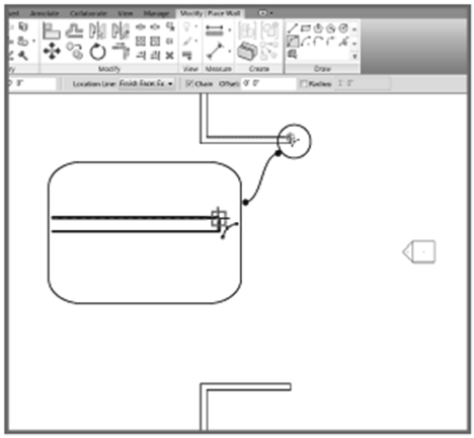


FIGURE 1.29: Select the top corner of the wall to start your new radial wall.

10. Move your cursor to the right until you see the curved wall pause. You'll see an alignment line and possibly a tangent snap icon appear as well. Revit understands that you may want an arc tangent on the two lines you've already placed in your model.
11. When you see the tangent snap icon, choose the third point. Your walls should look like Figure 1.30.

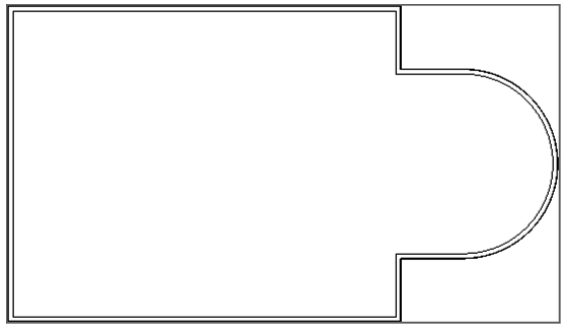


FIGURE 1.30: The completed exterior walls should look like this illustration.

Just because you've placed a wall in the model doesn't mean the wall looks the way you would like it to appear. In Revit, you can do a lot with view control and how objects are displayed.

View Control and Object Display

Although the earlier procedures are a nice way to add walls to a drawing, they don't reflect the detail you'll need to produce construction documents. The great thing about Revit, though, is that you've already done everything you need to do. You can now tell Revit to display the graphics the way you want to see them.

The View Control Bar

At the bottom of the view window, you'll see a skinny toolbar (as shown in Figure 1.31). This is the View Control bar.

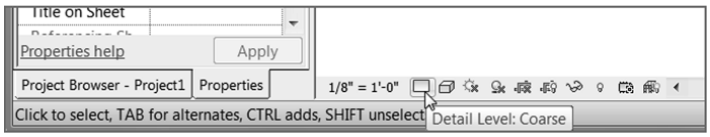


FIGURE 1.31: The View Control bar controls the graphical view of your model.

It contains the functions outlined in the following list:

Scale The first item on the View Control bar is the Scale function. It gets small mention here, but it's a huge deal. In Revit, you change the scale of a view by selecting this menu. Change the scale here, and Revit will scale annotations and symbols accordingly (see Figure 1.32).

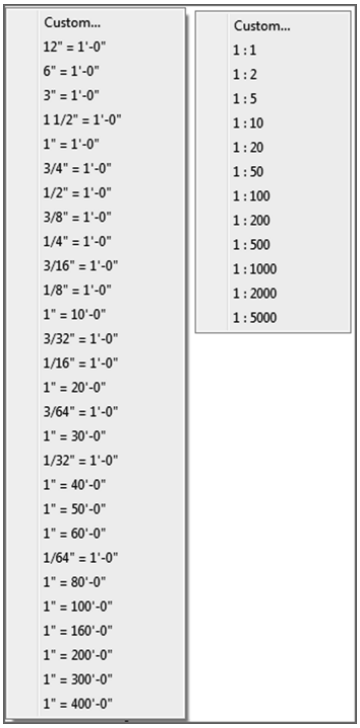


FIGURE 1.32: The Scale menu allows you to change the scale of your view.

Detail Level The Detail Level allows you to view your model at different qualities. You have three levels to choose from: Coarse, Medium, and Fine (see Figure 1.33).

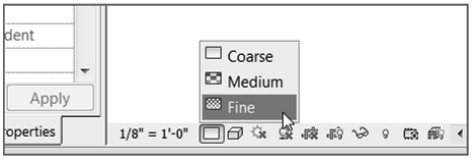


FIGURE 1.33: The Detail Level control allows you to set different view levels for the current view.

If you want more graphical information with this view, select Fine. To see how the view is adjusted using this control, follow these steps:

1. Click the Detail Level icon, and choose Fine.
2. Zoom in on a wall corner. Notice that the wall components are now showing in the view.

TIP When you change the view control in a view, it isn't a temporary display. You're telling Revit how you want to plot this view. The view you see on the screen is the view you'll see when it comes out of the plotter.

There are other items on the View Control bar, but I'll discuss them when they become applicable to the exercises.

The View Tab

Because Revit is one big happy model, you'll quickly find that simply viewing the model is quite important. In Revit, you can take advantage of some functionality in the Navigation bar. To activate the Navigation bar, first go to the View tab, and click the User Interface button. Then go to the default 3D view, and make sure the Navigation bar is activated, as shown in Figure 1.34.

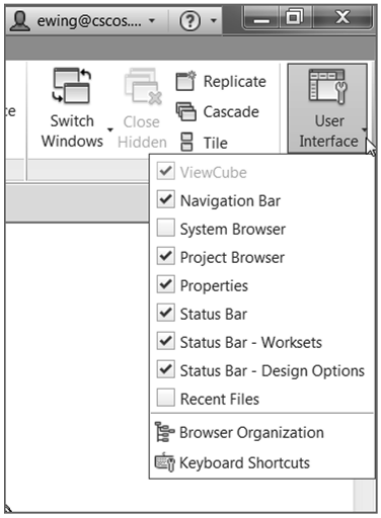


FIGURE 1.34: The View tab allows you to turn on and off the Navigation bar.

One item you need to look at on the Navigation bar is the steering wheel.

The Steering Wheel

The steering wheel allows you to zoom, rewind, and pan. When you click the steering wheel icon, a larger control panel appears in the view window. To choose one of the options, you simply pick (left-click) one of the options and hold down the mouse button as you execute the maneuver.

To use the steering wheel, follow these steps:

1. Go back to Floor Plan Level 1, and pick the steering wheel icon from the Navigation bar.
2. When the steering wheel is in the view window (as shown in Figure 1.35), left-click and hold Zoom. You can now zoom in and out.

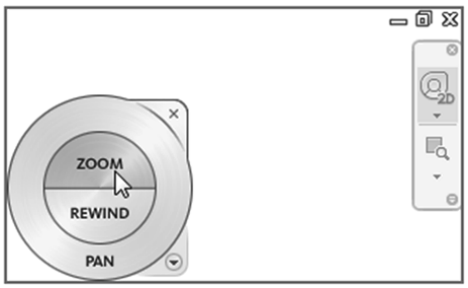


FIGURE 1.35: You can use the steering wheel to navigate through a view.

3. Click and hold Rewind in the steering wheel. You can now find an older view, as shown in Figure 1.36.

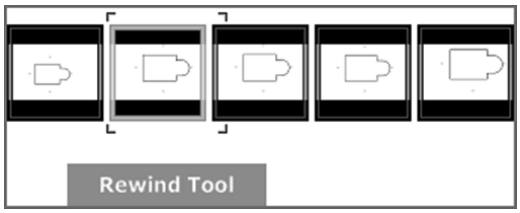


FIGURE 1.36: Because Revit doesn't include zoom commands in the Undo function, you can rewind to find previous views.

4. Do the same for Pan, which is on the outer ring of the steering wheel. After you click and hold Pan, you can navigate to other parts of the model.

Although you can do all this with your wheel button, some users still prefer the icon method of panning and zooming. For those of you who prefer the icons, you'll want to use the icons for the traditional zooms as well.

When you're finished using the steering wheel, press Shift+W or Exit to close out.

Traditional Zooms

The next items on the Navigation bar are the good-old zoom controls. The abilities to zoom in, zoom out, and pan are all included in this function, as shown in Figure 1.37.

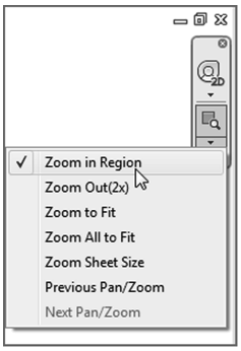


FIGURE 1.37: The standard zoom commands

Of course, if you have a mouse with a wheel, you can zoom and pan by either holding down the wheel to pan or wheeling the button to scroll in and out.

Thin Lines

Back on the View tab, you'll see an icon called Thin Lines, as shown in Figure 1.38. Let's talk about what this icon does.

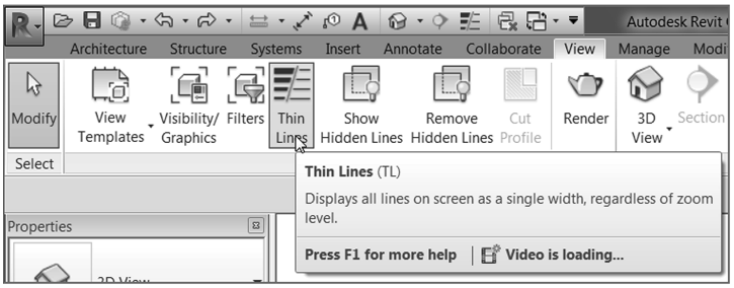


FIGURE 1.38: Clicking the Thin Lines icon lets you operate on the finer items in a model.

In Revit Architecture, there are no layers. Line weights are controlled by the actual objects they represent. In the view window, you see these line weights. As mentioned, what you see is what you get.

Sometimes, however, these line weights may be too thick for smaller-scale views. By clicking the Thin Lines icon, as shown in Figure 1.38, you can force the view to display only the thinnest lines possible and still see the objects.

To practice using the Thin Lines function, follow these steps:

1. Pick the Thin Lines icon.
2. Zoom in on the upper-right corner of the building.
3. Pick the Thin Lines icon again. This toggles the mode back and forth.
4. Notice that the lines are heavy.

The line weight should concern you. As mentioned earlier, there are no layers in Revit Architecture. This topic is addressed in Chapter 12, "Creating Specific Views and Match Lines."

3D View

The 3D View icon brings us to a new conversation. Complete the following steps, which will move us into the discussion of how a Revit model comes together:

1. Click the 3D View icon, as shown in Figure 1.39.

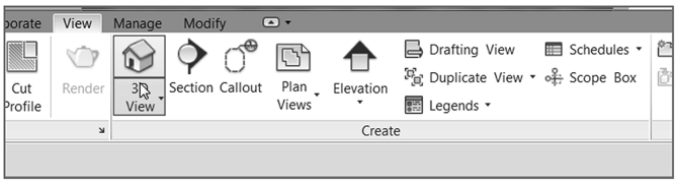


FIGURE 1.39: The 3D View icon will be used heavily.

2. On the View Control bar, click the Visual Style button and choose Realistic, as shown in Figure 1.40.

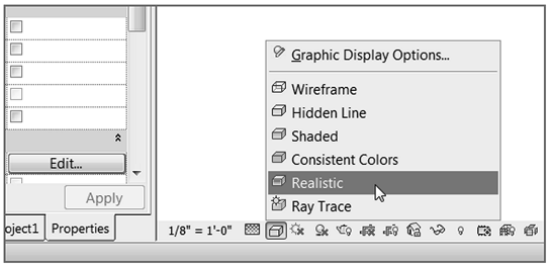


FIGURE 1.40: The Visual Style button enables you to view your model in color. This is typical for a 3D view.

3. Again on the View Control bar, select the Shadows On icon and turn on shadows, as shown in Figure 1.41.

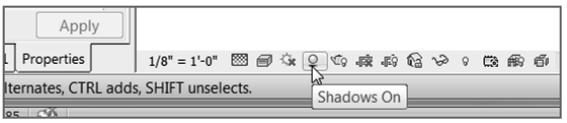


FIGURE 1.41: Shadows create a nice effect but at the expense of RAM.

WARNING If you turn on shadows, do so with care. This could be the single worst item in Revit in terms of performance degradation. Your model *will* slow down with shadows on.

Within the 3D view is the ViewCube. It's the cube in the upper-right corner of the view window. You can switch to different perspectives of the model by clicking the quadrants of the cube (see Figure 1.42).

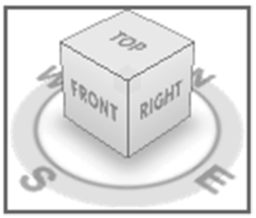


FIGURE 1.42: The ViewCube lets you look freely at different sides of the building.

TIP The best way to navigate a 3D view is to press and hold the Shift key on the keyboard. As you're holding the Shift key, press and hold the wheel on your mouse. Now move the mouse around. You'll be able to view the model dynamically.

Your model should look similar to Figure 1.43. (Metric users, you do not have the concrete belt or the concrete block coursing below the brick.)

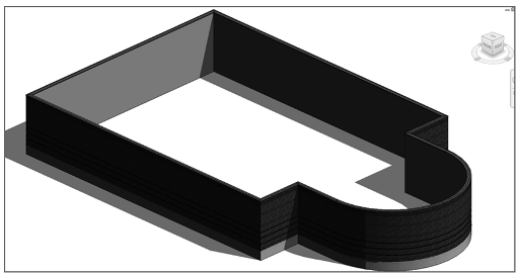


FIGURE 1.43: The model with shadows turned on

Go back to the floor plan. Wait! How? This brings us to an important topic in Revit: the Project Browser.

Lock It Up!

If you're happy with this view and you don't want to screw it up inadvertently, you can lock the orientation of the view as shown here. This is an important thing to know because, as you start creating sheets, you'll sometimes find that the 3D view you're randomly spinning around is actually on a sheet. For this lesson, leave the view unlocked.

The Project Browser

Revit is the frontrunner of BIM. BIM has swept our industry for many reasons. One of the biggest reasons is that you have a fully integrated model in front of you. That is, when you need to open a different floor plan, elevation, detail, drawing sheet, or 3D view, you can find it all right there in the model.

Also, this means your workflow will change drastically. When you think about all the external references and convoluted folder structures that make up a typical job, you can start to relate to the way Revit uses the Project Browser. In Revit, you use the Project Browser instead of the folder structure you used previously in CAD.

This approach changes the playing field. The process of closing the file you're in and opening the files in which you need to do work is restructured in Revit to enable you to stay in the model. You never have to leave one file to open another. You also never need to rely on external referencing to complete a set of drawings. Revit and the Project Browser put it all in front of you.

To start using the Project Browser, follow these steps:

1. To the far left of the Revit interface are the combined Project Browser and Properties dialogs. At the bottom of the dialogs, you'll see two tabs, as shown in Figure 1.44. Click the Project Browser tab.

www.allitebooks.com

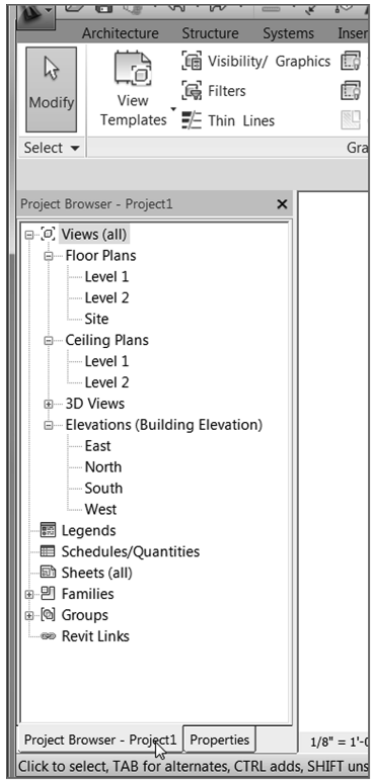


FIGURE 1.44: The Project Browser is your new BIM Windows Explorer.

2. The Project Browser is broken down into categories. The first category is Views. The first View category is Floor Plans. In the Floor Plans category, double-click Level 1.
3. Double-click Level 2. Notice that the walls look different than in Level 1. Your display level is set to Coarse. This is because any change you make on the View Control bar is for that view only. When you went to Level 2 for the first time, the change to the display level had not yet been made.
4. In the view window, you see little icons that look like houses (see Figure 1.45). These are elevation markers. (Metric users, yours are round.) The elevation marker to the right might be in your building or overlapping one of the walls. If this is the case, you need to move it out of the way.

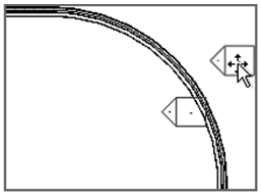


FIGURE 1.45: Symbols for elevation markers in the plan. If you need to move them, you must do so by picking a window. There are two items in an elevation marker.

5. Pick a box around the elevation marker. When both the small triangle and the small box are selected, move your mouse cursor over the selected objects.
6. Your cursor turns into a move icon. Pick a point on the screen, and move the elevation marker out of the way.
7. In the Project Browser, find the Elevations (Building Elevation) category. Double-click South.
8. Also in the Project Browser, notice the 3D Views category. Expand the 3D Views category, and double-click the {3D} choice. This brings you back to the 3D view you were looking at before this exercise.

Now that you can navigate through the Project Browser, adding other components to the model will be much easier. Next, you'll begin to add some windows.

WARNING "Hey! What happened to my elevation?" You're in Revit now. Items such as elevation markers, section markers, and callouts are no longer just dumb blocks: they're linked to the actual view they're calling out. If you delete one of these markers, you'll delete the view associated with it. If you and your design team have been working on that view, then you've lost that view. Also, you must move any item deliberately and with caution. The elevation marker you moved in the previous exercise has two parts: the little triangle is the elevation, and the little box is the part of the marker that records the sheet number on which the elevation will wind up. If you don't move both items together by placing a window around them, the elevation's origin will remain in its original position. When this happens, your elevation will look like a section, and it will be hard to determine how the section occurred.

Windows

By clicking all these views, you're simply opening a view (window) of the building, not another file that is stored somewhere. For some users, this can be confusing. (It was initially for me.)

When you click around and open views, they stay open. You can quickly open many views. There is a way to manage these views before they get out of hand.

In the upper-right corner of the Revit dialog, you'll see the traditional close and minimize/maximize buttons for the application. Just below them are the traditional buttons for the files that are open, as shown in Figure 1.46. Click the X to close the current view.

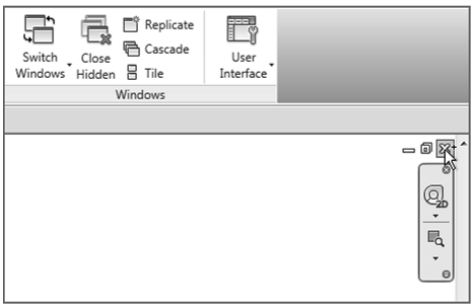


FIGURE 1.46: You can close a view by clicking the X for the view. This doesn't close Revit (or an actual file for that matter); it simply closes that view.

In this case, you have multiple views open. This situation (which is quite common) is best managed on the View tab. To use the Window menu, perform the following steps:

1. On the Windows panel of the View tab, click the Switch Windows button, as shown in Figure 1.47.

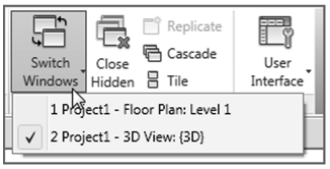


FIGURE 1.47: The Switch Windows menu lists all the current views that are open.

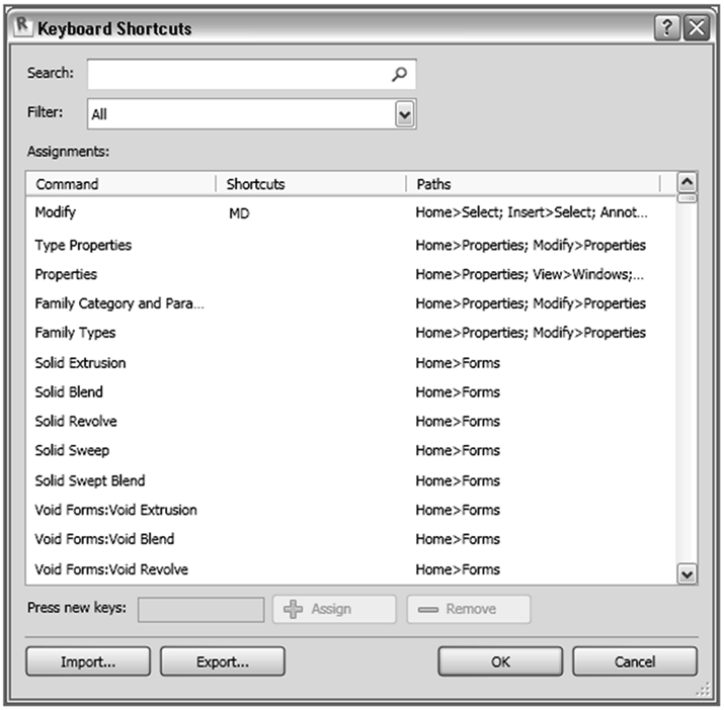
2. After the menu is expanded, look at the open views.
3. Go to the {3D} view by selecting it from the Window menu and clicking the 3D icon at the top of the screen or by going to the {3D} view in the Project Browser.
4. On the Windows panel, click Close Hidden Windows.
5. In the Project Browser, open Level 1.
6. Go to the Windows panel, and select Tile Windows.

7. With the windows tiled, you can see the Level 1 floor plan along with the 3D view to the side. Select one of the walls in the Level 1 floor plan. Notice that it's now selected in the 3D view. The views you have open are mere representations of the model from that perspective. Each view of the model can have its own independent view settings.
8. Click into each view, and type **ZA**. Doing so zooms the extents of each window. This is a useful habit to get into.

You're at a safe point now to save the file. This also brings us to a logical place at which to discuss the various file types and their associations with the BIM model.

But I Used to Type My Commands!

You can still type your commands. In the Revit menus, you may have noticed that many of the menu items have a two- or three-letter abbreviation to the right. This is the keyboard shortcut associated with the command. You can make your own shortcuts, or you can modify existing keyboard shortcuts—if you navigate to the View tab. On the Windows panel, click the User Interface button. In the drop-down menu, click the Keyboard Shortcuts button. Here you can add or modify keyboard shortcuts.



File Types and Families

Revit Architecture has a unique way of saving files and using different file types to build a BIM model. To learn how and why Revit has chosen these methods, follow these steps:

1. Click the Save icon (see Figure 1.48).

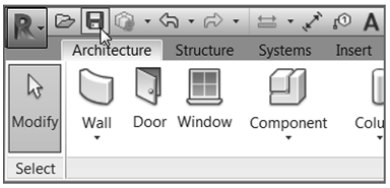


FIGURE 1.48: The traditional Save icon brings up the Save As dialog if the file has never been saved.

2. In the Save As dialog, click the Options button in the lower-right corner (see Figure 1.49).

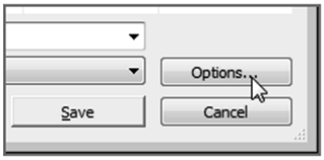


FIGURE 1.49: The Options button in the Save As dialog lets you choose how the file is saved.

3. In the File Save Options dialog is a place at the top where you can specify the number of backups, as shown in Figure 1.50. Set this value to 1.

   Revit provides this option because when you click the Save icon, Revit duplicates the file. It adds a suffix of `0001` to the end of the filename. Each time you click the Save icon, Revit records this save and adds another file called `0002`, leaving the `0001` file intact. The default is to do this three times before Revit starts replacing `0001`, `0002`, and `0003` with the three most current files.

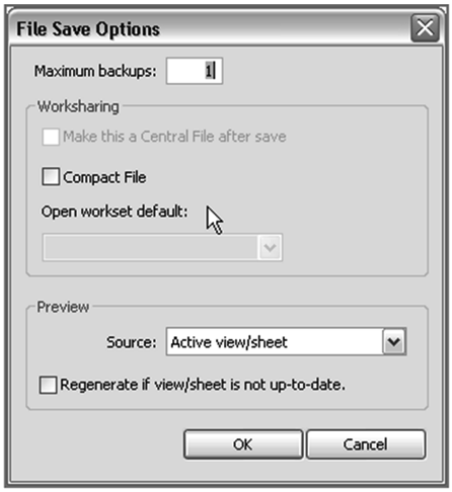


FIGURE 1.50: The options in the File Save Options dialog box let you specify the number of backups and the view for the preview.

4. In the Preview section, you can specify in which view this file will be previewed. I like to keep it as the active view. That way I can get an idea of whether the file is up to date based on the state of the view. Click OK.
5. Create a folder somewhere, and save this file into the folder. The name of the file used as an example in the book is `NER.rvt`. (NER stands for "No Experience Required.") Of course, you can name the file anything you want, or you can even make your own project using the steps and examples from the book as guidelines.

Now that you have experience adding components to the model, it's time to investigate exactly what you're adding here. Each component is a member of what Revit calls a *family*.

System and Hosted Families (*.rfa*)

A Revit model is based on a compilation of items called families. There are two types of families: system families and hosted families. A *system family* can be found only in a Revit model and can't be stored in a separate location. A *hosted family* is inserted similarly to a block (or cell) and is stored in an external directory. The file extension for a hosted family is `.rfa`.

System Families

System families are inherent to the current model and aren't inserted in the traditional sense. You can modify a system family only through its element properties in the model. The walls you've put in up to this point are system families, for example. You didn't have to insert a separate file to find the wall type. The system families in a Revit Architecture model are as follows:

Walls

Floors

Roofs

Ceilings

Stairs

Ramps

Shafts

Rooms

Schedules/quantity takeoffs

Text

Dimensions

Views

System families define your model. As you can see, the list pretty much covers most building elements. There are, however, many more components not included in this list. These items, which can be loaded into your model, are called hosted families.

Hosted Families

All other families in Revit are hosted in some way by a system family, a level, or a reference plane. For example, a wall sconce is a hosted family in that, when you insert it, it's appended to a wall. Hosted families carry a file extension of `.rfa`. To insert a hosted family into a model, follow these steps:

1. Open the `NER-01.rvt` file or your own file.
2. Go to Level 1.
3. On the Architecture tab, click the Door button.

4. On the Modify | Place Door tab, click the Load Family button, as shown in Figure 1.51. This opens the Load Family dialog.

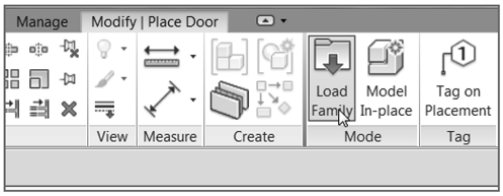


FIGURE 1.51: **You can load an `.rfa` file during the placement of a hosted family.**

5. Browse to the `Doors` directory.

   Note that if you're on a network, your directories may not be the same as in this book. Contact your CAD/BIM manager (or whoever loaded Revit onto your computer) to find out exactly where they may have mapped Revit.

6. Notice that there is a list of doors. Select `Single-Raised Panel with Sidelights.rfa`, and click Open. (Metric users select `M_Double-Panel 2.rfa`.)

7. In the Properties dialog, click the Type Selector, as shown in Figure 1.52. Notice that in addition to bringing in the door family, you have seven different types of the door. These types are simply variations of the same door. You no longer have to explode a block and modify it to fit in your wall.

8. Select Single-Flush 36″ × 84″ (915 mm × 2134 mm), as shown in Figure 1.52.

9. Zoom in on the upper-left corner of the building, as shown in Figure 1.53.

10. To insert the door into the model, you must place it in the wall. (Notice that before you hover your cursor over the actual wall, Revit won't allow you to add the door to the model, as shown in Figure 1.53.) When your pointer is directly on top of the wall, you see the outline of the door. Pick a point in the wall, and the door is inserted. (I'll cover this in depth in the next chapter.)

11. Delete the door you just placed by selecting it and pressing the Delete key on your keyboard. This is just practice for the next chapter.

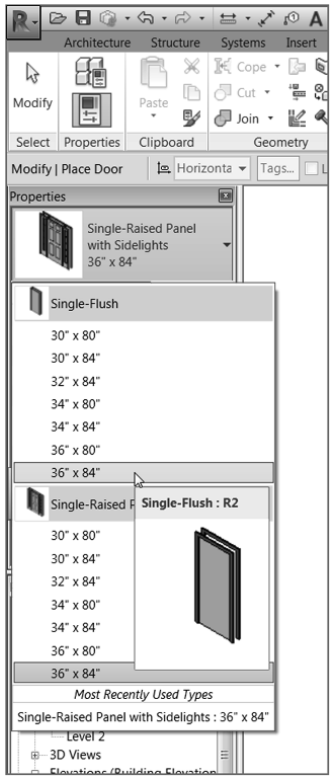


FIGURE 1.52: **Each family `.rfa` file contains multiple types associated with that family.**

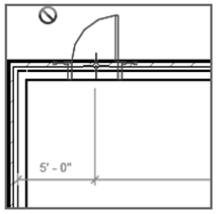


FIGURE 1.53: **Inserting a hosted family (`.rfa`)**

You'll use this method of inserting a hosted family into a model quite a bit in this book and on a daily basis when you use Revit. Note that when a family is loaded into Revit Architecture, there is no live path back to the file that was loaded. After it's added to the Revit model, it becomes part of that model. To view a list of the families in the Revit model, go to the Project Browser and look for the Families category. There you'll see a list of the families and their types, as Figure 1.54 shows.

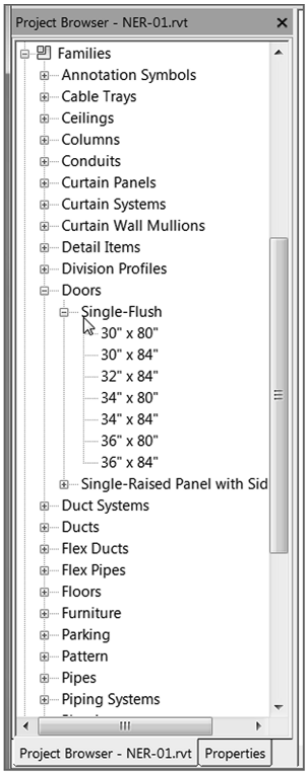


FIGURE 1.54: All the families are listed in the Project Browser.

The two main Revit file types have been addressed. Two others are also crucial to the development of a Revit model.

Using Revit Template Files (*.rte*)

The `.rte` extension pertains to a Revit template file. Your company surely has developed a template for its own standards or will do so soon. An `.rte` file is simply the default template that has all of your company's standards built into it. When you start a project, you'll use this file. To see how an `.rte` file is used, follow these steps:

1. Click the Application button, and select New ➢ Project.
2. In the resulting dialog, shown in Figure 1.55, click the Browse button.
3. Browsing throws you into a category with several other templates. You can now choose a different template.
4. Click Cancel twice.

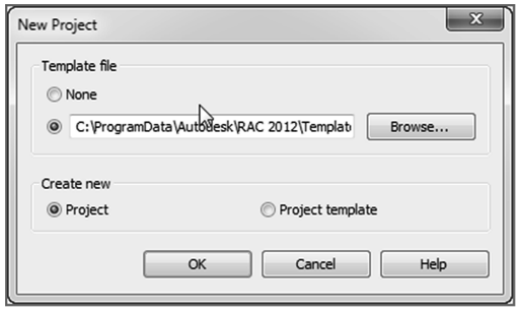


FIGURE 1.55: A new Revit model is based on an `.rte` template file.

Whenever you start a project, you'll use the `.rte` template. When you start a new family, however, you'll want to use an `.rft` file.

Using Revit Family Files (*.rft*)

The `.rft` extension is another type of template—only this one pertains to a family. It would be nice if Revit had every family fully developed to suit your needs. Alas, it doesn't. You'll have to develop your own families, starting with a family template. To see how to access a family template, perform these steps:

1. Click the Application button, and select New ➢ Family to open the browse dialog shown in Figure 1.56.

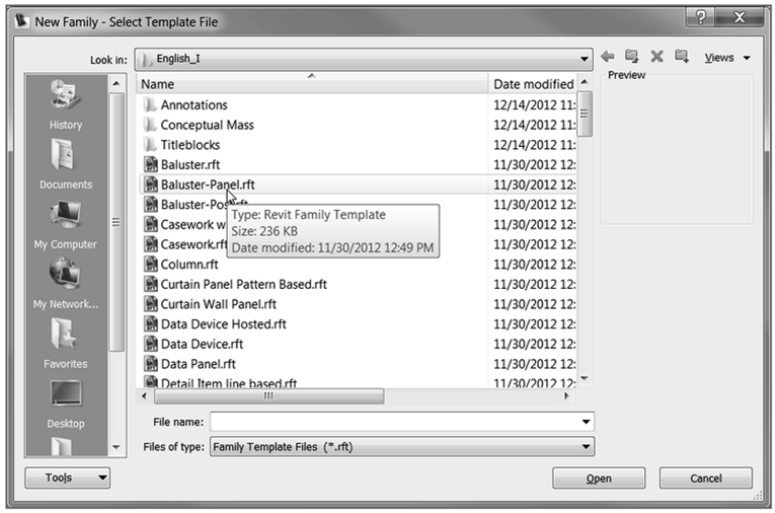


FIGURE 1.56: The creation of a family starts with templates.

2. Browse through these templates. You'll most certainly use many of them.
3. Click the Cancel button.

Tempting? I know! I'll cover creating families thoroughly in Chapter 16, "Creating Families." As mentioned earlier, you'll reach a certain point when you run out of Revit-provided content. If you're feeling brave, go ahead and play around in one of the templates. You have nothing to lose (except time).

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ **navigate the Revit Architecture interface and start a model**
- ✔ **find commands on the Ribbon and understand how this controls your options**
- ✔ **find where to change a keyboard shortcut to make it similar to CAD**
- ✔ **navigate through the Project Browser**
- ✔ **understand how the Revit interface is broken down into views**
- ✔ **tell the difference between the two different types of families and understand how to build a model using them**

CHAPTER 2

Creating a Model

Now that you have a solid working knowledge of the Autodesk® Revit® Architecture interface and you understand how it differs from most other drafting applications, it's time to move on to creating the Revit model.

The first chapter had you add some exterior walls to the model, and this chapter will expand on that concept. You'll also be placing some of the components, such as doors, that were introduced in Chapter 1, "The Autodesk Revit World." Revit is only as good as the families that support the model.

To kick off the chapter, I'll focus on the accurate placement of interior and exterior walls. You also have a lot to learn about the properties of walls and how to tackle tricky areas where the walls just won't join together for you.

- **Placing walls**
- **Using reference planes**
- **Adding interior walls**
- **Editing wall joins**
- **Placing doors and windows**

Placing Walls

In Chapter 1, you placed some walls and then added exterior walls to the model. In this section, you'll add more walls to the model. Although adding walls to the model isn't difficult, you need to explore how to control these walls when adjacent items start moving around and corners get fussy. Also, I'll present proven methods to ensure accuracy so that I can keep you from starting down the wrong path.

Adding Exterior Walls

To continue with the perimeter of the building from Chapter 1, let's add some more exterior walls. The first few walls you added to the model were pretty basic in terms of layout. It would be nice to have only square

geometry! The reality is you're going to encounter walls at different angles and dimensions to which you can't just line up other walls. To get around this, you'll add what are called *reference planes* to help lay out the building. At the end of this section, your building's perimeter will look like Figure 2.1.

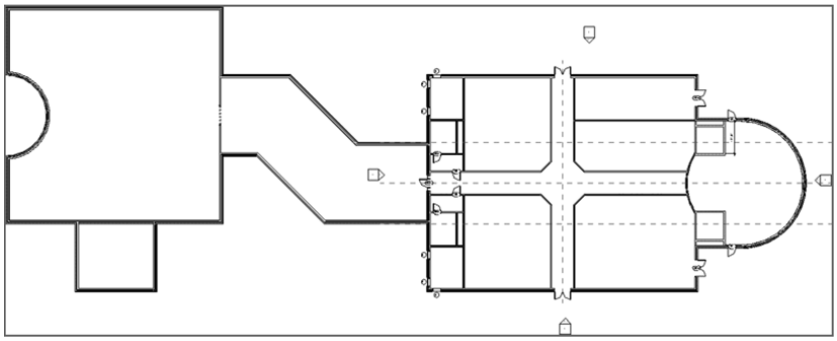


FIGURE 2.1: The footprint of your completed building

The objective of the next set of procedures is to establish some strong working points and then add walls along those guidelines. You'll also use these rules to make the necessary adjustments later in the section.

Using Reference Planes

Reference planes are construction lines that you can place in your model to establish centerlines and to use as an aid for symmetrical geometry. If you add a reference plane in one view, it will appear in another. If you add one in a plan view, you can see that same plane in an elevation or section. This approach is a great way to build using a common reference. Also, reference planes, by default, don't plot.

NOTE Metric users should not type in mm or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit won't accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.

The only drawback to reference planes is that they suffer from overuse. Try to use them only as what they are: a reference. To practice using reference planes, follow these steps:

1. Open the file you created in Chapter 1. If you didn't complete that chapter, open the file `NER-02.rvt` in the `Chapter 2` directory, which

you can download from the book's website at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. (You can also use your own building if you choose.)

2. Go to Floor Plan Level 1 in the Project Browser (if you aren't there already).
3. On the Work Plane panel of the Architecture tab, click the Ref Plane button (all the way to the right), as shown in Figure 2.2.

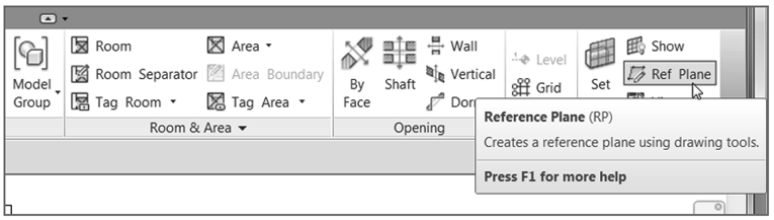


FIGURE 2.2: The Ref Plane command is on the Architecture tab's Work Plane panel on the Ribbon.

NOTE As you move through the exercises in this book, you'll discover that the Ref Plane command is also found elsewhere in the program.

4. Draw the reference plane through the center of the building, extending each end past the exterior walls. (Remember, this is a construction line. You can go long if you need to do so.) See Figure 2.3 for an idea of where the line should go. If you're having trouble locating the reference points for the start of the reference plane, make sure you're snapping to the midpoint of the walls. You can also type SM to snap to the midpoint of the wall.

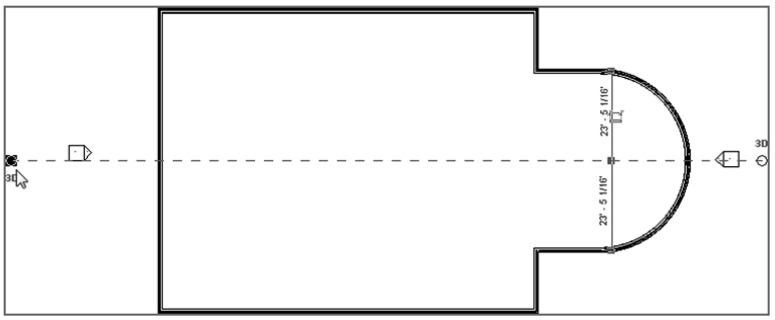


FIGURE 2.3: You can grip-edit reference planes to the required length.

5. Press Esc twice.
6. If the line isn't the length you want, you can stretch it. First select the line; at each end, you see blue grips. Simply pick (left-click) the grip, and stretch the reference plane to the desired length, as shown in Figure 2.3.
7. Start the Ref Plane command again.
8. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon, as shown in Figure 2.4.

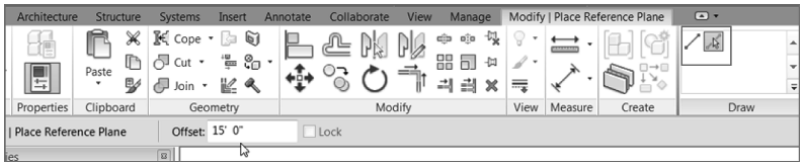


FIGURE 2.4: Offsetting a reference plane

9. Set Offset to 15′–0″ (4500 mm) (Imperial users, remember, you can type 15, and metric users type 4500), as shown in Figure 2.4.
10. Hover your pointer above the mid-reference plane. A blue alignment line appears either above or below.
11. Move your pointer up and down. See the alignment line flip? When it flips to the top, pick the middle line. Doing so adds the line to the top.
12. With the Ref Plane command still running, hover over the middle line again. This time, offset the alignment line down. Your plan should now look like Figure 2.5.

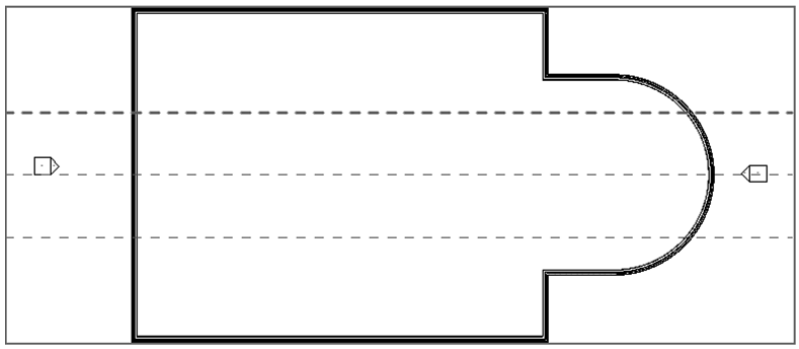


FIGURE 2.5: Reference planes are used here to aid in the placement of walls.

TIP Notice that you didn't actually use the Offset command. Revit has the offset function built into most of the commands you'll be running. You just need to remember to look at your context tab and your Options bar, and you'll be fine.

Adding More Walls

Let's add some more walls. To do so, follow along with the next set of steps. (Before you start, here's a tip. In this procedure, you're going to add walls in a counterclockwise direction, so work in that manner. But keep in mind that Revit assumes you'll add walls in a clockwise manner. In the future, try adding the walls clockwise; doing so forces the exterior of the wall to the outside.) OK, now back to adding walls:

1. Press the Esc key twice.
2. Select one of the exterior walls in the model, and right-click.
3. Select Create Similar. (You can still start the Wall command from the Architecture tab. If you do, make sure you select Basic Wall: Exterior – Brick And CMU On MTL. Stud.) Create Similar is also available on the Create panel of the Modify | Walls tab. (Metric users select Exterior – Brick On Mtl. Stud.)
4. On the Options bar, make sure Location Line is set to Finish Face: Exterior.
5. Start drawing your new wall from the intersection of the west wall (the one on the left) and the upper reference plane, as shown in Figure 2.6. Make sure you're using the face of the wall and not the ledge below. The enlargement in Figure 2.6 can help you. (Metric users, you do not have a ledge below.)

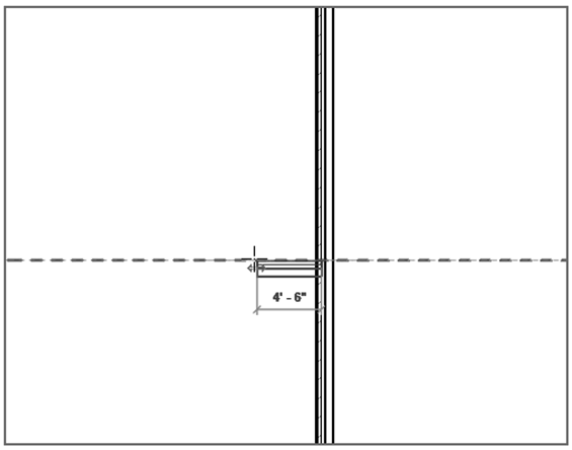


FIGURE 2.6: Drawing a single wall from a defined starting point

6. If the wall is starting on the wrong side of the reference plane, tap your spacebar to flip the wall to the correct side.
7. Making sure you have a horizontal line started, type **25** (**7500** mm), and press Enter.
8. Press Esc.
9. Do the same for the other side. Your plan should now look like Figure 2.7.

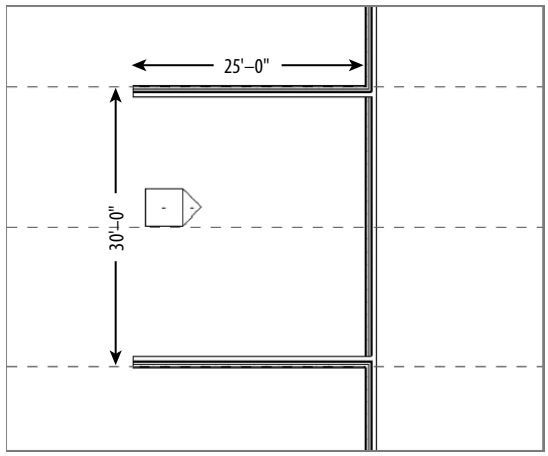


FIGURE 2.7: The two walls drawn here are 30′ (9000 mm) from inside finish face to inside finish face.

10. Start the Wall command again if it isn't already running. Make sure the Chain check box is selected. This will allow you to keep drawing walls continuing from the last point of the previously drawn wall.
11. From the top 25′ (7500 mm) wall, pick the corner of the finish face (again, the brick face and not the ledge below). The wall may be positioned in the wrong orientation, so tap the spacebar to flip it if it is.
12. Move your cursor up and to the left at a 135° angle (Revit snaps at 45° intervals).
13. When you move your cursor far enough in this direction, Revit picks up the north finish face of the building drawn in the previous procedure. After these two alignment lines appear, pick the point on the screen, as shown in Figure 2.8.

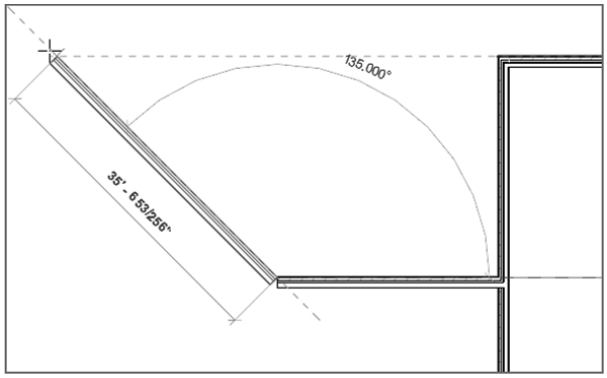


FIGURE 2.8: Allow Revit to guide you in the placement of walls.

14. Draw a horizontal wall to the left 25′ (7500 mm).
15. From the left point of that wall, draw a wall up 25′ (7500 mm).
16. From the top of that wall, draw another wall to the left 80′ (24000 mm).
17. Draw a wall down 25′ (7500 mm).
18. On the Modify | Place Wall panel, click the Start-End-Radius Arc button, as shown in Figure 2.9.

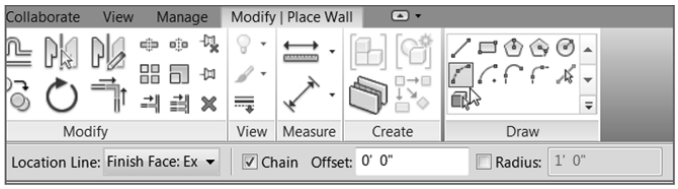


FIGURE 2.9: Draw a radial wall using the Start-End-Radius Arc method.

19. Because the Wall command is still running, the next point to pick is the endpoint of the arc. Before you do that, you will have to hit the spacebar to flip the wall in the correct orientation.
20. Pick a point straight down at a distance of 30′–0″ (9000 mm).
21. Move your pointer to the right until Revit snaps it to the tangent radius. (You may not get a tangent snap, but Revit will hesitate when you've reached the tangency.) After this happens, pick a point.

22. On the Draw panel, click the Line button in the upper-left corner. This will allow you to draw a straight wall again.
23. Hit the spacebar if the wall is in the wrong orientation.
24. Draw a wall straight down from the end of the arc 25′ (7500 mm).
25. Draw a wall to the right 80′ (24000 mm).
26. Draw a wall straight up 25′–0″ (7500 mm).
27. Press Esc. Your building should look like Figure 2.10.

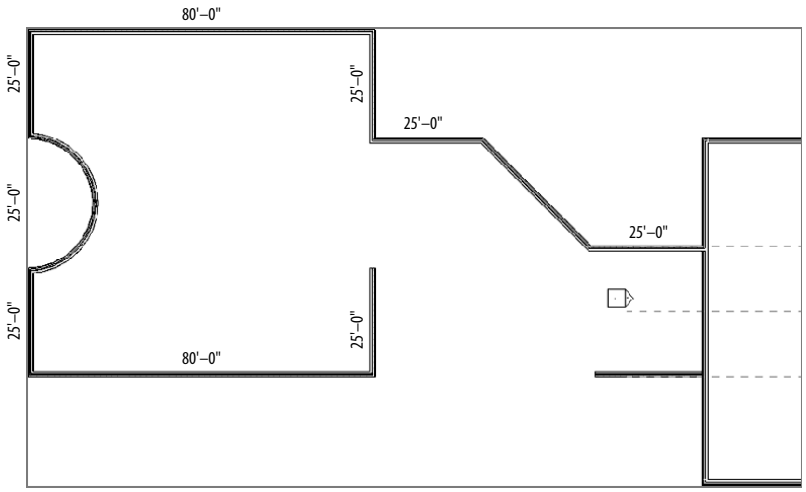


FIGURE 2.10: The building up to this point

If you're having trouble sketching the outline, remember to slow down. The next few walls will be a little tougher. You'll have to place them using the embedded offset function within the Wall command.

28. Start the Wall command if it isn't running already or click one of the walls you already placed, and select Create Similar (that's what all the cool kids are doing).
29. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon, as shown in Figure 2.11.

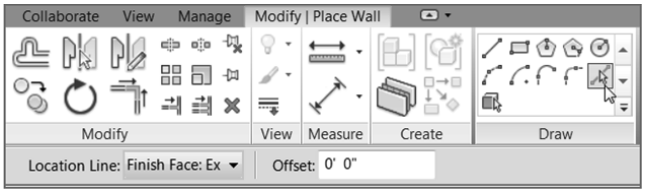


FIGURE 2.11: The Pick Lines icon lets you add a wall by using an offset from another object.

30. On the Options bar, you'll see an Offset input. Type 30 (10000 mm), and press Enter.
31. Move your cursor over the outside face of the wall, as shown in Figure 2.12. When you see the alignment line appear below the wall, pick the outside face.

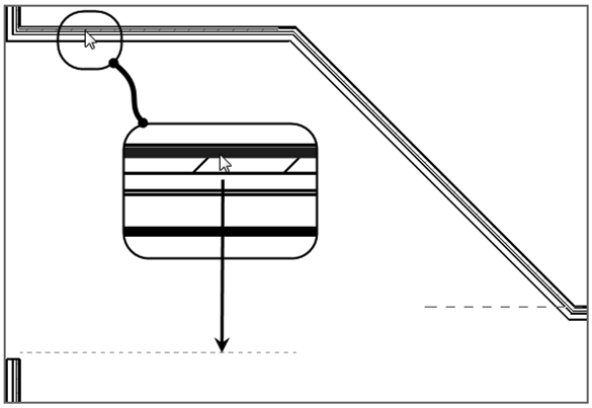


FIGURE 2.12: Adding a wall using the built-in offset function may take a few tries to get the method down.

32. Repeat the procedure for the angled wall. Make sure you offset the wall to the left (see Figure 2.13).
33. Click Modify.

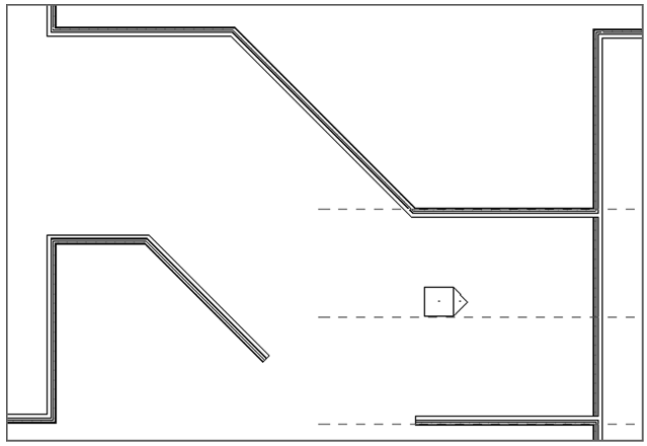


FIGURE 2.13: Creating the bottom of the corridor

Cleaning Up Using Trim

So, it's kind of a mess! It would be cool if Revit joined these walls the way you want, but that would, I'm afraid, be too much to ask. Sometimes it does, but sometimes it does not. By using the Trim command, you can clean up those overlapping corners and fill the gaps by simply selecting the walls you want joined together. There's one major thing to remember here. Select the walls on the side you want to keep, not the side you want to trim away.

To get started, follow these steps:

1. On the Modify tab, select the Trim button on the Modify panel, as shown in Figure 2.14.

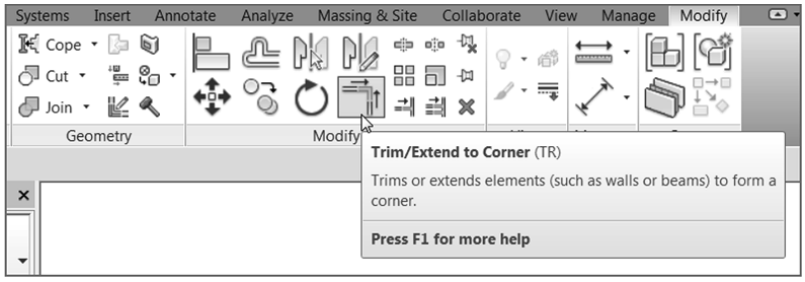


FIGURE 2.14: The Trim command is your new best friend.

Old-Fashioned Shortcuts

Notice when you hover over the icon you see two letters in parentheses like this: (TR). This indicates you can type TR as a keyboard shortcut.

2. The next step is to select the walls in the sequence and in the spots shown in Figure 2.15.

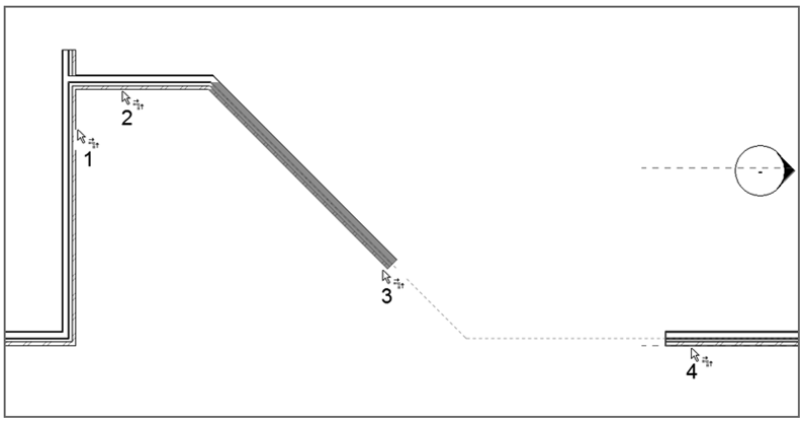


FIGURE 2.15: Using the Trim command to join the corners

Your walls should look like Figure 2.16.

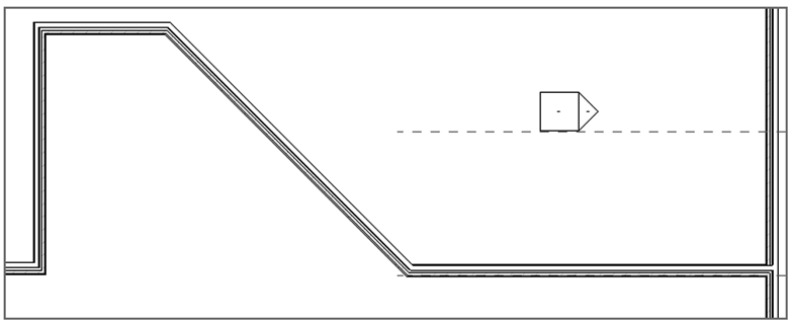


FIGURE 2.16: The walls are now clean.

3. You should add another part of the building. It's going to be a simple U-shape on the south end of the building. Select and right-click one of the exterior walls. Then, click Create Similar.
4. On the View toolbar, set the detail level to Coarse, as shown in Figure 2.17.

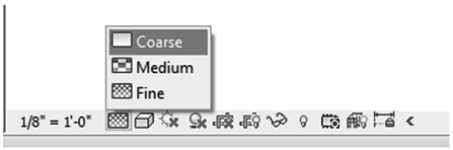


FIGURE 2.17: Sometimes setting the graphic display to Coarse can make the placement of other walls easier.

5. On the Options bar, change Offset to **15′–0″** (**4500** mm).
6. Pick the midpoint of the south wall, as shown in Figure 2.18.

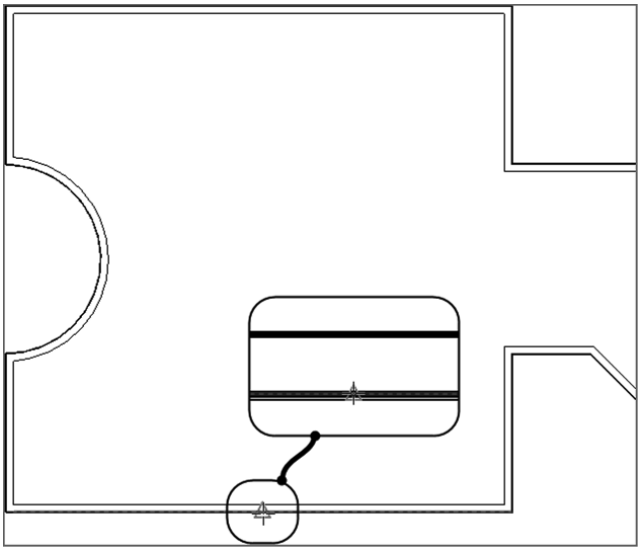


FIGURE 2.18: Adding the new walls requires picking the midpoint of this wall. Make sure Offset is set to 15′–0″ (4500 mm) on the Options bar.

7. Draw the wall 25′ (7500 mm) down from the south wall by typing **25** (**7500** mm) and pressing Enter.

8. After you pick the 25′ (7500 mm) distance, move your cursor up, back toward the wall, as shown in Figure 2.19, resulting in a 25′-long (7500 mm) wall.

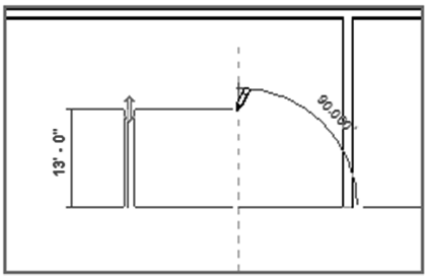


FIGURE 2.19: By using the Offset command as you draw walls, you can use one common centerline.

9. Set Offset to 0. Draw a wall across the front of the two walls, as shown in Figure 2.20. Make sure it's flipped in the right direction. You can determine this by switching back from Coarse to Fine detail. Click Modify.

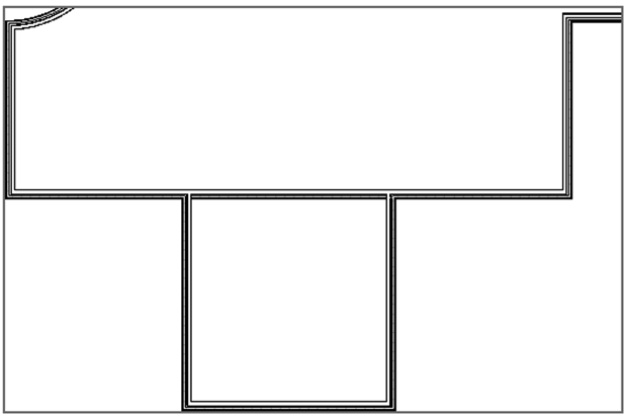
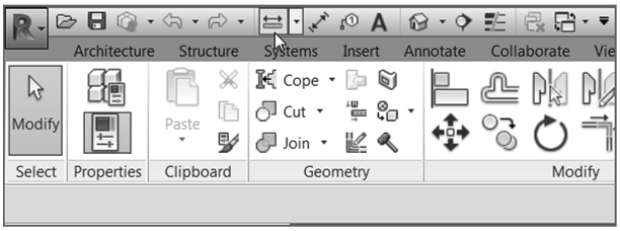


FIGURE 2.20: The completed walls for the south side of the building

Your walls should look like Figure 2.20.

Does It Measure Up?

In Revit, you can access the Measure function, which is the same as the Distance command in Autodesk® AutoCAD® software. To verify whether your walls are placed at your chosen distances, click the Measure icon as shown here. After you measure the distance, the Options bar will show you the result. The Measure icon is also available on the Measure panel of the Modify tab.



Adding Interior Walls

Interior walls are basically the same as exterior walls in terms of how they're placed in the model. This is a good thing. Luckily, you can be slightly more relaxed with the justification. Now that the building has a footprint, you can see more easily whether the walls need to be adjusted.

You'll start by laying out an elevator shaft and a stairwell, using an 8″ (200 mm) CMU wall system. Follow these steps:

1. Open or make sure you're in Floor Plan Level 1. Zoom into the northeast corner of the building, as shown in Figure 2.21.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Wall button.
3. In the Type Selector, select Generic – 8″ Masonry, as shown in Figure 2.21. (Metric users use the Generic – 225 mm Masonry wall.)
4. For the starting point, pick the corner as shown in Figure 2.21. The wall will probably be in the wrong orientation, so if necessary, tap the spacebar to flip the wall's orientation.
5. Move your cursor downward, and type **12′** (**3600** mm). The wall will be 12′ long.
6. Move your cursor to the right, and type **10′** (**3000** mm).

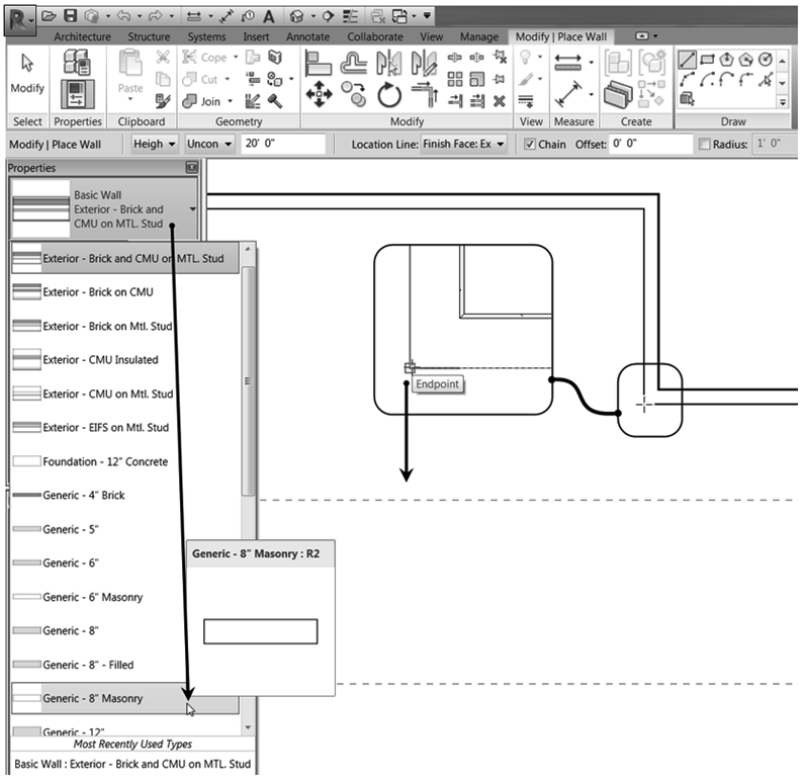


FIGURE 2.21: Start drawing the 8″ (200 mm) CMU elevator shaft in the corner indicated here. Turn on Thin Lines if you need to.

7. Move your cursor back up the view, and pick the exterior wall.
8. Click Modify. You should have three walls that look like Figure 2.22.

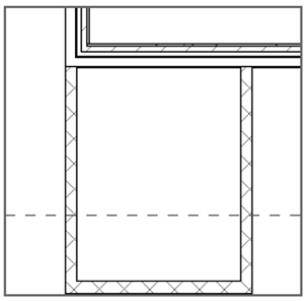


FIGURE 2.22: The elevator shaft begins to take shape.

At this point, you have some walls in the model. It's time to look at ensuring that these walls are accurately placed, so you need to check the dimensions.

Using Temporary Dimensions to Gain Control of Your Model

After you place items in a model, you usually need to make some adjustments. Revit does a good job with this; however, there are some rules to which you need to adhere. The goal here is to have a clear 10′–0″ (3000 mm) dimension on the inside faces of the shaft. At this point, you should assume that you don't. This is where temporary dimensions come into play. To start working with temporary dimensions, follow these steps:

1. Select the right, vertical CMU wall. A blue temporary dimension appears, as shown in Figure 2.23.

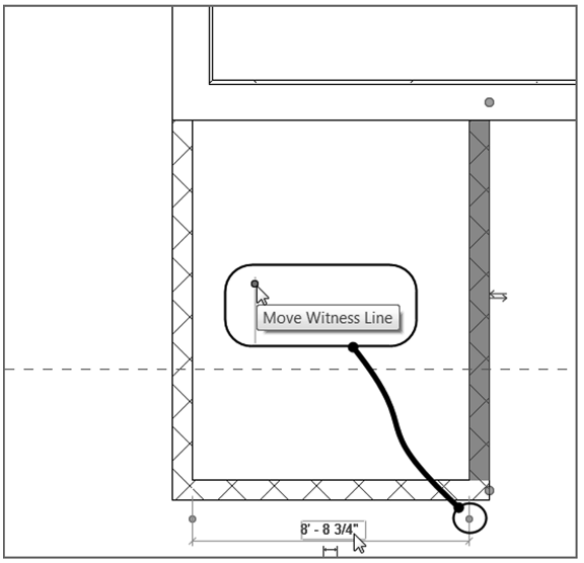


FIGURE 2.23: Temporary dimensions can be adjusted to measure from different wall faces by picking the witness-line grip.

2. On the temporary dimension, you see some blue grips. If you hover your cursor over one of them, a tooltip appears, indicating that this grip represents the witness line.

3. Pick the grip to the right side of the dimension. Notice that it moves to the outside face of the wall. Pick it again, and notice that it moves to the inside face. This is exactly where you want it.
4. The actual increment in the dimension is blue. Select the blue dimension, type **10′** (**3000** mm), and press Enter. The wall that was selected moves to accommodate the new increment, as shown in Figure 2.24.

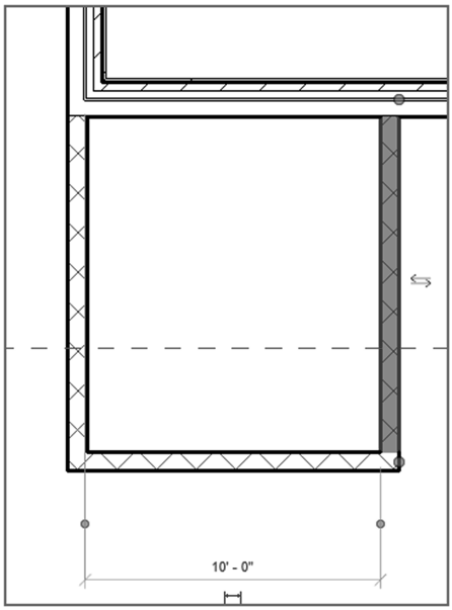


FIGURE 2.24: The selected wall is the wall that will move when you type the new dimension.

Temporary Dimension Settings

Revit measures the default dimension for the temporary dimensions from the center of the walls, which is typically the last place from which you want to take the dimension. You can change some settings to fix this action.

1. On the Manage tab, click Additional Settings ➢ Temporary Dimensions, as shown in Figure 2.25.
2. In the Temporary Dimension Properties dialog box, select Faces in the Walls group.

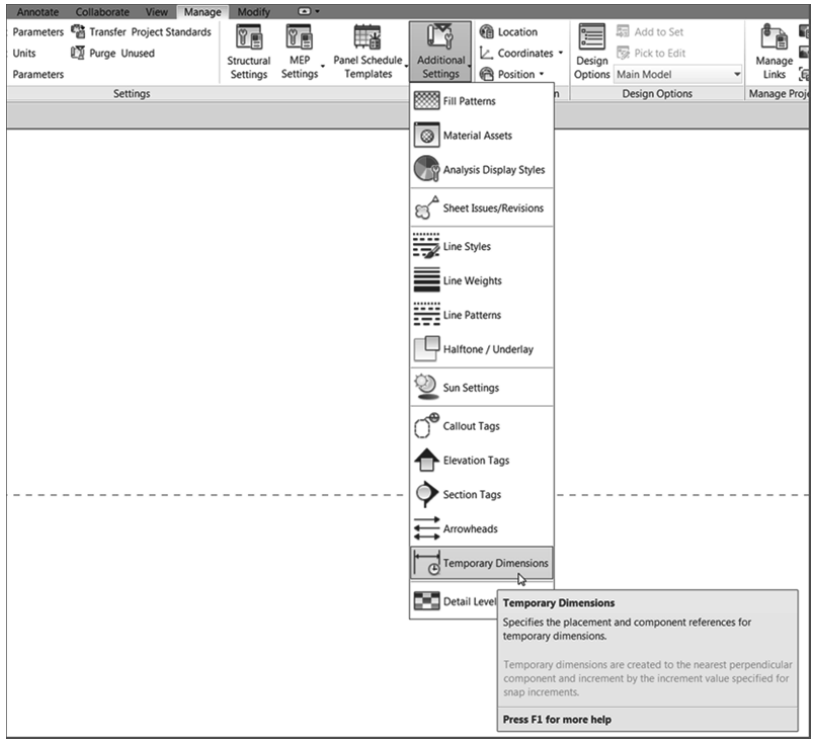


FIGURE 2.25: The Temporary Dimensions function lets you control where Revit measures the temporary dimensions.

3. In the Doors And Windows group, select Openings, as shown in Figure 2.26.

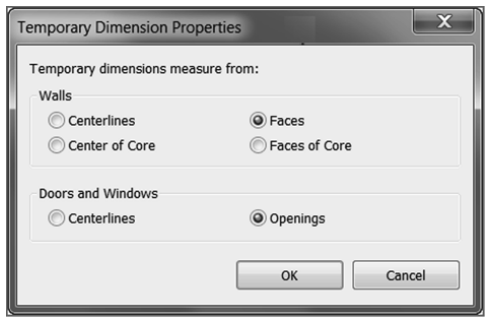


FIGURE 2.26: The most popular configuration for temporary dimensions

4. Click OK.
5. Select the south, horizontal wall.
6. To the right of the dimension, you see a small blue icon that also looks like a dimension. If you hover your mouse over it, a tooltip appears, indicating that you can make the temporary dimension permanent, as shown in Figure 2.27. When you see this tooltip, click the icon.

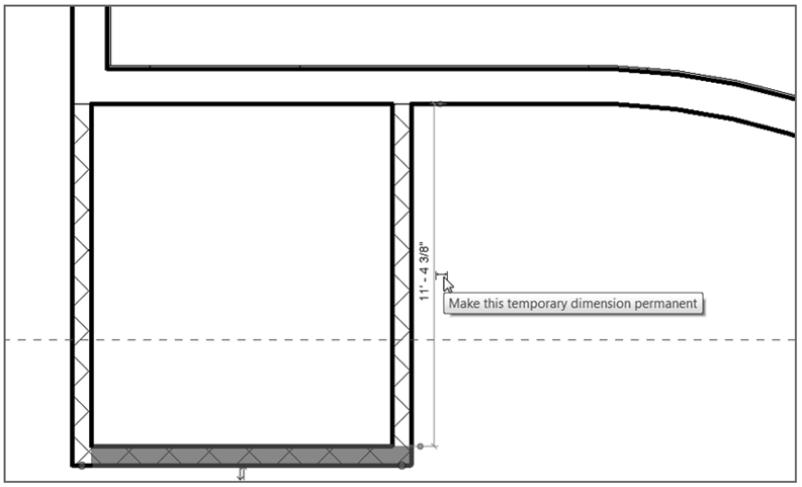


FIGURE 2.27: You can make temporary dimensions permanent.

7. Press Esc.
8. Select the same wall again. Notice that the permanent dimension turns blue. You know that anything that turns blue in Revit can be edited. You can change this increment any time you wish.
9. Change the dimension to **12′ (3600** mm), and click out of the dimension text. The wall moves into position, and the dimension is now an even 12′ (3600 mm).

You need one more shaft wall to create a separation between the exterior walls and the shaft, as shown in Figure 2.28. Perform these steps:

1. Select any CMU wall, and click Create Similar.
2. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon.

3. On the Options bar, type 10′ (3000 mm) in the Offset field.
4. On the Options bar, be sure Location Line is set to Finish Face: Interior.

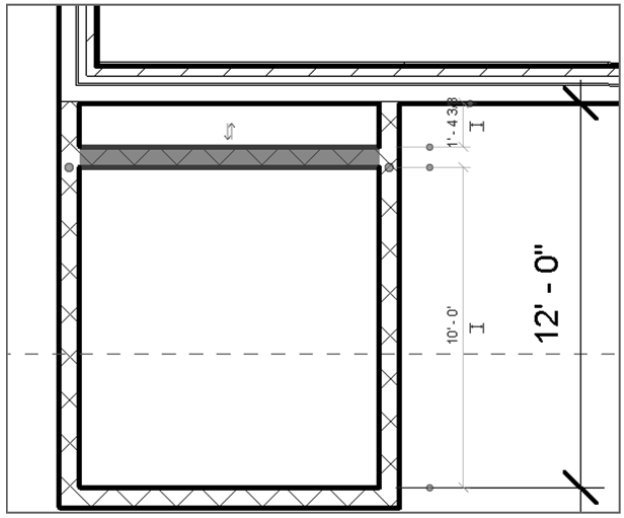


FIGURE 2.28: The shaft wall

5. Offset the south CMU shaft wall (from the inner line). Doing so separates the shaft from the exterior and creates a little chase.
6. Press Esc twice. Figure 2.28 shows the shaft wall. Make sure that you check your dimensions before proceeding.

The next task is to mirror these walls to the other side.

1. Pick a window around all the masonry walls (a window with your cursor, not an actual window).
2. On the Modify | Walls tab, click the Mirror ➢ Pick Axis button, as shown in Figure 2.29.

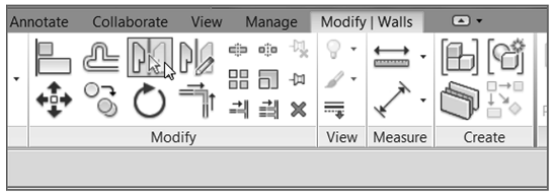


FIGURE 2.29: The Mirror ➢ Pick Axis command is activated when you have objects selected.

3. Pick the horizontal reference plane in the center of the building. Your walls are now mirrored, as shown in Figure 2.30.

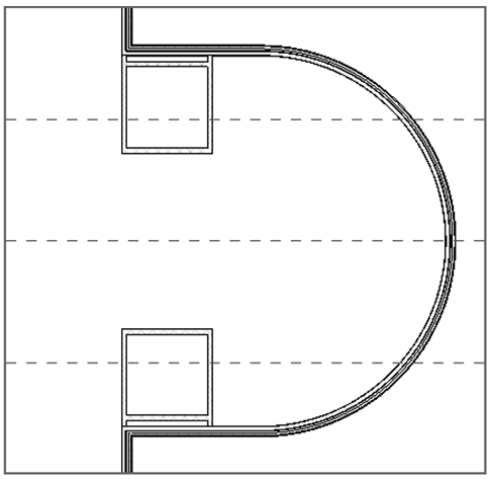


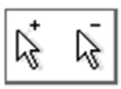
FIGURE 2.30: The elevator shaft is now mirrored.

4. Save the model.

You're starting to get the hang of adding different wall types—but you aren't finished yet. You still need to add quite a few interior partitions.

Did You Select Too Much?

If you picked a window around all of your walls and have more items selected than you want, you can press the Shift key on your keyboard and pick the item(s) you want to deselect. Doing so removes the item from the selection set. If the opposite happens and you want to add an item, press the Ctrl key and pick the item(s) you want to add. Your cursor will always appear with a plus or a minus sign, as shown here:



Placing Interior Partitions

The majority of your tasks in Revit involve placing interior partitions. Given the dimensional nature of placing these types of walls in Revit, you don't need to bother with reference planes as often as when you place the exterior walls.

Knowing that, creating interior partitions is somewhat easier than creating the exterior variety. With the exterior type, you must place partitions carefully, and constant double-checking is crucial. With interior partitions, you can typically get the wall where you think you need it. You can then go back and make adjustments without disturbing too many adjacent items. Not that you have to do it this way—you can be accurate to begin with—but life is all about second chances!

To start adding interior partitions, you'll add the necessary lavatories and egress and then fill the spaces with offices. When completed, this stage will look like Figure 2.31.

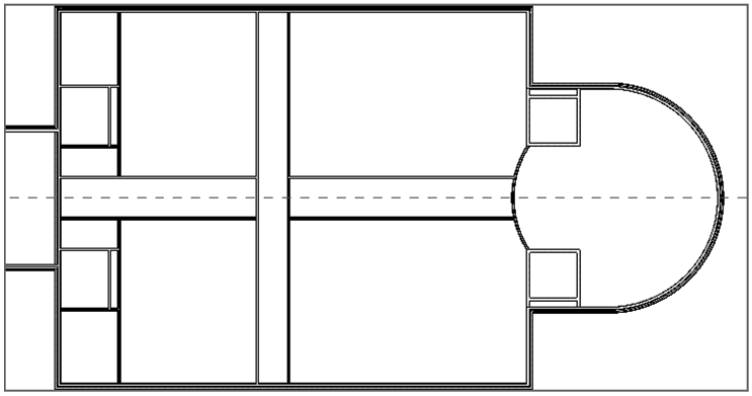


FIGURE 2.31: The east side of the building with egress and lavatories

The objective of the next procedure is to begin adding interior partitions.

1. Make sure you're on Floor Plan Level 1.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Wall button.
3. In the Type Selector, select Interior – 6 1/8″ Partition (2-hr) (Interior – 135 mm Partition (2-hr)).
4. For Height, choose Level 2 from the menu (if it isn't already the current selection).
5. For Location Line, choose Finish Face: Exterior.

6. On the Draw panel, click the Start-End-Radius Arc button (upper right in Figure 2.32).

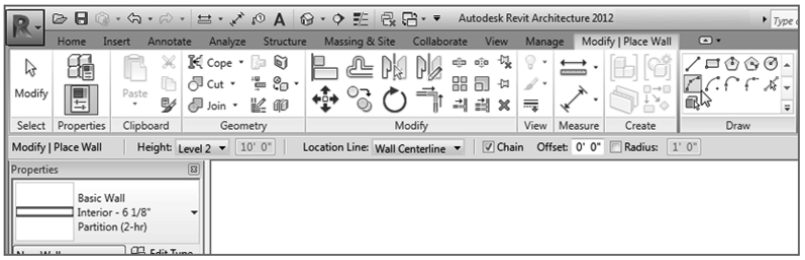


FIGURE 2.32: Choosing options should be old hat by now! The Start-End-Radius Arc button is at the upper right on the Ribbon.

7. Pick the lower-left corner of the upper CMU walls.
8. Pick the upper-left corner of the bottom CMU walls.
9. Move your cursor to the left, and specify a radius of 20′–0″ (6000 mm), as shown in Figure 2.33.

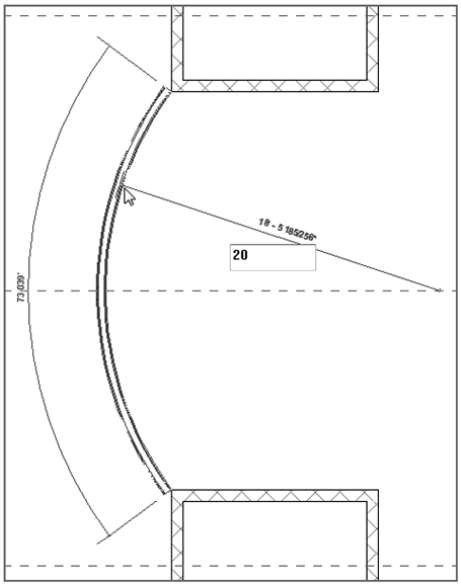


FIGURE 2.33: Drawing an arched radial wall requires a three-point method. It's similar to the Start-End-Direction command in AutoCAD.

10. Press Esc twice.

You now need to add some corridor walls. You can do this using the center reference plane you established earlier.

1. If you aren't still in the Wall command, select and then right-click the radial wall, and then select Create Similar.
2. On the Draw panel, click the Line button.
3. For Location Line, choose Finish Face: Interior.
4. For Offset (on the Options bar), add a 4′–0″ (1200 mm) offset.
5. To start placing the wall, pick the intersection or endpoint of the center reference plane and the radial wall, as shown in Figure 2.34.

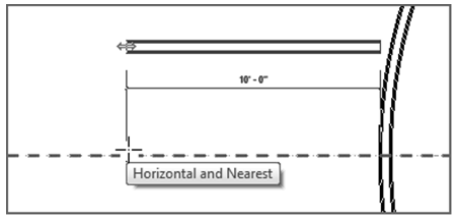


FIGURE 2.34: Drawing corridor walls using an offset can be a great time-saver.

6. Move your cursor to the left. Notice that the wall is being drawn but at an offset of 4′–0″ (1200 mm) from the "line" you're drawing up the middle of the building (if it's in the opposite direction from what's shown in Figure 2.34, tap the spacebar to flip it).
7. For the second point of the wall, pick the intersection or endpoint of the vertical wall to the left.
8. Move your cursor back to the right. Notice that the other side of the wall is being drawn at a 4′–0″ (1200 mm) offset. This time, it's on the opposite side of the reference line.
9. Pick the intersection of the reference plane and the radial wall as the second point, as shown in Figure 2.35.

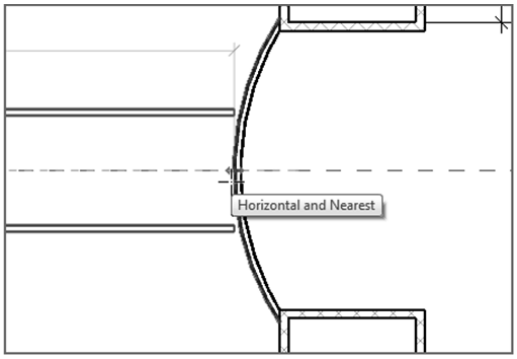


FIGURE 2.35: Completing the main corridor. You'll still have to drag the walls together to join them.

Let's clean up the gaps between the radial wall and the two corridor walls.

1. Make sure you aren't still in the Wall command by pressing Esc twice or by clicking the Modify button to the left of the Ribbon.
2. Select the top corridor wall. On the right end of the wall is a blue grip. Pick it, and drag the top corridor wall into the radial wall.
3. Repeat the step for the bottom wall (see Figure 2.36).

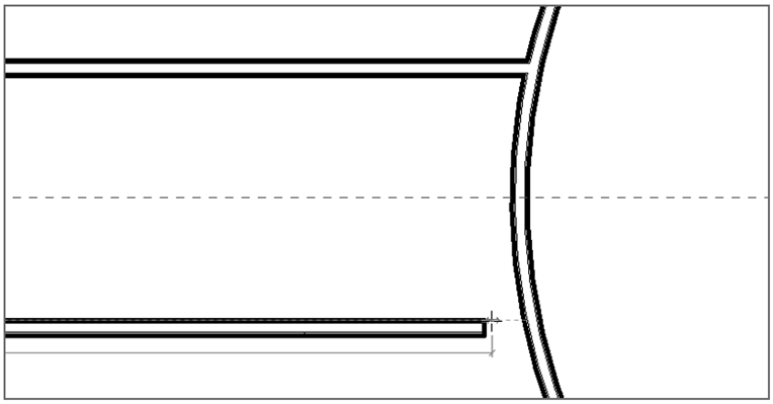


FIGURE 2.36: Getting a grip on the grips

The next step is to add the lavatories. These will show up at the west end (left side) of the building. Refer to Figure 2.37 for the dimensions, and follow these steps:

1. Select and then right-click one of the corridor walls, and select Create Similar from the menu.

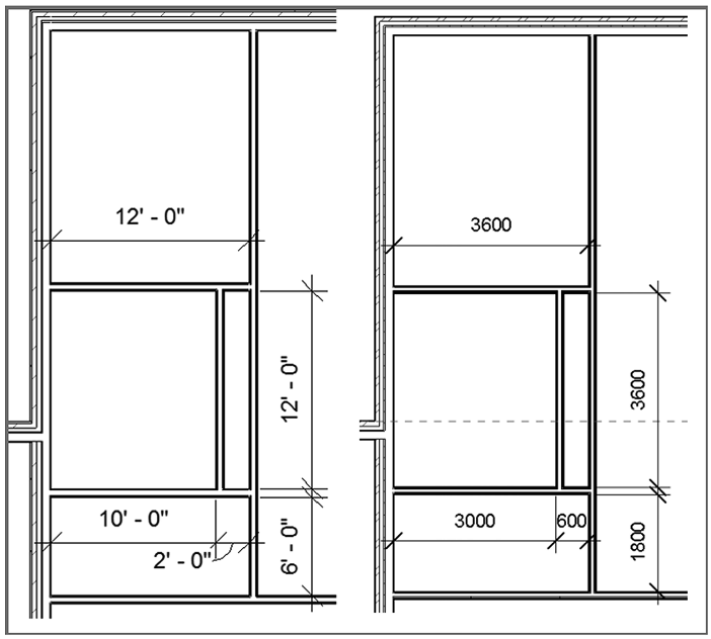


FIGURE 2.37: The lavatories at the west side of the building

2. Look at your options, and create the lavatories shown in Figure 2.37. All of the dimensions are taken from the inside finish face.
3. After you draw in the lavatory walls, mirror the walls to the other side of the building, as shown in Figure 2.38.

WARNING Picking a grip on the end of a wall also means that you get a temporary dimension. Look at it! If it doesn't say 8′–0″ (2400 mm) to the inside face of the corridor, you have a problem. It's much better to discover these discrepancies early in the design stage than to find out that you have a dimensional issue when the drawings are going out the door. If the increment isn't 8′–0″ (2400 mm), first verify that the temporary dimension is going to the inside face. If not, pick the blue grip and move the

witness line to the inside face of the walls. If the dimension is still off, move the witness line to the center reference plane. Now type **4′** (**1200** mm), and press Enter. Repeat the process for the other wall. Always check dimensions like this. The time you save could be your own!

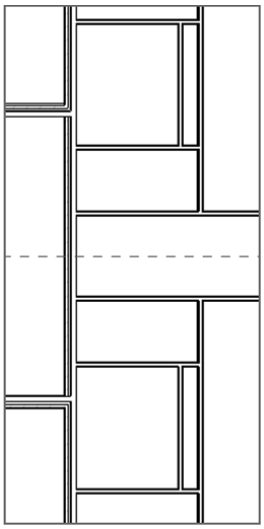


FIGURE 2.38: Both the men's and women's lavatories

You now need another corridor running north and south, as shown in Figure 2.39. The best way to approach this task is to add another reference plane and then add the walls in a fashion similar to the method applied to the east/west corridor. To open the central area, you'll add 45° walls at 4′–0″ (1200 mm). Follow these steps to add the new walls:

1. On the Work Plane panel of the Architecture tab, click Ref Plane.
2. Draw a reference plane from the midpoint of the top exterior wall to the midpoint of the bottom exterior wall.
3. Click the Measure Between Two References button. Make 100 percent sure that this is the center of the building. You're going to rely heavily on this line.
4. Start the Wall command.
5. On the Options bar, be sure Location Line is set to Finish Face: Interior and that Offset is 4′–0″ (1200 mm).

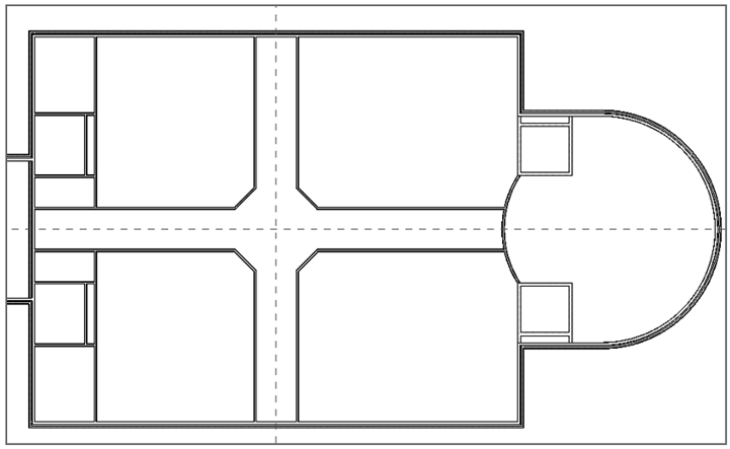


FIGURE 2.39: This is the finished corridor layout.

6. Pick the top intersection or endpoint of the reference plane and the exterior wall.
7. Draw the wall down to the bottom of the building.
8. Keeping the Wall command running, draw the other side of the corridor by picking the same two points along the reference plane. When you're finished, press Esc.

TIP Are the reference planes really necessary? No, they aren't. But using them is a good, sound approach to laying out your building. These lines will be used heavily throughout the life of your project.

You've created an area in the middle of the building where four walls intersect each other. You can now add 45° walls there to open the corridor at this area, as shown in Figure 2.40.

1. Zoom into the intersection of the corridors.
2. On the Architecture tab, click Ref Plane on the Work Plane panel.
3. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines button, and change Offset to 4′–0″ (1200 mm).

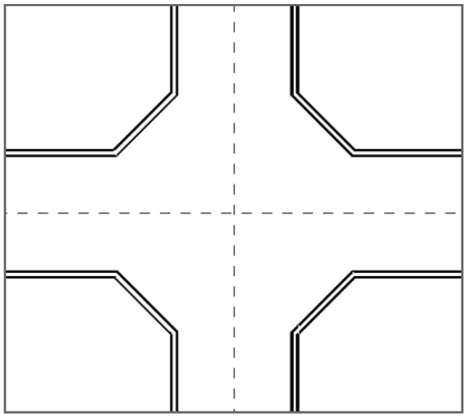


FIGURE 2.40: The corridor with the 45° walls added

4. From the finish inside face of the top, horizontal corridor wall, offset the reference plane up (see Figure 2.41).

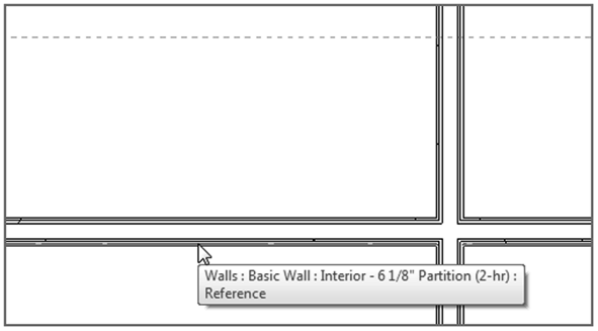


FIGURE 2.41: Adding yet another reference plane to the model. You'll delete this one.

TIP It can be tricky to get the reference plane going in the correct direction. If the reference plane is being stubborn and is still trying to offset the line down, move your cursor up a little. The reference plane will change direction.

After you establish the reference plane, you can add the new wall. It can be as simple as drawing the wall in, but there are still a few little procedures of which you should be aware.

1. Start the Wall command.
2. On the Options bar, be sure the wall's Location Line is justified from Finish Face: Exterior.
3. Pick the intersection of the reference plane and the inside finished face (right face) of the left, vertical corridor wall (see Figure 2.42).

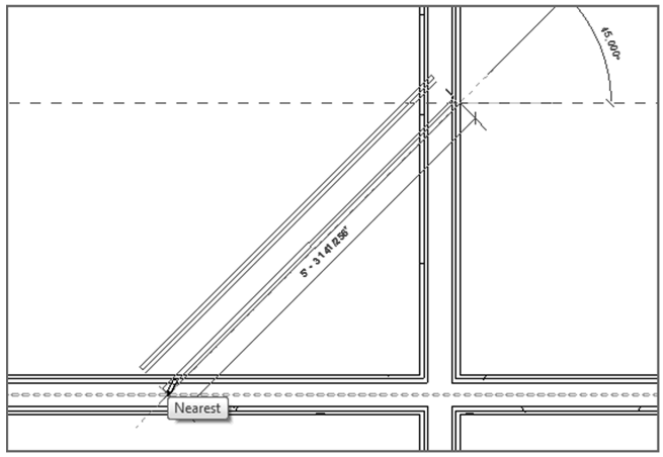


FIGURE 2.42: Adding the 45° wall

4. After you pick the start point, move your cursor to the left and down at a 45° angle. (You can approximate the angle; Revit will snap you to the correct angle.)
5. At a 45° angle, pick the endpoint at a location within the horizontal, top corridor wall. When you're finished, press the Esc key twice. You may have to press the spacebar to get your wall flipped in the proper direction, as shown in Figure 2.42.

WARNING If you proceed with assuming that these walls are a specific increment (4′ [1200 mm]) from the inside face, you may be making a big mistake. Take distances after you add walls, especially if the walls aren't 90°.

The next task is to mirror the walls. This part will be easy because you put in those reference planes.

1. Select the 45° wall.
2. Pick Mirror Pick Axis from the Modify | Walls tab.
3. Pick the vertical reference plane, and *voilà*! The wall is mirrored, as shown in Figure 2.43.

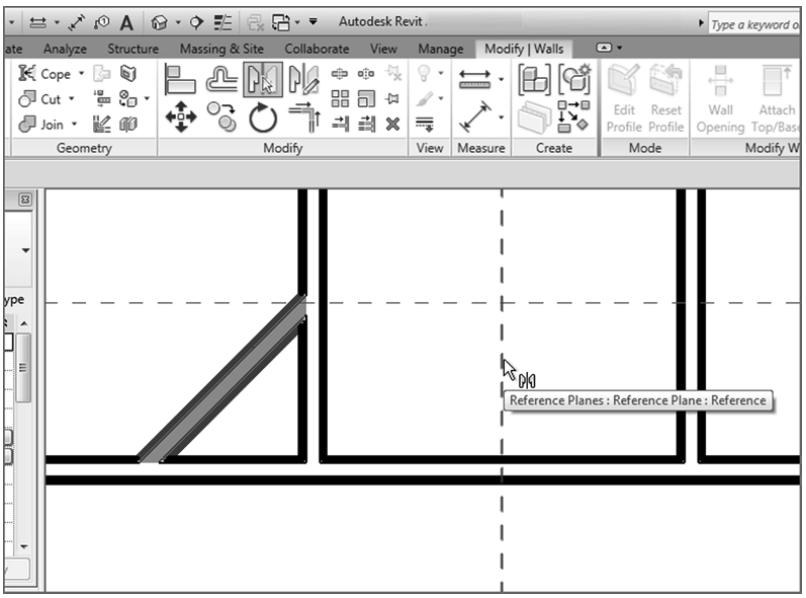


FIGURE 2.43: Using the Mirror command in conjunction with a reference plane is a good example of thinking ahead.

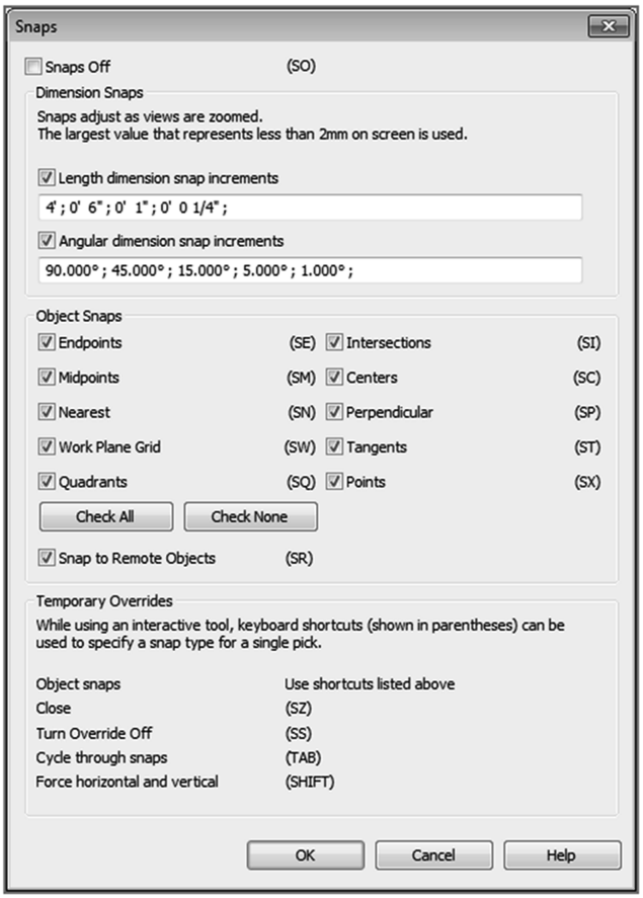
Eyeballing with Accuracy

You may notice that when you're using temporary dimensions, the increment always seems to snap to even increments. This is no accident. If you click the Snaps button on the Manage tab, you'll see values for Length Dimension Snap Increments and Angular Dimension Snap Increments. These values change based on the zoom percentage. The closer you zoom in, the smaller the increments get.

(Continues)

Eyeballing with Accuracy *(Continued)*

You can also add to these values by typing a semicolon and adding a new increment to the end of the list, as shown here:



4. Select the two 45° walls, and mirror them around the horizontal reference plane. You should now have four 45° walls, as shown in Figure 2.44.
5. Delete the temporary horizontal offset reference plane by selecting it and pressing the Delete key on the keyboard.

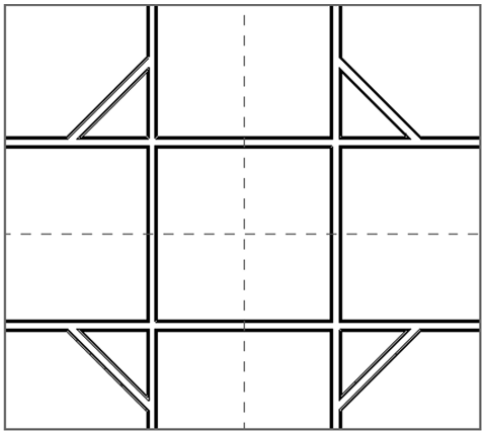


FIGURE 2.44: Stuck inside these four walls

Now it's time for some further cleanup. Although all the modify commands will be featured in Chapter 4, "Working with the Autodesk Revit Tools," you can still use some here. You've already borrowed the Mirror command from that chapter. You might as well borrow the Split command too.

1. On the Modify panel of the Modify tab, click the Split Element button, as shown in Figure 2.45.

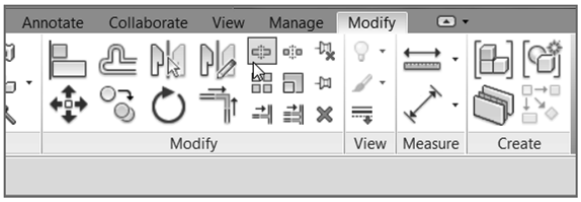


FIGURE 2.45: Using the Split Element command

2. Always look at the Options bar! Select the Delete Inner Segment option.
3. Pick a point along the top horizontal corridor wall near the intersecting 45° wall.
4. Pick the second point along the same wall, only on the opposite side (see Figure 2.46).

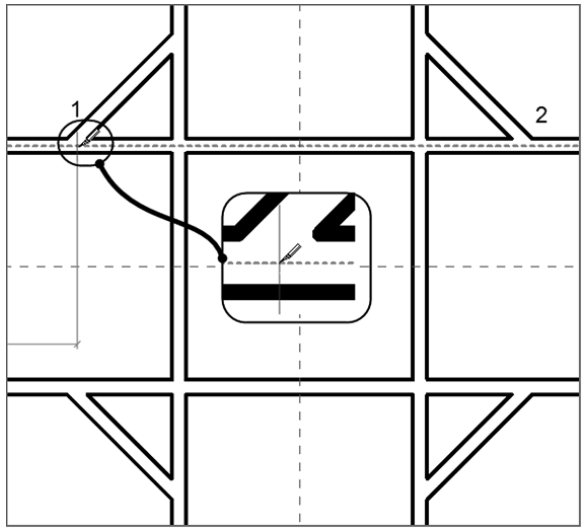


FIGURE 2.46: Split the wall at two points. If you've selected Delete Inner Segment, the result is to eliminate the wall between the two points.

5. Repeat the process for the other three walls. You should now have an open central area for your corridor, as shown in Figure 2.47.

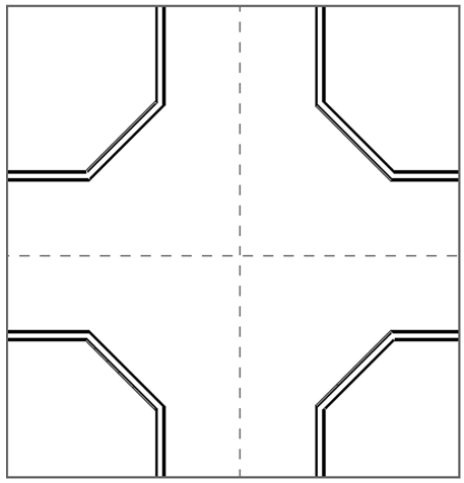


FIGURE 2.47: The open corridor

NOTE **If the Split Element command is giving you a splitting headache rather than splitting the walls, keep trying. I'll also cover this in Chapter 4. Commands such as Split Element require a different touch than the AutoCAD Break command.**

Looking back, you've accomplished quite a bit. Laying out walls and then modifying them to conform to your needs is a huge part of being successful in Revit, but you aren't finished. The next few processes will involve dealing with different types of walls that merge together. Historically, merging walls has been an issue in modeling software. Although Revit tends to clean up these areas a little better than other modeling applications, you must still cope with some sticky areas. Let's create a sticky situation!

Editing Wall Joins

A separate function in Revit deals with editing wall joins—specifically, the Edit Wall Joins command, which can come in handy. To get started, let's add more walls to an already busy corner of the building.

1. Zoom into the northeast corner of the building, as shown in Figure 2.48, and set the detail level to Fine.

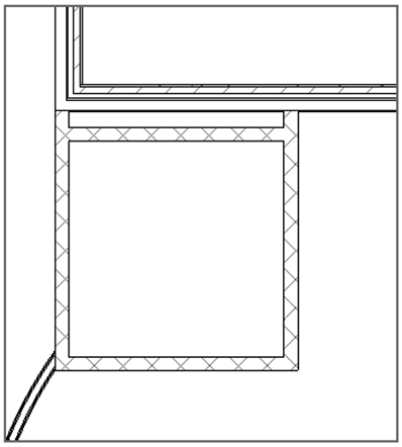


FIGURE 2.48: **The northeast corner**

2. Start the Wall command. Make sure it's the same 6 1⁄8″ (135 mm) two-hour partition you've been using.
3. With the Chain button off and Location Line set to Finish Face: Exterior, to start the wall, pick the intersection where the CMU wall abuts the inside finish face of the exterior wall (see Figure 2.49).

Again, you can turn on Thin Lines to get a better view of what you're seeing.

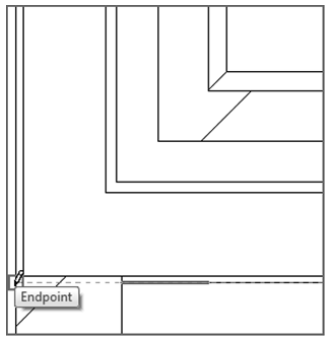


FIGURE 2.49: Adding to the mess in the corner

4. The wall may be flipped in the opposite direction from Figure 2.50. If it is, remember to press the spacebar; doing so flips it up to the proper orientation.

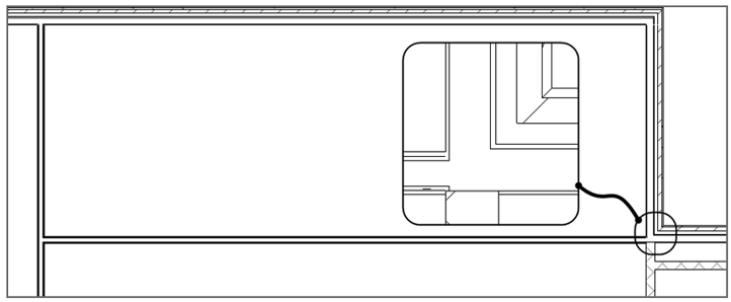


FIGURE 2.50: The wall and the resulting intersection

5. Pick the second point of the wall at the corridor in the middle of the building. Press Esc twice. The intersection should look like Figure 2.50.
6. Zoom back in on the intersection. If the view doesn't resemble Figure 2.50 in terms of line weight, click the Thin Lines icon, as shown in Figure 2.51.

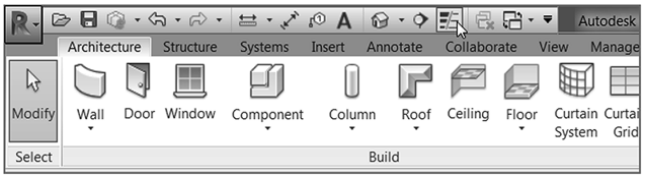


FIGURE 2.51: Click the Thin Lines icon to see how the walls are joining together.

7. On the Geometry panel of the Modify tab, click the Wall Joins button, as shown in Figure 2.52.

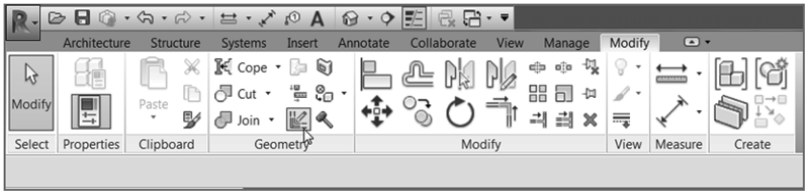


FIGURE 2.52: You'll find the Wall Joins button on the Modify tab.

8. Hover your pointer over the intersection. Revit displays a big box, as shown in Figure 2.53.

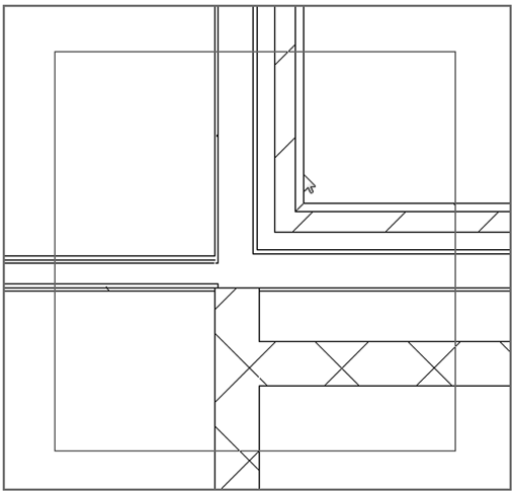


FIGURE 2.53: Choosing the intersection you want to edit

9. Pick anywhere within the area. Doing so establishes that this is the intersection you want to edit.

   After you pick the intersection, some additional lines appear. These lines expose how Revit is actually looking at the corner.

10. On the Options bar, you now see some choices for configuring this intersection. Select the Miter option, as shown in Figure 2.54. This option is the most popular. Click Modify.

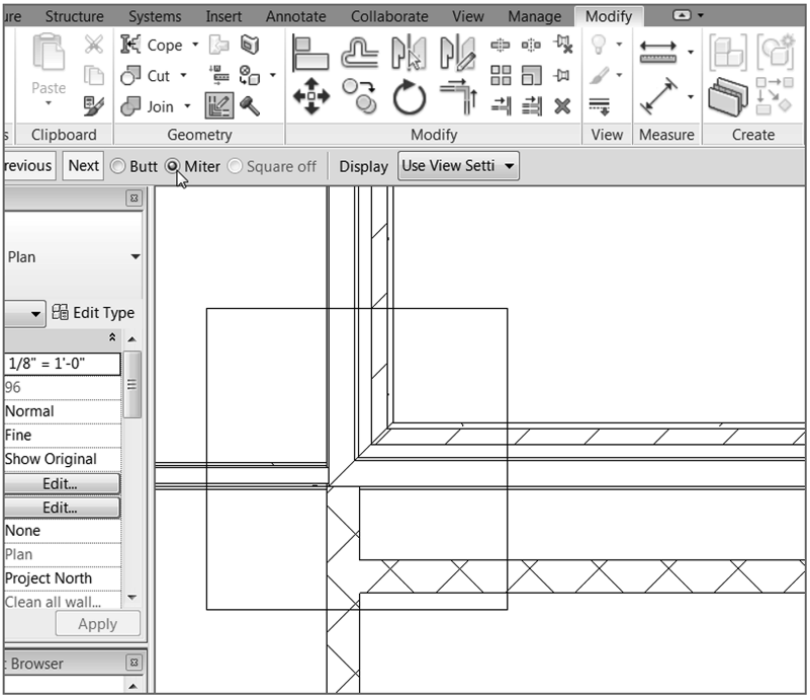


FIGURE 2.54: Adding a mitered join

Although a wall of this type would never have a 45° miter in real life, mitering the corner in Revit allows for a more uniform join between adjacent walls.

Displaying Wall Joins

Usually, in a plan view such as this, no wall joins are shown. Typically only the outside lines join, and an enlarged detail would show the specific construction methods. But in some cases, you want Revit to reveal this information. In Revit, you have two choices for the display (Figure 2.55).

www.allitebooks.com

Clean All Wall Joins This option joins together the same materials in each wall, regardless of the wall type.

Clean Same Type Wall Joins Stating the obvious, this option clean joins only within walls of the same type.

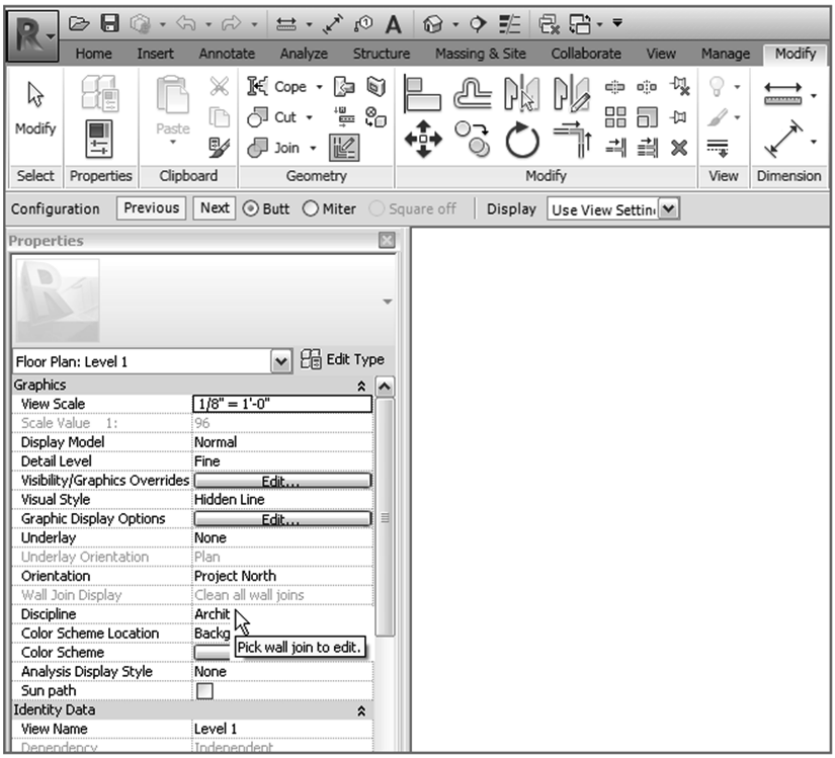


FIGURE 2.55: Choosing a display option

The objective of the next procedure is to identify the difference between wall join types.

1. Zoom in on the northwest corner of the east addition, as shown in Figure 2.56.
2. Make sure Detail Level is set to Coarse.
3. In the Properties dialog, change Wall Join Display to Clean Same Type Wall Joins.

4. Observe the difference between the wall joins, as shown in Figure 2.56.
5. Save the model.

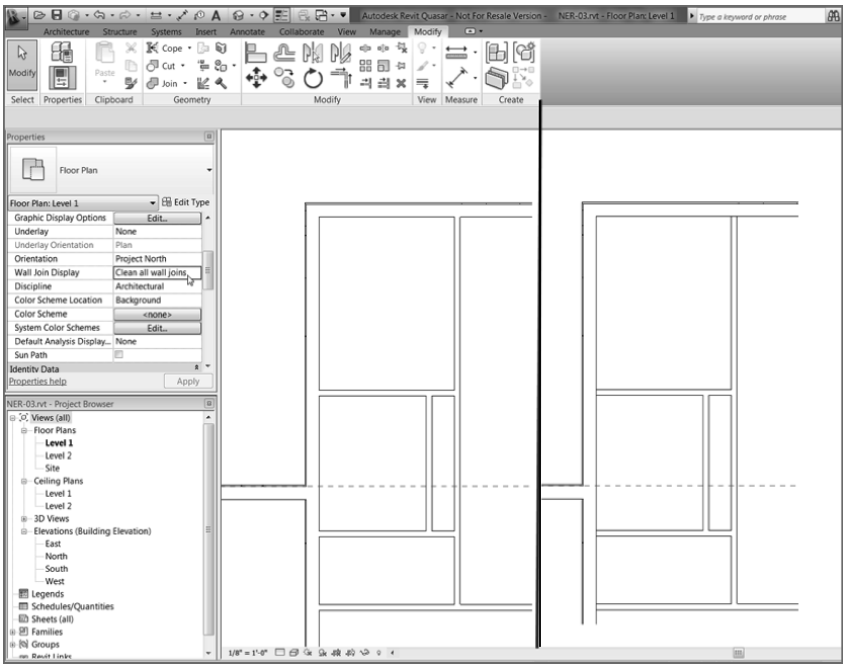


FIGURE 2.56: Choosing a Wall Join Display option in the view's properties

Disallowing Wall Joins

You must deal with another important item when walls join together. In some cases, you may not want walls to join automatically even if they're the same wall type. To learn how to prevent this behavior, follow these steps:

1. Change Detail Level to Fine.
2. Select the long, horizontal 6 1⁄8″ (156 mm) wall that comes into the corner, as shown in Figure 2.57. A blue grip appears to the right of the intersection. This represents where the wall's extents are located.

3. Hover directly over the blue grip.
4. After the blue grip highlights, right-click.
5. Select Disallow Join (see Figure 2.57).

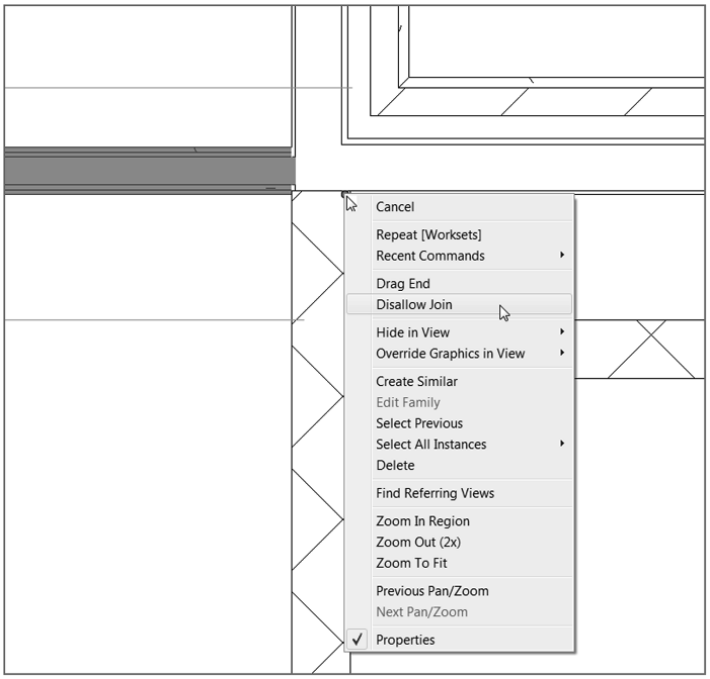


FIGURE 2.57: By right-clicking the wall's end grip, you can tell Revit to disallow that wall's join function.

6. When the wall is unjoined, you can pick the same blue grip and slide the wall back to where you want it to terminate (see Figure 2.58).
7. After the wall slides into place, select it (if it isn't already selected).
8. Notice that there is an additional blue T-shaped icon. Hover your cursor over this icon; click it to allow the walls to join back up, as shown in Figure 2.59.

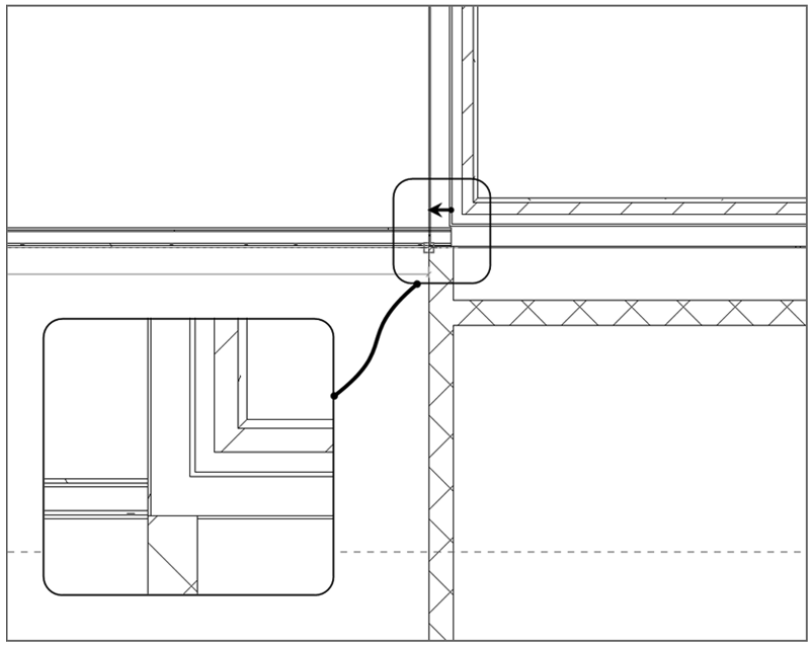


FIGURE 2.58: Slide the wall back to abut the adjacent wall.

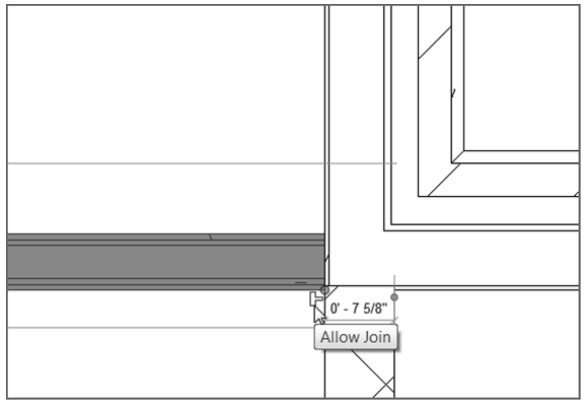


FIGURE 2.59: Allowing the walls to join back up again

As mentioned earlier, your ability to edit wall joins can determine how quickly you start either liking or disliking Revit. This book took a few extra steps in the effort of joining walls, but the experience will carry through, project after project.

We need to investigate one more area before we leave this corner: the area within the chase. Suppose you don't want to run the gypsum into this area. This is a common situation that can cause people to have fits with Revit. Let's try to avoid those fits right now!

Editing the Cut Profile

A plan view is simply a section taken 4′–0″ (1200 mm) up the wall from the finish floor. In Revit, you can manually edit the profile of any wall cut in plan. This is extremely useful if, for example, you need to take sections of drywall out of specific areas without creating or adding an entirely new wall. To do this, perform the following steps:

1. Zoom in on the right side of the elevator shaft at the intersection of the exterior wall, as shown in Figure 2.60.
2. Select the east CMU wall, and right-click the blue grip on the endpoint of the wall.
3. Select Disallow Join (see Figure 2.60).

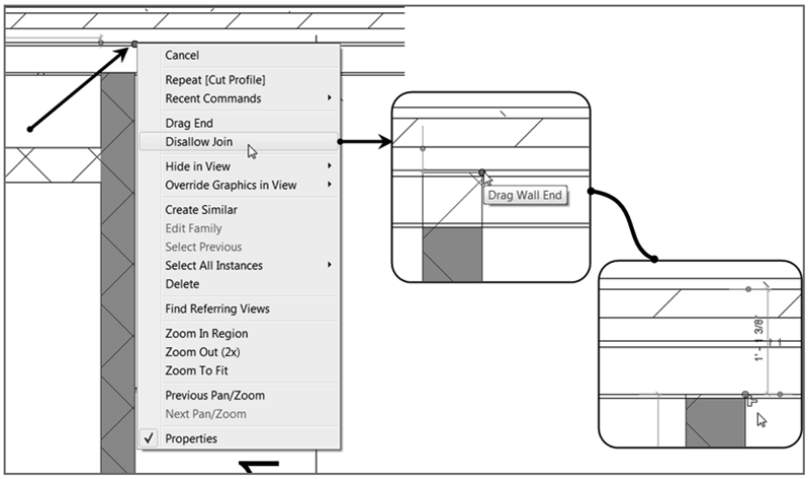


FIGURE 2.60: Pull the CMU out of the wall, disallow the join, and then drag it back into the face of the stud.

4. Pick the blue grip, and drag the wall end back to the face of the wall behind the gypsum.
5. On the Graphics panel of the View tab, click the Cut Profile button, as shown in Figure 2.61.

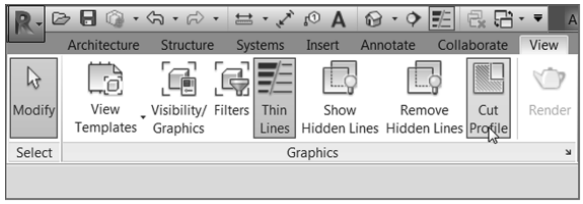


FIGURE 2.61: Click the Cut Profile button, and select the gypsum.

6. Pick the finish face of the exterior wall. You're selecting the gypsum layer to be cut out of the shaft.
7. You now need to draw a very short, vertical line from the inside face of the wallboard to the outside face, as labeled 1 and 2 in Figure 2.62. Press Esc.
8. When the short line is drawn in, you see a blue arrow. This arrow indicates the side of the material you want to keep. If you pick the arrow, it flips direction. Make sure it's pointing to the right.

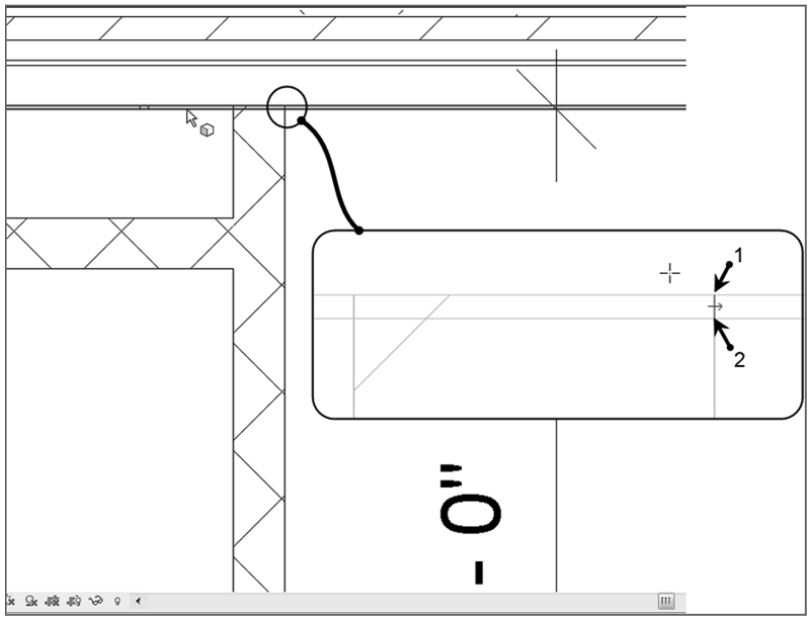


FIGURE 2.62: This line indicates where the wallboard will be cut. The blue arrow indicates the side of the material that will remain.

9. What you see here is called Sketch Mode. Because you've finished sketching the cut profile, click Finish Edit Mode, as you can see in Figure 2.63. Figure 2.64 shows the final result.

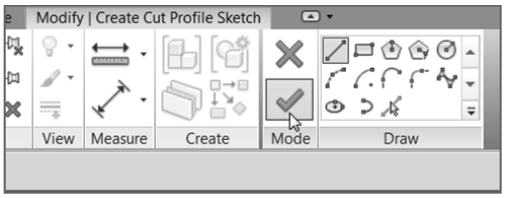


FIGURE 2.63: Clicking Finish Edit Mode finalizes the session and completes the command.

NOTE If you receive an error that says "Ends of the sketched loop don't lie on the boundary of the face being modified" when you're trying to finish the sketch, it's because you haven't drawn the line exactly from point to point. This line can't cross over, or be shy of, the material you're trying to split. If you're getting this error, select the magenta line. You'll see two familiar blue grips. Pick the grip that doesn't touch the face of the material, and drag it back.

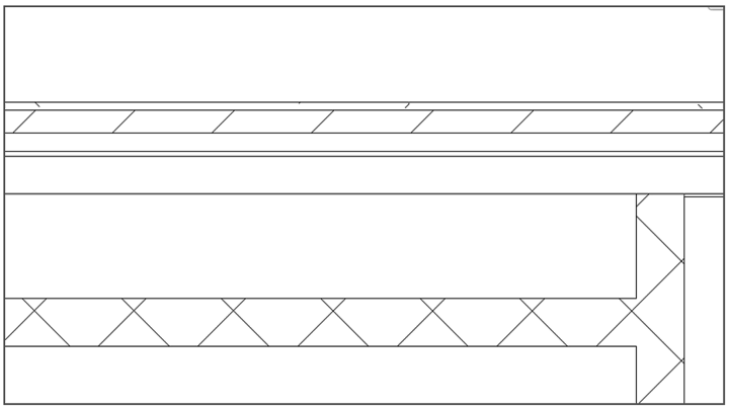


FIGURE 2.64: The finished wall with the drywall deducted from the core of the chase

Go through and do the same thing to the south side of the building, starting at the Edit Wall Joins section.

There are many more walls left to add, but we need to save something for Chapter 4. At this point, it sure would be nice to start adding some doors and windows to the model.

Placing Doors and Windows

Adding doors and windows is one of the easiest things you'll do in Revit. Finding the correct door or window becomes a bit harder. Creating a custom door or window takes time and patience. In this section, you'll focus on adding these items to the model. Chapter 16, "Creating Families," will drill down into the specifics of creating custom families.

Adding Doors

Placing a door in Revit can seem annoying and unnecessarily tedious at first. But like anything else in Revit, once you get the method down, you'll find your groove. Follow these steps:

1. Make sure you're in Floor Plan Level 1.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Door button (see Figure 2.65).

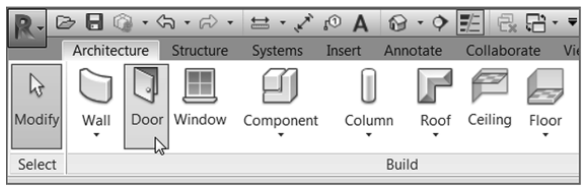


FIGURE 2.65: Adding a door

3. Make sure the Tag On Placement button is highlighted, as shown in Figure 2.66.
4. In the Type Selector, choose Single-Flush: 36″ × 84″ (M_Single-Flush 0915 mm × 2134).
5. Move your cursor over to the south wall near the elevator shaft, as shown in Figure 2.66. Notice that if your cursor isn't within a wall, you get the NO sign. Revit won't allow you just to place a door into

space; a door is considered a hosted family and needs a wall into which it must be embedded.

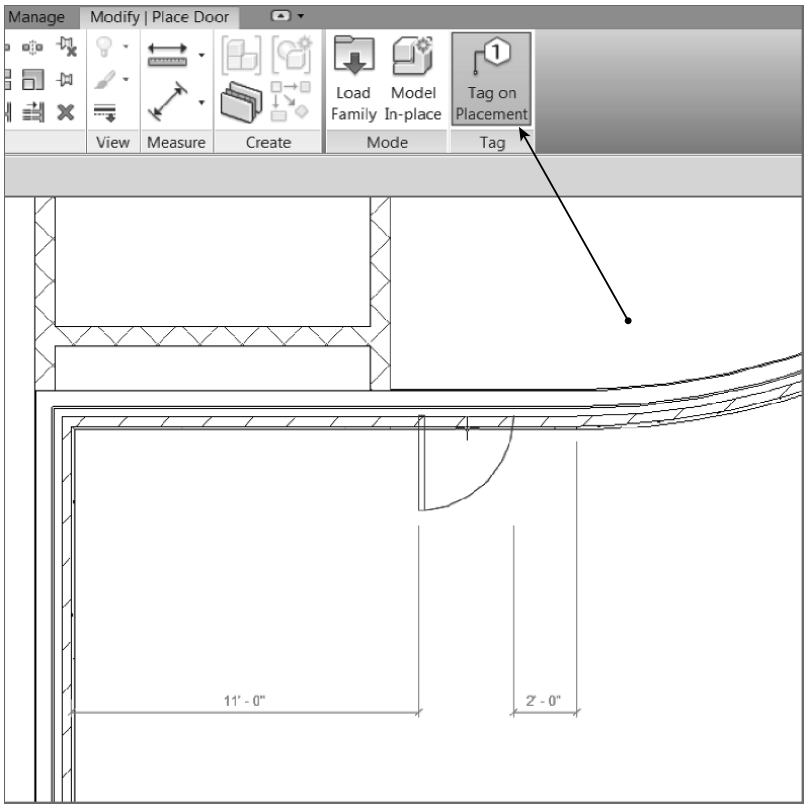


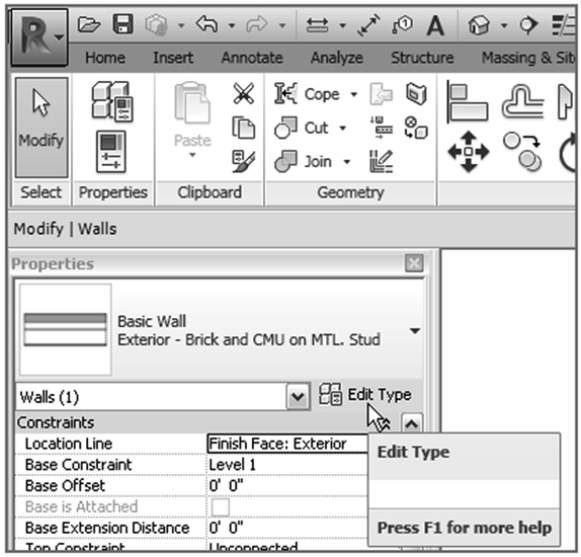
FIGURE 2.66: Placing a door always requires a host. Remember, you can press the spacebar to change the orientation and move your cursor up and down to flip the direction.

6. After you get your cursor positioned approximately where Figure 2.66 shows it, move your pointer up and down. Notice that the door's direction changes. This is typical behavior for a door.
7. Press the spacebar. The door swing flips direction.
8. Make the door face outward and to the left, as shown in Figure 2.66. Then pick a point on the wall. If you accidentally put it in wrong, don't worry—you can fix it.

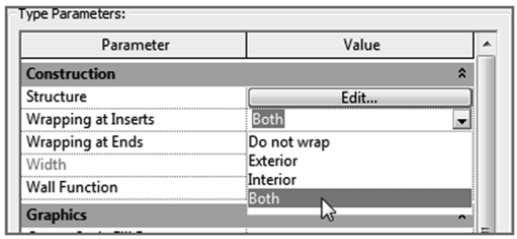
Yikes, Look at My Walls!

When you place a door or any opening into a compound wall, you need to tell Revit specifically how to wrap the materials. By default, Revit will stop the brick and any other finish right at the opening. Obviously, this usually isn't correct. The following steps guide you through wrapping materials at an insert:

1. **Select the exterior wall.**
2. **In the Properties dialog, click the Edit Type button, as shown here:**



3. **In the drop-down menu that specifies Wrapping At Inserts, select Both.**



4. **Click OK.**

Notice that when the door is placed, a tag appears with an automatic number. This happens when Tag On Placement is activated on the Tag panel in the Modify | Place Door tab. In Revit, after you place a door you should press Esc

twice and then go right back and select the door. Doing so highlights the door and activates a few different options. Follow these steps:

1. Click the Modify button at left on the Ribbon. Doing so disengages you from the Door command.
2. Pick the door you just added to the model. Notice the blue temporary dimensions. Let's make sure these dimensions are going where you want them.
   a. On the Settings panel of the Manage tab, click Additional Settings ➢ Temporary Dimensions, as shown in Figure 2.67.
   b. Make sure that Wall Dimensions are going to Faces and that Door Dimensions are going to Openings.
   c. Click OK.

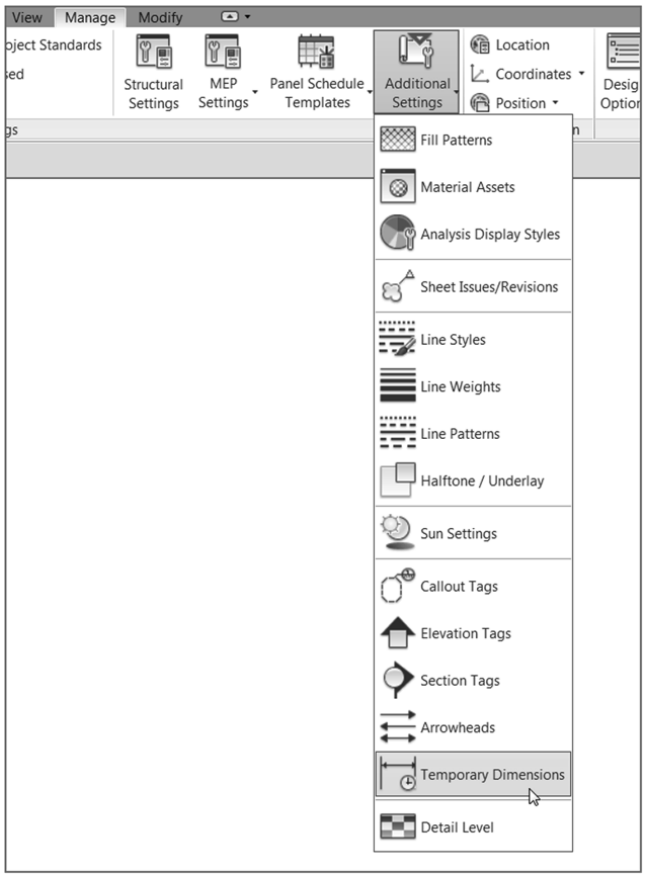


FIGURE 2.67: Select Additional Settings ➢ Temporary Dimensions.

Now that you've configured the temporary dimensions the way you need them, you can start using them to manipulate the placement of your door.

1. Select the door again.
2. Move the left witness line of the left temporary dimension to the outside face of the CMU wall, as shown in Figure 2.68.

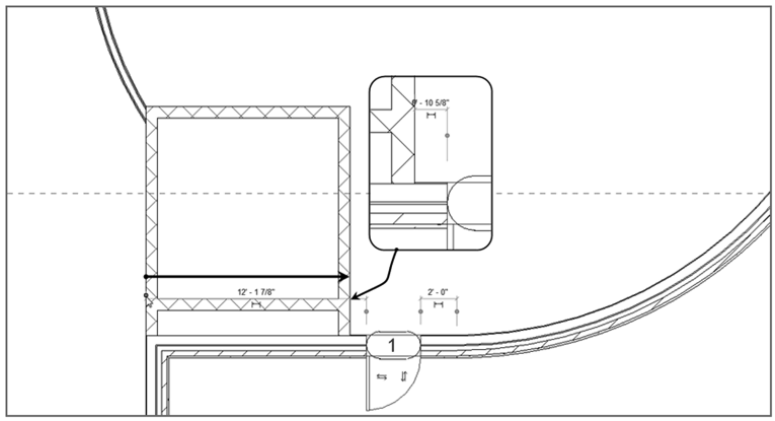


FIGURE 2.68: Moving the witness line to a more appropriate location

3. As you know, in Revit anything that turns blue can be edited. Click the blue dimension that extends from the CMU wall, drag it to the right of the elevator shaft, and change it to 1′–0″ (300 mm) (see Figure 2.69).

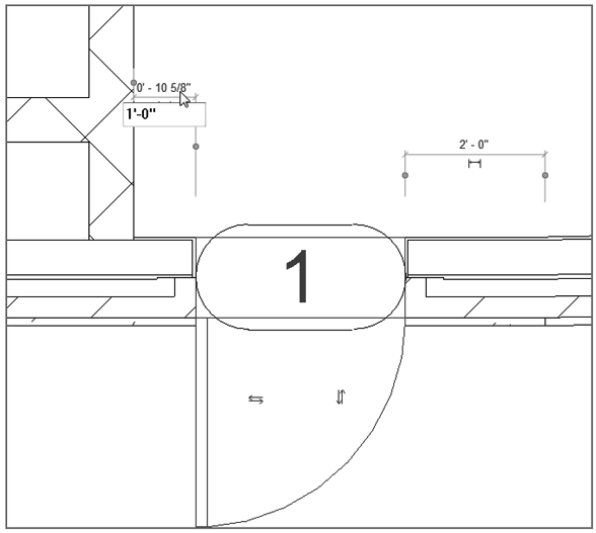


FIGURE 2.69: Changing the temporary dimension

Editing Door Tags

Let's concentrate on the tag now. The number contained within the "box" is an instance parameter. That means each door in the model will contain a unique number. When you place a door, this number will be added automatically. Revit knows not to duplicate this number. As each door is placed, Revit will assign the next sequential number to the door. This number, of course, can be changed.

Follow along with the next exercise to see how to manipulate the door number:

1. Select the door (or the door tag).
2. Pick the number in the door tag.
3. Change the number to **101**.
4. With the door still selected, notice that you have flip arrows as well. If the door isn't in the orientation you see in the previous figures, click these arrows to flip the door.
5. Mirror this door and its tag around the building's horizontal centerline. Notice the number for the new door is 102.

Most items that are added to the Revit model can be selected and flipped using the same method. Also, selecting the items to be flipped and pressing the spacebar has the same effect.

Loading Families

It would be nice if the seven doors available in the Revit model were all you needed. They aren't, of course. Like most other CAD programs and applications that use BIM, Revit doesn't load every single component into the drawing or model. File size is just as much a concern in Revit as it is in AutoCAD. If you need a different door, you have to go get it.

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Door button.
2. On the Modify | Place Door tab, click the Load Family button, as shown in Figure 2.70.

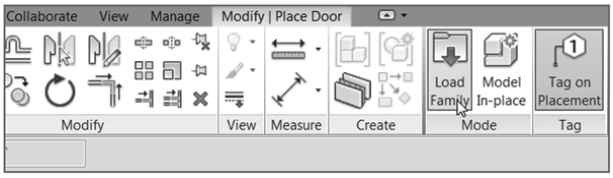


FIGURE 2.70: Click Load Family on the Mode panel.

3. Find the `Doors` directory, navigate to `Double-Flush.rfa` (`M_Double-Flush.rfa`), and click Open.

4. Select Double-Flush: 72″ × 84″ (M_Double-Flush 1830 × 2134) from the Type Selector.
5. Place the double doors in the wall, as shown in Figure 2.71. Click Modify.

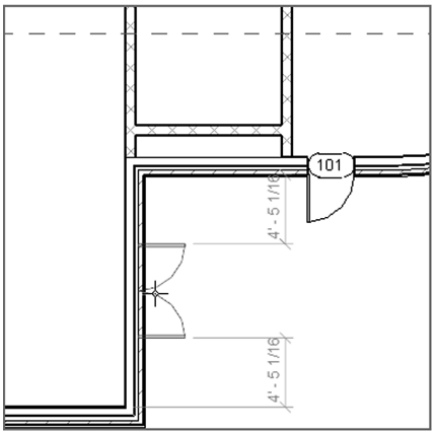


FIGURE 2.71: Placing the double doors

Normally, doors automatically find the center of the wall. But to make sure, you can type **SM**. Doing so tells Revit that you want to snap to the middle.

6. Mirror both doors and tags using the center reference plane.
7. Add lavatory doors as shown in Figure 2.72, keeping all offsets 1′-0″ (300 mm) away from the walls. Use Single-Flush: 36″ × 84″ (M_Single-Flush 0915 × 2134).
8. Label them accordingly.
9. In the exterior wall that divides the east building from the corridor, add a Single Raised Panel With Side Lights: 36″ × 84″ door centered on the opening (metric users, use M_Double-Panel 2 1830 × 2134 mm).
10. Change the tag to read **100B**, as shown in Figure 2.73.

You need to add more doors and interior partitions, but they will be best suited for Chapter 4, where you can be more accurate. In the meantime, let's add some simple openings.

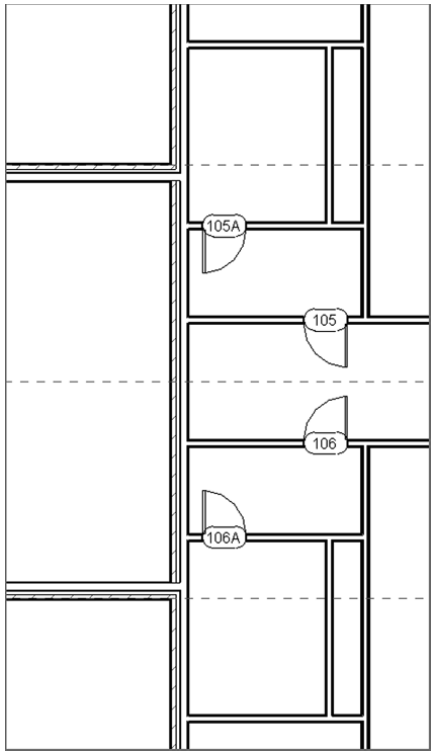


FIGURE 2.72: Adding lavatory doors. You'll have to renumber the tags.

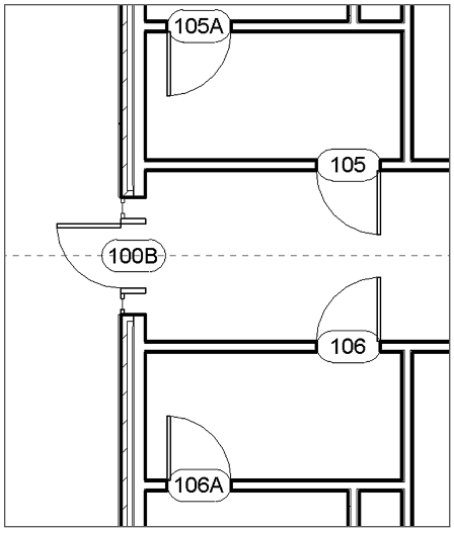


FIGURE 2.73: Adding a new corridor door. If this door isn't loaded into your model, you have to click the Load Family button on the Mode panel of the Modify | Place Door tab.

Placing Openings in Your Walls

I like to think of openings as doors in a sense. That is, you still need to insert something into a wall to create a void. This void can contain casing as well.

To add an opening to the model, run through these steps:

1. On the Architecture tab, click Component, as shown in Figure 2.74.

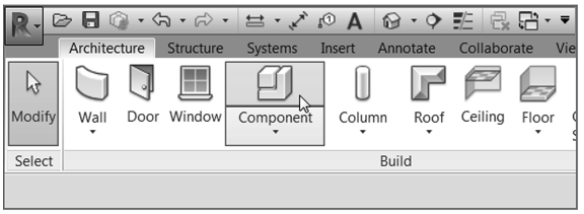


FIGURE 2.74: Clicking Component on the Architecture tab

2. On the Modify | Place Component tab, click the Load Family button.
3. Browse to the `Openings` directory.
4. Find the file called `Passage Opening-Elliptical Arch.rfa` (`M_Passage Opening-Elliptical Arch.rfa`), and click Open.
5. Click the Edit Type button in the Properties dialog, as shown in Figure 2.75.

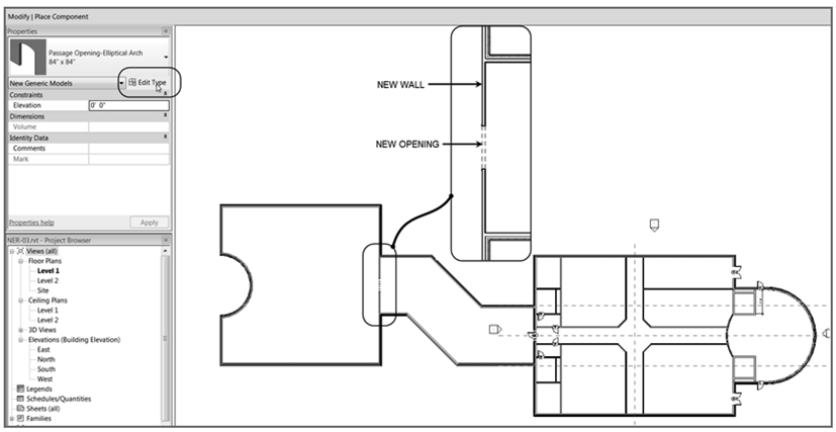


FIGURE 2.75: The new opening

6. Click Duplicate in the Type Properties dialog.
7. In the Name dialog, name the opening 84″ × 84″ (2100 mm × 2100 mm), and then click OK.
8. Under Dimensions, change Width to 7′–0″ (2100 mm).
9. Click OK. Then press Esc to clear the command.
10. Zoom into the area shown in Figure 2.75, and place an Interior – 6 1/8″ Partition (2-hr) (Interior – 135 mm Partition (2-hr)) wall as shown. This is the wall into which you'll place the opening.
11. On the Architecture tab, click Component, and place the opening into the wall as shown in Figure 2.75.

Add two more doors, and you'll be finished with this section.

1. On the Architecture tab, click Door.
2. In the Properties dialog, pick Double-Flush: 72″ × 84″ (M_Double-Flush 1830 × 2134).
3. Add the double doors to the ends of the vertical corridor, as shown in Figure 2.76.

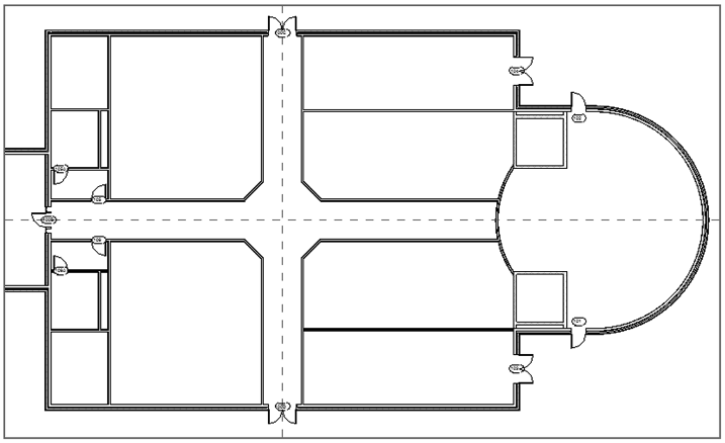


FIGURE 2.76: Two new corridor doors

4. Label the doors 100C and 100D.

Again, there are many more doors and partitions that you can add to the model, but that will have to wait until Chapter 4. Let's move on to add some windows.

Adding Windows

Doors, windows, openings…they're all the same. When you have experience adding one, the others are just as easy.

The objective of the next procedure is to add some windows to the model.

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Window button, as shown in Figure 2.77.

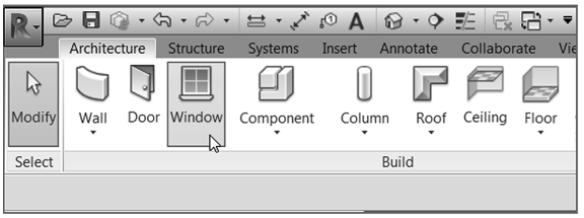


FIGURE 2.77: Adding a window is the same as adding a door.

2. Select the Fixed: 36″ × 72″ (M_Fixed 0915 × 1830) window from the Type Selector, and make sure the Tag On Placement button is active.
3. Add the window to the corner of the building, as shown in Figure 2.78. Be careful with the placement. If your cursor is toward the exterior of the wall, the window will be oriented correctly, and the window tag will appear on the outside of the wall.

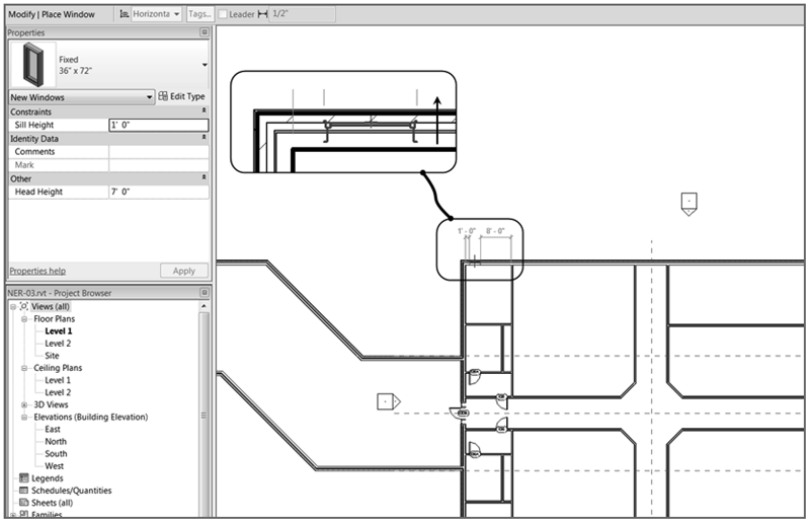


FIGURE 2.78: Depending on which side of the wall your cursor is on, you can add a window to the correct orientation.

4. Add two more windows to the west wall adjacent to the wall in which you just put the first window. Use your temporary dimensions to ensure that you're placing the windows at the increments shown in Figure 2.79. You'll have to place the windows and then use the temporary dimensions to move them to the proper dimensions in a similar manner to the first door you placed earlier in this chapter.

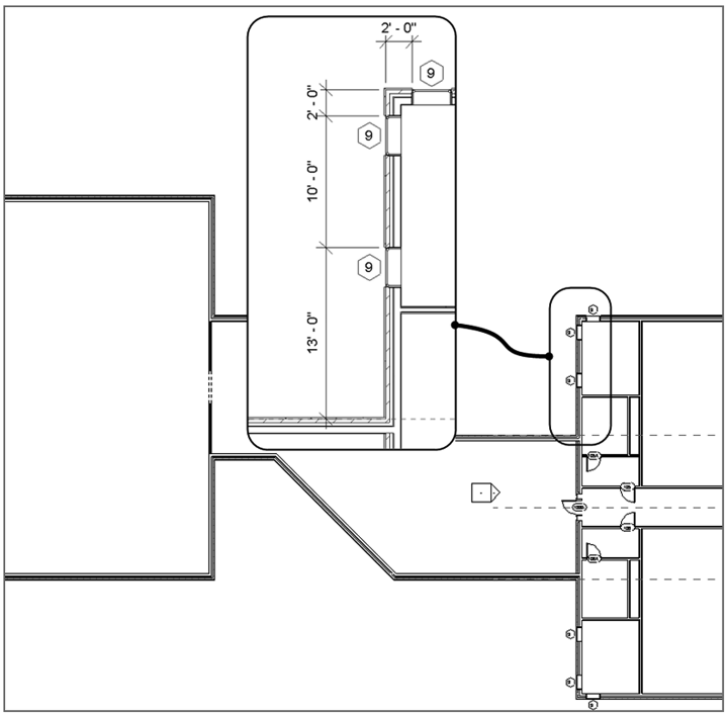


FIGURE 2.79: Placing the windows in the corner of the building and mirroring them

5. Mirror the windows and tags using the center horizontal reference plane (see Figure 2.79).
6. Select one of the placed windows. Notice the temporary dimensions and the flip arrows.
7. Change the tag to read A. (All of the windows are type A.)
8. You get a warning stating that you're changing a type parameter. Click Yes.

Now that the windows are in place, it's time to investigate how they're built by taking a look at their properties.

Window Properties

Again, just as with doors and openings, you can check the Element Properties to tweak the unit even further:

1. Select one of the windows.
2. In the Properties dialog, click the Edit Type button, as shown in Figure 2.80.

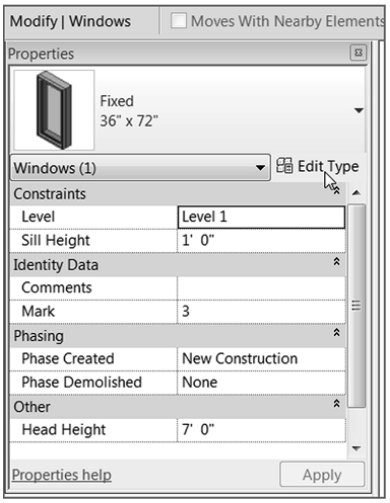


FIGURE 2.80: The Edit Type button in the Properties dialog

TIP If you want to change an instance parameter (such as Sill Height) for every window in the model, you can. Knowing that an instance parameter applies to only one item, instead of picking just one window, you can pick a window, right-click, and choose Select All Instances. From there, you can change every window's parameters in the Properties panel because you had every window selected.

3. Scroll down until you see Type Mark. Notice that this value is set to A. This is the property you changed by typing the value into the tag

in the model. Window tags read the Type Mark property by default, whereas door tags read Mark, which is an instance property. In either case, Revit works both ways. If you change a tag value in the model, it changes the parameter value in the tagged object or tagged family (see Figure 2.81).

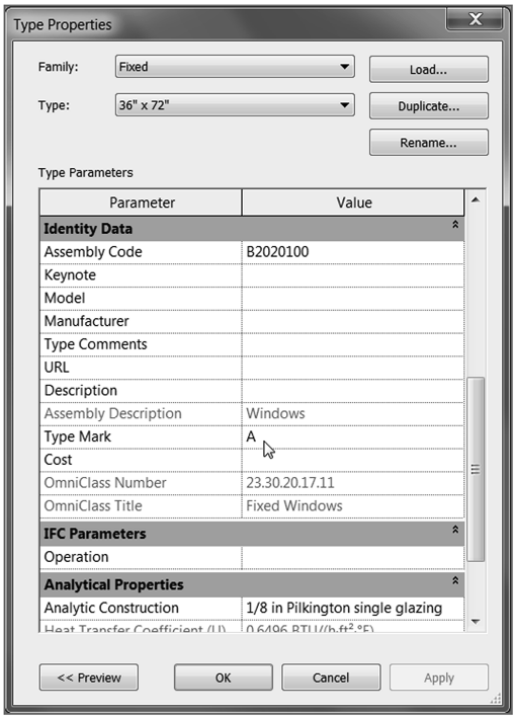


FIGURE 2.81: Changing a type parameter changes every window of that type.

Windows are among the most difficult items in Revit to use out of the box without any real customization. In Chapter 16, you'll dive into creating custom Revit windows. For now, however, remember the lessons learned in this chapter. They will go a long way.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ place exterior walls
- ✔ place interior walls
- ✔ add reference planes
- ✔ join walls
- ✔ use the Split command
- ✔ edit a cut profile
- ✔ add doors
- ✔ add openings
- ✔ add windows

CHAPTER 3

Creating Views

One of the strongest points of the Autodesk® Revit® Architecture platform is that it is one single model. This single model, however, has to be broken down into a tangible format that allows the user to navigate through a project. Chapter 1, "The Autodesk Revit World," and Chapter 2, "Creating a Model," featured the Project Browser (which is included in this chapter as well), but what is the Project Browser managing? Well, it's simply managing views of the model. The browser also handles sheets, families, groups, links, and assemblies, but you'll use it to open and work with the properties of views more than anything else.

Here's an example: in the Project Browser, under Floor Plans, you'll usually see Level 1. This is a view of the model that just so happens to be a floor plan. Under Elevations (Building Elevation), you'll see East, North, South, and West elevations. These are exactly the same as the floor plans in the sense that they're just views of the model.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- **Creating levels**
- **Creating and modifying building sections**
- **Adding wall sections**
- **Creating detail sections**
- **Creating callouts**
- **Creating and modifying a camera view**
- **Creating an elevation**

Creating Levels

This chapter focuses on the creation of views and their relationship to the model. You'll start with possibly the most important function in Revit:

creating levels. The power of Revit comes with the single-model concept. By adding levels to a model, you also add floor plans. This two-way interaction is what makes Revit the BIM choice for many users.

As you wander through the floor plans in the Project Browser, you'll see Level 1 and Level 2. Not every job you'll work on will have only a Level 1 and a Level 2. Your task in this section is to create new levels that are appended to floor plans.

To follow along, open the model you've been working on, or go to `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner` and browse to the `Chapter 3` folder. Open the file called `NER-03.rvt`. If you want, you can use an actual project you're working on. You'll just have to replace any names and specific dimensions with ones that are applicable to your project. Perform these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, double-click the South elevation. It's located under Elevations (Building Elevation), as shown in Figure 3.1.

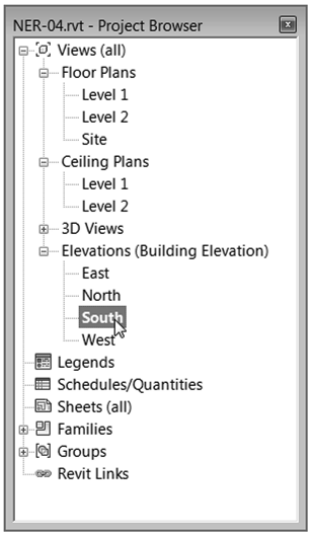


FIGURE 3.1: Finding an elevation in the Project Browser

Notice that at the right side of the building there are two symbols with a datum at the end. These are elevation markers. Unfortunately, right now they're somewhat obscured by the exterior wall. Zoom into this area, as shown in Figure 3.2.

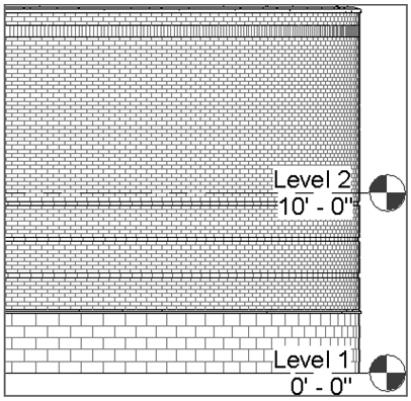


FIGURE 3.2: When dealing with levels, it's a good idea to zoom in close so you can manipulate them.

TIP As you progress through the next few steps, if you don't see what is shown in the next two figures, try zooming in more and repeating the instructions.

2. Pick (left-click) Level 1. Note that you get several blue icons and a lock.

   Where the actual level line intersects the datum bubble, there is a hollow blue circle (grip), as shown in Figure 3.3, except that your view is slightly obscured by the wall. Move the bubble so you can see the grip clearly.

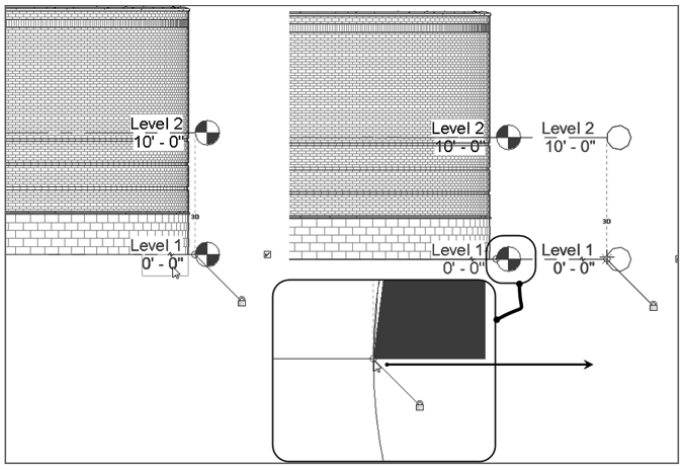


FIGURE 3.3: Picking the grip to drag the level out of the way

If you hover over any item in Revit Architecture and pause for a second, you'll see a tooltip. This will help you verify that you're selecting the correct item.

3. Left-click (pick) the grip, and hold the pick button on the mouse. You can now drag the bubble to the right.
4. When you get to a point where the level marker is outside the building, pick a spot to place the bubble and the annotation.
5. Press Esc.

Now that the levels are physically in a position where you can work on them, you can start building on them.

Adding Levels

Adding an entirely new level in Revit Architecture is quite simple. However, you need to adhere to certain procedures in order to ensure that you add the levels correctly.

When you use the Level feature in Revit, you should follow two procedures. The first is to look at the Options bar after you start the command. The second is to click the Modify button or press Esc when you've finished. It's easy to get confused as to how Revit wants you to proceed with adding a level, and it's also easy to create multiple levels inadvertently. Remember, in Revit you're always in a command.

To add a level, follow these steps:

1. On the Datum panel of the Architecture tab, click the Level button, as shown in Figure 3.4.

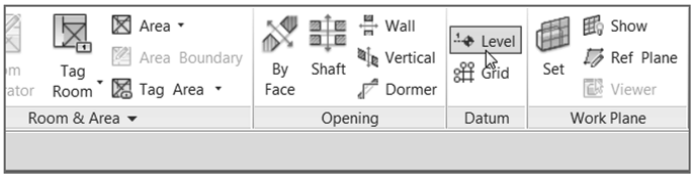


FIGURE 3.4: Adding a level from the Datum panel on the Architecture tab

2. On the Draw panel on the Modify | Place Level tab, you see that you can either draw a line or pick a line, as shown in Figure 3.5. Make sure Pick Lines is selected.

FIGURE 3.5: Choosing the options for the Level command

3. On the Options bar, make sure the Make Plan View option is selected.
4. At the end of the Options bar is the Offset field. Type **10′ (3000** mm), and press Enter. Basically the approach here is to pick Level 2 and create a new level that is offset 10′ (3000 mm) above (see Figure 3.5).
5. With the options set, hover your cursor over Level 2.

   When you come into contact with Level 2, a blue dotted line appears. If you move your cursor slightly above the Level 2 line, the blue alignment line appears above Level 2. If you inch your cursor slightly below Level 2, the blue alignment line appears below Level 2.
6. When you see the blue line appear above Level 2, pick the Level 2 line, as shown in Figure 3.6.

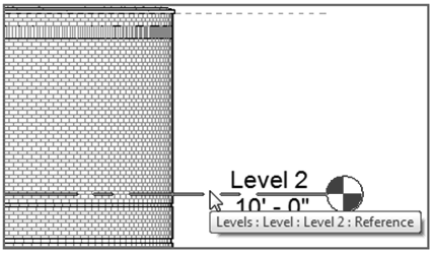


FIGURE 3.6: Waiting for the alignment to appear

TIP You may notice that speeding through the commands as you may have done in Autodesk® AutoCAD® isn't helping you at all in Revit. In Revit, you may need to slow down a bit and let Revit "do its thing." After you get the hang of the Revit behavior, you can speed up again.

You should now have a Level 3 at 20′ (6000 mm), as shown in Figure 3.7.

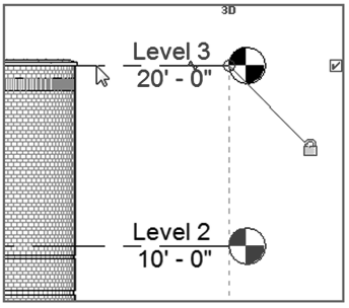


FIGURE 3.7: The completed Level 3. Remember, you're still in the Level command until you tell Revit to stop.

WARNING **Just because you've created a new level, this doesn't tell Revit to shut down the command. Notice that the Options bar is still active and the Pick Lines icon still has the focus. If you start clicking around in the view area, you'll create levels. Every time you pick a point on the screen, a new level will appear. Also, Revit doesn't care if you have a level on top of another level. This situation can get ugly fast.**

7. With the Level command still running, create Levels 4, 5, 6, and 7. Your elevation should now look like Figure 3.8. Also, look at your Project Browser. It shouldn't have any levels other than Levels 1 through 7 and Site. You also have new levels under the Ceiling Plans category.

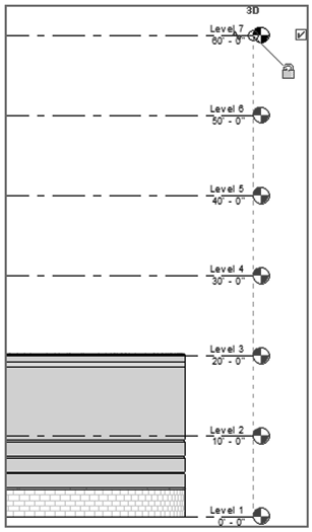


FIGURE 3.8: **Levels 1 through 7 are complete.**

8. On the Select panel of the Ribbon, click the Modify button. You've safely terminated the Level command. (You could also press the Esc key on your keyboard to end the command.)

Now that you have some experience adding levels, it's time to investigate the physical level to see how it can be manipulated and modified.

Understanding the Composition of a Level

Levels have controls that enable the user to adjust the level's appearance. As stated throughout the book, when you select a family, multiple items turn blue.

The blue color indicates that these items can be modified. Also, if the level bubbles are blue, that means there is a plan with which the level is associated. If the bubble is black, then no plan is associated. When you select a level, a few additional items will appear.

To investigate further, follow these steps:

1. Zoom in on Level 7.
2. Select Level 7 by picking (left-clicking) either the text or the level line. This puts the focus on the level line. Notice that the text turns blue. You know that any blue item can be modified (see Figure 3.9).

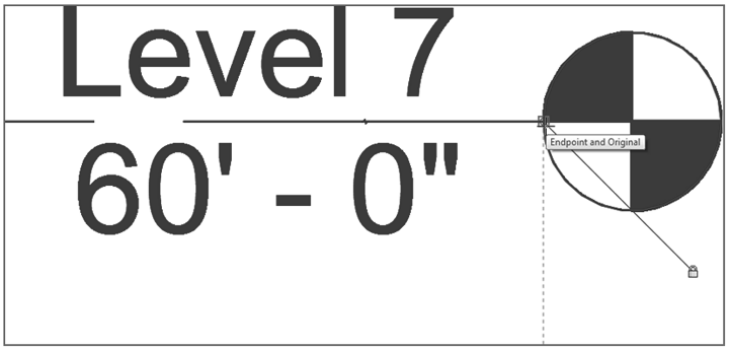


FIGURE 3.9: The selected level

3. Click the blue Level 7 text field. This enables you to edit the name of the level.
4. Type **Parapet**, as shown in Figure 3.10, and press Enter.

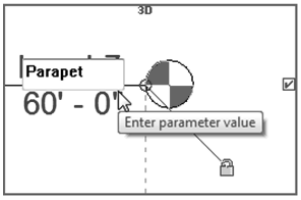


FIGURE 3.10: Renaming the level

5. Revit asks whether you want to rename any corresponding views. Click Yes (see Figure 3.11). Level 7 is now the Parapet level, as shown in Figure 3.12.

By renaming corresponding views, you tell Revit to keep the level and its corresponding view named accordingly.

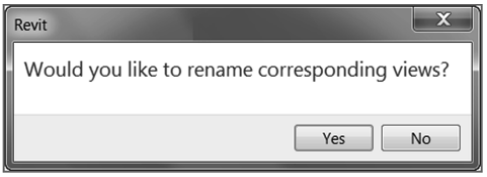


FIGURE 3.11: Click Yes to rename corresponding views.

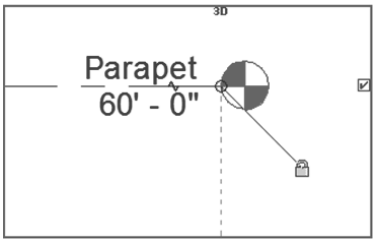


FIGURE 3.12: The renamed level

6. With the Parapet level still selected, click the 60′–0″ (18000 mm) field.
7. Type 52′ (16600 mm), and press Enter. This physically drops the level to the true elevation.

Can't you just type over the dimension? In Revit, you can't have an inaccurate increment. If you type a new value to any increment, the model will change to reflect this new dimension.

You now have two slightly overlapping levels. This can be fixed by manipulating some of the controls that appear when you select the level.

Press the Esc key a few times to clear any commands that may be active, and then follow these steps:

1. Select the Parapet level (if it isn't still selected from the previous exercise).
2. The blue items light up. One of them is the choice to add an elbow, as shown in Figure 3.13. Click it, and Revit bends the level.

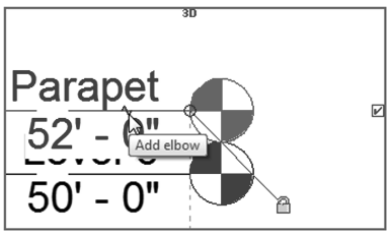


FIGURE 3.13: You can add an elbow to the elevation marker.

3. Now that you've added the elbow, you need to move it. Notice the blue grip at each bend point. Pick the blue grip, as shown in Figure 3.14, and drag the Parapet level out of the level below.

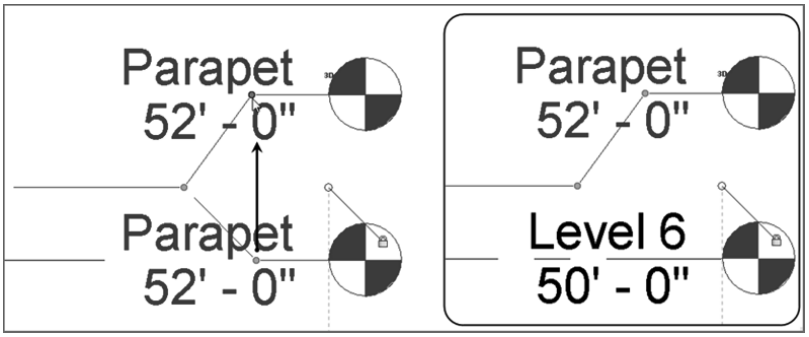


FIGURE 3.14: Dragging the level to a new position by using the grips provided

4. The line of the level is still in the way. The two blue grips are still available, pick and drag the horizontal line out of the way of the Parapet text, as shown in Figure 3.15.

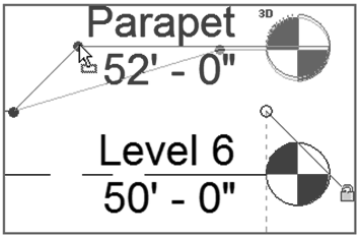


FIGURE 3.15: Making the final adjustments to the level

Now that you've established the Parapet level, let's make modifications to Level 6. Luckily, the procedures are the same as when you made the modifications to the Parapet level.

1. Press Esc to clear any commands.
2. Select Level 6.
3. Pick the blue text that reads Level 6.
4. Rename it **Roof**.
5. Press Enter.
6. Click Yes to rename the corresponding views.

7. Press Esc. Your levels should look like Figure 3.16.

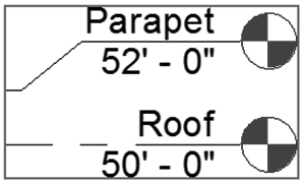


FIGURE 3.16: The Roof and Parapet levels

Making Other Level Adjustments

I need to review three more adjustments before you can move on. As you may notice, the level lines are projected all the way to the other end of the east building. Only level heads and level data are displayed on the right side of the level line. You can control the other end of the level as well.

To follow along, pan over to the left side of the building, where the level lines seem to stop, as shown in Figure 3.17.

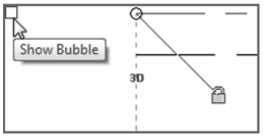


FIGURE 3.17: You can click the box that appears to turn on the level information at the other end of the building.

Then perform these steps:

1. Select the Parapet level.
2. Pick the small blue box to the left of the level. Doing so turns on the level information at that end of the building (see Figure 3.17).
3. Turn on the Roof-level left-end bubble as well. Use the blue adjustment icons (elbow icons) to move the level out of the way (see Figure 3.18).

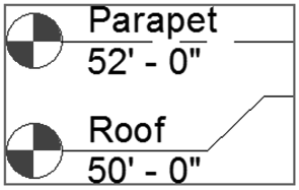


FIGURE 3.18: Controlling the visibility of the levels at the other end

With the two upper levels established, you can constrain some walls up to these levels. Sometimes the best way to do this is to look at the model from a 3D view.

1. Click the Default 3D View icon on the Quick Access toolbar at the top of your screen, as shown in Figure 3.19.

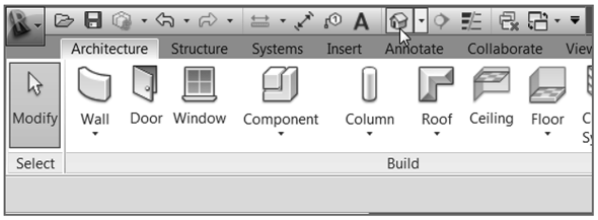


FIGURE 3.19: Clicking the Default 3D View icon

2. The next step is to select all the walls you want to be extended to the Parapet level. In this case, only the east building will go all the way up to this level. Select the exterior and the elevator shaft walls, as shown in Figure 3.20. (Be sure to select all the elevator shaft walls as well.) You must hold the Ctrl key to add to the selection. The walls turn blue when they're selected. You can also hover over one of the walls and press the Tab key. Once the walls are highlighted, pick a wall. All of the walls will be selected.

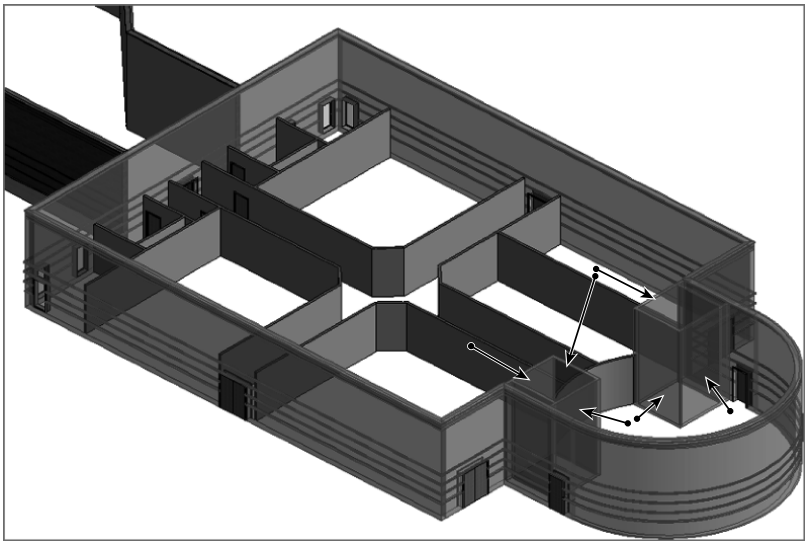


FIGURE 3.20: Selecting the walls that extend to the Parapet level

3. In the Properties dialog, under the Constraints category, change Top Constraint to Up To Level: Parapet, as shown in Figure 3.21. Click Apply or move your cursor into the drawing window to set the property change. The walls should now extend to the Parapet level, as shown in Figure 3.22.

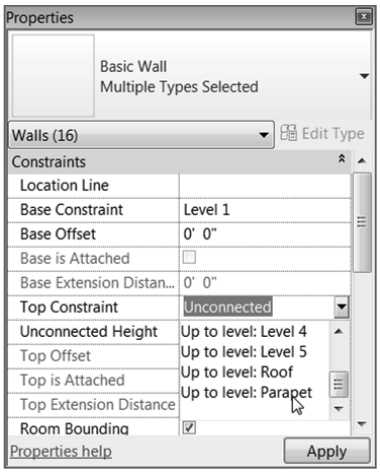


FIGURE 3.21: Setting the top constraint to Up To Level: Parapet

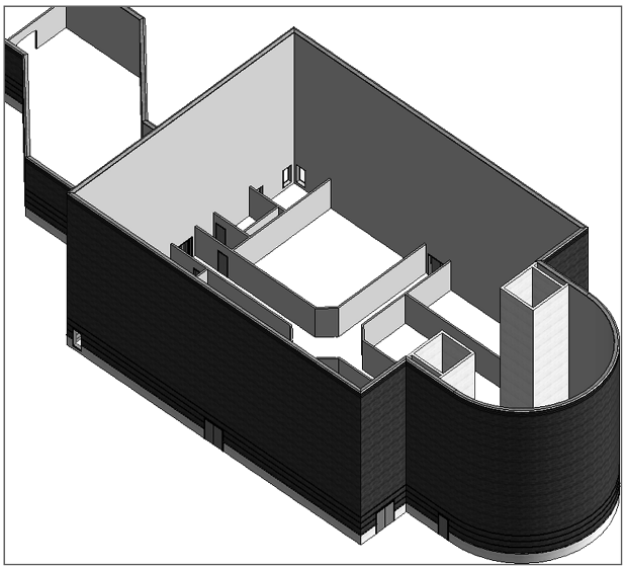


FIGURE 3.22: The walls on the east side of the building are now constrained to the Parapet level.

4. In the Project Browser, double-click the South elevation under Elevations (Building Elevation).
5. Start the Level command again.
6. Offset Level 4 up 4′ (1200 mm). Remember, you're in the Level command. You must choose Pick Lines on the Draw panel. Also, you must specify an Offset value of **4′–0″ (1200** mm) on the Options bar.
7. Offset another level up from the fourth level, **2′–0″ (600** mm), and then press Esc a couple times to terminate the command.
8. Rename the 4′–0″ (1200 mm) offset level **West Parapet**. Click Yes to rename corresponding views.
9. Rename the 2′–0″ (600 mm) offset **West Roof** (see Figure 3.23), and click Yes to rename corresponding views. You'll have to add elbows to the levels to see the names and elevations.

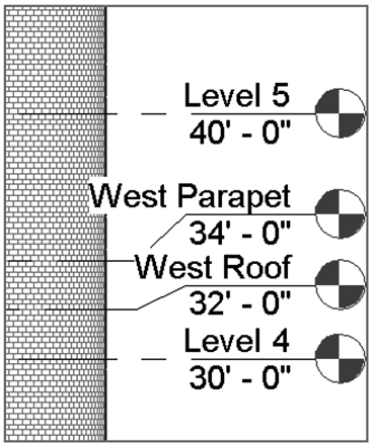


FIGURE 3.23: Adding two new levels for the west side of the building

See? Adding levels isn't all that hard. You just need to know how Revit wants you to do it. Now that you've added some levels, you can go back and configure how they're displayed.

1. For the two new levels, uncheck the Show Bubble check box to the *right* of the level lines by clicking the Hide Bubble check box.
2. Display the bubbles to the *left* side of the level line by selecting the Show Bubble check box. The level should now look like Figure 3.24 (you have to add those elbows again).

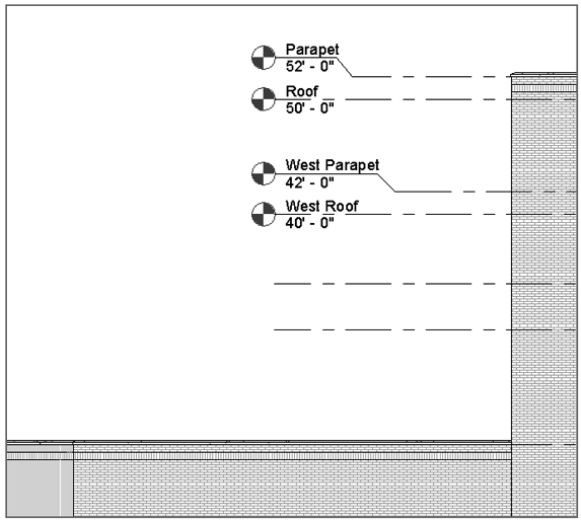


FIGURE 3.24: Using the display bubble toggles to switch the display to the appropriate side of the building

3. Staying focused on the left side of the building, select the West Parapet level.
4. Notice that some blue icons still appear. One of those icons reads 3D.
5. Pick (left-click) the 3D icon. It now reads 2D. The larger, hollow blue grip turns into a smaller, solid grip. You can now drag the level end without dragging the rest along with it. The 2D function also ensures that this modification doesn't affect other views (see Figure 3.25 and Figure 3.26).

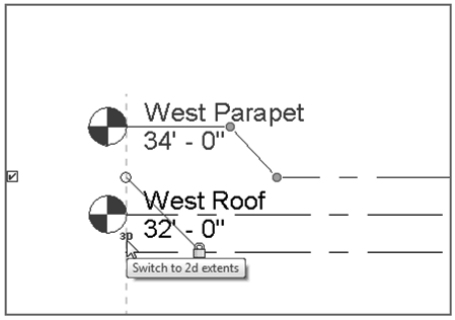


FIGURE 3.25: Turn off the 3D extents so you can drag the level end freely and without disturbing any other view.

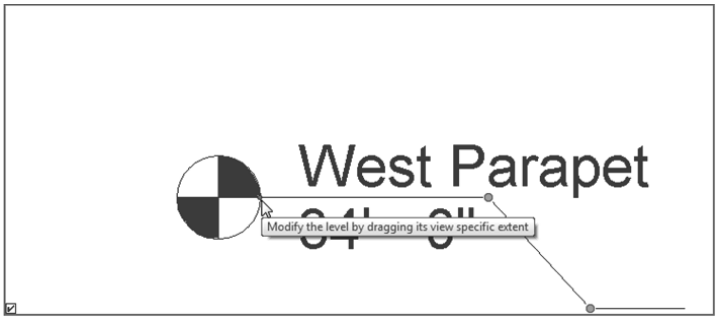


FIGURE 3.26: The little blue grip enables you to drag the entire level.

6. Repeat the procedure for the West Roof level. Now both of the level ends are set for 2D extents. The blank ends at the right side are still set to 3D extents.
7. Select the West Parapet level, activating the grips.
8. Pick the blue grip, and drag the end to the left side of the building, approximately to the location shown in Figure 3.27. Notice that the two 2D lines are locked to one another.

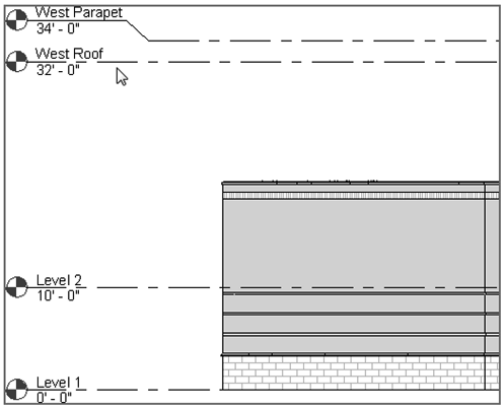


FIGURE 3.27: You can drag the 2D level ends wherever you want them.

9. Drag the West Roof level to the left as well.
10. Turn on the left side for Levels 1 and 2.
11. Switch these levels to 2D, and drag them to align with the West Parapet and West Roof levels, as shown in Figure 3.27. (If you can't pick a level, hover over it with your cursor and press the Tab key. When the level highlights, pick it.)

12. Add another level 2′ (600 mm) above Level 3, and call it **Corridor Parapet**. Click Yes to rename corresponding views.
13. Turn on the level information on the left side.
14. Turn off the level information on the right side.

WARNING **On almost every project, you'll have to adjust a level's display in different views. Keep in mind that if the 3D button is left on, moving the level in the current view will also move it in other views—sometimes for the better and sometimes for the worse. Switching to 2D can eliminate aggravation.**

15. On the left side, turn on the 2D extents.
16. Drag the left side of the line to an area approximately as shown in Figure 3.28.

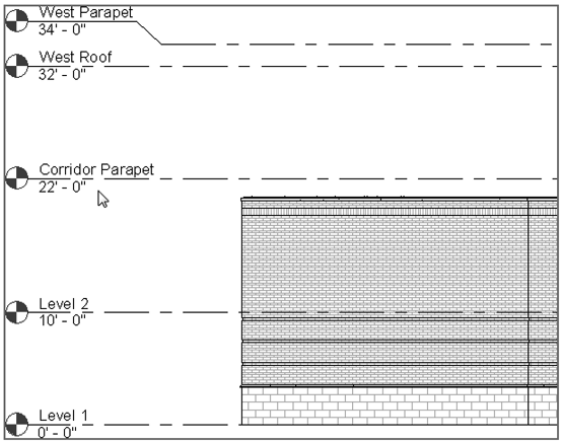


FIGURE 3.28: **All the levels are in place for now.**

Let's move these walls to their proper levels. Again, in this case it may be a little easier to go to a 3D view so you can get a good perspective on the results of constraining the tops of the walls. Perform the following steps:

1. Click the Default 3D icon on the Quick Access toolbar.
2. In the 3D view, select the west side of the building, excluding the corridor and the three walls to the south, as shown in Figure 3.29. You should have seven walls selected. To check this, look in the lower-right corner of the Revit window. You see a filter icon with the number 7 next to it. (You need to press and hold the Ctrl key for multiple selections.)

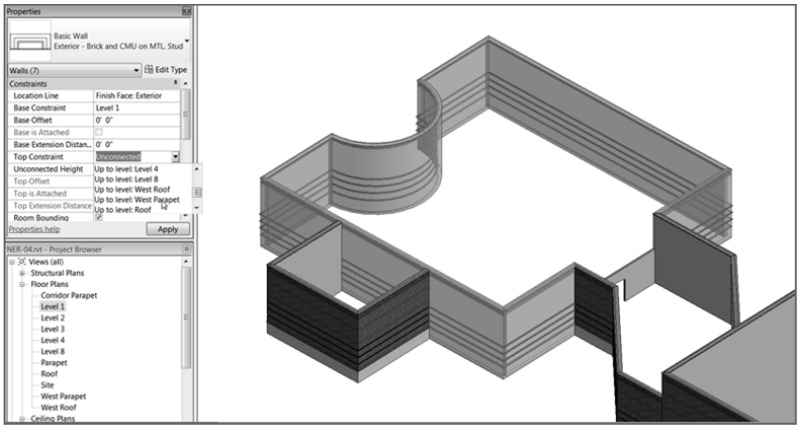


FIGURE 3.29: Selecting the west part of the building

3. In the Properties dialog, set Top Constraint to Up To Level: West Parapet. Click Apply or move your cursor into the view window.
   In the 3D view, your walls should grow to meet the new constraints.
4. Press Esc.
5. Select the corridor walls as well as the three south walls whose tops remain unconstrained. (You may need to rotate the view to see everything.)
6. In the Constraints category of the Properties dialog, set Top Constraint to Up To Level: Corridor Parapet (see Figure 3.30).

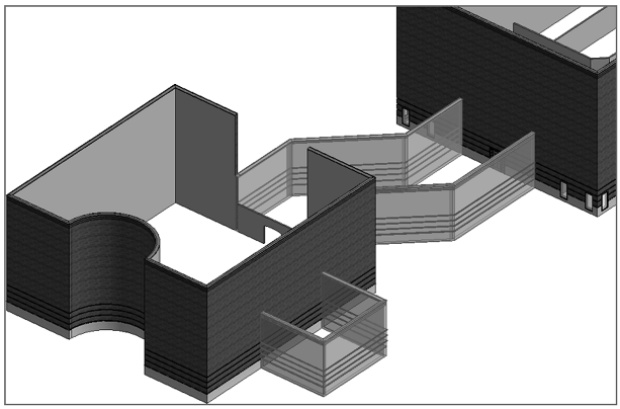


FIGURE 3.30: The final walls are constrained to the Corridor Parapet level.

7. Go back to the South elevation. Set the top constraints of the selected walls to Corridor Parapet, as shown in Figure 3.31.

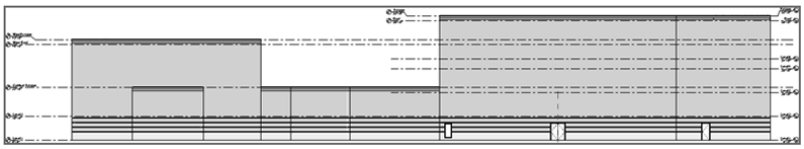


FIGURE 3.31: The final look of the building

8. Save the model.

Creating and Modifying Building Sections

As your model starts to develop, you'll begin to see areas that need further attention. (Certainly the area where the corridor hits the west building needs to be fixed.) This brings us to a good point. Sections in Revit Architecture, when placed into the model, not only help you build a set of construction documents but also help you work physically on the model. For example, you need to fix the east wall of the west wing. However, you don't have any good views established that focus directly on this area. This is the perfect place to add a section!

Adding a Building Section

To add a section and some important wall-modify commands, follow these steps:

1. Go to Level 1 Floor Plan, and zoom in on the area where the corridor meets the west wing of the building.
2. On the Create panel of the View tab, select Section, as shown in Figure 3.32.

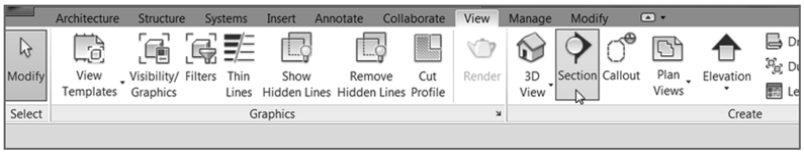


FIGURE 3.32: The Section command is found on the Create panel of the View tab.

3. A section takes two picks to place into the model. You must first pick the point for the head; then you pick a point for the tail. To place the section as shown in Figure 3.33, first pick a point above the corridor and to the right of the vertical wall.

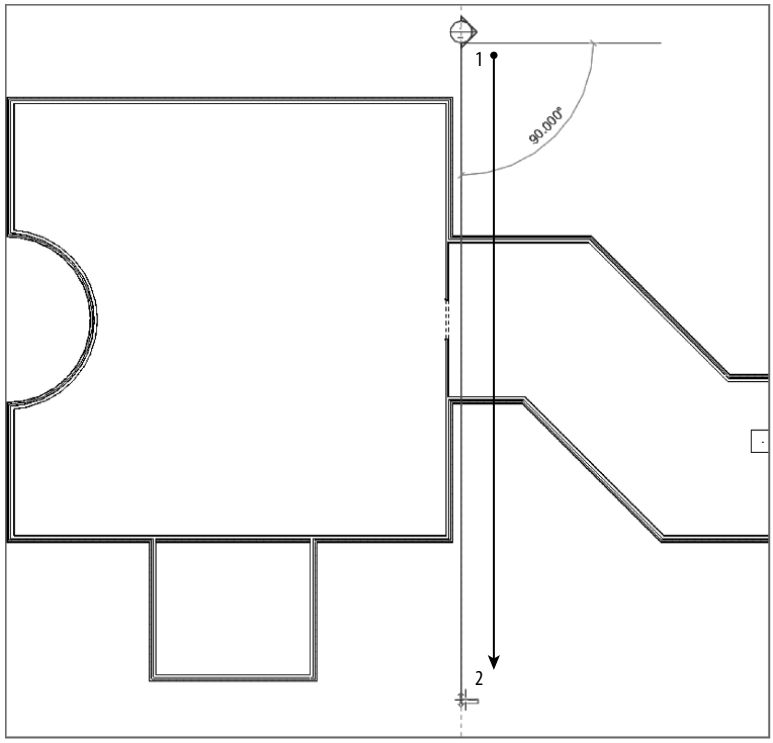


FIGURE 3.33: Placing the section into the model

4. After you pick the first point, move your cursor straight down the view. When you're positioned directly below the bottom corridor wall, pick the second point (see Figure 3.33). If the section is facing the wrong way, that's fine. You'll fix that in a moment.

5. With the section placed, it looks like you need to flip it to face the wall you intended to modify. A few blue icons appear. You're interested in the icon that looks like two arrows. This is a *flip grip*. It's the same thing you saw in the doors and windows (see Figure 3.34).

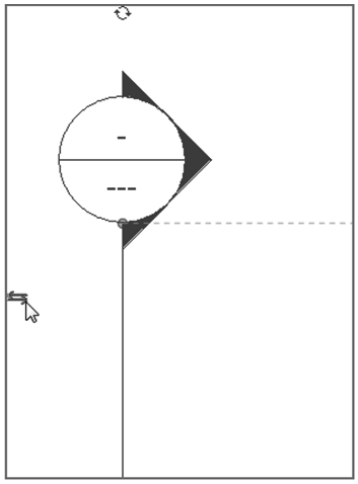


FIGURE 3.34: After you select the section, you'll see the flip grip.

6. When you see the flip grip, pick it. It flips the section into the correct direction.

WARNING I may be jumping ahead, but here's a word of caution: if you cut a section in Revit Architecture and then place detail components and draft over the top of that section, you're stuck. Don't flip or move the section after you've drafted over the top of it. The results will be bad. The walls will move, but your line work won't, leaving you with a mess.

With the section flipped in the correct direction, a dashed line forms a box around part of the model, as shown in Figure 3.35. This forms the view extents of the section. Anything outside this box won't be shown.

7. The vertical dashed line (to the left) has a move arrow. Pick the move arrow, and drag the crop region into the area shown in Figure 3.35.

NOTE If the section isn't selected, you need to select it. You must pick the line of the section, not the bubble. When you pick the line, the section is selected.

8. With the section still selected, notice the small, blue break icon in the middle of the section (see Figure 3.36). Pick the break line (it's called the Gaps In Segments icon). The section is now broken, and you have grips controlling the ends of the break lines (see Figure 3.36).

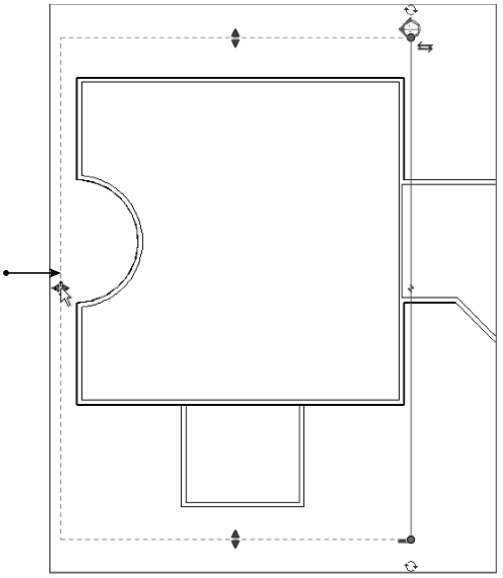


FIGURE 3.35: You can control how deep into the building you want the section to appear.

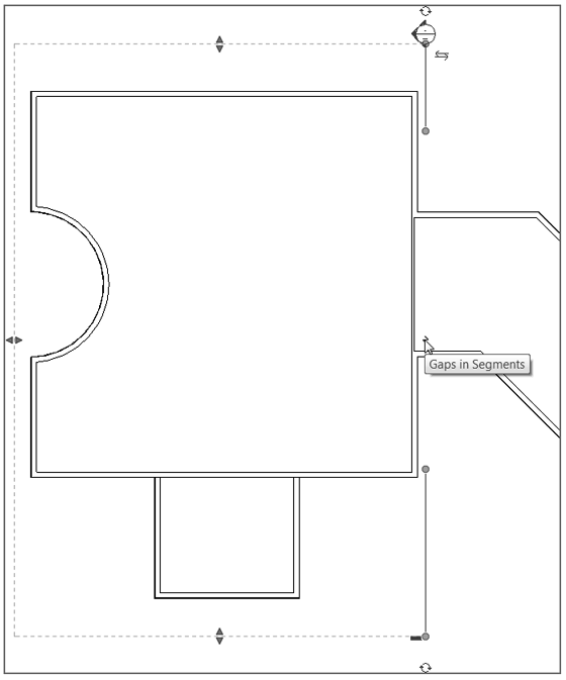


FIGURE 3.36: Adding a gap in the section. You can move your grips to be the same as the figure.

9. At each end of the section is a blue icon that resembles a recycle symbol. This controls what the section head displays. By selecting this icon, you can choose to have a section head, a tail, or nothing. At the tail of the section, cycle through until you get a section head (see Figure 3.37).

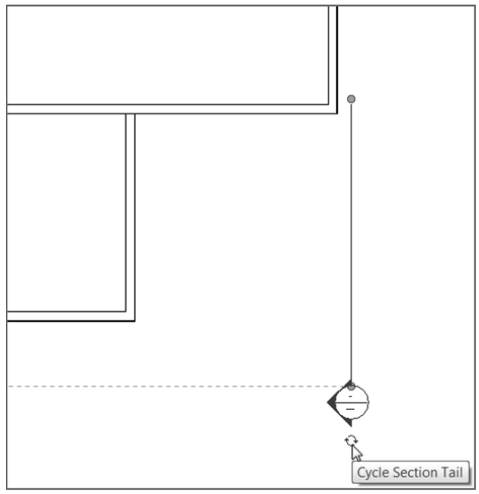


FIGURE 3.37: Cycling through the display choices

With the section cut, it's time to open the view you've created. In the Project Browser, you now see a new category called Sections (Building Section). In this category is a view called Section 1. When you cut the section, you added a view to the project. This view carries its own properties and can be drafted over (see Figure 3.38).

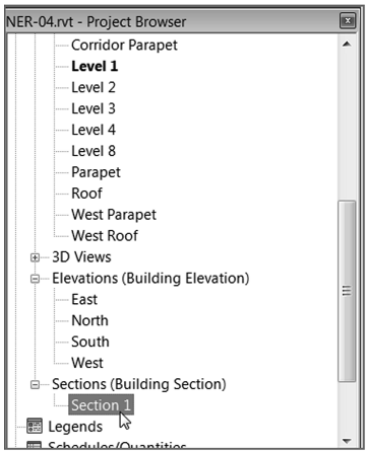


FIGURE 3.38: The Project Browser with the new section

TIP **Be organized. Using BIM doesn't negate the need for basic organization. The first thing you should do when creating a section (or any new view, for that matter) is give it a name. If you don't and you leave your sections as Section 1, Section 2, Section 3, and so on, you'll find yourself wasting a lot of time looking for the right view.**

At this point, you need to name the section and open the view. You can also fix the gap in the wall while you're at it. Perform the following steps:

1. In the Project Browser, right-click Section 1.
2. Choose Rename from the context menu (see Figure 3.39).

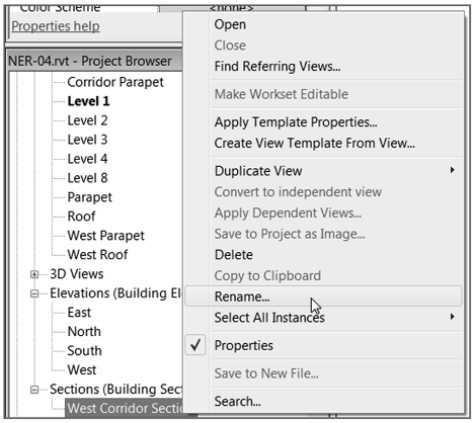


FIGURE 3.39: You can rename the view by right-clicking in the Project Browser.

3. Change the name of Section 1 to **West Corridor Section**.
4. Click OK.
5. Double-click the West Corridor Section in the Project Browser. Doing so opens the section. You can see the two corridor walls and the west wing beyond.
6. Chances are that the section looks great, but no levels are displayed. If you can't see your levels, open the south elevation.
7. Select a window around the west levels, as shown in Figure 3.40.
8. With the levels selected, place your pointer directly on top of one of the levels, and right-click.

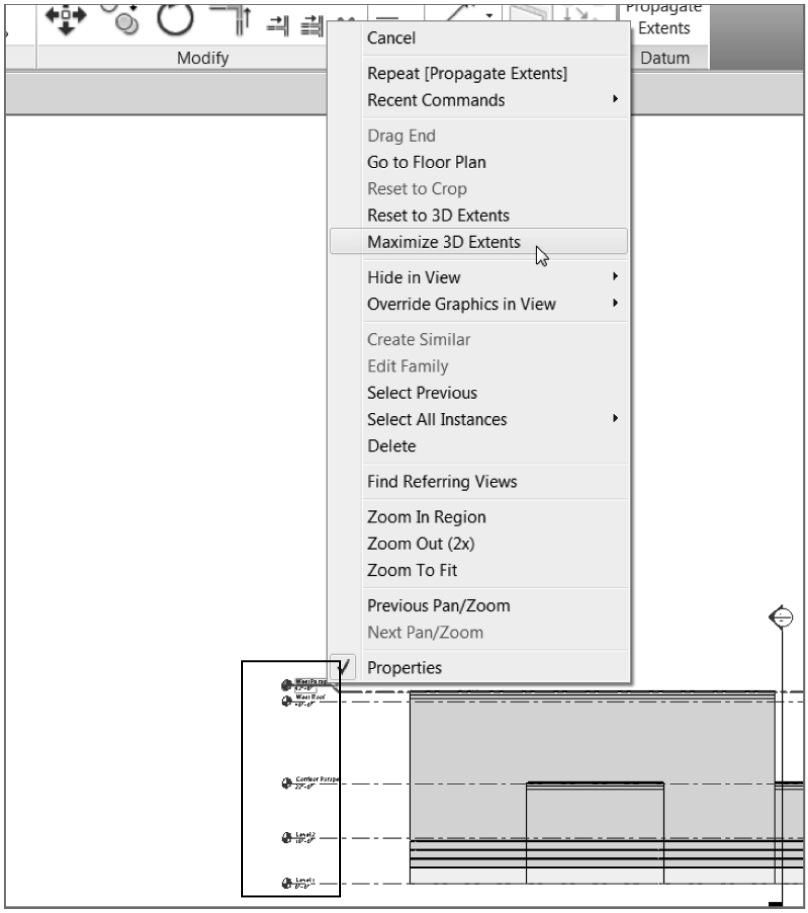


FIGURE 3.40: By choosing Maximize 3D Extents, you can control the visibility of the levels in other views.

9. Select Maximize 3D Extents, as shown in Figure 3.40.
10. Go back to the West Corridor Section to clean up the levels so they're to the right of the building and the Parapet level isn't overlapping the level below (see Figure 3.41).

NOTE Notice that when you're adjusting the levels in the section, the 2D icon appears. This means any adjustments made here won't affect any other views. In a sectional view, Revit automatically makes the levels 2D. In an elevation view, however, Revit makes the levels 3D. If you want to make adjustments in an elevation, it's a good idea to turn these into 2D extents.

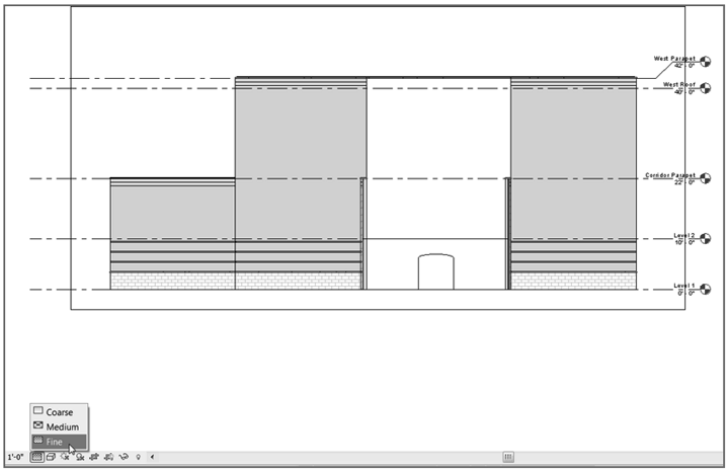


FIGURE 3.41: On the View Control bar, set Fine as the detail level.

11. On the View Control bar, select Fine for the detail level, as shown in Figure 3.41. (Making adjustments like this to a view will become second nature to you soon.)

Cutting a section is immensely helpful in terms of viewing the model from any perspective you want. To go even further, when you cut a section, you can also work on your model by modifying any item in the section.

Making Building Modifications in a Section

Now that you've had a good look at this side of the west wing, it's obvious that this wall needs to be repaired. In Revit Architecture, you can make a modification to a building in any view. This is good and bad. Just remember that everything you do has a downstream effect on the entire model.

The following procedure will guide you through making a modification to a wall's profile while in a section view:

1. In the Project Browser, find the West Corridor Section and open it by double-clicking the name West Corridor Section (if it isn't open already).
2. In this section, select the east wall of the west wing, as shown in Figure 3.42.
3. After you select the wall, click the Edit Profile button in the Modify | Walls tab.

In Revit Architecture, you can also double-click the annotation that refers to the view you want to open. For example, if you want to open the West Corridor Section and you're in a plan, all you have to do is double-click the section bubble, and the view will open. If you're in the section and you want to go back to a floor plan, you can double-click a datum bubble, and Revit will open that view.

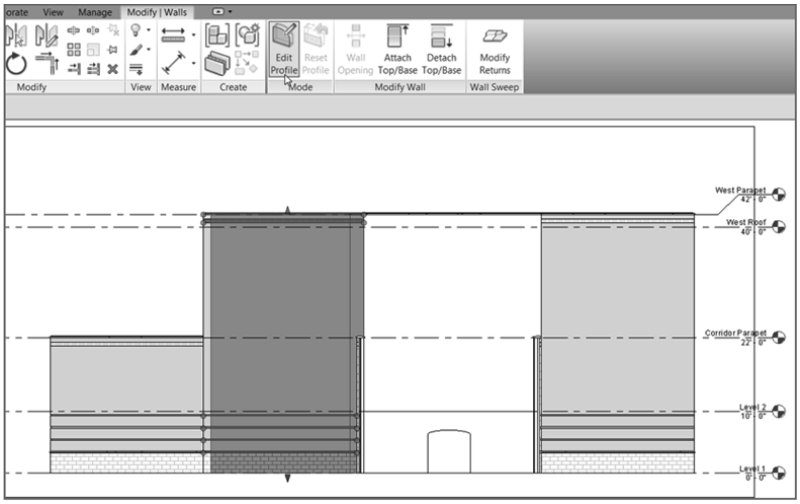


FIGURE 3.42: Selecting the wall to be modified and clicking Edit Profile

After you select a wall, you can access options to modify that wall. Edit Profile is one of those options.

You're presented with a magenta outline of the wall. This magenta outline can be modified to alter the wall's profile. On the Ribbon, Edit Profile has been added to the title of the Modify | Walls tab. This enables you to focus on the modification at hand.

4. On the Draw panel of the Modify | Walls ➢ Edit Profile tab, select the Line button, as shown in Figure 3.43.

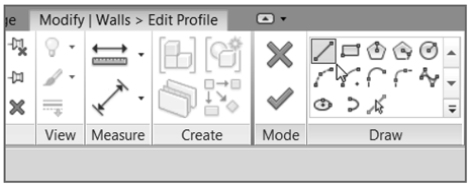


FIGURE 3.43: Adding lines to alter the wall's profile

5. With the Line command running, move your pointer to the vertical magenta line on the right where it intersects the Corridor Parapet level, as shown in Figure 3.44.
6. When you see that you're snapped and aligned with the magenta line and the Corridor Parapet level, pick this point. Your line starts.

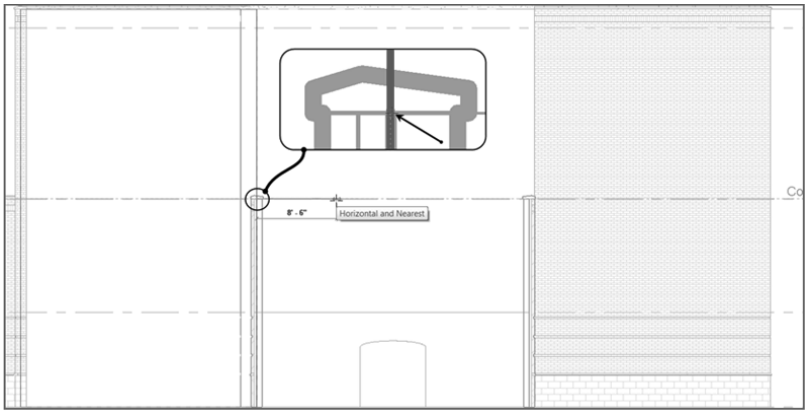


FIGURE 3.44: Revit aligns your cursor to levels, enabling you to sketch a new profile accurately.

7. Draw the line to the right until you intersect with the centerline of the corridor wall, as shown in Figure 3.45.

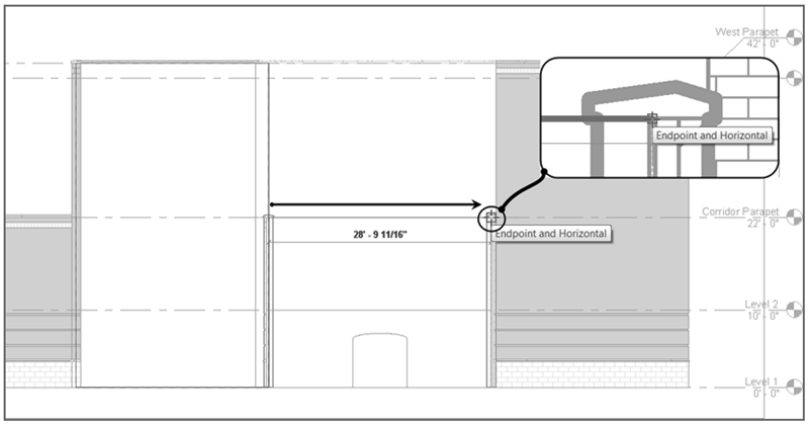


FIGURE 3.45: Drawing the line from the left wall to the right

8. When you see the snap icon appear, pick this point (see Figure 3.45).
9. Draw the line straight up the wall to the top. Make sure you don't snap to the top of the parapet cap. The point you want is to the top of the brick, as shown in Figure 3.46. (All you're doing here is sketching the profile of the wall.)

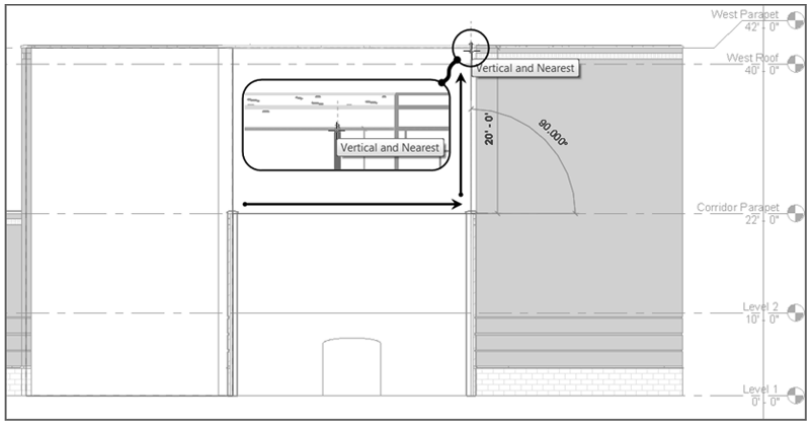


FIGURE 3.46: Drawing another line from Level 3 to the bottom of the Corridor Parapet level

10. Continue drawing the line from right to left, across the top of the wall. Snap to the endpoint of the wall to the left, as shown in Figure 3.47.

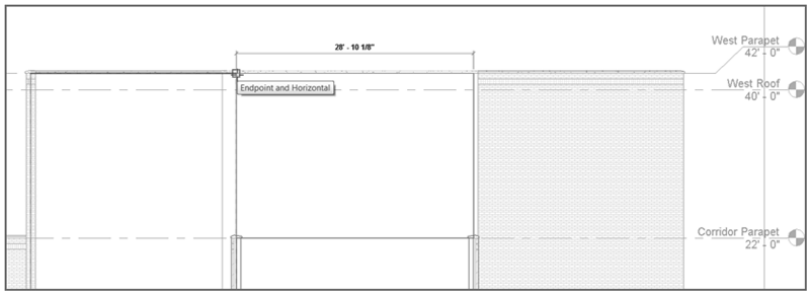


FIGURE 3.47: Drawing the line across the top

11. Press the Esc key, or click the Modify button on the Select panel.
12. Pick the vertical line to the left that goes from the bottom of the wall to the top.
13. Pick the top blue grip, and stretch the line down to Level 3.
    You now have a closed loop, as shown in Figure 3.48.

WARNING If you don't have a perfectly closed, continuous loop with your magenta lines, Revit won't allow you to proceed to finish altering the profile of this wall. Make sure you have no gaps, overlaps, or extra line segments aside from the six lines you need to form the wall's outline.

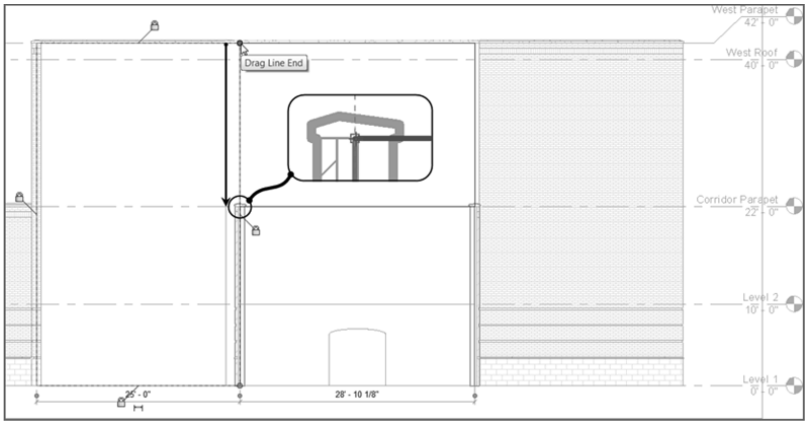


FIGURE 3.48: Closing the wall by using grips to stretch the line

14. On the Wall panel of the Modify | Walls ➢ Edit Profile tab, click Finish Edit Mode, as shown in Figure 3.49. Your finished wall profile should look like Figure 3.50.

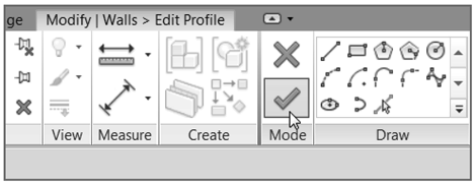


FIGURE 3.49: Clicking Finish Edit Mode

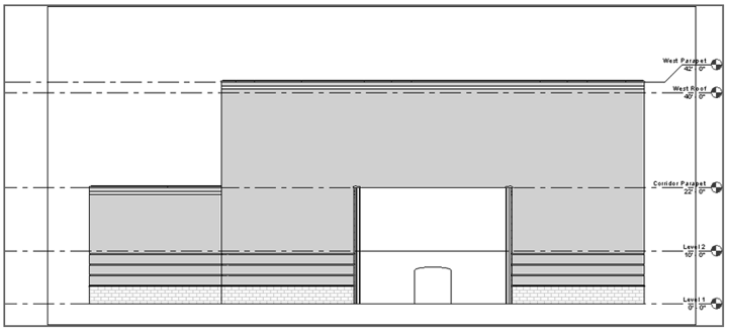


FIGURE 3.50: The finished wall profile

There is one thing left to do before you leave this section: select the two-hour fire-rated partition wall that is constrained only to Level 2. Now that you've opened up this area, the wall can go up to Level 3. To constrain the top of this wall to Corridor Parapet, follow these steps:

1. Select the internal (white) wall with the arched opening, as shown previously in Figure 3.50.
2. In the Properties dialog, change Top Constraint to Up To Level: Corridor Parapet, as shown in Figure 3.51.

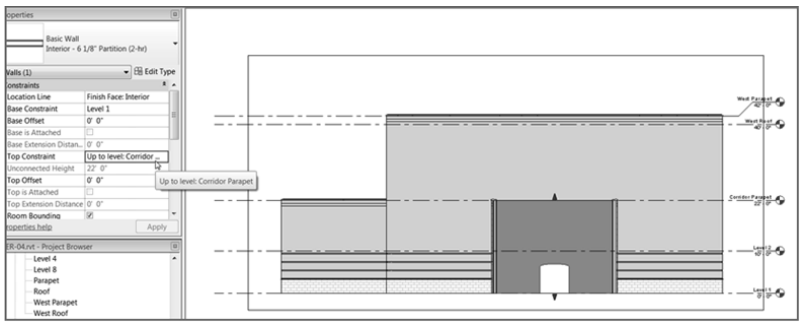


FIGURE 3.51: Choosing the properties to change a wall's constraints is becoming old hat!

3. The partition wall now meets the brick exterior wall.
4. In the Project Browser, double-click Level 3 Floor Plan view.
5. Change the detail level to Fine. (Remember, this option is on the View Control bar at the bottom of the screen.)
6. On the View tab, click the Section button.
7. Place a section as shown in Figure 3.52. Make sure the extents are similar to the figure.
8. In the Project Browser, right-click the new section and rename it **West Wing South Wall Section**. You'll use this section in Chapter 4, "Working with the Autodesk Revit Tools."

Adding entire building sections is a great way to break down the model quickly into large segments. Another type of section, a wall section, enables you to view smaller portions of the item being detailed.

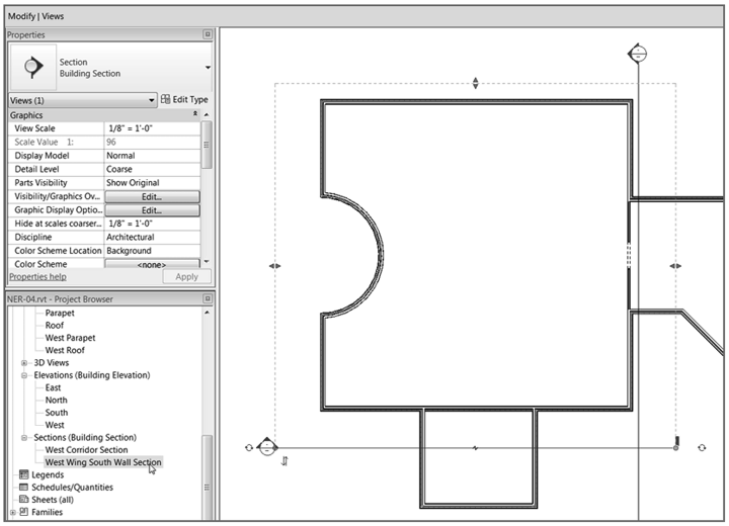


FIGURE 3.52: Adding another section to modify another wall

Adding Wall Sections

A *wall section* is basically the same as a building section. The only difference is that when you place a wall section, Revit holds the extents to a much smaller area. When you add a building section, Revit wants to extend to the farthest geometry. That being said, a wall section is usually placed to show only the item being cut but not the geometry beyond.

To place a wall section, follow this procedure:

1. Double-click Level 1 in the Project Browser.
2. On the View tab, pick the Section button (the same one you picked for the building section).
3. In the Properties dialog box, select Wall Section, as shown in Figure 3.53.

WARNING **If you're directed to go to a specific floor plan and your view looks nothing like the one shown in the book, you need to make sure you aren't in a ceiling plan. Notice in the Project Browser that you have floor plans and ceiling plans. The two are quite different. Make sure you're in a floor plan.**

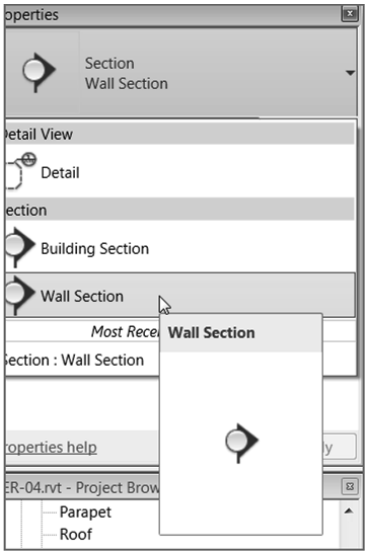


FIGURE 3.53: Changing the type of section from Building Section to Wall Section

4. Add the section through the corridor wall that was modified in the previous section of this chapter, as shown in Figure 3.54.

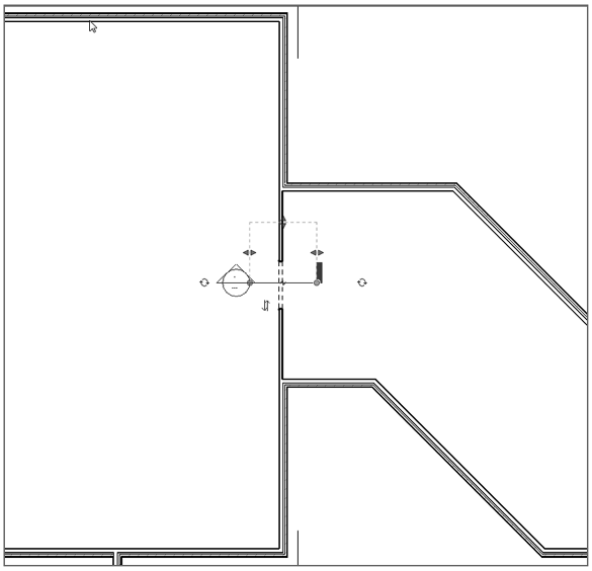


FIGURE 3.54: The wall section in the plan

5. Right-click the new section in the Project Browser. It's in a category called Sections (Wall Section).
6. Select Rename.
7. Call the new section **Corridor Entry Section**. Click OK.
8. Open the Corridor Entry Section.
9. Change the scale to **1/2″ = 1′–0″** (**1:20** mm).
10. Change the detail level to Fine. Your section should look like Figure 3.55.

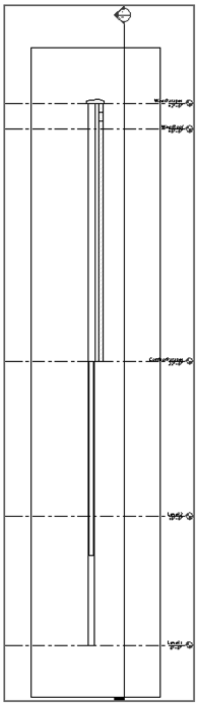


FIGURE 3.55: The finished wall section

11. Save the model.

You're narrowing down the types of sections you can use, and it's time to venture into a specific type of section that can enable you to create a plan-section detail.

Creating Detail Sections

There is a third type of section we need to discuss: the detail section. Revit refers to this type of section as a *detail view*, so that's how we'll start addressing it.

To add a detail section, perform the following steps:

1. Open the view called Corridor Entry Section (if you don't have it open already).
2. On the View tab, select Section (yes, the same section you've been using all along).
3. In the Properties dialog box, select Detail View: Detail.
4. Place a section horizontally below the head of the opening, as shown in Figure 3.56. Make sure the section is flipped so it's looking downward.

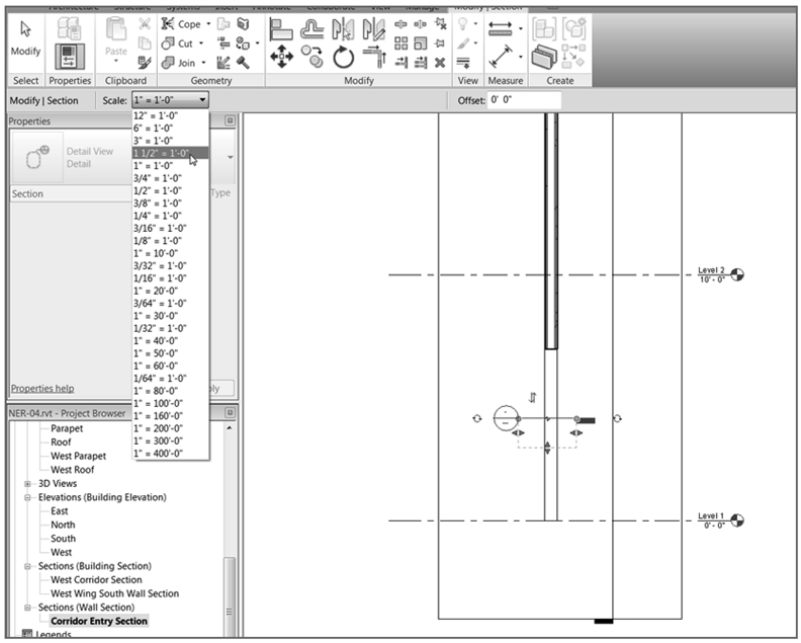


FIGURE 3.56: Creating a plan section detail

5. In the Project Browser is a new category called Detail Views (Detail). Expand the tree, and you see your new detail. It's usually called Detail 0, depending on the number of details that have been added to the model previously.

6. Right-click Detail 0, and select Rename.
7. Rename the detail **Plan Detail at Corridor Opening**, and click OK.
8. Open the Plan Detail at Corridor Opening view.
9. Change the scale to **1′ 1/2″ = 1′–0″ (1:5 mm)**.

With the detail open, you may be able to see only two dashed lines. This is because the crop region needs to be expanded, as explained in the next section.

Using Crop Regions

The border that surrounds the detail is called a *crop region*. It dictates the extents of the specific view you're in. You can adjust this crop region and use it to your advantage. To learn how to make adjustments to the crop region, follow these steps:

1. Select the window surrounding the detail, as shown in Figure 3.57.

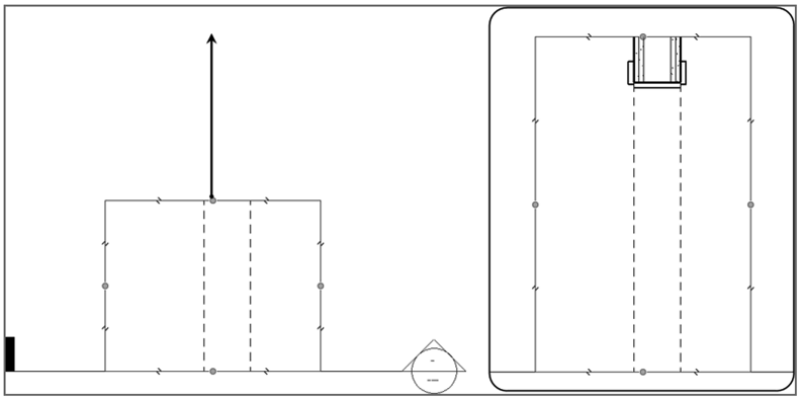


FIGURE 3.57: Stretching the crop region to view the detail

2. You see four blue dot grips at the midpoint of each line. Pick the top grips, and stretch the top region up until you can see the opening jamb (see Figure 3.57).
3. Repeat the process for the bottom so you can see the entire opening.
4. With the crop region still selected, notice the break icons similar to the make-elbow icons in the level markers. Pick the break icon, as shown in Figure 3.58. Slice part of the section away, resulting in two separate cropped regions.

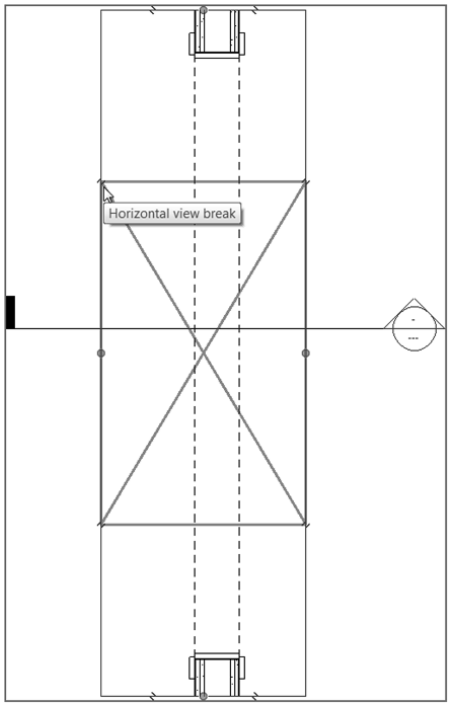


FIGURE 3.58: Splitting the section

5. Within the cropped regions are blue move icons. If you don't see blue icons, as shown in Figure 3.59, you need to select the crop region again.
6. Slide the sections closer together by clicking the top icon and moving the section down. (Be careful; if you slide them too close together, you'll get a warning telling you that the two regions are being joined back to one.)
7. Save the model.

You now have nice control over how the details are shown. Let's go back and learn how to make the section marker more aesthetically pleasing.

Splitting a Section Segment

One more section item, and then you're finished! Sometimes you need to split (or *jog*) a section. You do this to show items that aren't necessarily in line with one another. You can accomplish this in Revit Architecture as follows:

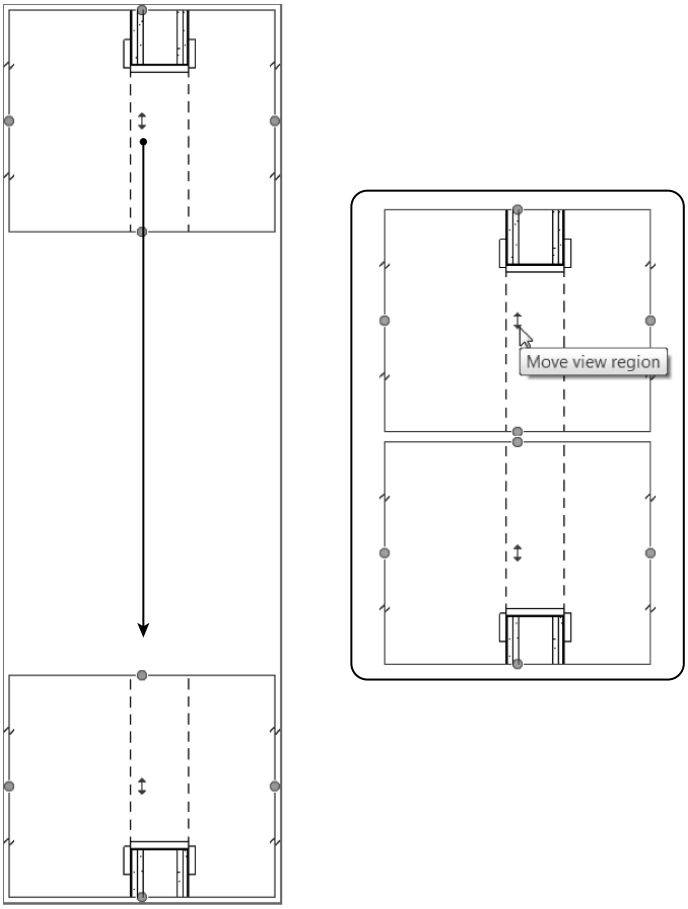


FIGURE 3.59: Sliding the view regions tighter together

1. Open the Level 1 floor plan.
2. On the View tab, click the Section button. (You can also grab a section from the Quick Access toolbar.)
3. In the Type Selector, select Building Section.
4. Pick a point above the corridor that connects to the east wing of the building for the section head, and then pick a point well below the bottom of the corridor, as shown in Figure 3.60.
5. In the Project Browser, find the section you just made and rename it **East Corridor Section**.

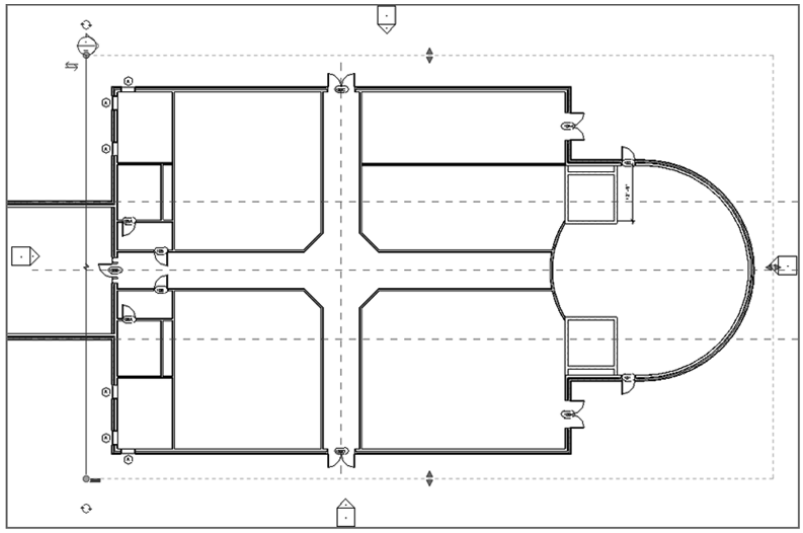


FIGURE 3.60: Adding another section to the model

6. Select the new section marker.
7. On the Section panel of the Modify | Views tab, click the Split Segment button.
8. Pick a point along the section line just below the corridor, as shown in Figure 3.61.

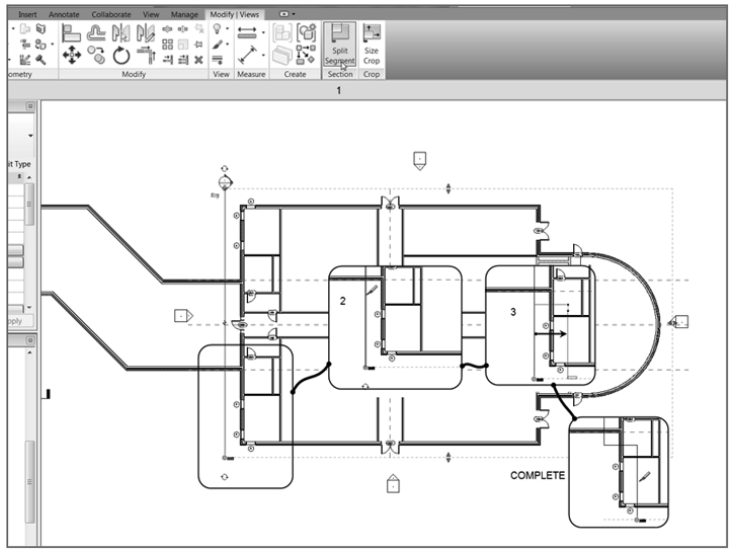


FIGURE 3.61: Jogging a section calls for splitting the segment.

9. Move your cursor to the right. A jog appears in the section; place the jog into the building. The section is now jogged into the building. Press Esc twice to clear the command.

Finally! You're finished with sections. Just remember that by adding a section to the model, not only are you preparing to build your construction documents, but you're also enabling access to specific elements, thus allowing you to make modifications you otherwise could not have made.

Creating Callouts

Creating an enlarged area of your model will be a task on every project you tackle. Luckily, in Revit Architecture, not only are callouts easy to add to your model but they also directly link to the view to which they refer. This is crucial for project coordination. Another nice thing about callouts is that you can make modifications to the callout view independent of the host view from which you pull the information. The biggest change you make is the scale. Yes, your callout can be at a different scale from the main floor plan.

Here's the procedure for adding callouts:

1. In the Project Browser, under Sections (Wall Section), open the Corridor Entry Section.
2. Find the View tab on the Ribbon.
3. On the View tab, click the Callout button, as shown in Figure 3.62.
4. Pick a window around the area where the corridor firewall meets the exterior wall with the brick façade, as shown in Figure 3.63.
5. In the Project Browser, there is a new Sections (Wall Section) item. Its name is Callout of Corridor Entry Section—which is fine just the way it is. Press Esc.

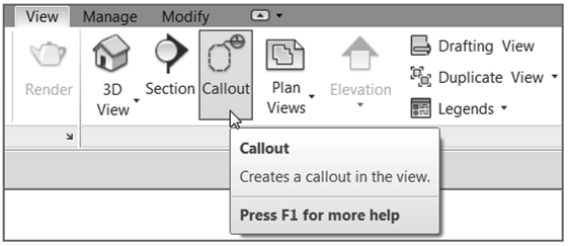


FIGURE 3.62: The Callout button is located on the View tab.

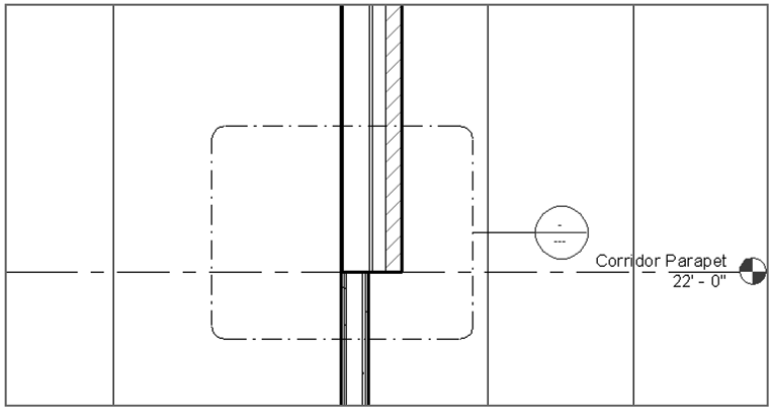


FIGURE 3.63: The callout area is directly related to the view it's calling out.

6. Select the callout you just added by picking any point along the line. A bunch of blue grips appear. These grips enable you to stretch the shape of the callout.
7. Pick the grip that connects the callout bubble to the leader coming from the callout window.
8. Drag the bubble to the location shown in Figure 3.64.
9. Pick the blue midpoint grip on the leader and create an elbow, as shown in Figure 3.64.

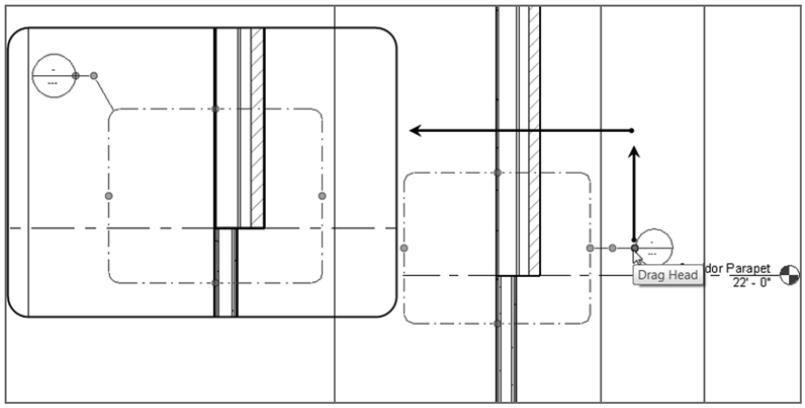


FIGURE 3.64: Adjusting callouts will be a common task.

10. In the Project Browser, find Callout Of Corridor Entry Section under the Sections (Building Section) category, and open the view. (You can also double-click the callout bubble to open the view.)
11. With the section open, select the crop region, as shown in Figure 3.65.
12. Change the scale to 1′ 1/2″ = 1′– 0″ (1:5 mm).

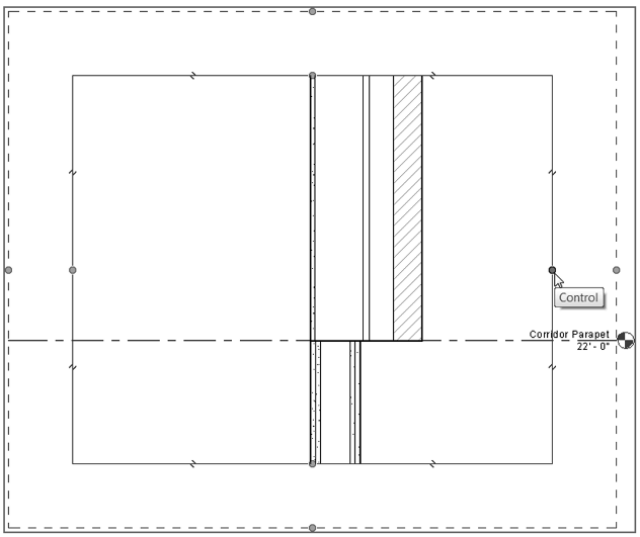


FIGURE 3.65: Selecting the crop region

After you select the crop region, you see an additional region that consists of a dotted line. This is called an *annotation region*, and it gives you a gutter in which to place text outside the area that is physically being cropped.

13. Type **WT**. This tiles the windows you have open.

The callout window is selected in the Corridor Entry Section along with the crop region in your callout. That's because the two objects are one and the same (see Figure 3.66).

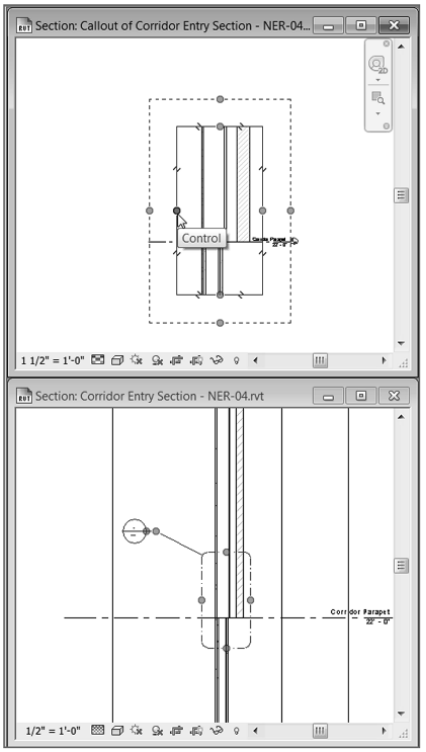


FIGURE 3.66: Modify the crop region by selecting it and stretching the grip.

14. Stretch the crop region closer to the actual wall, as shown in Figure 3.66.
15. Save the model. You'll use this detail in future chapters to get the model ready for construction documents.

The crop region and the callout outline are the same. If you modify one, the other changes accordingly.

Now that you've created a callout for a detail, let's go to the plan and create some callouts there. It would be nice to have some typical lavatory callouts as well as a typical elevator callout.

1. In the Project Browser, go to Floor Plan Level 1. (It may need to be maximized because you tiled the windows in the previous exercise.) Make sure it's a floor plan, not a ceiling plan.
2. Zoom in on the area shown in Figure 3.67.

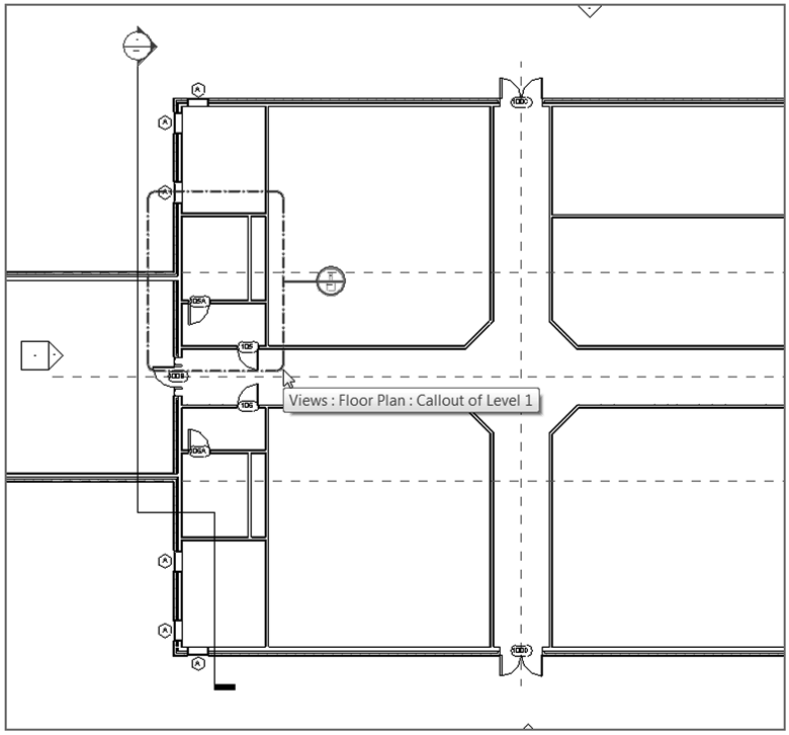


FIGURE 3.67: Creating a plan callout

3. On the View tab, select Callout.
4. Pick a window around the lavatory, as shown in Figure 3.67.
5. In the Project Browser, under the Floor Plans category is Callout Of Level 1. Right-click Callout Of Level 1, and select Rename.
6. Rename it **Typical Men's Lavatory**.
7. Open the Typical Men's Lavatory view. Choose Zoom To Fit.
8. The detail level is set to Coarse. Change it to Fine. Note that the callout is placed in the Project Browser under the category where it was created; you won't see a "callouts" category.

TIP You may have noticed that you've been opening quite a few views. It's a good idea to close the views you don't need open, because they could slow you down a tad. To close views, choose Window ➢ Close Hidden Windows.

9. Save the model.
10. Open the Level 1 floor plan.
11. Create a callout for the women's room below the corridor (directly below the men's room).
12. Name the new callout **Typical Women's Lavatory**.
13. Create one more callout around the elevator shaft in the east wing, as shown in Figure 3.68.

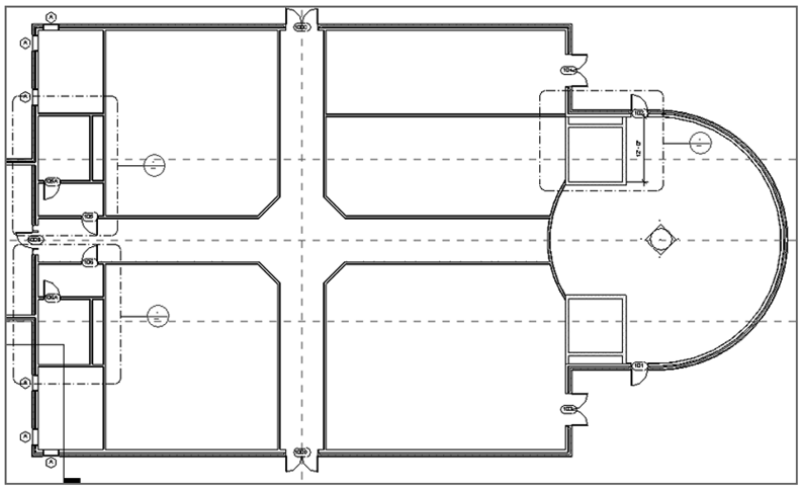


FIGURE 3.68: The plan showing the three typical callouts

14. Name the new callout **Typical Elevator Shaft**.

The boring views are out of the way! Let's create some perspective views of the model. Creating these views is just as easy but requires a specific procedure in which you'll take advantage of the camera function.

Creating and Modifying a Camera View

The camera view is the view with which you'll have by far the most fun. Revit Architecture seems to lend itself naturally to this type of view.

Taking a camera view essentially tells Revit to look at a certain area from a perspective vantage point. Like a section or a callout, such a view may never see the light of day in terms of going on a drawing sheet, but camera views are perfect to see how a model is coming along from a realistic point of view.

Adding a Camera View

To create a camera view, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. On the View tab, click the drop-down arrow in the 3D View button and select Camera, as shown in Figure 3.69. (You can also access this on the Quick Access toolbar.)

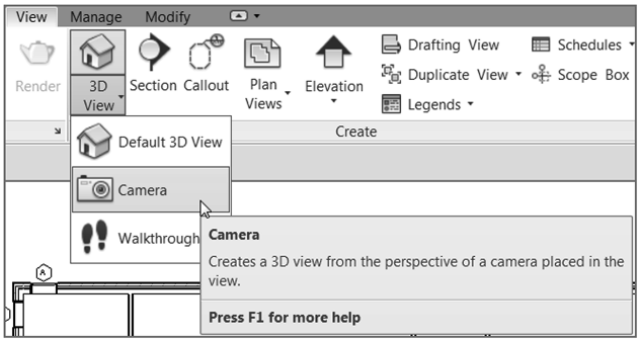


FIGURE 3.69: Adding a camera view

3. Pick a point in the main corridor of the east wing, and move your cursor to the left—down the hallway. You want to take a perspective view as if you were standing in the intersection of the two main corridors, as shown in Figure 3.70.
4. The second point you pick will specify how far the camera reaches into the building. Pick a point past the corridor doors, as shown in Figure 3.71.
5. Unlike when you're placing a section or a callout, Revit automatically opens the new 3D view. This doesn't mean it automatically has a useful name. In the Project Browser, you see a new view in the 3D Views category. It's called 3D View 1. Right-click 3D View 1, and name it **East Wing Corridor Perspective**.

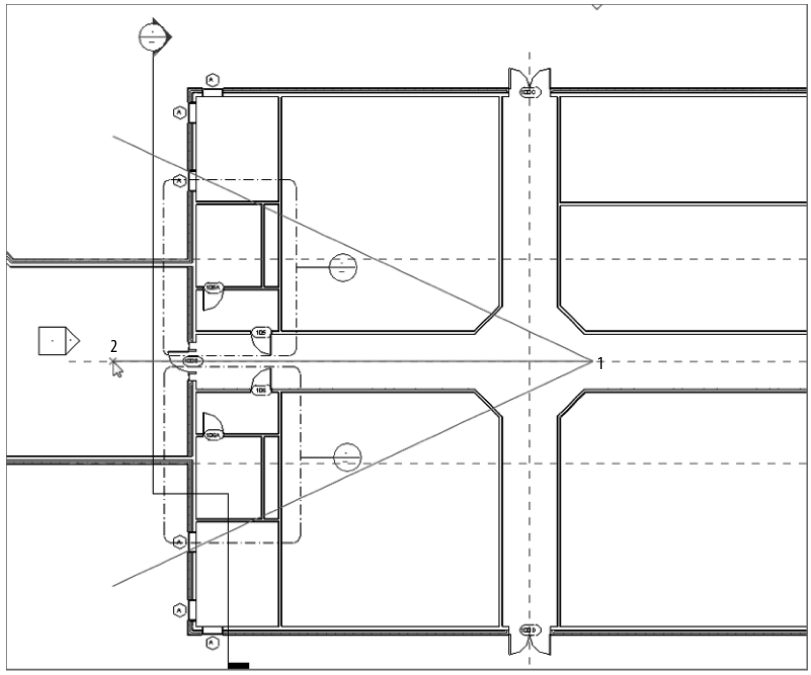


FIGURE 3.70: Placing the camera view in the main corridor

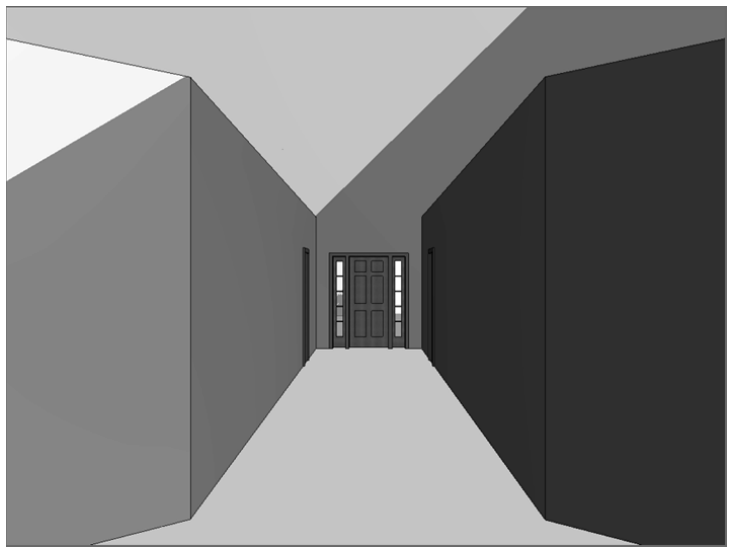


FIGURE 3.71: The perspective view down the east wing corridor

6. On the View Control bar located at the bottom of the view, change Visual Style to Realistic.
7. Two buttons to the right is the Shadows button. For a perspective view, turning on shadows is OK if the view is relatively small. In this example, go ahead and turn them on.

When the camera is in place, you may find it difficult to modify at first. You can do quite a bit to the view, but the following section focuses on modifying the actual camera in the plan.

Modifying the Camera

After you place the camera in the model, Revit doesn't leave behind any evidence that the camera is there. If you need to make adjustments or see the location from which the view is being taken, perform the following steps:

1. Open the Level 1 floor plan.
2. In the Project Browser, right-click the East Wing Corridor Perspective view in the 3D Views category, and select Show Camera, as shown in Figure 3.72.

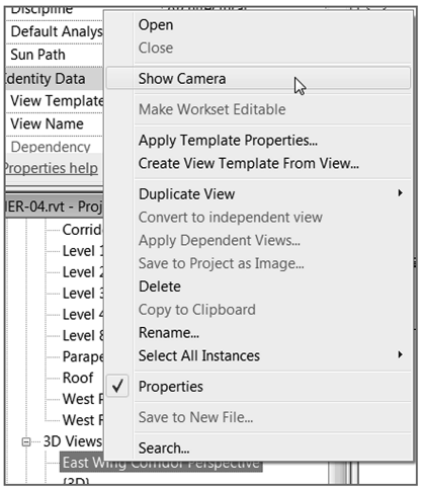


FIGURE 3.72: By finding the view in the Project Browser, you can tell Revit to show the camera in the plan.

The camera appears in the plan temporarily so you can see it. In the view, the camera icon is a triangle and a straight line. You can physically move the

camera, and you can also adjust the grip on the midpoint of the triangle to swivel and to look farther into the model. Figure 3.73 shows the perspective view.

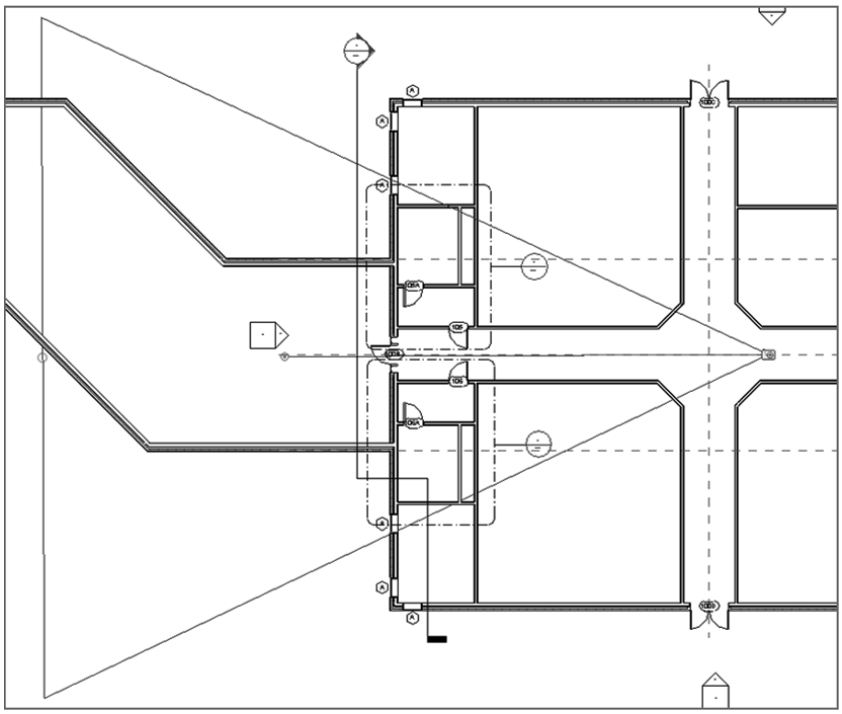


FIGURE 3.73: The perspective view

Creating an Elevation

I saved the best view—or at least, the most popular—for last. Elevations are essential for any project. They're so essential, in fact, that Revit provides four of them before you place a single wall into the model. The four shapes that represent houses that were in the model at the beginning of the book are elevation markers, as shown in Figure 3.74. These markers are typically handy but are most certainly now in the way. The first thing you need to do is to move one of them out of the way. The second thing you need to do is to create a few new ones!

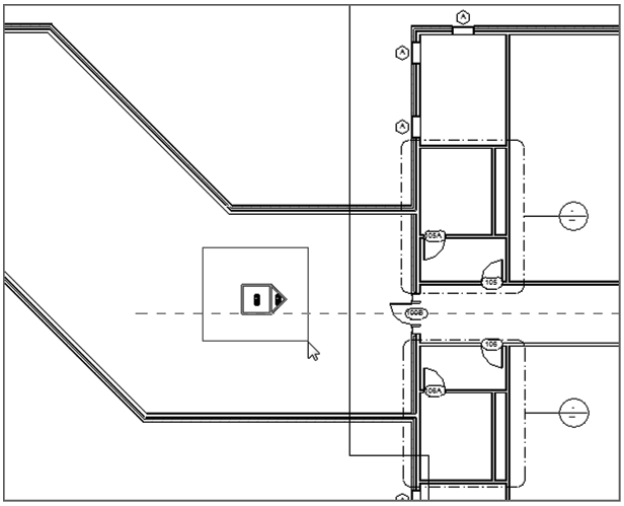


FIGURE 3.74: The elevation marker is right in the way!

To start manipulating elevations, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Level 1 floor plan. In the eastern part of the corridor is an elevation. Yours may be in a slightly different location than the book's example, but it needs to be moved nonetheless (see Figure 3.74).

   You're about to move the elevation marker. To do so, however, you need to break down what an elevation marker comprises. It's actually two separate items: the square box is the elevation, and the triangle is the part of the marker that activates the view, as shown in Figure 3.75. To move this elevation marker, you must pick a window around both items and move them together. If you don't, the view will stay in its original location, leaving you wondering what is wrong with your elevation.

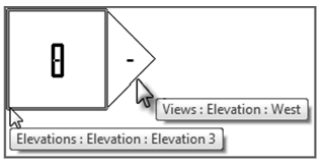


FIGURE 3.75: The elevation marker is broken down into two pieces. You need to move both together by picking a window around the entire symbol.

2. Pick a window around the elevation marker. Make sure you aren't picking any other items along with it.
3. Move your mouse over the selection. Your cursor turns into a move icon with four move arrows, as shown in Figure 3.76.

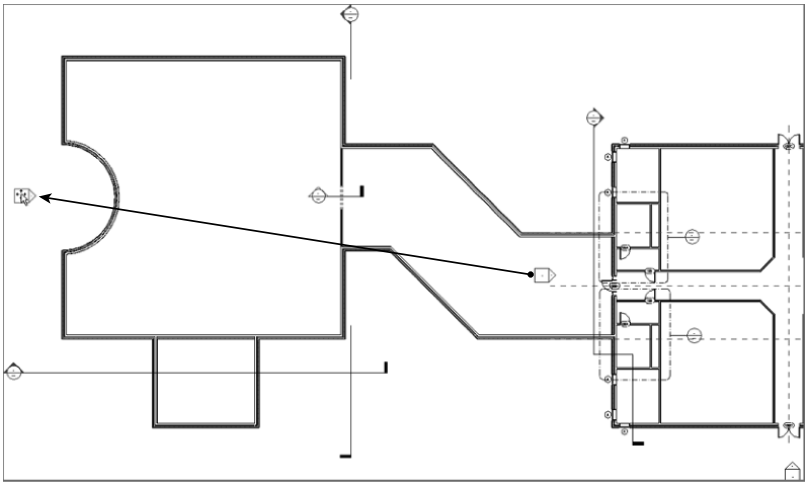


FIGURE 3.76: You can drag the elevation marker when the entire item is selected.

4. Drag the elevation marker to the west side of the building (see Figure 3.76).

Now that the elevation marker is out of the corridor, it's time to make a new one. To do so, make sure you're in the Level 1 floor plan, and follow these steps:

1. On the View tab, click the Elevation button, as shown in Figure 3.77.
2. In the Type Selector, make sure Exterior Elevation is current.

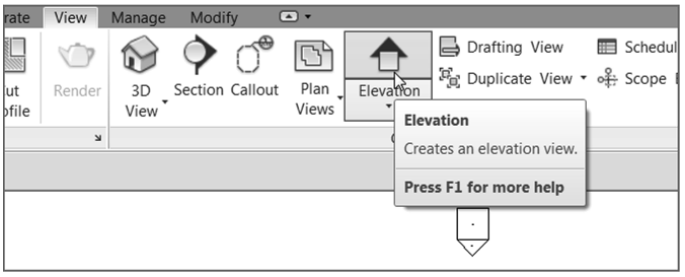


FIGURE 3.77: The Elevation button on the View tab

3. Move your cursor around the perimeter of the building. Notice that the elevation marker follows the profile of the exterior walls. This is a great thing!

WARNING When you're creating an elevation of a radial wall or nonlinear item, be sure you know the exact angle at which you're placing the elevation marker. When you're in the elevation view, you may get a false sense of the true dimensions based on the view's perspective. Draw a reference plane if you need to, and then place the elevation on that plane.

4. Pick a place for the elevation, as shown in Figure 3.78, and press Esc to terminate the command.

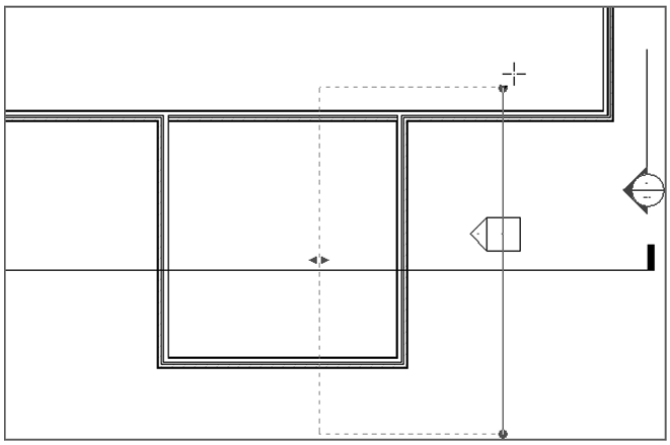


FIGURE 3.78: The elevation is placed. You can select the view arrow and move the extents of the elevation into the building.

5. When the elevation is placed, select the triangle. You see the same extents window that you saw in the previous section (see Figure 3.78). This controls how deep into the model you're viewing, and it also shows you the length of the section. Because you placed this elevation up against a wall, Revit stops the extents of the elevation at that wall.
6. Pick the top grip, and stretch the elevation past the wall, as shown in Figure 3.78.
7. In the Project Browser under Elevations (Building Elevation) is a new elevation. Right-click it, and rename it **West Wing Southeast Elevation**.

8. Open the elevation.
9. On the View Control bar, change the scale to 1/4″ = 1′–0″ (1:50 mm).
10. On the View Control bar, set the detail level to Fine. (You can also set these in the Properties dialog at any time.)
11. Save the model.

You've added a new exterior elevation. You can add an interior elevation as well. It's just as easy and much more fun!

Interior Elevations

The difference between an exterior elevation and an interior elevation is the same as the difference between a building section and a wall section. Both interior and exterior elevations are executed the same way: by selecting the View tab on the Design bar. The only difference is that you can make a choice between the two in the Type Selector in the Options bar. To add an interior elevation, perform these steps:

1. Go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. On the View tab, click the Elevation button.
3. In the Type Selector, choose Elevation : Interior Elevation, and place it in the area shown in Figure 3.79.

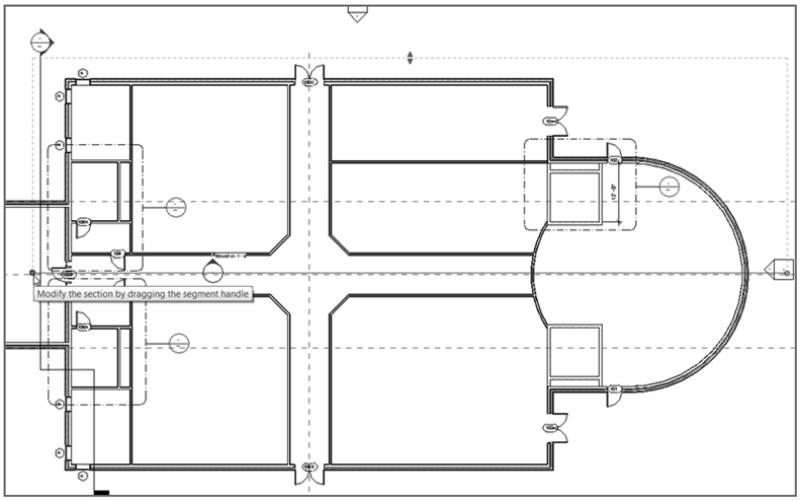


FIGURE 3.79: Adding an interior elevation and making the adjustments

4. Hover your cursor in the corridor near a point shown in the middle of Figure 3.79. Notice that when you move your cursor up, the arrow flips up. When you move your pointer down, the arrow flips down.
5. Make sure the arrow in the elevation target is pointing up, and then pick a point along the horizontal corridor, as shown at the right of Figure 3.79, to place the elevation. Once it's placed, press Esc to terminate the command.
6. After you place the elevation, select the arrow. Notice that the extents are outside the building. (This occurs in most cases. If it doesn't, you're good to go.) Select the elevation again and, on the left side, pick the blue grip and drag the left extent to the point shown at the left in Figure 3.79. Repeat the process for the right side as well.
7. In the Project Browser, there's a new elevation under the Elevations (Interior Elevation) category. Right-click the new elevation (Revit will call it Elevation 1 – a or something similar), and call it **East Wing Corridor North Elevation**.
8. Open the new view called East Wing Corridor North Elevation.
9. Notice that the crop region extends all the way up to the parapet. Select the crop region, and drag the top down to Level 2, as shown in Figure 3.80.

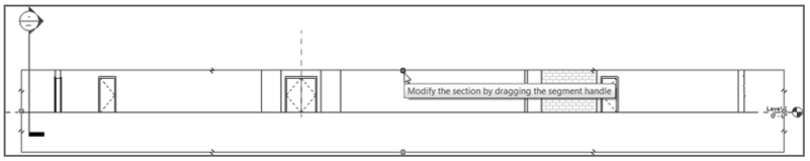


FIGURE 3.80: Stretching the grip down to crop the view

In the elevation's view, you can drag the crop region down to show only that floor. If you would rather see all of the floors, perhaps you should use a section rather than an elevation.

NOTE If you had floors already placed in the model, Revit would create the interior elevation so that it extended only to this geometry. Because you don't have floors, Revit doesn't know where to stop. If you happen to place an elevation without floors and put them in later, Revit won't make the adjustment. You'll have to adjust the interior elevation manually for the new floors.

Let's create some more elevations.

1. Go to Floor Plan Level 1. Zoom into the east wing entry area, as shown in Figure 3.81.

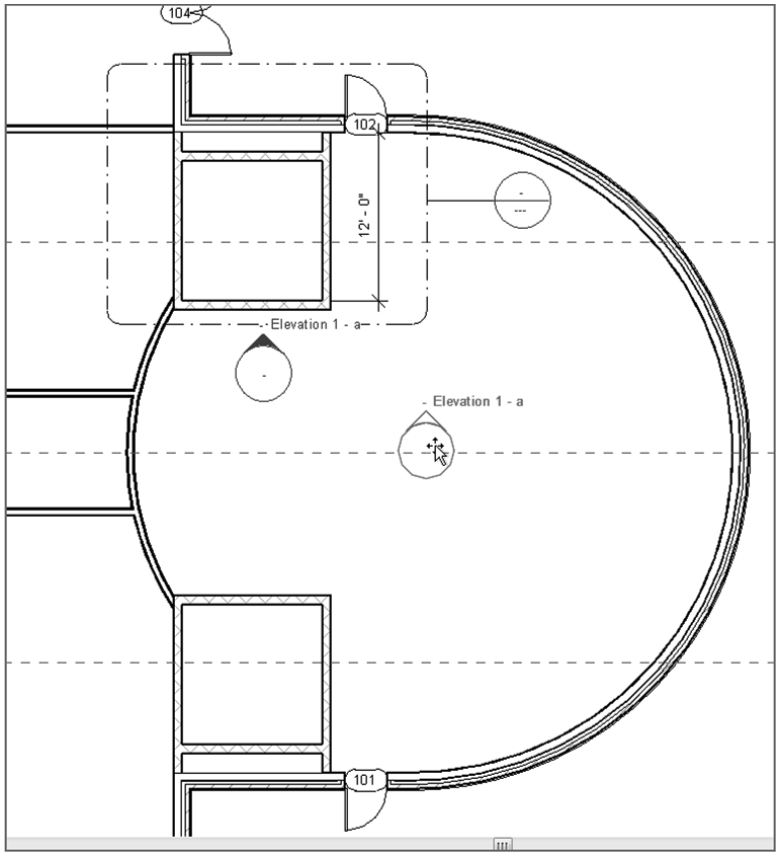


FIGURE 3.81: Add the elevation marker as shown here, and then move it to a new location.

2. On the View tab, click the Elevation button.
3. Place an elevation marker in an area similar to the one shown in Figure 3.81, and then move it to the center of the lobby.

TIP Notice that when you're trying to place the elevation in the entry area, it seems to wander all over the place. This is because the elevation is trying to locate the radial geometry. The safest bet in this situation is to find a straight wall and aim the elevation at that wall. In this case, you should aim the elevation at the bottom of the elevator shaft. When the elevation marker is in place, you can then move it to where you need it to be.

4. With the elevation marker centered in the lobby, select the round bubble. Four blue boxes appear, as shown in Figure 3.82. These boxes

let you turn on multiple views. Turn on all four views, as shown in Figure 3.82.

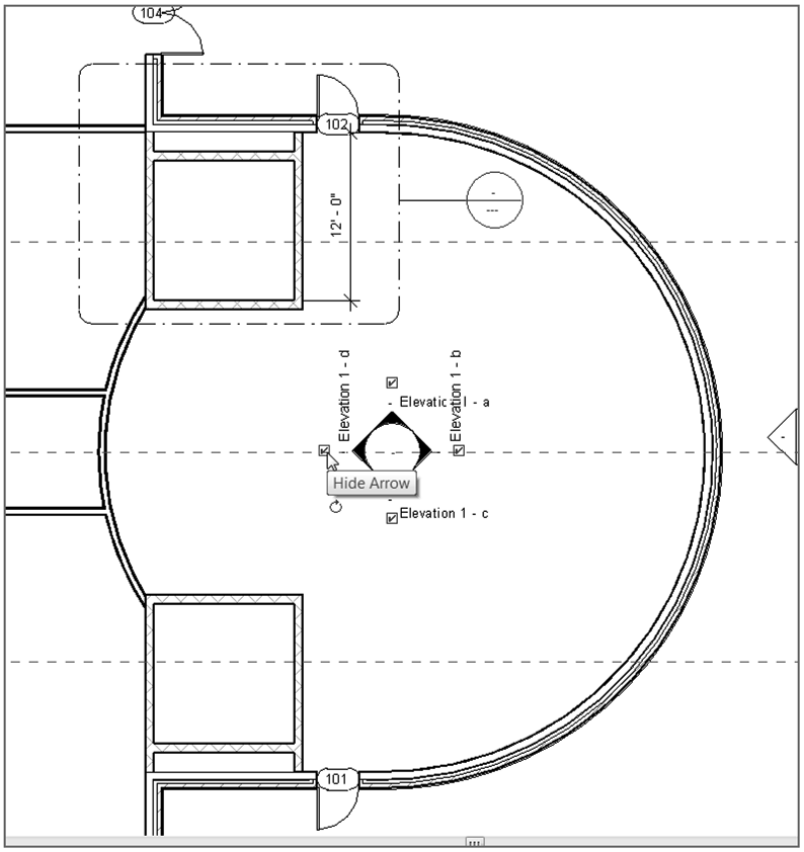


FIGURE 3.82: Turn on all four views in the lobby.

With the four elevations turned on, you have some naming to do! Up to this point, you have been going to the Project Browser to rename the elevations. Let's explore another way to rename an elevation and to view its properties as well.

Elevation Properties

With each view comes a new set of properties. For example, when you made the perspective view of the corridor, you set Visual Style to Shaded, and you turned on shadows. Normally, in an interior elevation, you don't want to do this. Revit allows you to have separate view properties on a view-by-view basis.

To access the View Properties dialog, follow these steps:

1. On the interior elevation with the four arrows, select only the arrow facing up (north).
2. The Properties dialog provides a wealth of information about that view. You have a multitude of options as well. Find the View Name option under the Identity Data heading, and change it to **East Wing Entry North Elevation**, as shown in Figure 3.83.

By changing the value in the Properties dialog, you are, in effect, changing the name in the Project Browser. Again, change something in one place, and it changes in another.

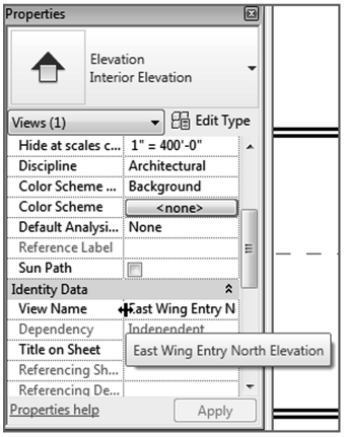


FIGURE 3.83: Changing the View Name setting to East Wing Entry North Elevation

3. Select the East Wing Entry North Elevation again. Notice that the view's extents are stretching past the entry atrium. Pick the blue grips at the end of the elevations, and bring them into the atrium area, as shown in Figure 3.84. Also, drag the view limit up to show the radial exterior wall (see Figure 3.84).
4. Click the elevation arrow facing left (west).
5. Change View Name to **East Wing Entry West Elevation**.
6. Click the arrow facing down (south).
7. Change View Name to **East Wing Entry South Elevation**.
8. Click the arrow facing right (east).
9. Change View Name to **East Wing Entry East Elevation**.

10. Select each elevation, and adjust the view's extents as you did for the north elevation.
11. Save the model.

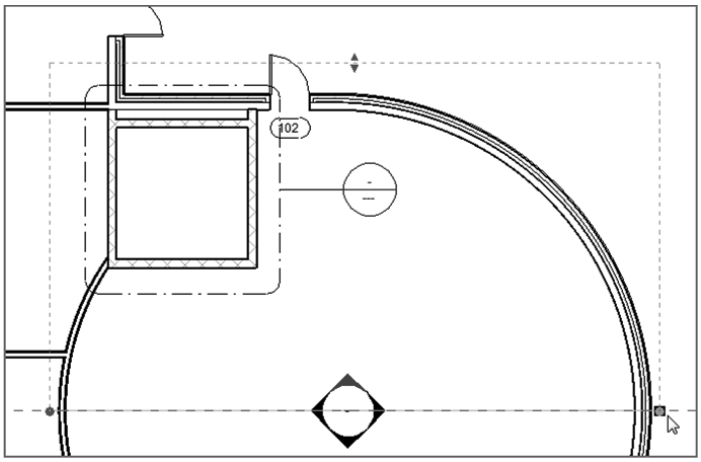


FIGURE 3.84: Making the adjustments to bring the view back into a reasonable range

The actual view names appear in the plan. This is nice, but unfortunately it leaves no room for anything else other than the view. Plus, no construction documents have these names right in the plan (at least, none that I have ever seen). You can turn off this feature.

Now that you can place and modify annotations, let's delve into their physical properties.

Annotation Properties

Annotations all have properties you can modify. To change the elevation symbol properties, follow these steps:

1. On the Manage tab, click Settings ➢ Additional Settings ➢ Elevation Tags.
2. At the top of the Type Properties dialog, you see Family: System Family: Elevation Tag. Below that is Type. Change Type from 1/2″ (13 mm) Square to 1/2″ (13 mm) Circle (see Figure 3.85).

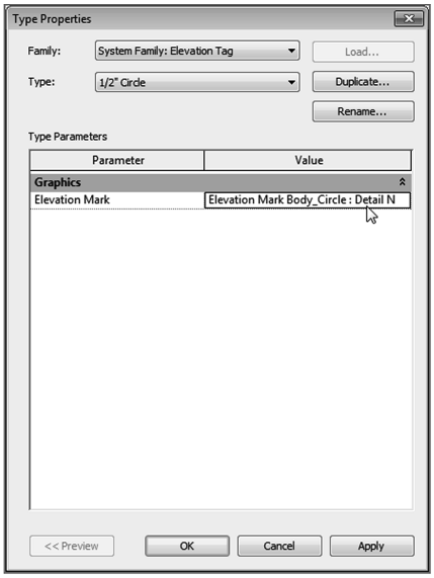


FIGURE 3.85: Modifying the properties for the elevation markers

3. In Type Parameters, under Graphics, change Elevation Mark to Elevation Mark Body_Circle : Detail Number.
4. Click OK.
5. Save your work.
6. Zoom back in on the elevation markers. They should look like Figure 3.86.

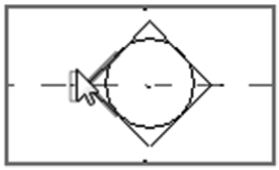


FIGURE 3.86: The revised, less-obtrusive elevation markers

NOTE It's Revit time! No longer will you see "dumb" placeholder information in a tag. When you create your construction documents and put these views on sheets, Revit will automatically fill out tags with the correct information. To take it one step further, you can tell Revit not to print these annotations if the views they represent aren't on a sheet.

The ability to add elevations is a must. As you can see, physically adding an elevation is simple. It does, however, take practice to manipulate elevations to look the way you want.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ **create levels and constrain walls to stretch or shrink if the level's elevation information changes in any way**
- ✔ **cut wall sections and building sections through the model**
- ✔ **create detail views, allowing you to add plan sections through a wall or a building section**
- ✔ **create a callout view and control the crop region**
- ✔ **add a camera to the model, giving the user a nice perspective of a certain area**
- ✔ **create interior and exterior elevations within the model**

CHAPTER 4

Working with the Autodesk Revit Tools

You can get only so far when allowing a computer application to place architectural components into a model. At some point, the application needs to be flexible enough to enable users to employ their own sets of drafting and modifying tools, thus providing architects and designers with the freedom to create their own architecture and construction procedures. The Autodesk® Revit® Architecture program does provide the basic modify and edit commands, which are quite common in other drafting applications such as Autodesk® AutoCAD® software and MicroStation, but Revit does this with a little more flair and some differences in procedure as compared to a 2D drafting application.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- **The basic edit commands**
- **The Array command**
- **The Mirror command**
- **The Align tool**
- **The Split Element command**
- **The Trim command**
- **The Offset command**
- **Copy/Paste**
- **Creating the plans**

The Basic Edit Commands

In this chapter, you'll learn how to use the geometry you've already placed in the model to build an actual working plan. As you manipulate the plan, all of the other views you made in Chapter 3, "Creating Views," will reflect those changes. You'll start with the edit commands.

NOTE As with the previous chapters, it's important that you become comfortable with the material in this chapter. If you're still not comfortable with the first few chapters, I recommend reviewing them now. You may pick up something you missed the first time around and have a "lightbulb" moment.

You aren't going to get very far in Revit without knowing the edit commands. Up to this point, I have been avoiding the edit commands with a few exceptions. There will be some overlap in some of the chapters, because many aspects of Revit span multiple topics.

The basic commands covered in this section are Move, Copy, and Rotate. Then, in the following sections, you'll move on to Array, Mirror, Align, Split Element, Offset, Copy/Paste, and Trim. Each command is as important as the next at this stage of the game. Some are obvious, whereas others can take some practice to master.

The first command, Move, is one you'll recognize from previous chapters. Move is probably the most heavily used command in Revit.

The Move Command

The Move command is generally used to create a copy of an item while deleting the original item.

NOTE Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit won't accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.

Begin by finding the model you're using to follow along. If you haven't completed the previous chapter procedures, open the file called `NER-4.rvt` at the book's website, `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. Go to the `Chapter 4` folder to find the file.

To use the Move command, perform the following steps:

1. Go to Level 1 under the Floor Plans category in the Project Browser.
2. Zoom in on the west wing.

3. Select the south wall of the bump-out at the south side of the west wing, as shown in Figure 4.1.

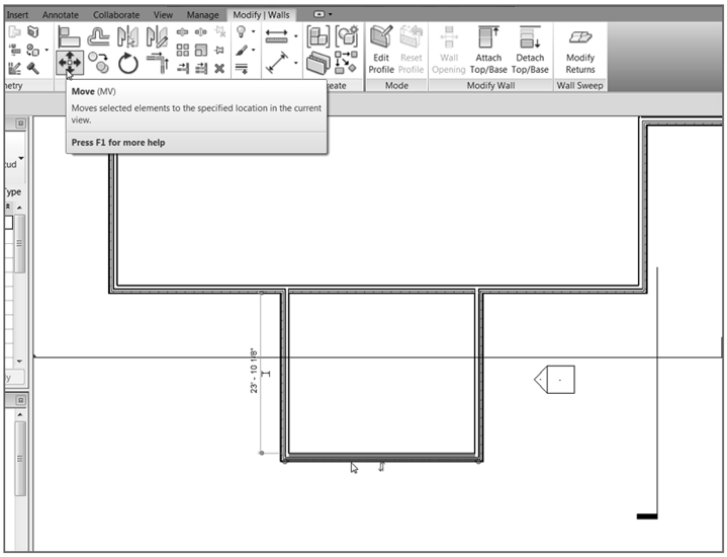


FIGURE 4.1: Select the wall to be moved. The Move button now appears on the Ribbon.

4. On the Modify | Walls tab is the Move button (see Figure 4.1); click it.
5. Now that the Move command is running, you see some choices on the Options bar.

   Constrain If you select Constrain, you can move only at 0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees.

   Disjoin If you select Disjoin, then when you move the wall, any walls that are joined to it won't be affected by the move. The wall will lose its join.

6. To start moving the item, you must first pick a base point for the command. Pick a point somewhere toward the middle of the wall, as shown in Figure 4.2.

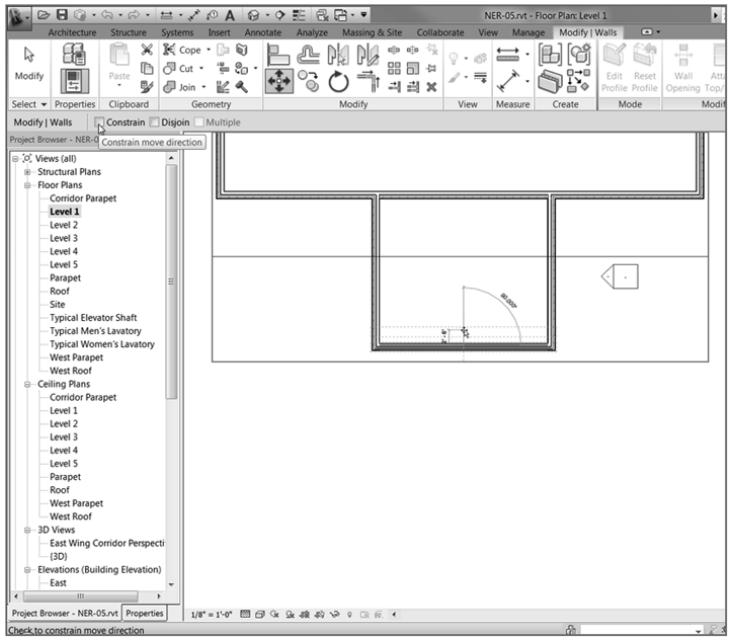


FIGURE 4.2: Choices on the Options bar. The first point has been picked, and the wall is being moved up.

7. After you pick this point, move your cursor straight up. You see a blue dimension. At this point, you have two choices: you can eyeball the increment, or you can type the increment you want (see Figure 4.2).

8. Type in the value 2′–6″ (750 mm), and press Enter. The wall moves 2′–6″ (750 mm). Notice that the adjacent walls move with it (see Figure 4.3). In Revit, there is no stretch command.

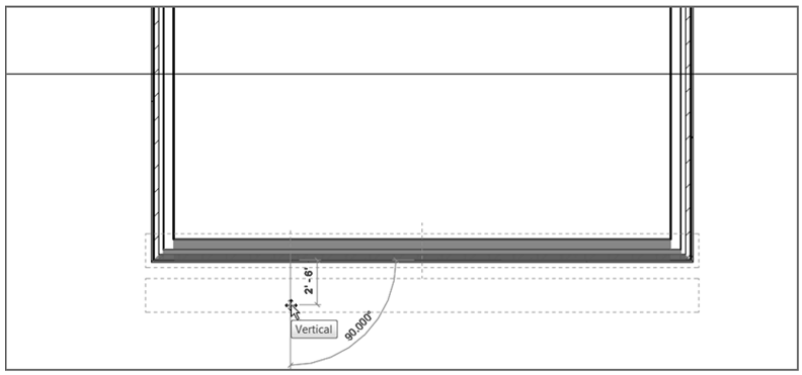


FIGURE 4.3: Moving the wall 2′–6″ (750 mm) also means that any adjoining walls will be adjusted along with it.

TIP Revit will accept a few different values for feet and fractional inches. For example, instead of typing **2′–6″** (which Revit will accept), you can type **2 6**. Just make sure you have a space between the 2 and the 6. Revit will accept that value. If there are fractional increments, you can type **2 6 1/2**, and Revit will accept the value. Or you can type **2′–6 1/2″**. (Metric users can just smile here.)

You may be thinking, "But I used to type my commands!" Well, you still can in Revit. If you type **MV**, Revit launches the Move command.

Now that Move is officially in the history books, it's time to move on to Move's close cousin: the Copy command.

The Copy Command

When you need to make duplicates of an item, Copy is your go-to player. The Copy command works like the Move command, except that it leaves the initial item intact. You can also create multiple copies if necessary.

To start using the Copy command, follow these steps:

1. Make sure you're still in Floor Plan Level 1.
2. Zoom and pan so you're focused on the east wing, as shown in Figure 4.4.

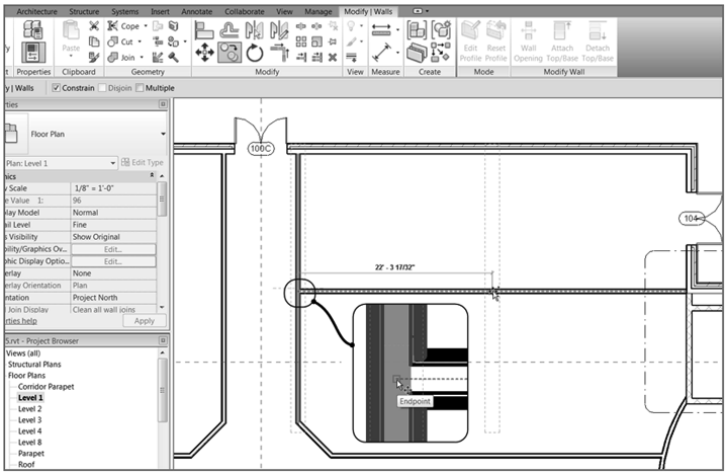


FIGURE 4.4: Creating a copy of the corridor wall

3. Select the right corridor wall (see Figure 4.4).
4. Click the Copy command on the Modify | Walls tab.
5. On the Options bar, check the Constrain toggle.

6. Zoom in on the wall close to the midpoint of the selected wall and the intersection of the horizontal wall that divides this portion of the building (see Figure 4.4).

7. If you hover your cursor in the center of the wall (not near the actual finish faces, but the core of the wall), you'll see a blue dotted centerline indicating that you've found the center of the wall. (If you're having difficulty picking the item, change the detail level to Coarse.)

   Also, if you move your cursor to the right a little, you can position it so that it picks up the horizontal wall's centerline. After you pick up the horizontal wall's centerline, the centerline for the vertical wall will disappear. This is fine.

   When you see that you're snapped to the endpoint of the horizontal wall, pick the point (see Figure 4.4).

8. Move to the right until you pick up the midpoint of the horizontal wall. When you do, pick that point. If the midpoint doesn't appear, type **22′–3″** (**6675** mm) or type **SM** for Snap Mid.

9. Mirror the two walls to the south side of the corridor, as shown in Figure 4.5. The ends of the walls don't meet. This is fine—you'll modify these walls with the Trim command in a moment.

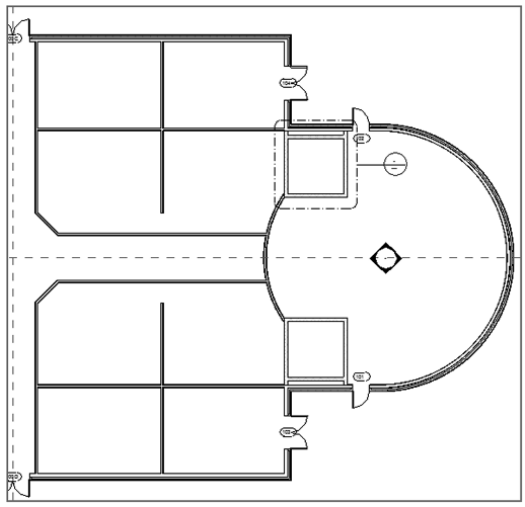


FIGURE 4.5: The two walls copied, segmenting the spaces north and south of the corridor

10. Save the model.

The next step is to rotate an item. Although the Rotate command is a simple concept, Revit does have unique processes involved in this command.

The Rotate Command

The Rotate command enables you to change the polar orientation of an item or a set of items. This command may take a little practice to understand. The good thing, however, is that when you have experience with the Rotate command, you'll be better at other commands that share a similar process.

To use the Rotate command, follow these steps:

1. Open the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Zoom in on the radial portion of the west wing, as shown in Figure 4.6.

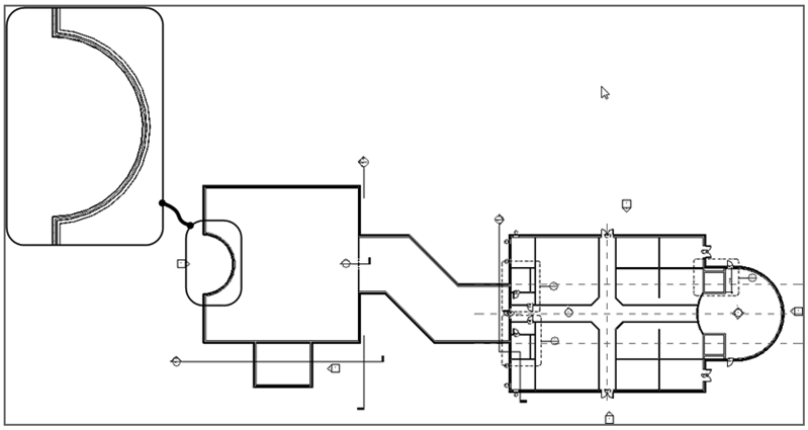


FIGURE 4.6: The radial portion of the west wing

3. You're going to add a new reference plane and rotate it by 45°. To do so, click Ref Plane in the Work Plane panel in the Architecture tab (see Figure 4.7).

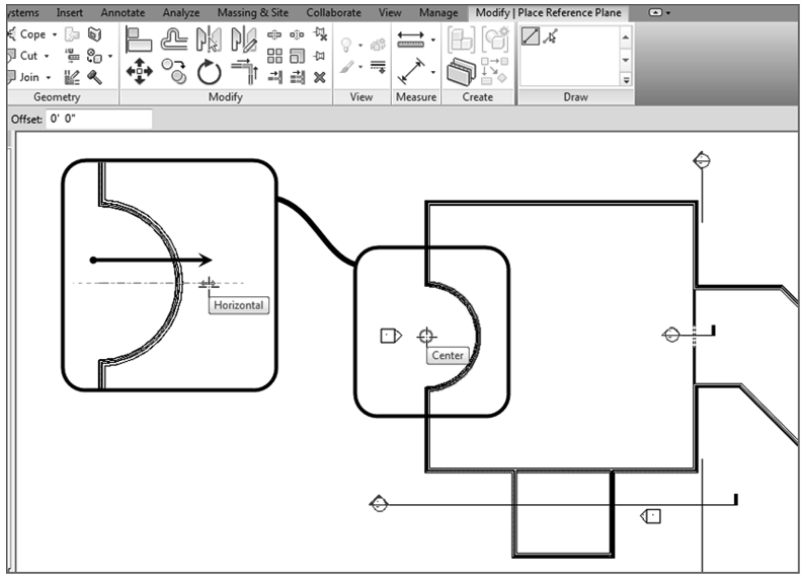


FIGURE 4.7: Establishing a reference plane

4. In the Draw panel, click the Line button (it should be set current by default).
5. For the first point, pick the center point of the radial wall, as shown in Figure 4.7.
6. For the second point, pick a point horizontally to the right, outside the radial wall (again, see Figure 4.7).
7. Press Esc twice, or click Modify.

TIP In Revit, sometimes finding the correct snap can be difficult. To overcome this, you can type the letter **S** followed by the first letter of the snap you want to use. For example, if you wanted to snap to the center of the arc wall, you would start the Ref Plane command (any command works here, but I'm using a reference plane as an example), type **SC**, place the cursor over the arc until the snap marker appears, and then click. This will snap to the center.

WARNING Before you rotate, be careful. Figure 4.7 shows the second point extended past the radial wall, and that is where you generally want it. However, watch out for your snaps. When you pick the second point, be sure to zoom in on the area, ensuring that you aren't inadvertently snapping to the wrong wall.

Now that you've added the reference plane, you can rotate it into place. (Yes, you could have just drawn it at a 45° angle, but you're practicing the Rotate command here.) Follow these steps:

1. Select the reference plane you just drew.
2. On the Modify | Reference Planes tab, click the Rotate button, as shown in Figure 4.8.

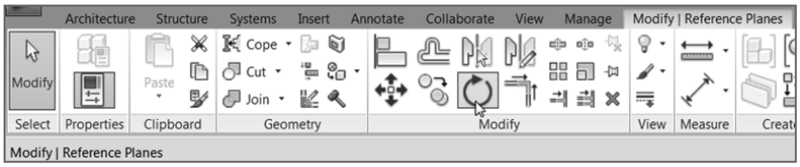


FIGURE 4.8: The Rotate command is active for the specific item you've selected.

3. After you start the Rotate command, look back at the reference plane. Notice the blue dot in the middle of your line. Revit always calculates the center of an object (or group of objects) for the rotate point (see Figure 4.9).

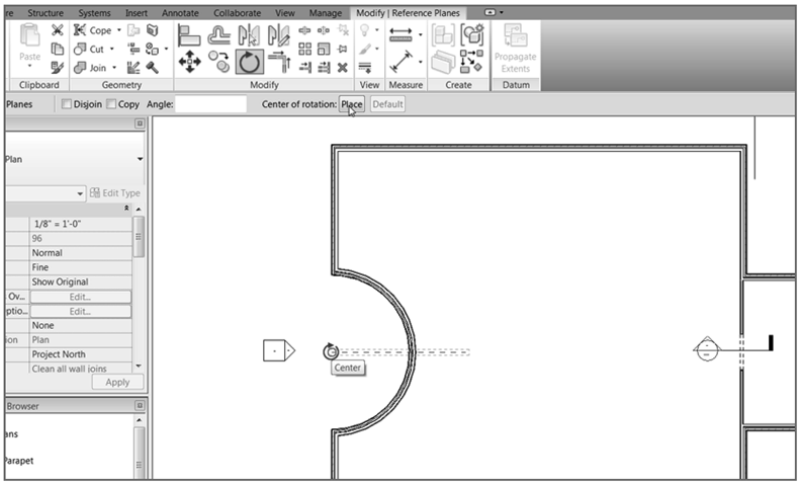


FIGURE 4.9: Relocate the origin point for the rotation.

4. On the Options bar, click the Place button, and select the end point of the reference plane. A temporary rotate icon appears, indicating that you can now move the blue dot (see Figure 4.9).

You can start the Rotate command by typing RO, selecting the item(s) to rotate, and then pressing the spacebar or Enter to place the rotation icon.

5. With the rotate origin in the correct location, it's rotate time! If you swivel your cursor around the reference plane, a line forms from the rotate origin to your cursor. This indicates that the origin is established. Now you need to pick two points. The first point you pick must be in line with the object you're rotating. In this case, pick a point at the right endpoint of the reference plane, as shown in Figure 4.10.

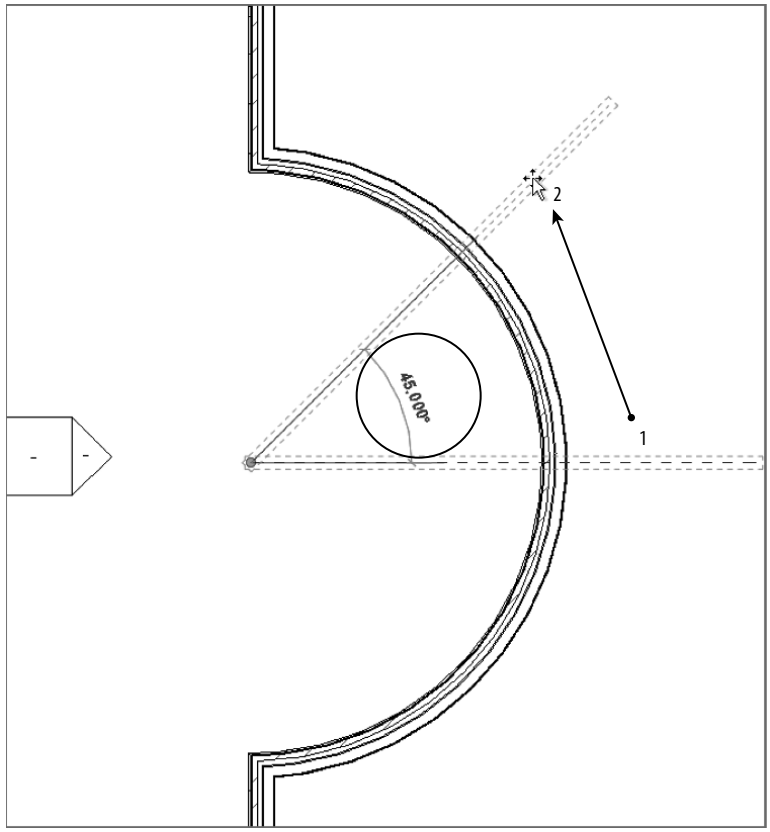


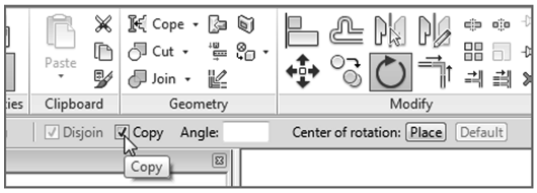
FIGURE 4.10: To rotate an item, you must specify two points.

6. When you move your cursor up, you see an angular dimension. When that angular dimension gets to 45°, pick the second point (see Figure 4.10).
7. Press Esc.

As you're well aware, you'll use the Rotate command quite frequently. Now that you have some experience with the Rotate command and know how Revit wants you to move the pivot point, the next command—Array—will be easy for you to grasp.

Rotate Options

While you're in the Rotate command, don't forget that you have options. The most popular option is to create a copy of the item you're rotating, as shown here:



Another popular option is to specify an angle. This can be difficult, because the correct angle may be the opposite of what you think, resulting in your having to undo the command and then redo the rotation with a negative (–) value.

The Array Command

When you need to create multiple duplicates of an item or a group of items, the Array command is the logical choice. The Array command in Revit functions in a fashion similar to the Rotate command. The similarities of the Array command also extend to the Array command in AutoCAD. You have two basic choices.

- *Radial*, which enables you to array an item around a circle or an arc
- *Linear*, which enables you to array an item in a straight line or at an angle

Let's look at the radial array first.

Radial Array

A *radial array* is based on a radius. If you need items to be arrayed in a circular manner, the radial array is your best choice. Again, after you start the Array command, don't ignore the Options bar. It will guide you through most of the command.

To start using a radial array, follow these steps:

1. Select the 45° reference plane.
2. On the Modify | Reference Planes tab, click the Array button, as shown in Figure 4.11.

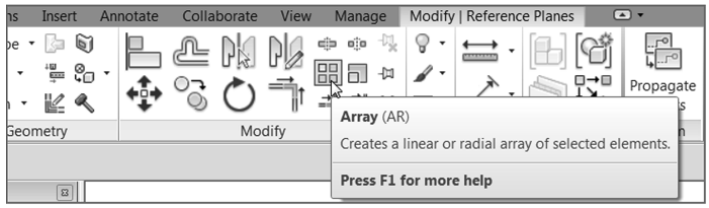


FIGURE 4.11: Select the item to be arrayed first, and then click the Array button on the Modify | Reference Planes tab.

3. With the Array command active, some choices become available on the Options bar, as shown in Figure 4.12. For this procedure, click the Radial button.

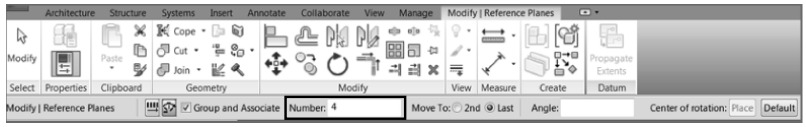


FIGURE 4.12: Setting the options for the Radial array

4. Select the Group And Associate check box.
5. Set Number to 4.
6. Click the Move To: Last button.
7. With the options set, focus your attention on the object being arrayed. Notice the familiar rotate icon.
8. On the Options bar, click the Place button. It's located next to the Origin label, as shown in Figure 4.13.

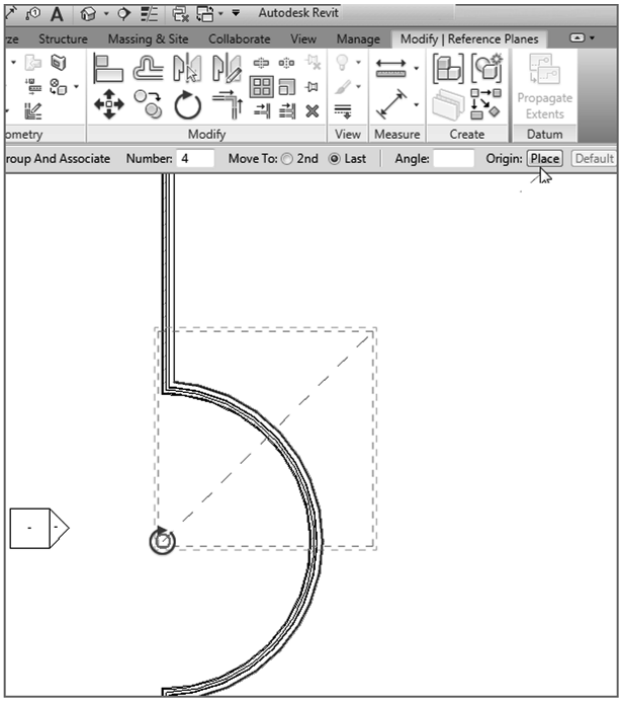


FIGURE 4.13: Place the pivot icon on the endpoint of the item being arrayed.

I Don't Want to Move Anything!

The Move To: Last and the Move To: Second choices are somewhat misleading. You aren't actually "moving" anything. If you choose Move To: Last, for example, Revit places an additional item in the last place you pick, keeping the first item intact. Revit then divides the space between the two items evenly based on the number of items you specify in the options. If you specify four items, Revit still has two items left to divide.

If you choose Move To: Second, Revit places an additional item at the second point picked (just as with Move To: Last), but this time Revit adds additional items beyond the second item. The overall distance is calculated by the distance between the first two items.

9. Click the center/endpoint of the reference plane (see Figure 4.13).
10. With the pivot point in place, specify two points for the array. The first point will be a point along the angle of the item being arrayed. The second point will be a point along the angle on which you want to end.
11. Pick the endpoint of the reference plane you're arraying.
12. Move your cursor down until you see 90°. Then pick the second point (see Figure 4.14).

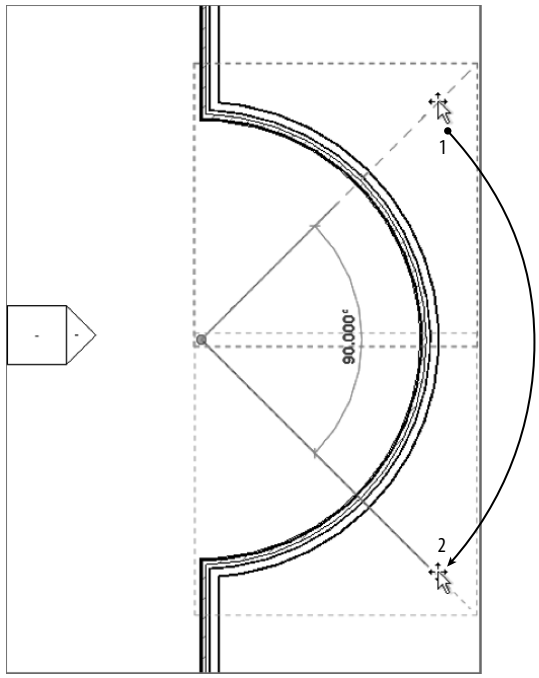


FIGURE 4.14: Specifying the two angles for the radial array

13. Pick (left-click) off into another part of the view. This establishes the array. You should have four reference planes at this point, similar to Figure 4.15.
14. Pick (left-click) one of the reference planes. You see a large, dashed box surrounding the reference plane, and a temporary arc dimension with a blue number 4 at the quadrant. It may be obscured by the arc, as it is in Figure 4.15, but it's there nonetheless.
15. Click the number 4.

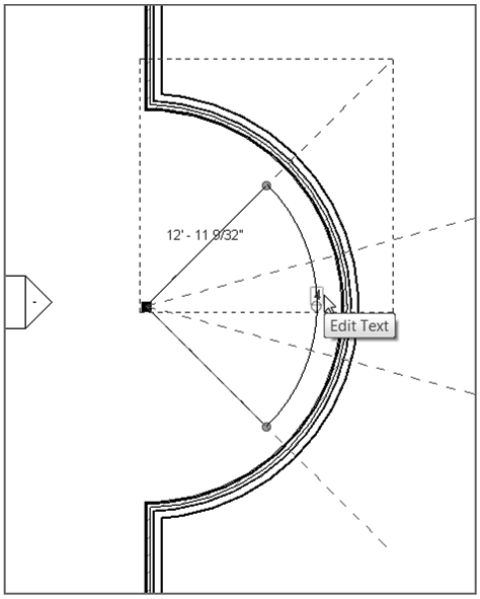


FIGURE 4.15: After the array is created, select one of the arrayed members. Notice that you can change the count.

16. Change the count to 5. Press Enter, or click outside the array count field to set the change.
17. You now have five reference planes, as shown in Figure 4.16.

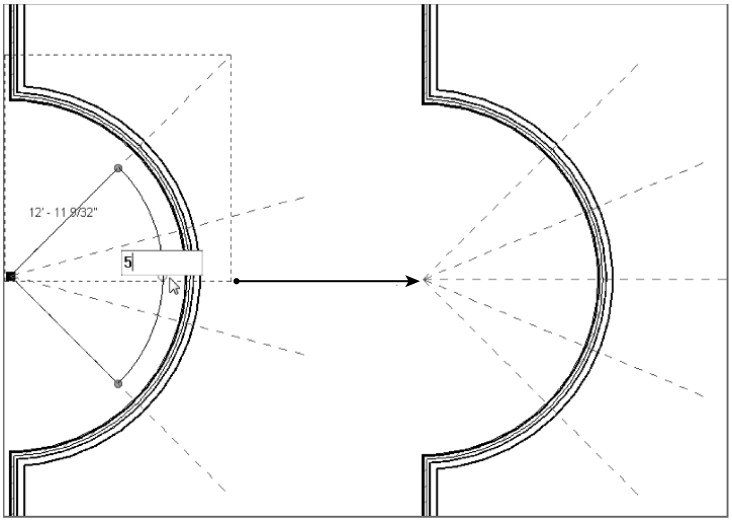


FIGURE 4.16: You can control the number of items in an array group after you create the array.

Getting the hang of radial arrays may take a few projects. The next array type, the linear array, follows the same concept as the radial array, but it's more straightforward. Yes, pun intended.

Linear Array

You may want to create an array along a line, and you can do this in Revit. When you create a *linear array*, you enjoy the same flexibility that you have with a radial array.

The objective of this procedure is to create an array of windows along the north and south walls, on the west side of the building's west wing. To do this, you'll first need to establish two strong reference planes.

To learn how to use the Linear array command, follow these steps:

1. Zoom in on the northwest section of the west wing, as shown in Figure 4.17.

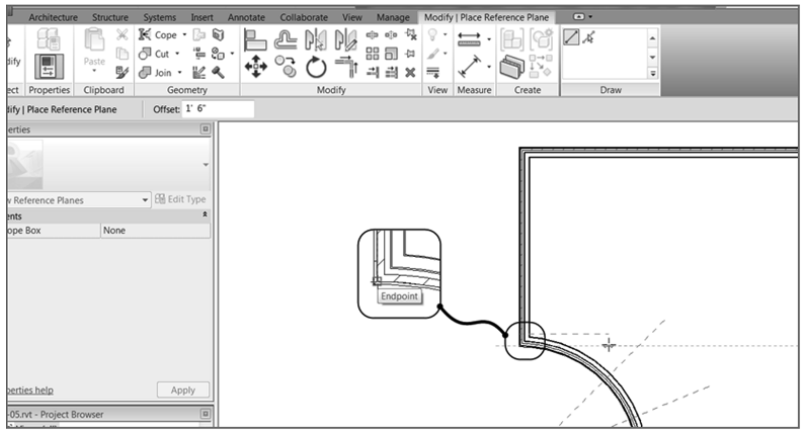


FIGURE 4.17: Creating the reference plane

2. Add two reference planes. You'll use these reference planes to establish the ends of your window array. Go to the Ref Plane command on the Work Plane panel of the Architecture tab.

3. On the Draw panel, keep the Line icon active and add an offset of **1′–6″** (**450** mm)—Imperial users, remember that you can just type **1 6**—on the Options bar.

4. Pick the corner of the radial wall, where it intersects the straight wall, for the first point of the reference plane, as shown in Figure 4.17.
5. Pick a second point similar to that shown in Figure 4.17 to finish the reference plane.
6. With the Ref Plane command still running, repeat the procedure for the top of the wall. You want to pick the top, outside face of brick, avoiding the concrete ledge below, as shown in Figure 4.18.

If you're drawing the reference plane and it keeps going above the wall (as opposed to below the wall), you can tap the spacebar as you're drawing. Doing so flips the side of the wall on which the plane is being drawn.

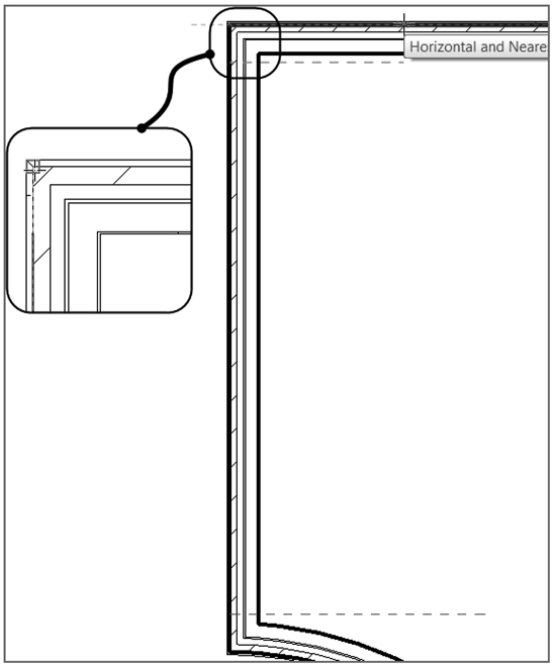


FIGURE 4.18: The two reference planes are established.

Now you need to add a window based on the bottom reference plane. This window will then be arrayed up the wall to meet the northern reference plane. Here are the steps:

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Window button.
2. Change Element Type to Fixed: 24″ × 72″ (610 mm × 1829 mm).
3. Place the window approximately where it's shown in Figure 4.19. You have to move the window in alignment with the reference plane.
4. Press the Esc key.

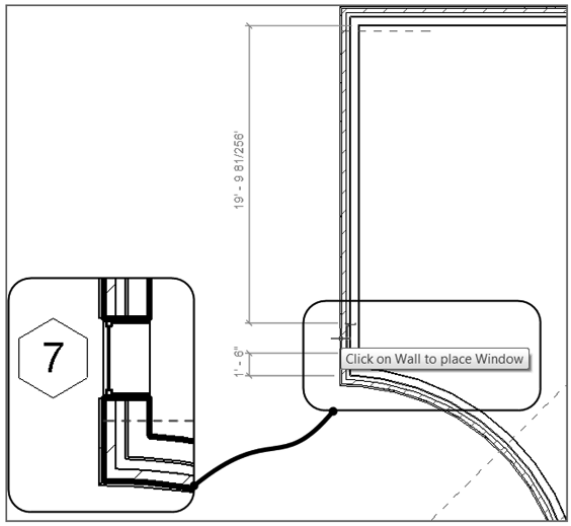


FIGURE 4.19: Adding the window to be arrayed

5. Select the window.
6. On the Modify | Windows tab, click the Move button.
7. Move the window from the bottom, outside corner down to the reference plane, as shown in Figure 4.20.

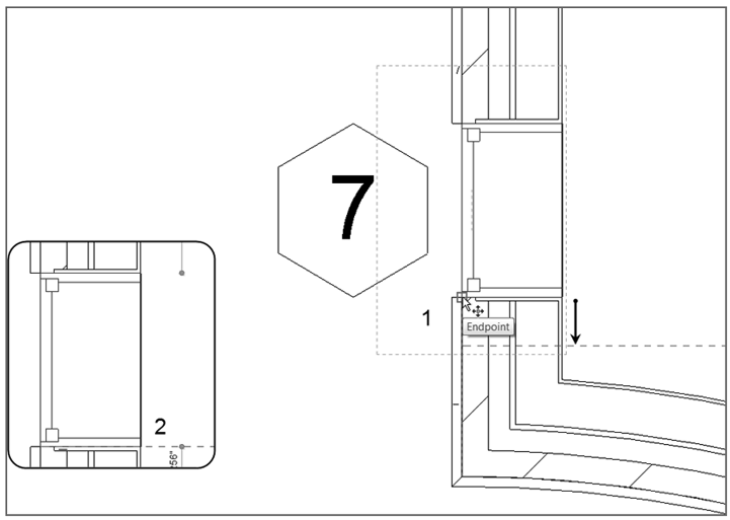


FIGURE 4.20: Moving the window into position

8. Press Esc.
9. Zoom out until you can see the entire wall.
10. Select the window you just inserted into the wall.
11. On the Modify | Windows tab, click the Array button.
12. On the Options bar, select Linear, as shown in Figure 4.21.

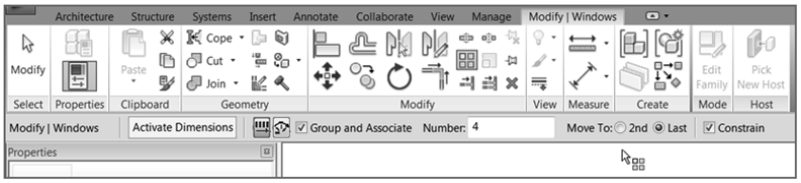


FIGURE 4.21: Choosing the linear array options

13. Select the Group And Associate check box (if it isn't already selected).
14. For Number, enter 4.
15. Select Move To: Last.
16. Pick the top endpoint of the bottom window.
17. Move your cursor up the wall, and pick a point perpendicular to the top reference plane, as shown in Figure 4.22.

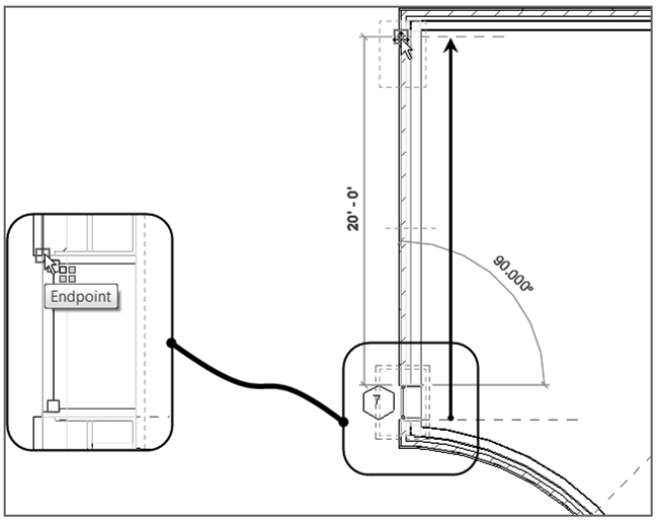


FIGURE 4.22: "Moving" the window to the top reference plane

18. After you pick the second point, you'll have to wait a moment; then Revit evenly fills the void with the two additional windows. Revit also gives you the option of adding more windows. Enter a value of 5, and press Enter (see Figure 4.23).

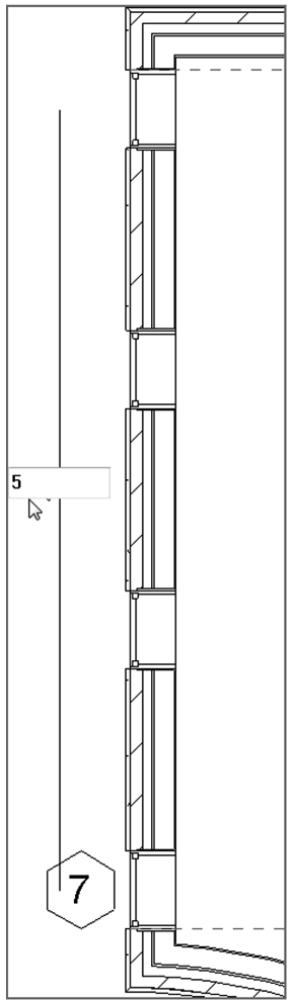


FIGURE 4.23: Changing the number of items in the array. You can always come back to the arrayed group and change this value at any time.

NOTE **After your items are grouped and arrayed, you can still move the end item. Not only can you move the end item in the direction of the array, but you can move it laterally to the array, causing a step in the array.**

With the array completed, it's time to duplicate your efforts on the other side of the radial portion of this wall. As in CAD, at this point you have a few choices. You can repeat the Array command, copy the items, or mirror the items.

The Mirror Command

The Mirror command works exactly as expected: it makes a copy of an object or a group of objects in the opposite orientation of the first item(s). The crucial point to remember is that you'll need to specify a mirror *plane*.

Although you simply couldn't avoid using this command in previous chapters, you need to address and explore the Mirror command officially. The most useful aspect of the Mirror command is that if reference planes already exist in the model, you can pick these planes to perform the mirror, as opposed to sketching a new plane around which to mirror.

The objective of the following example is to mirror the windows to the south side of the west wall.

1. Zoom in on the windows you arrayed in the previous exercise.
2. Select the windows starting from the upper-left corner to the lower-right corner, as shown in Figure 4.24. Remember, you can look at the bottom-right corner of the Revit window to verify that you have five windows selected.

TIP **Oops! You selected the wall. That's OK. You don't need to press Esc and start your selection over. Simply hold down the Shift key and select the wall. It will become deselected.**

3. On the Modify tab, click the Mirror – Pick Axis button, as shown in Figure 4.25.

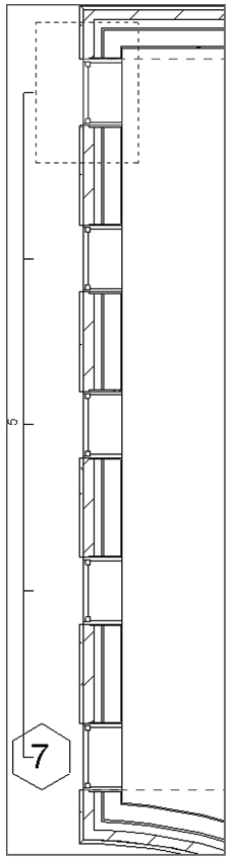


FIGURE 4.24: Selecting the items to be mirrored. Make sure you don't select the wall in which the windows reside.

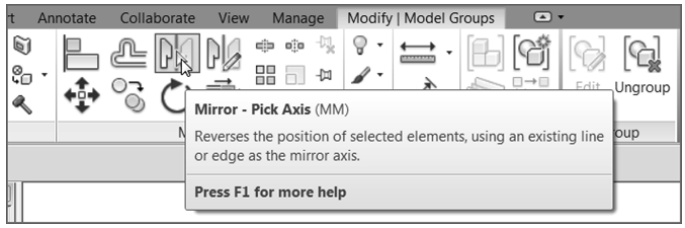


FIGURE 4.25: The Mirror buttons appear when you select an item.

4. Position your cursor over the center reference plane that is part of the Radial array. When you pause, a tooltip indicates that you're about to select the reference plane. When you see this tooltip, select the reference plane, as shown in Figure 4.26.

When you pick the reference plane, Revit mirrors the entire group of windows.

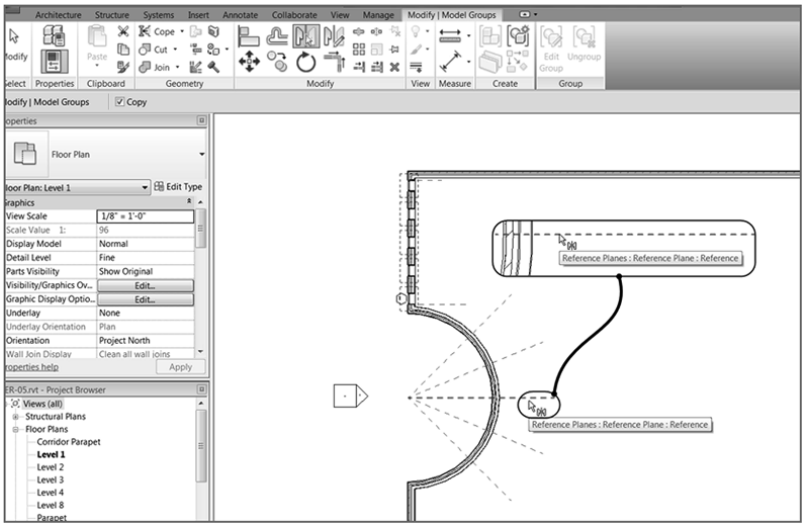


FIGURE 4.26: The line you're going to pick is the reference plane shown here.

5. Zoom out to check the placement of the windows. Don't assume that everything went as planned. Your Level 1 floor plan should resemble Figure 4.27.

NOTE If the mirror went wrong or you aren't comfortable with the results, use the Undo button and try again. Now is the time to practice!

The two straight walls have windows, and it's time to array some windows within the radial portion. The problem is, when you insert a window along a radius, you can't snap it to the intersection of the reference plane and the wall. This is where the Align tool becomes critical.

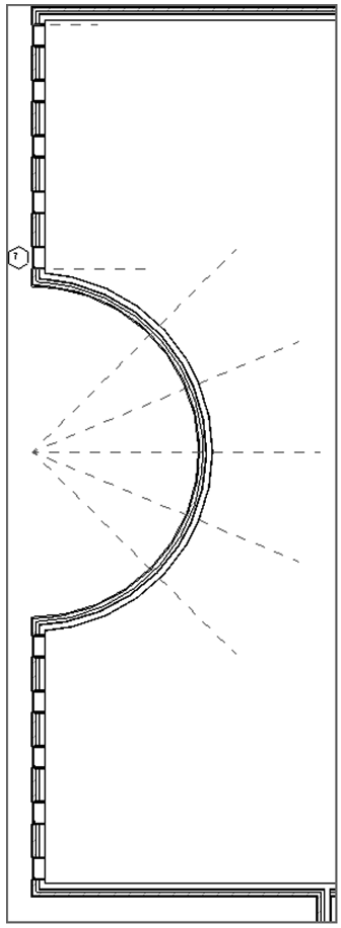


FIGURE 4.27: The finished west wall

The Align Tool

You'll find yourself in situations where two items need to be aligned with each other. The Align command is a great tool for accomplishing this task. It's one of the most useful tools in Revit, and you'll use it extensively. Overuse of this command isn't possible! Because Align is a tool, you don't have to select an item first for this function to become available. You can select Align at any time.

To practice using the Align tool, follow these steps:

1. Zoom in on the radial portion of the west wall, as shown in Figure 4.28.

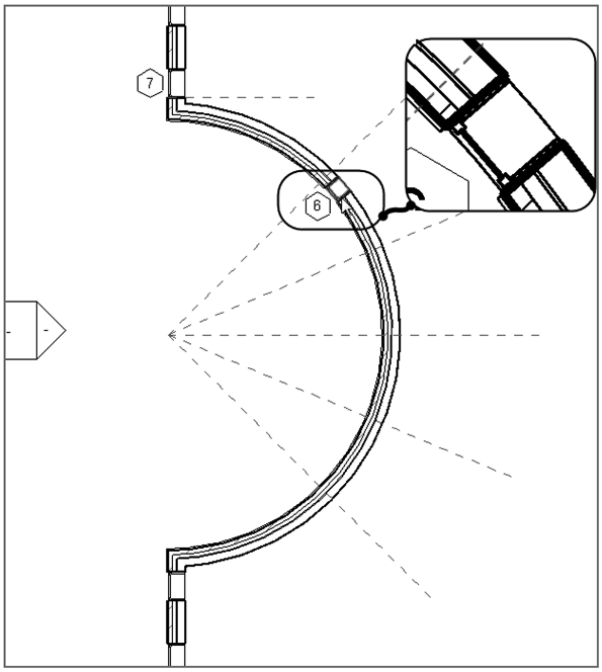


FIGURE 4.28: Place the window approximately in the area shown here.

2. On the Architecture tab, click the Window button.
3. In the Type Selector, choose Fixed: 16″ × 72″ (406 mm × 1829 mm).
4. Place the window in the radial wall in a location similar to that shown in Figure 4.28. Don't attempt to eyeball the center of the window with the reference plane. As a matter of fact, purposely misalign the window.
5. On the Modify tab, click the Align button, as shown in Figure 4.29.

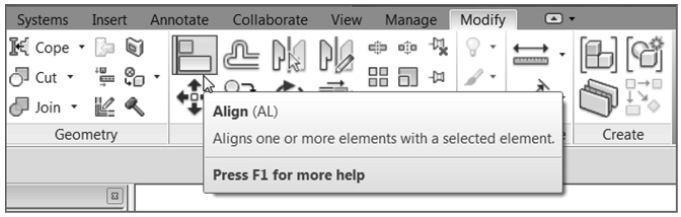


FIGURE 4.29: Click the Align button on the Modify | Place Window tab.

6. The Align tool needs you to select two items. First, select the item you want to *align to*; pick the reference plane as shown in Figure 4.30.

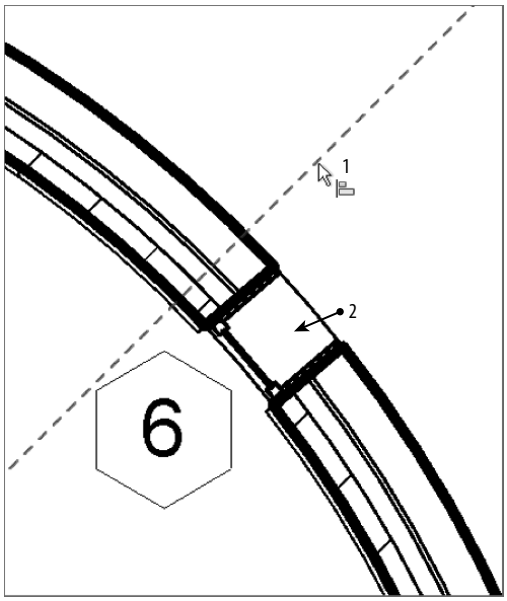


FIGURE 4.30: Choosing the items for alignment. Remember that you must first choose the item you want to align to.

7. Now you need to pick a point on the window: the centerline of the window. By looking at the window, you won't see this line. Hover your cursor over the middle of the window, and a centerline becomes highlighted. When you see this centerline, pick the window.

The window moves into alignment with the reference plane, as shown in Figure 4.31.

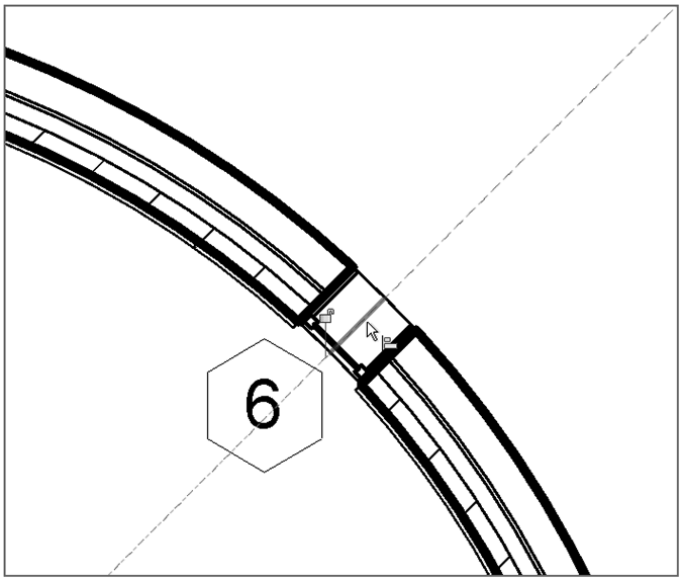


FIGURE 4.31: The window is now in alignment with the reference plane.

8. Press Esc, and then select the window.
9. Pick the Array button on the Modify | Windows tab.
10. Create a radial array of the windows with a count of five (total). You remember how, right? The only thing I want you to do differently is to uncheck Group And Associate on the Options bar. We'll discuss groups in Bonus Chapter 4, "Project Collaboration," available online at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`.

NOTE **Adding reference planes and working in a controlled environment is typical of Revit Architecture. You establish a reference plane, add a component, and then execute a command such as Array, Copy, or Move. Although it may seem like quite a few steps, you're now accurately and deliberately placing items in your model. The accuracy you apply here will propagate itself throughout the project in terms of elevations, sections, and drawing sheets.**

Let's practice more with the Align tool. It's one of the most important modify tools in the Revit arsenal, and I don't want to understate its usefulness. Follow along with these steps:

1. Zoom into the end of the corridor in the east wing of the building, as shown in Figure 4.32.

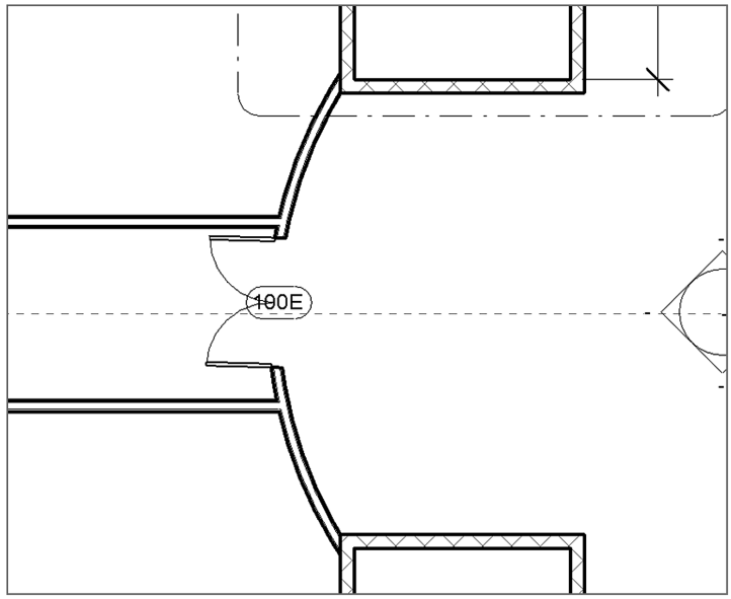


FIGURE 4.32: Adding a double door to the east wing corridor

2. On the Architecture tab, click the Door button.
3. Place a Double Flush: 72″ × 84″ (1829 mm × 2133 mm) door in the radial corridor wall, as shown in Figure 4.32. As when you placed the window along the reference plane in the preceding procedure, don't try to eyeball the correct alignment; you want to misalign the door on purpose.
4. Renumber the door **100A**.
5. On the Modify panel, click the Align button.
6. Pick the horizontal reference plane.
7. Pick the centerline of the door. When the reference plane is aligned, pause for a moment without pressing Esc. You see a little blue

padlock. If you can't see it, zoom out a little. You can use this function to lock the alignment.

Another nice feature of the Align command is that after your alignment is complete, you can physically lock the items together, allowing the two aligned items to move as one.

Locking an Alignment

After you've aligned the items, you'll notice that small, blue padlock icon I just mentioned. In Revit, you can lock items together using the Align tool. This is both good and bad. It's great in the sense that if the center reference plane moves for whatever reason, the door will also move. It's bad in the sense that if the door moves, the center reference plane will also move.

When you align an item and lock it, be sure this is what you want to do. It's simple: pick the padlock icon, as shown in Figure 4.33. You're now aligned and locked to the center reference plane.

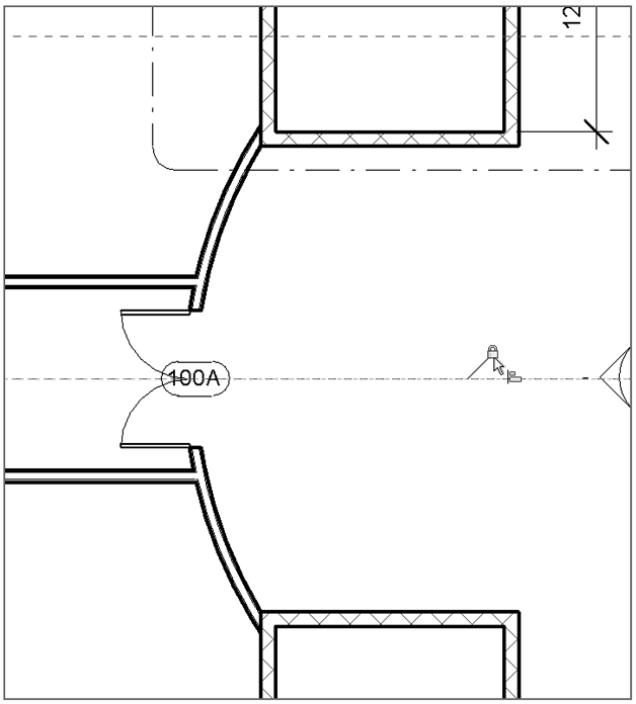


FIGURE 4.33: The door is now aligned and locked.

There will also be times when two items are already aligned and you just want to lock the items together. To do this, you must still use the Align command to access the lock option.

1. Zoom into the west side of the east wing at the corridor intersection.
2. Start the Align command.
3. Pick the centerline of the door at that end of the corridor.
4. Pick the center reference plane.
5. Pick the blue padlock to lock the doors to the center reference plane (see Figure 4.34).

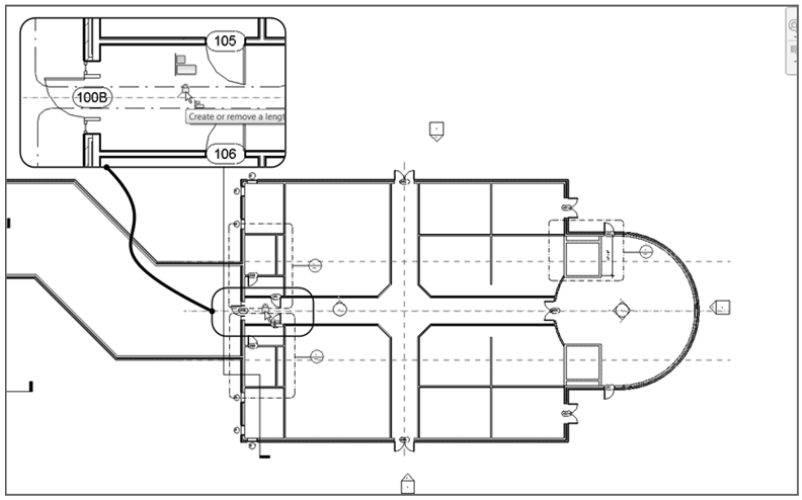


FIGURE 4.34: You can create a locked constraint by using the Align command even if the items were in alignment to begin with.

Now that the Align command is out of the way, you can move on to the next item on the Modify tab: the Split Element command.

The Split Element Command

The Split Element command is the equivalent of the Break command in AutoCAD. You can use the Split Element command on walls and when you edit an element in Sketch Mode.

The objective of this procedure is to cut a notch out of a wall by using the Edit Profile function.

1. In the Project Browser, open the Sections (Building Section) called West Wing South Wall Section, as shown in Figure 4.35.

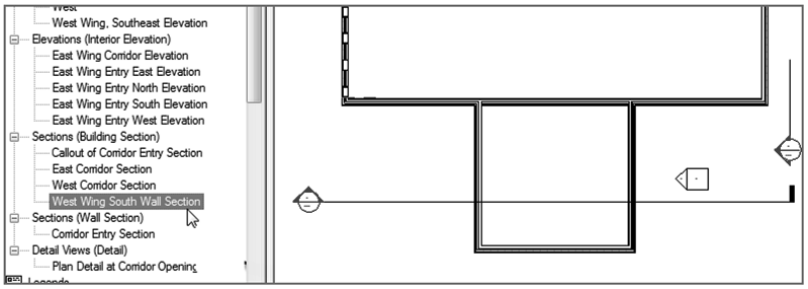


FIGURE 4.35: Open the section called West Wing South Wall Section.

2. Select the wall beyond, as shown in Figure 4.36.

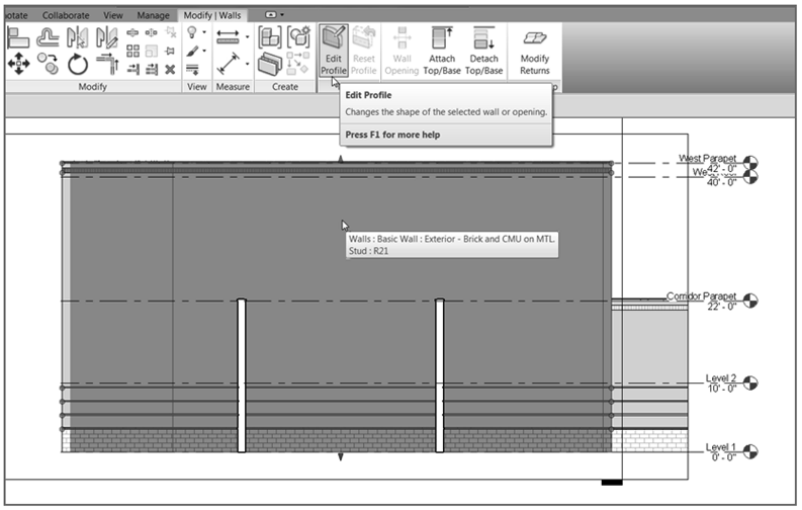


FIGURE 4.36: Select the wall beyond, and click the Edit Profile button on the Modify | Walls tab.

3. On the Modify | Walls tab, click the Edit Profile button (see Figure 4.36).

After you select the Edit Profile option, you're put into Sketch Mode. You know you're in Sketch Mode because your Ribbon now has a Mode panel with Finish Edit Mode and Cancel Edit Mode options

that you must select to return to the full model. Also, the wall you've selected now consists of four magenta sketch lines, and the rest of the model is shaded into the background.

4. On the Modify | Walls ➢ Edit Profile tab, click the Split Element button, as shown in Figure 4.37.

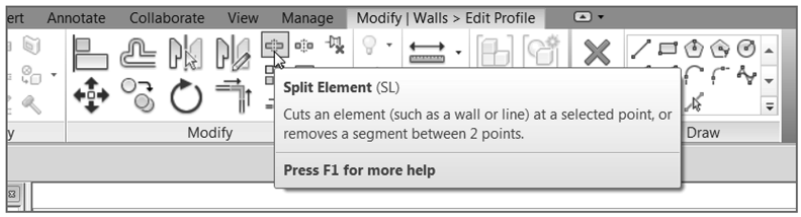


FIGURE 4.37: Select the Split Element button on the Modify | Walls ➢ Edit Profile tab.

5. Look at your Options bar. Notice that you can specify that you want to delete the inner segment. Select the Delete Inner Segment check box, as shown in Figure 4.38.

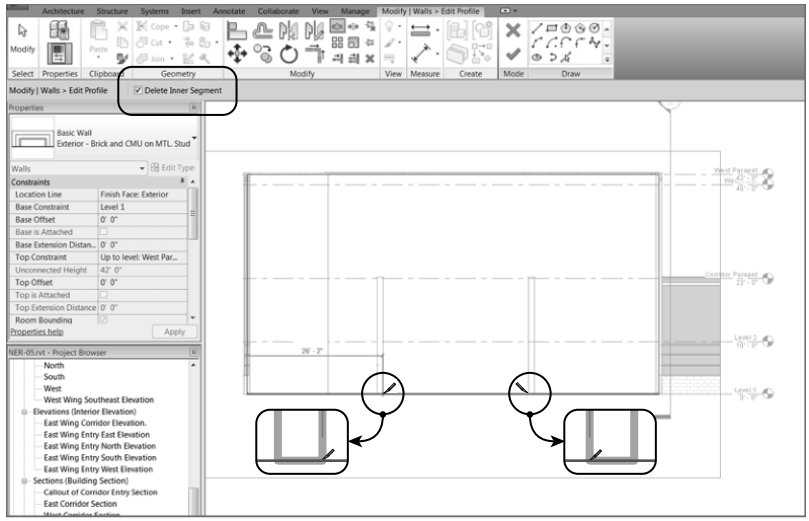


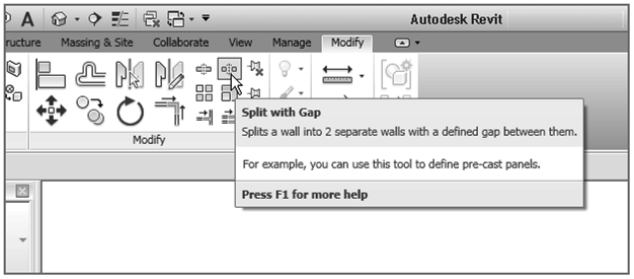
FIGURE 4.38: To remove a segment of a line, you must use the Split Element command and select Delete Inner Segment from the Options bar.

6. Pick the intersection of the bottom magenta sketch line and the inside face of the left wall for the first split point (see Figure 4.38).

7. Pick the intersection of the bottom magenta sketch line and the inside face of the right wall (see Figure 4.38).

You Can Also Add a Gap

There is a second split option. The Split With Gap function enables you to split an item and choose the size of the gap segment.



After you pick these points, the magenta sketch line is segmented. Now you need to add more lines to the sketch. To do this, leave the Split Element command and follow along by using the sketch tools on the Draw panel:

1. On the Draw panel of the Modify | Walls ➢ Edit Profile tab, click the Pick Lines icon, as shown in Figure 4.39.

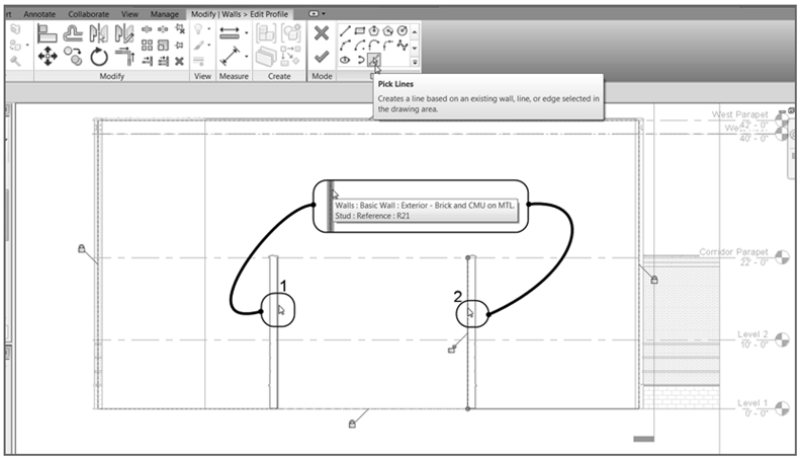


FIGURE 4.39: Tracing the walls to form a notch. This is done by selecting the Pick Lines icon and picking the walls.

2. Pick the inside face of the left wall (item 1 in Figure 4.39).
3. Pick the inside face of the right wall (item 2 in Figure 4.39).
4. In the Offset field on the Options bar, add 1′-0″ (300 mm).
5. Select the Corridor Parapet level, and offset the line down, as shown in Figure 4.40.

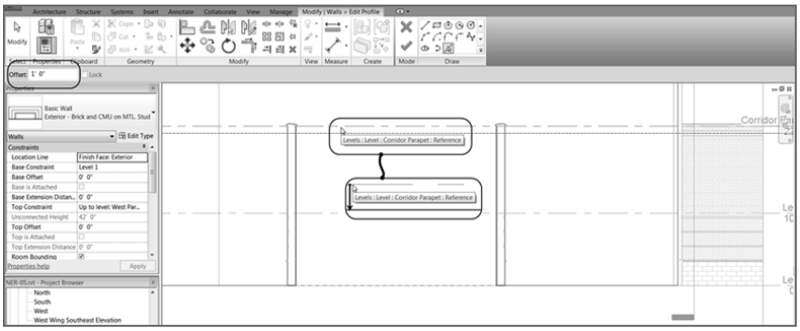


FIGURE 4.40: Offsetting the Corridor Parapet level down 1′-0″ (300 mm)

The next step is to get the magenta lines to form a continuous loop. This means there can be no gaps or overlapping lines. Each line starts exactly where the last line ends.

1. Press Esc.
2. Pick (left-click) the horizontal magenta line that is offset from the Corridor Parapet level.
3. On each end is a round, blue grip. Pick each grip, and stretch the line to the intersection of the vertical magenta lines, as shown in Figure 4.41.
4. Select the left, vertical magenta line, and stretch the top grip down to the intersection of the horizontal magenta line (see Figure 4.41).
5. Select the right, vertical magenta line, and stretch the top down to the horizontal magenta sketch line. You should now have a continuous loop (see Figure 4.41).
6. On the Mode panel of the Modify tab, click the Finish Edit Mode button, as shown in Figure 4.42.
7. Go to a 3D view to check out your model, as shown in Figure 4.43. You can either click the Default 3D View button on the Quick Access toolbar or pick the {3D} view from the Project Browser.

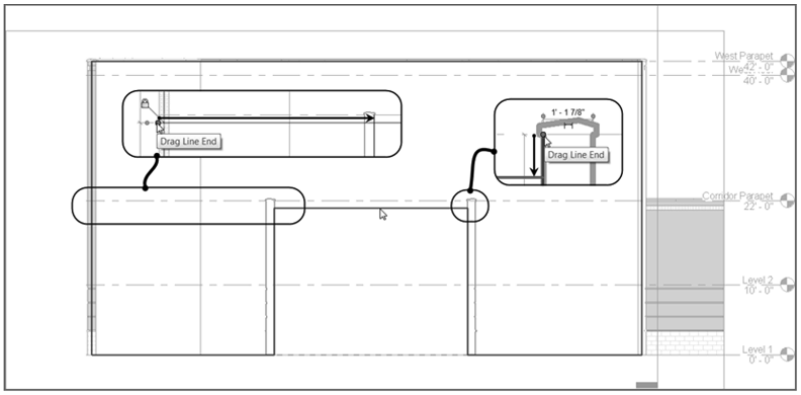


FIGURE 4.41: Modifying the sketch lines by stretching the grips to form a continuous loop

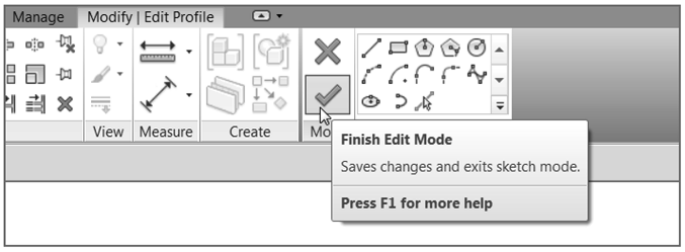


FIGURE 4.42: Click Finish Edit Mode to get back to the model.

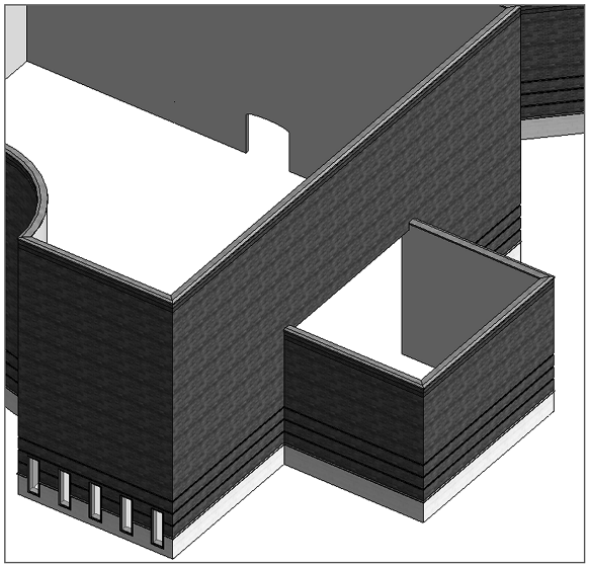
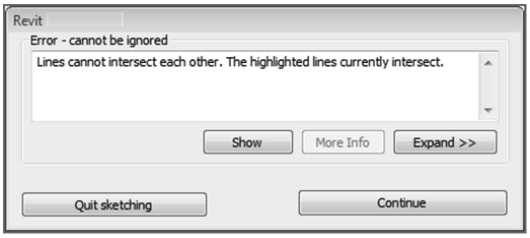


FIGURE 4.43: The building in 3D up to this point

Revit Wants It Clean!

As mentioned earlier, if you click Finish Edit Mode and Revit gives you a warning, as shown in this graphic, you *must* be sure you have no overlapping lines or gaps in your sketch. Revit is quite unforgiving and won't allow you to proceed.



The next set of procedures focuses on basic cleanup using the Trim command. Although you can accomplish a lot with this single command, you must get used to a certain Revit method.

The Trim Command

Any time you need to cut or extend an item, you'll use the Trim command. In any design-based application, you won't get very far without this command. You can use the Trim command on walls and in Sketch Mode, similar to how you would use the Split Element command. As mentioned earlier, however, you need to understand specific procedures to be comfortable using this command.

To use the Trim command, follow these steps:

1. Go to Level 1 under the Floor Plans category in the Project Browser.
2. Zoom in on the east wing. Two walls extend beyond their destination. These walls need to be trimmed.
3. On the Modify tab, click the Trim/Extend Single Element button, as shown in Figure 4.44.
4. Zoom in on the area, as shown in Figure 4.45.
5. To trim the vertical wall back to the horizontal wall, you must first pick the wall that you want to trim. In this case, select the south face of the horizontal wall (see Figure 4.45).

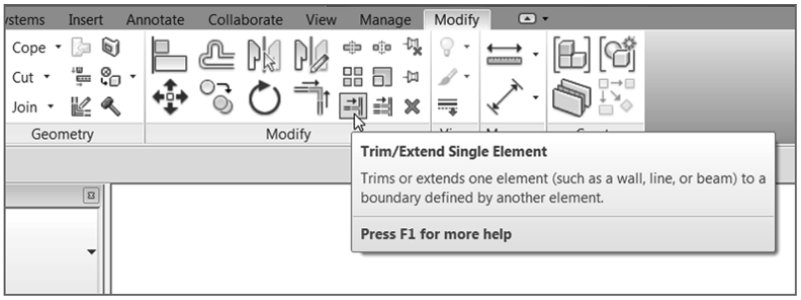


FIGURE 4.44: Click the Trim/Extend Single Element button on the Modify tab.

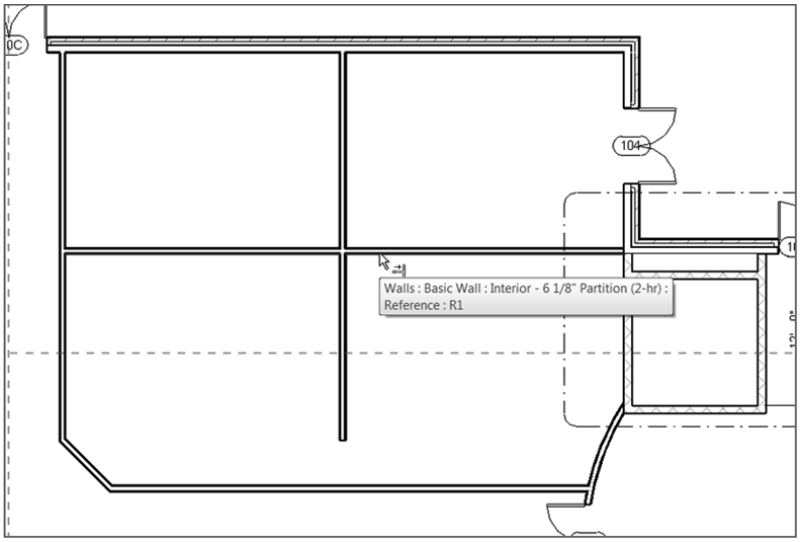


FIGURE 4.45: Zoom into this area to start trimming the walls.

6. Now you must pick a point along the vertical wall. The trick here is that you must pick a point on the side of the wall that you want to *keep*. Pick a point along the vertical wall above (north of) the horizontal wall, as shown in Figure 4.46. After you do, the wall is trimmed back.
7. Press Esc to terminate the command.

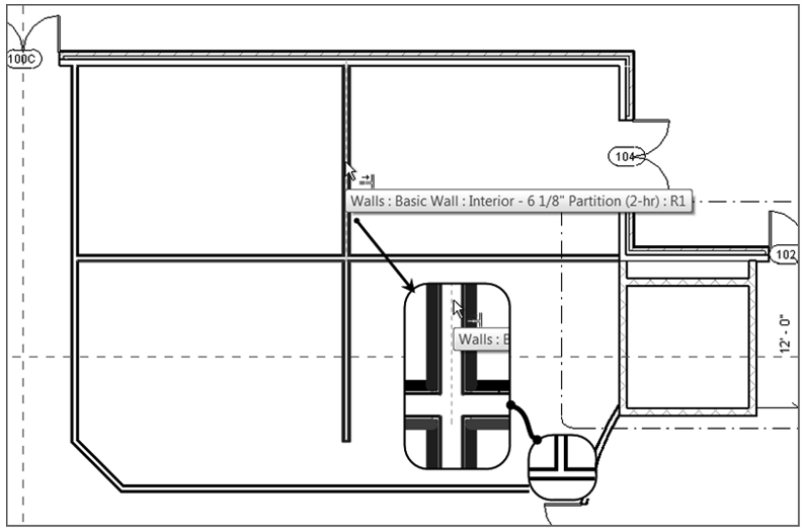


FIGURE 4.46: Pick a point along the wall you want to keep.

You may not always want to trim an item. Often, you need to elongate an item to reach a destination point. In the drafting world, this procedure is better known as *extend*. The process for using the Extend feature is similar to the Trim command. First, however, you must select the wall to which you want to extend an object and then select the object to be extended.

1. Zoom in on the south part of the east wing.
2. On the Modify tab, click the Trim/Extend Single Element button.
3. Pick the south corridor wall. This is the wall to which you want to extend.
4. Pick the vertical wall that doesn't quite intersect. Press Esc, and your walls should now look like Figure 4.47.
5. Save the model.

There is one more command to examine that is used in the day-to-day modification of a Revit model. Most of the commands you've used to place items in the model have had the Offset command built into the options of that specific procedure. The next section focuses on offsetting items by using the stand-alone Revit Offset command.

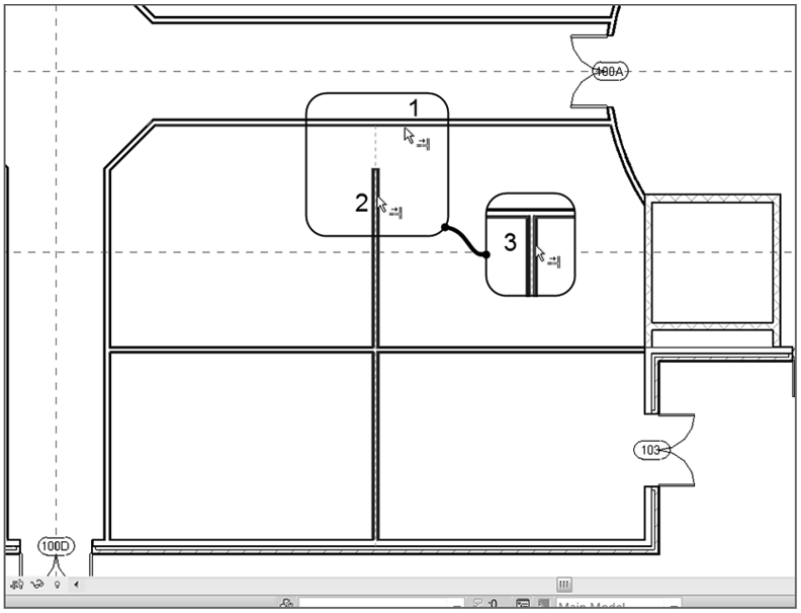


FIGURE 4.47: The finished walls

The Offset Command

The Offset command enables you to create a copy of a linear item at a specified distance. As mentioned earlier, the need to offset an item crops up much less often in Revit Architecture than in a conventional drafting application. This is because in Revit most commands provide offset functionality as an option. Sometimes, however, you need the good-old Offset command.

To get used to using the Offset command, follow these steps:

1. Zoom in on the west part of the east wing. This is the area where the restrooms are located (see Figure 4.48). The objective is to offset the vertical wall that is to the right of the restrooms, to the middle of the open space.
2. On the Modify panel of the Modify tab, click the Offset button, as shown in Figure 4.48.
3. On the Options bar, click the Numerical button.

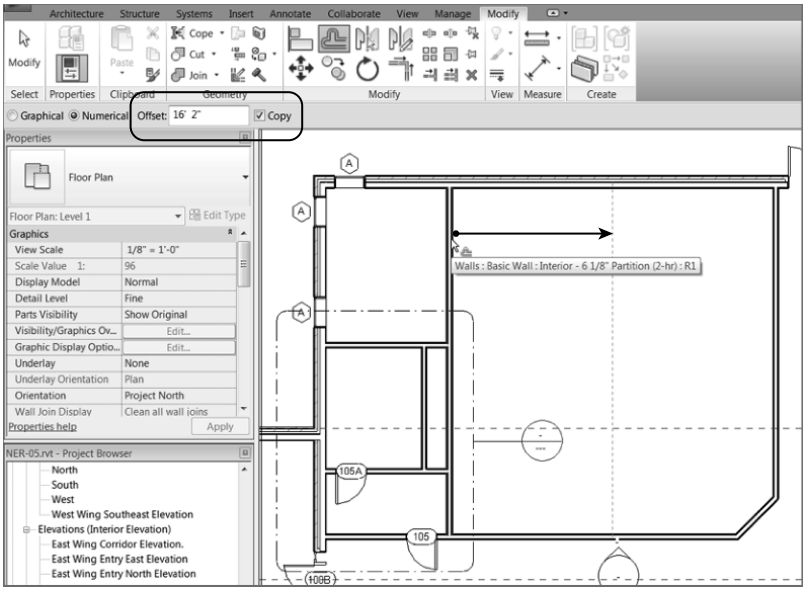


FIGURE 4.48: Choosing your options and picking the wall to be offset

4. Enter 16′–2″ (4850 mm) in the Offset field.
5. Make sure Copy is selected.
6. Hover your cursor over the wall to the right of the lavatory, as shown in Figure 4.48. A dashed alignment line appears to the right of the wall.
7. Pick the wall. The new wall should be in the middle of the large room.
8. Repeat the process for the walls south of the corridor. Your interior should resemble Figure 4.49.

WARNING Be sure your math is correct. After you offset an item, use the Measure command. I've mentioned this before, and I will mention it repeatedly throughout this book! You'll be glad you measured now rather than later.

This concludes our discussion of Offset. Because this floor plan consists of items you want to repeat on other floors, you can now explore how to do this by using the Copy/Paste command from Windows.

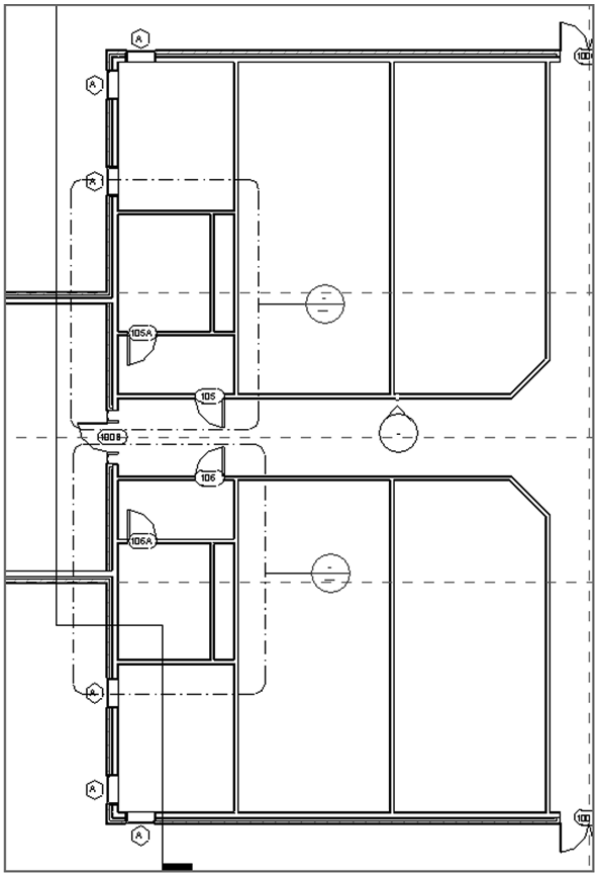


FIGURE 4.49: Completing the floor plan by using the Offset command will be a common procedure.

Copy/Paste

Yes, this is the actual Microsoft Windows Copy/Paste function. In Revit Architecture, you'll use this feature quite a bit. There is no better way to complete a space or a layout on one level and then use that layout on another level than by copying the geometry.

To practice using the Copy/Paste function, you'll select the two lavatories on Level 1, copy them to the Windows Clipboard, and paste them to the remaining floors.

1. Zoom into the east wing of the building.

2. Select the walls, door, and windows that define both bathrooms. Also select the corridor walls and the radial corridor wall at the east end of the building. Be sure to select the internal doors as well. These selections are shown in Figure 4.50.

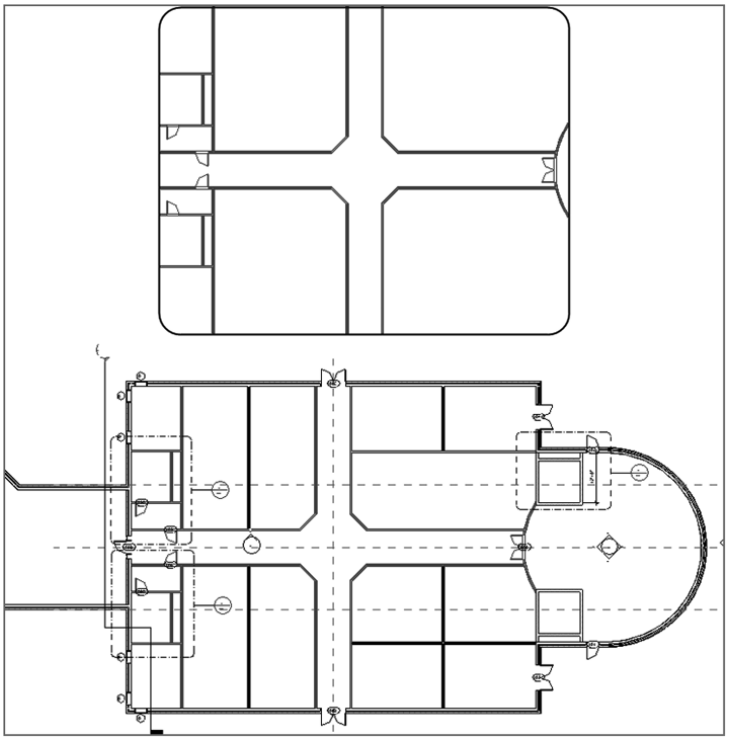


FIGURE 4.50: Selecting the items to be copied to the Clipboard

Remember, when you're selecting multiple items, you need to press and hold the Ctrl key to add to the selection set. If you inadvertently select too much, press the Shift key to deselect the items.

3. Choose Copy To Clipboard from the Clipboard panel of the Modify | Multi-Select tab (or press Ctrl+C).
4. Go to a 3D view.
5. On the Clipboard panel of the Modify tab, expand the Paste tool, and then click Aligned To Selected Levels, as shown in Figure 4.51.
6. In the next dialog box, hold down the Shift key, and select Floor Plan: Levels 2 through 5 (see Figure 4.51).
7. Click OK.

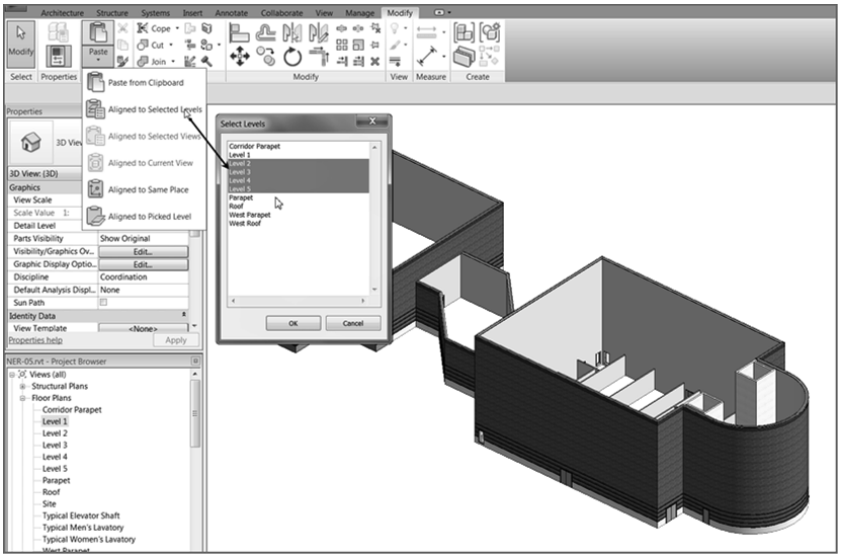


FIGURE 4.51: The Select Levels dialog box enables you to choose the levels to which you're pasting the information.

Your model should look like Figure 4.52. If it doesn't, try the procedure again. If you did get it wrong, you can right-click and choose Select Previous. That way, you don't have to pick around all over again.

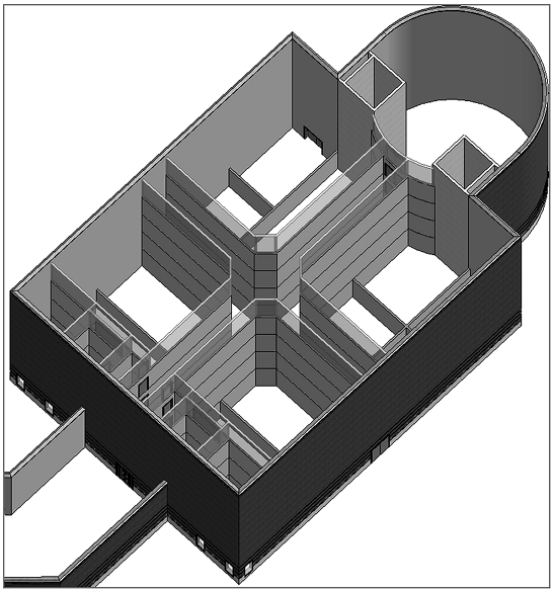


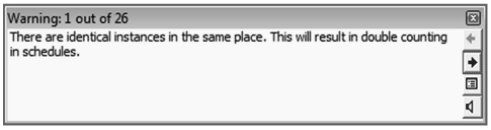
FIGURE 4.52: The east wing is starting to come together.

NOTE **Just because you copied and pasted identical items doesn't mean they're linked in any way. If you move, edit, or delete any of the original walls, the new walls you pasted won't be affected.**

The next section in this chapter focuses on actual practice. You now have five floors in the east wing alone, and you must add a layout to them. You also need to add a layout to the west wing.

You Must Heed the Warning!

While pasting elements, if you see a Warning dialog box indicating that you've just created a duplicate and that double counting will occur, stop and undo the paste. Determine why Revit issued that warning. Did you already paste these elements to this level? Sometimes the tops of the walls are above the higher level. You can check this as well.



Creating the Plans

Now that you've added walls, doors, and windows, you can begin to combine this experience with your knowledge of the basic Revit editing commands. In the previous section, you *started* to lay out your floor plans.

You can follow along with the book's examples up to floor 3. You can then create your own plans for floors 4 and 5.

To start building a floor plan to be copied to other levels, follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to Level 1 under Floor Plans.
2. Add walls, doors, openings, and windows to resemble Figure 4.53. These doors and windows can be any type you like. If your model varies slightly from the example in the book, don't be concerned.
3. In the Project Browser, go to Floor Plan Level 2.
4. Press Esc to clear any selection.

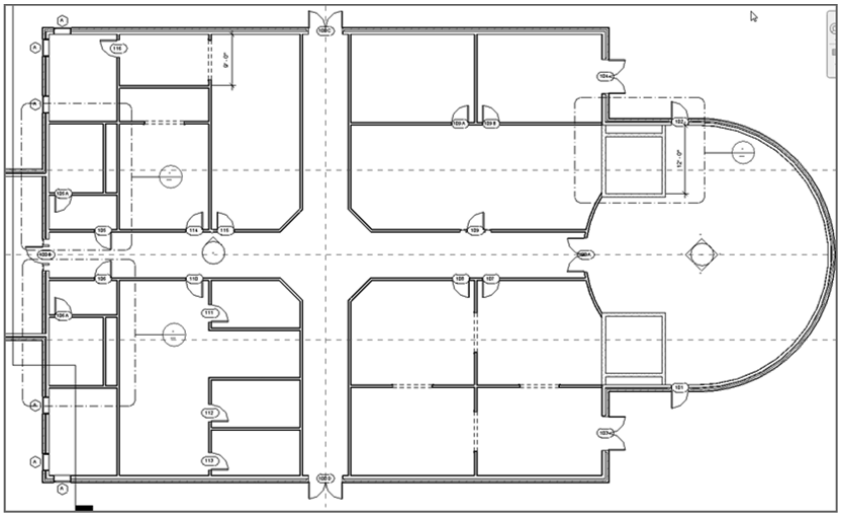


FIGURE 4.53: The first-floor layout for the east wing

5. In the Properties dialog box, set Underlay to None, as shown in Figure 4.54. (Underlay is simply the floor below. You can set your underlay to any floor you'd like.)

FIGURE 4.54: Switch Underlay from Level 1 to None.

6. Set Detail Level to Fine.

7. Create a floor plan layout similar to Figure 4.55. Make all of the dimensions as even and as round as possible. Use all the commands and functions you've learned up to this point.

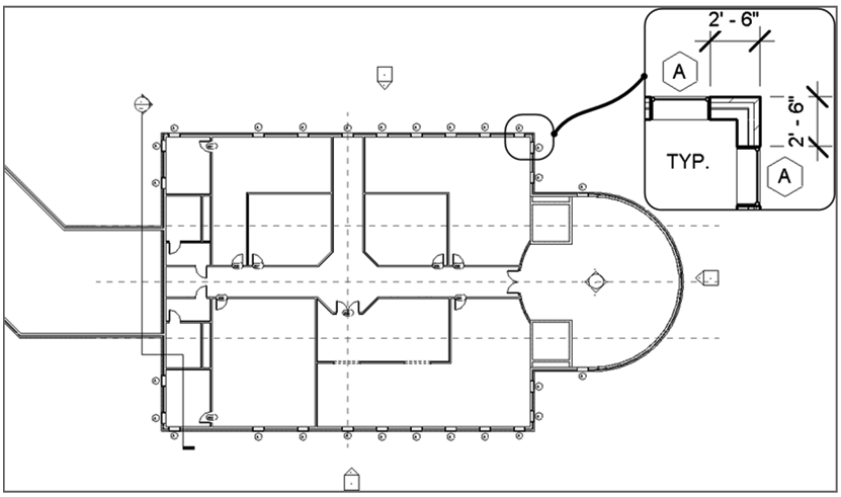


FIGURE 4.55: **The layout for Level 2. Try to make the dimensions as even as possible, consistent with what is shown here.**

8. Select the windows on Level 2, go to a 3D view, and, using Copy and Paste ➢ Aligned To Selected Levels, align them all the way to Level 5. This way, you know your windows are aligned, and you can follow this procedure in your room layout for each floor (see Figure 4.56).

WARNING **When you use Copy/Paste, you may get the same duplicate value warning mentioned earlier. If you do, stop and undo. Make sure you aren't pasting windows over other windows.**

9. Go to Level 3, and create a floor plan similar to Figure 4.57. You can do this by using Paste ➢ Aligned To Selected Levels from Level 1. The floor plans are identical, other than the wall configuration in the northwest corner.
10. Go to Level 4, and create your own floor plan. The book will give no example. You're on your own!

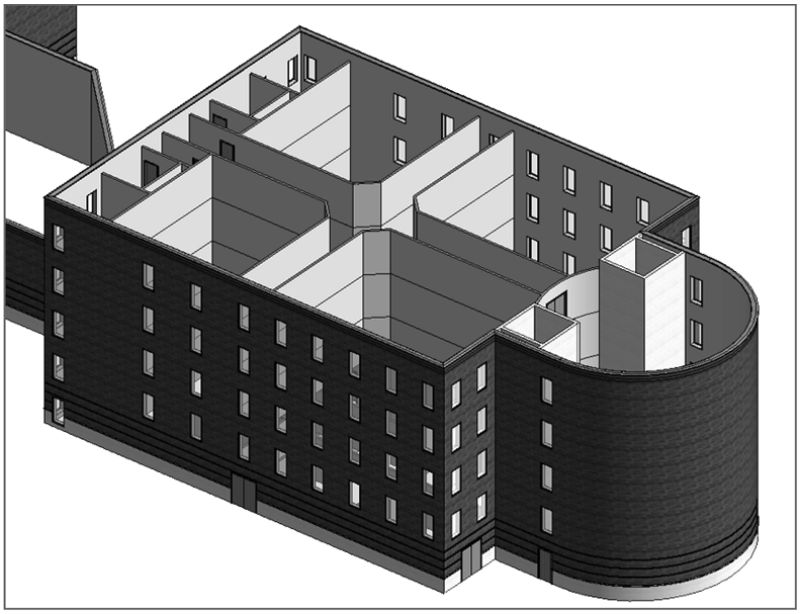


FIGURE 4.56: Using Copy/Paste, align the windows to the higher floors. This will influence your floor layout for each level.

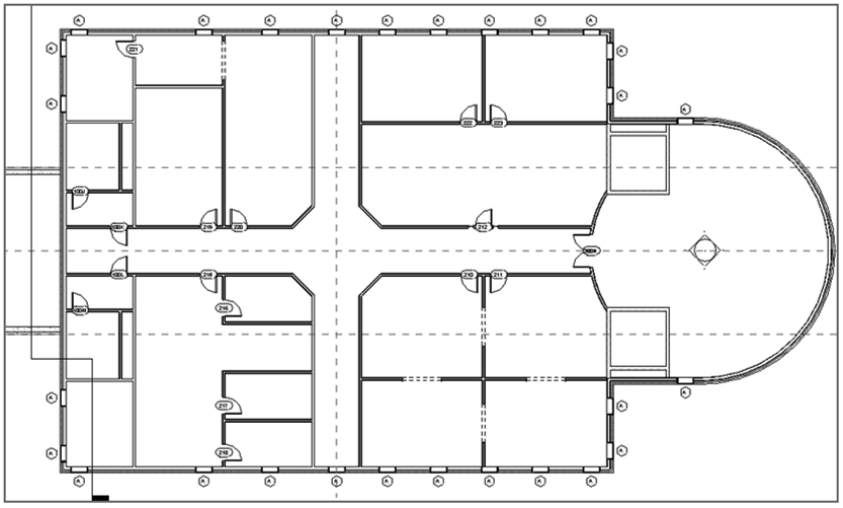


FIGURE 4.57: Level 3: This floor plan was mostly copied from Level 1, with the exception of the northwest corner.

11. Create one more floor plan for Level 5. Again, design your own layout. Be as creative as you want.
12. Save the model.

If you got through that last procedure and you're happy with the results, you're well on your way to being efficient in Revit. This is because you just created a floor plan on your own. These last few steps were provided to prove that Revit can be quite intuitive when approached with a little experience.

If you aren't comfortable with your results in this section, that's OK. I had an uncomfortable feeling the first time I did this as well. Take a deep breath, and go back through the steps where you think you got lost. Feel free to send me an email if you have questions or concerns. My email address is provided in the introduction of this book.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ **use common editing commands to alter the appearance of your model**
- ✔ **use reference planes to establish good, accurate methods of layout**
- ✔ **array items and change the count, length, and radius if needed**
- ✔ **align items and keep them constrained**
- ✔ **use locks to constrain the alignment of one element to another**
- ✔ **split items to remove a segment or to turn one item into two**
- ✔ **use the Copy and Paste ➢ Aligned To Selected Levels commands to create multiple floors that are similar in layout**

CHAPTER 5

Dimensioning and Annotating

This chapter focuses on giving you the ability to dimension and annotate a model. After the novelty of having a really cool model in 3D wears off, you need to buckle down and produce some bid documents. This is where the Autodesk® Revit® Architecture program must prove its functionality. You should ask yourself, "Can Revit produce drawings consistent with what is acceptable according to national standards and—more important—my company's standards? And, if so, how do I get to this point?" These are the questions that owners and managers should be asking.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- **Selecting and applying dimensioning**
- **Using dimensions as a layout tool**
- **Placing text and annotations**

Selecting and Applying Dimensioning

The answers to the questions at the beginning of the chapter begin with dimensioning and annotations. This is where you can start to make Revit your own. Also, you'll find that dimensions take on an entirely new role in the design process.

I think you'll like dimensioning in Revit. It's almost fun … almost. Before you start, however, let's get one thing out of the way: you can't alter a dimension to display an increment that isn't true. Hooray! As you go through this chapter, you'll quickly learn that when you place a dimension, it becomes not only an annotation but a layout tool as well.

The Dimension command has six separate types: Aligned, Linear, Angular, Radial, Arc Length, and Diameter. Each is important in adding dimensions to a model, and each is covered separately in this section.

Let's get going. To begin, open the file in which you've been following along. If you didn't complete the example in Chapter 4, "Working with the Autodesk Revit Tools," go to the book's website at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there you can browse to `Chapter 5` and find the file called `NER-05.rvt`.

Aligned Dimensions

The most popular of all the Revit Architecture dimensions is the Aligned option. You'll use this type of dimension 75 percent of the time.

An aligned dimension in Revit enables you to place a dimension along an object at any angle. The resulting dimension aligns with the object being dimensioned. A linear dimension, in contrast, adds a dimension only at 0°, 90°, 180°, or 270°, regardless of the item's angle.

NOTE Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit won't accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.

To add an aligned dimension, perform these steps:

1. Go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Zoom in on the east wing of the building.
3. On the Annotate tab, click the Aligned button, as shown in Figure 5.1.

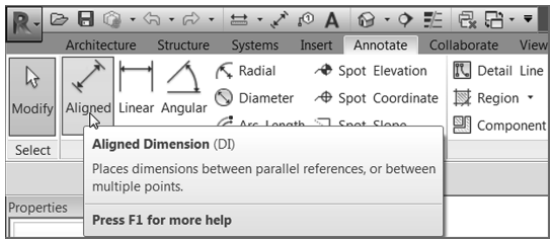


FIGURE 5.1: Starting the Aligned Dimension command from the Annotate tab

4. On the Options bar are two drop-down menus with some choices, as shown in Figure 5.2. Make sure Wall Faces is selected.

FIGURE 5.2: The Options bar for the Dimension command. Notice the Options button.

5. The next menu lets you pick individual references or entire walls. Select Entire Walls.
6. At the far right on the Options bar is an Options button, which allows you to make further choices when selecting the entire wall. Click the Options button.
7. In the Auto Dimension Options dialog box, select Intersecting Walls (see Figure 5.3). Don't select any other item. Click OK.

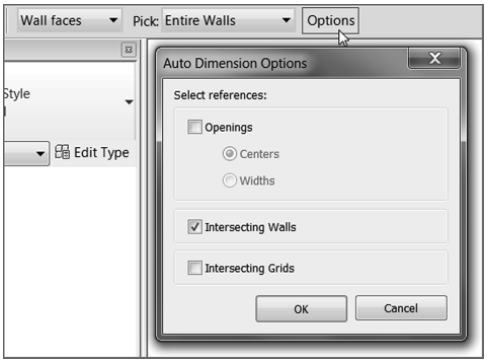


FIGURE 5.3: The Auto Dimension Options dialog box

8. Zoom in on the north wall, as shown in Figure 5.4.
9. Pick (left-click) the north exterior wall. Notice that the dimensions are completely filled out.
10. Pick a point (to place the dimension) approximately 8′ (2400 mm) above the north wall (see Figure 5.4).

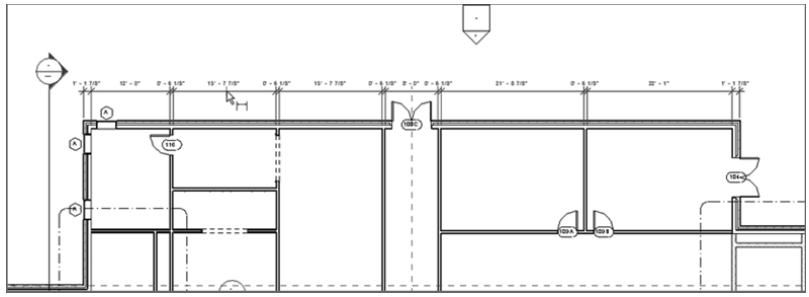


FIGURE 5.4: By choosing the Intersecting Walls option, you can add an entire string of dimensions in one click.

11. In true Revit form, you're still in the command unless you tell Revit you don't want to be so. In this case, click the Options button on the Options bar (the same one you clicked before).
12. Deselect the Intersecting Walls option in the Auto Dimension Options dialog box, and click OK.
13. Pick (left-click) the same wall. You now have a dimension traveling the entire length of the building.
14. Move your cursor above the first dimension string you added. Notice that the dimension clicks when it gets directly above the first string.
15. When you see the dimension snap, pick that point (see Figure 5.5).

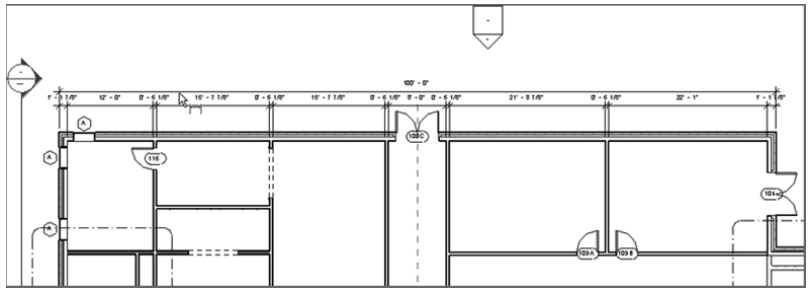


FIGURE 5.5: Adding a major dimension by turning off the Intersecting Walls choice in the Auto Dimension Options dialog box

In many cases, you'll need the ability to pick two points to create a dimension. What a world it would be if everything were as easy as the dimension string you just added. Unfortunately, it isn't.

Creating Aligned Dimensions by Picking Points

Nine times out of ten, you'll be picking two points to create a dimension. This is usually quite simple in Revit—until you get into a situation where the walls are at an angle other than 90°. In a moment, you'll explore that issue, but for now, let's add some straight dimensions.

NOTE **Before you get started, note that this procedure isn't easy. If it does come easily to you, great! If not, don't get discouraged. Keep trying.**

1. Zoom in on the northeast portion of the east wing, as shown in Figure 5.6.

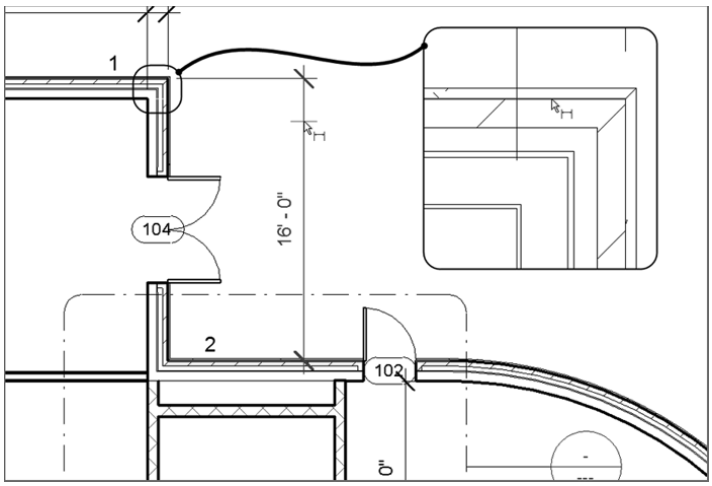


FIGURE 5.6: **Placing the dimension by picking two objects**

2. On the Annotate tab, click the Aligned button if it isn't selected already.
3. On the Options bar, choose Individual References from the Pick menu, as shown previously in Figure 5.2, and do the following:
   a. Pick the outside face of the north wall marked 1 in Figure 5.6.
   b. Pick the horizontal wall that ties into the radial wall, marked 2 in Figure 5.6.
   c. Place the dimension about 8′ (2400 mm) to the right of the vertical wall, as shown in Figure 5.6.

4. With the Aligned Dimension command still running, do the following:

   a. Pick the outside face of the northern wall.

   b. Pick the centerline of the door, as shown in Figure 5.7, but don't press Esc or terminate the command.

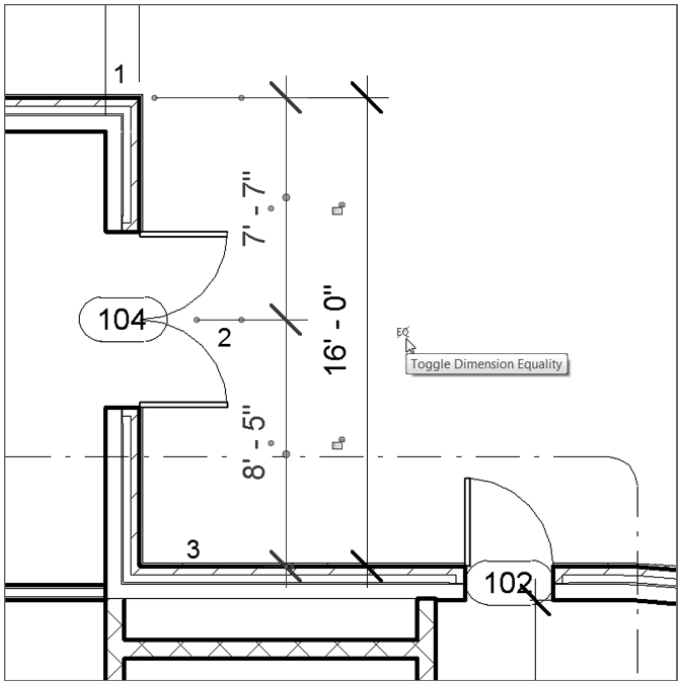


FIGURE 5.7: Adding a dimension string manually

   c. Pick the horizontal wall that ties into the radial wall, marked 3 in Figure 5.7.

   d. Pick a point inside (to the left of) the first dimension (see Figure 5.7). This places the dimension string and finalizes the session.

WARNING When you add a string of dimensions, you must not stop and then resume the dimension string in the middle of the command. As you'll see in a moment, when you add dimensions in a continuous line, you can do a lot in terms of making adjustments to the objects you're dimensioning.

The actual dimension values are blue. You also see a blue EQ icon with a slash through it (see Figure 5.7).

5. Click the blue EQ button, as shown in Figure 5.8. If the door was not exactly centered, this will force the door to move to an equal distance between the two walls.

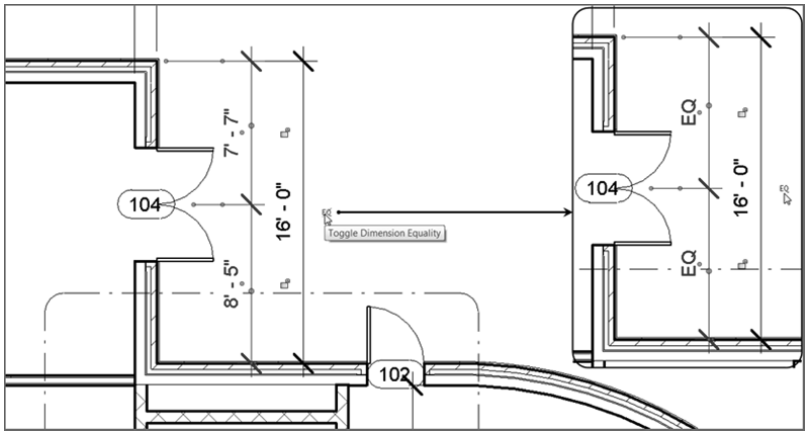


FIGURE 5.8: You can use the dimension string to move the door by clicking the EQ button.

6. Press Esc twice, or click Modify.

Sometimes you may want to display the dimensions rather than the EQ that Revit shows as a default. To do so, follow along:

1. Select the dimension.
2. Right-click.
3. Choose EQ Display (this deselects the option), as shown in Figure 5.9.

The dimensions will now show an increment.

Pretty cool. I should address one last item involving aligned dimensions: how do you dimension along an angle?

Another way to tell Revit how to display dimensions is to select the dimension and then look at the properties. Here you'll be given additional choices.

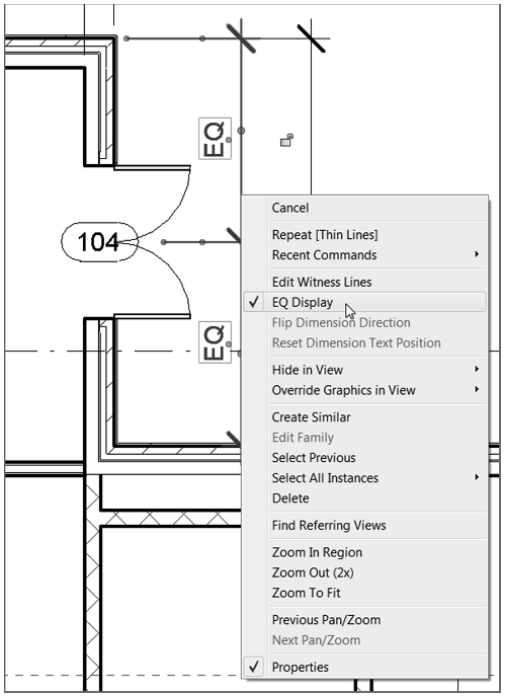


FIGURE 5.9: Toggle off the EQ Display option.

Dimensioning an Angle

No, not an *angel*, an angle. Adding this type of aligned dimension isn't the easiest thing to do in Revit. This is why I'm addressing the process as a separate item in this book. Here are the steps:

1. Zoom in on the 45° corridor area (the portion of the east building where the corridors meet), as shown in Figure 5.10.
2. On the Annotate tab, click the Aligned button on the Dimension panel.
3. On the Options bar, be sure Pick is set to Individual References.
4. Hover your pointer over the inside face of the brick in the angled wall (see Figure 5.10).
5. Tap the Tab key until you see the square grip appear. You can also look down to the lower-left corner; the status bar gives you some guidance as well.

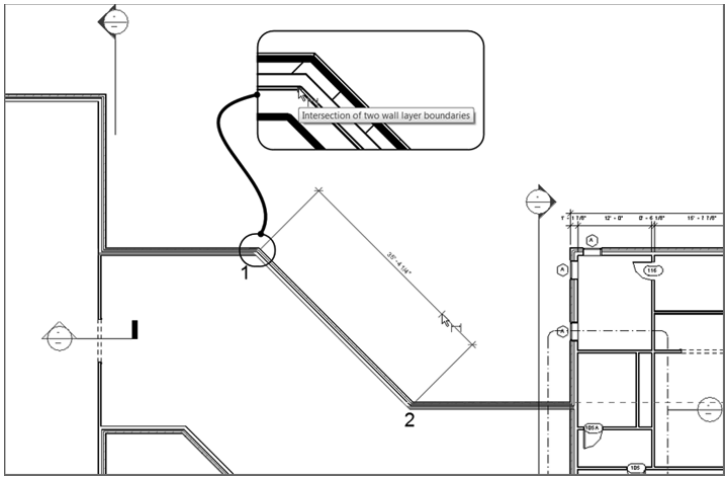


FIGURE 5.10: Press the Tab key to select the point shown.

NOTE By tapping the Tab key, you tell Revit to filter through different points. When you arrive at the square grip, Revit can dimension the angled wall.

6. When the square grip appears, pick it (see Figure 5.10).
7. Move to the other intersection of the angled wall.
8. Hover your cursor over this core intersection, as shown in Figure 5.11.

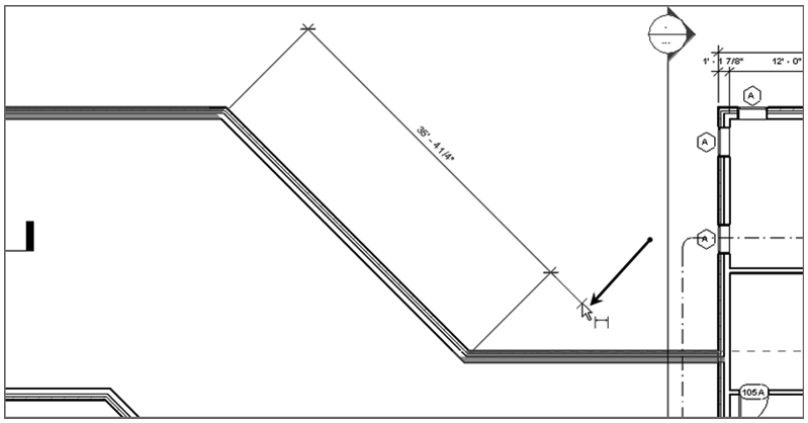


FIGURE 5.11: Picking the second point along the wall and placing the dimension

9. Tap the Tab key until you see the same square grip.
10. Pick the square grip.
11. Now the dimension is following your pointer. Pick a third point about 8′ (2400 mm) away from the angled wall (see Figure 5.11).
12. On the left end of the Ribbon, click the Modify button. This ends the command.

Unfortunately, you had to dimension to the core of the wall. This is the last place from which you would ever need to take a dimension. The dimension needs to be stretched to the outside/finished face of the brick, as you'll see next.

Editing the Witness Line

Every dimension in Revit Architecture has its own grip points when selected. This is similar to most CAD applications. Two of these grips control the witness line. The *witness line* is the line "attached" to the item being dimensioned. Because you had to take this dimension from the core of the wall, the witness lines need to be dragged to the outside face of the brick. Follow these steps:

1. Select the angled dimension. The blue grips appear.
2. On the left side of the dimension, pick and hold the grip in the middle of the dimension line, as shown in Figure 5.12.

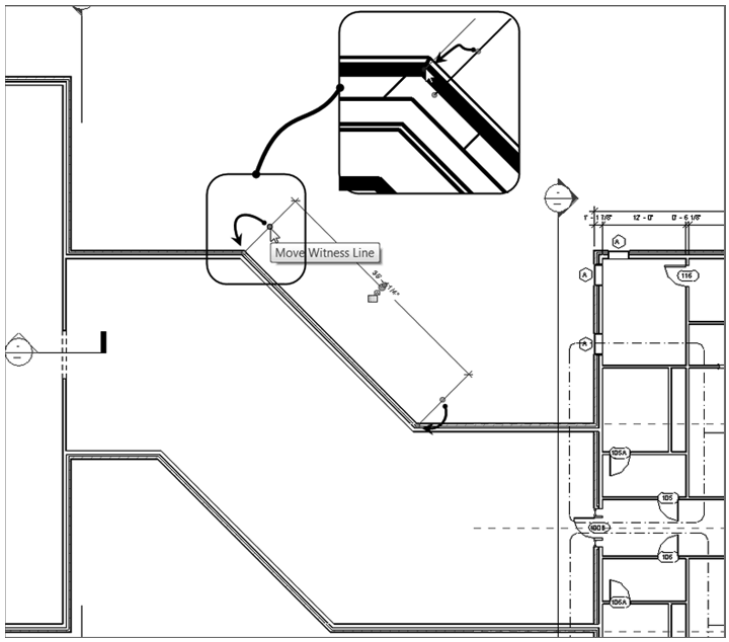


FIGURE 5.12: Dragging the witness line's grip

3. Drag the blue grip to the outside face of the brick. You'll know you're in the right spot because you'll see a small dot appear, as shown in the magnified segment of Figure 5.12.

4. Repeat the procedure for the other side.

Trust me—this is worth practicing now, before you get into a live situation. If you've already run into this, you know exactly what I mean.

Let's look at one more procedure for tweaking an aligned dimension: overriding a dimension's precision.

Overriding the Precision

When you dimension a wall at an angle such as this, the dimension usually comes out at an uneven increment. In most cases, you don't want to override every dimension's precision just to make this one, lone dimension read properly. In this situation, you want to turn to the dimension's Type Properties.

1. Select the angled dimension.

2. In the Properties dialog, click the Edit Type button, as shown in Figure 5.13.

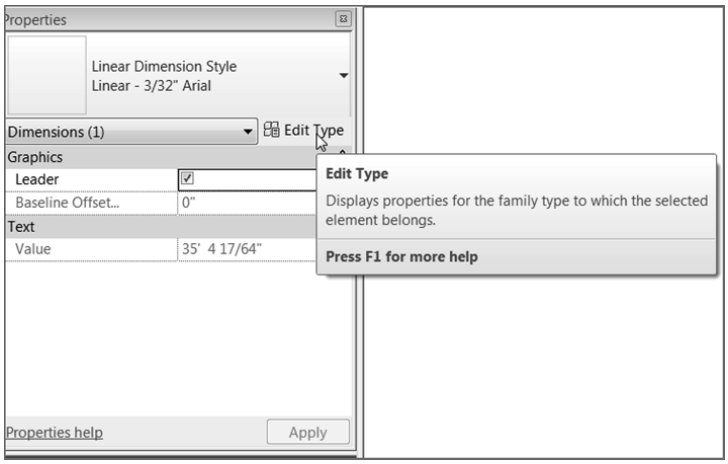


FIGURE 5.13: Clicking the Edit Type button to begin creating a new dimension style

3. Click the Duplicate button, as shown in Figure 5.14.

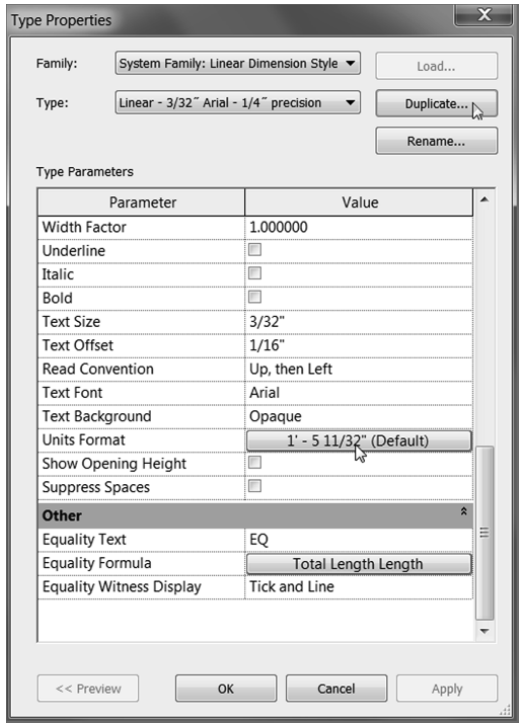


FIGURE 5.14: Select the button in the Text category to access the dimension's precision.

4. In the Name dialog box that opens, name the new dimension style **Linear – 3/32″ Arial – 1/4″** precision. For metric users, it's **Linear – 2 mm Arial-10 mm precision**. Click OK.
5. Scroll down to the Text category. Near the bottom is a Units Format row with a button that displays a sample increment. Click it (see Figure 5.14).
6. In the Format dialog box, deselect the Use Project Settings option.
7. Choose To The Nearest 1/4″ (To The Nearest 10) from the Rounding drop-down menu (see Figure 5.15).
8. Click OK twice. Note the new value on the dimension at the angled wall.

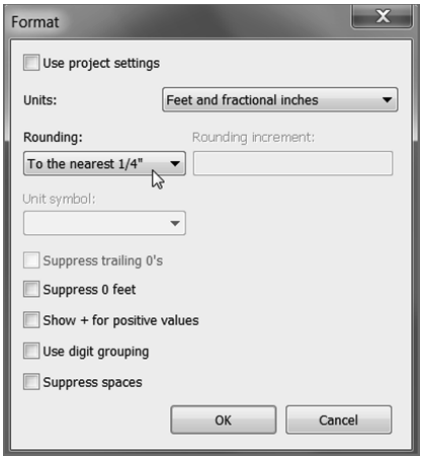


FIGURE 5.15: Changing the dimension's precision. Note some of the other available choices.

Although aligned dimensions will bear the brunt of your dimensioning, there are plenty of other dimension types for you to use.

Linear Dimensions

Linear dimensions are used less frequently than most of the other dimensions. Unlike Autodesk® AutoCAD® software, in which linear dimensions are the go-to dimensions, they're on the bench for most of the game in Revit. The best use for a linear dimension is to put a straight dimension across nonlinear (angled) geometry, as follows:

1. Zoom back in on the corridor area.
2. On the Annotate tab, click the Linear button. Notice that you can't select the entire wall. That option has been taken away. Instead, Revit requires you to pick a point.
3. Move your cursor over the inside corner, at the bottom intersection of the corridor. Make sure you're exactly over the exterior intersection of the brick. You'll know you're there when the blue dot appears, as shown in Figure 5.16.
4. When you see the dot, pick the corner.

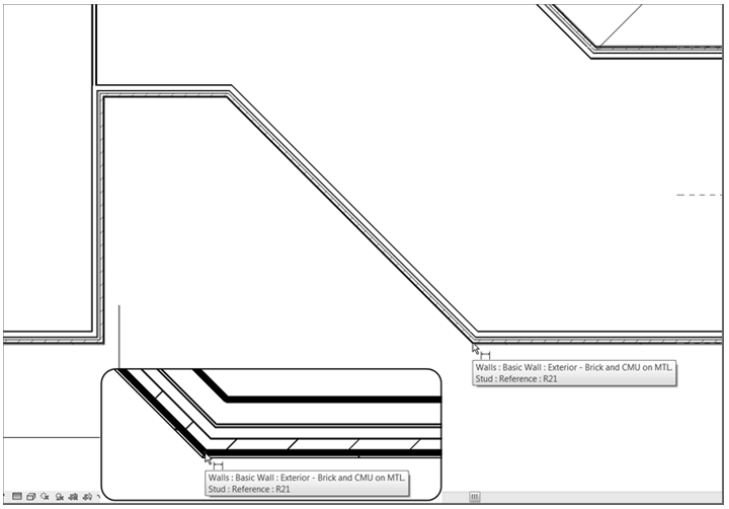


FIGURE 5.16: Select the finished exterior corner of the brick. You'll see a small blue dot appear, indicating that you can pick the start of the dimension.

5. Pick the same spot on the other end of the wall, as shown in Figure 5.17. When you pick the second corner, the dimension follows your cursor in a straight direction.

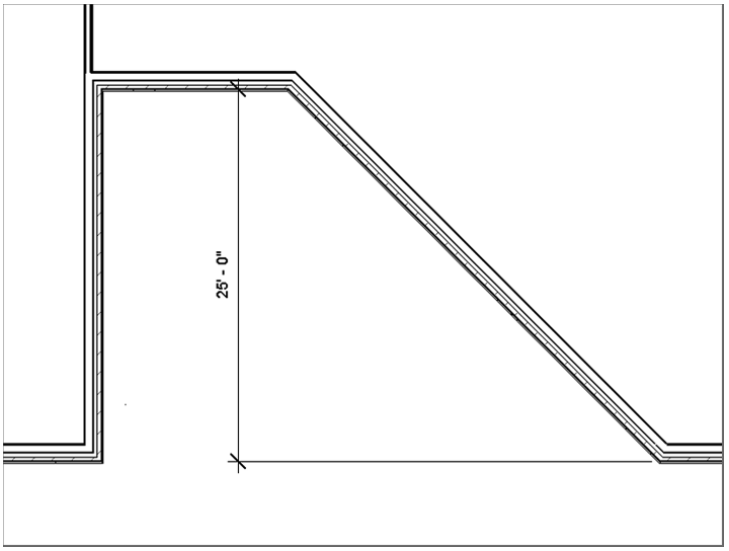


FIGURE 5.17: When you add a linear dimension to an angled wall, you get a straight dimension.

6. Move your cursor to the left, approximately 8′ (2400 mm) past the first point you picked, and pick the third point to place the dimension (see Figure 5.17).

Aligned and linear dimensions are the two dimension styles that pertain to straight dimensioning. The next three dimension procedures add dimensions to angled and radial geometry.

Angular Dimensions

Angular dimensioning comes close to needing no introduction at all, but I'll introduce it anyway. Angular dimensions are used to calculate and record the angle between two items. These two items are usually walls. You'll add an angular dimension to your lovely corridor walls in the following steps:

1. Zoom back in on the corridor if you aren't there already.
2. On the Dimension panel, click the Angular button, as shown in Figure 5.18.

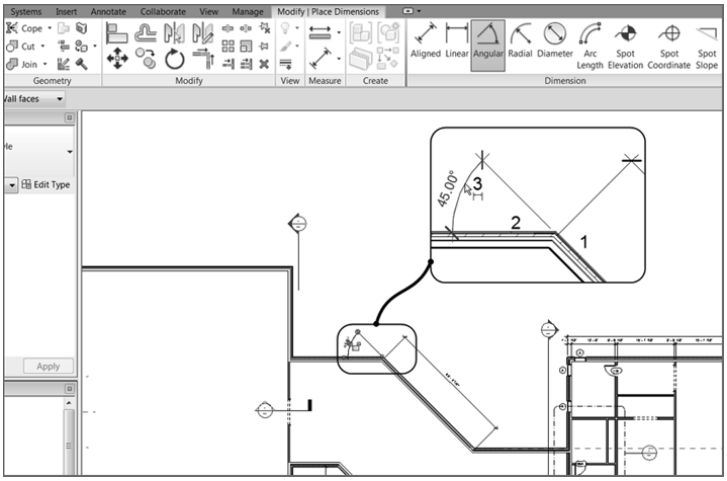


FIGURE 5.18: Placing an angular dimension involves picking two walls and then a point to place the dimension.

3. For the first wall, pick the finished, inside face of the angled corridor wall, which is marked 1 in Figure 5.18.
4. Pick the finished, inside face of the north corridor wall, marked 2 in Figure 5.18.

5. Move your cursor to the left about 8′ (2400 mm), and place the dimension marked 3 in Figure 5.18.
6. Press Esc.
7. Repeat the steps for the bottom of the corridor.
8. Add the rest of the dimensions, as shown in Figure 5.19. This completes the dimensioning of the corridor area.

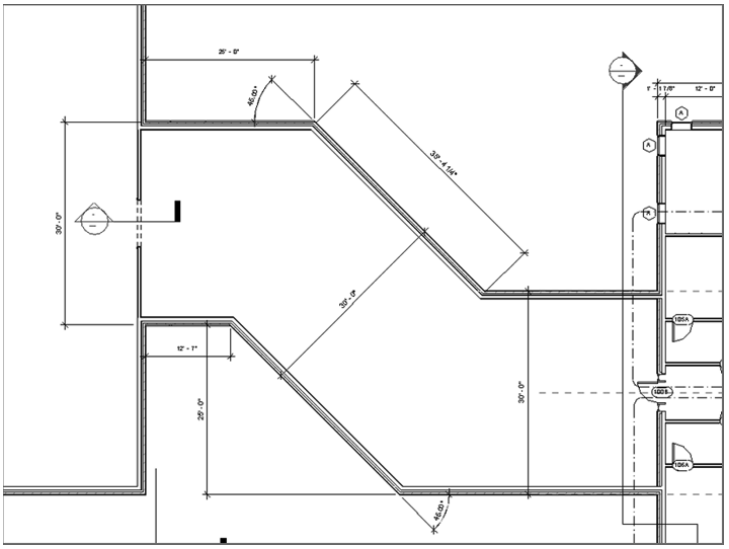


FIGURE 5.19: Finish placing the corridor dimensions.

If you would like to place the dimensions in different locations, feel free to do so.

The next set of dimensions pertains to radial geometry. You can finally get out of this corridor!

Keep in mind that you can add an angular dimension to physically change the angle of the items being dimensioned. Use caution, however, and be sure the correct items are being moved when you alter the angle.

Radial Dimensions

Radial dimensions are used to, well, measure the radius of an item. You're lucky that Revit knows you're adding a radial dimension to a building component. This means the many different choices provided by a CAD application are taken away, leaving just the basics.

The following procedure will lead you through adding a radial dimension:

1. Zoom in on the east radial entry in the east wing.
2. On the Annotate tab, click the Radial button.

3. Pick the outside face of the radial wall, as shown in Figure 5.20.

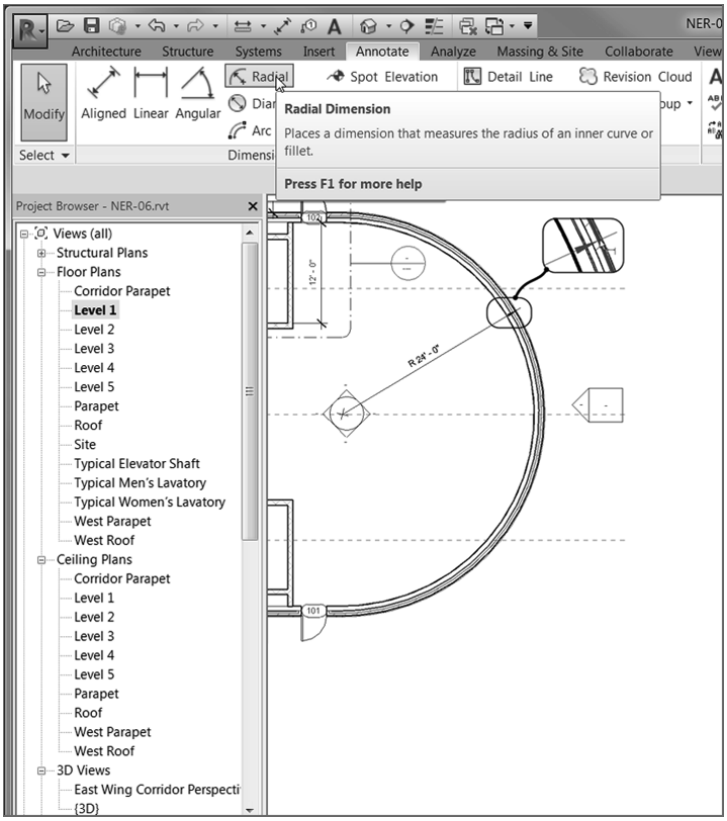


FIGURE 5.20: Adding a radial dimension is about as straightforward as it gets.

4. Place the radial dimension somewhere that makes sense. If your model looks like Figure 5.20, you may proceed. If it doesn't, go back and try again.
5. Pan all the way to the west radial end of the west wing, as shown in Figure 5.21.
6. On the Annotate tab, click the Diameter button, as shown in Figure 5.21.
7. Dimension to the finished outside face of the brick, and place your dimension in a location similar to that shown in Figure 5.21.

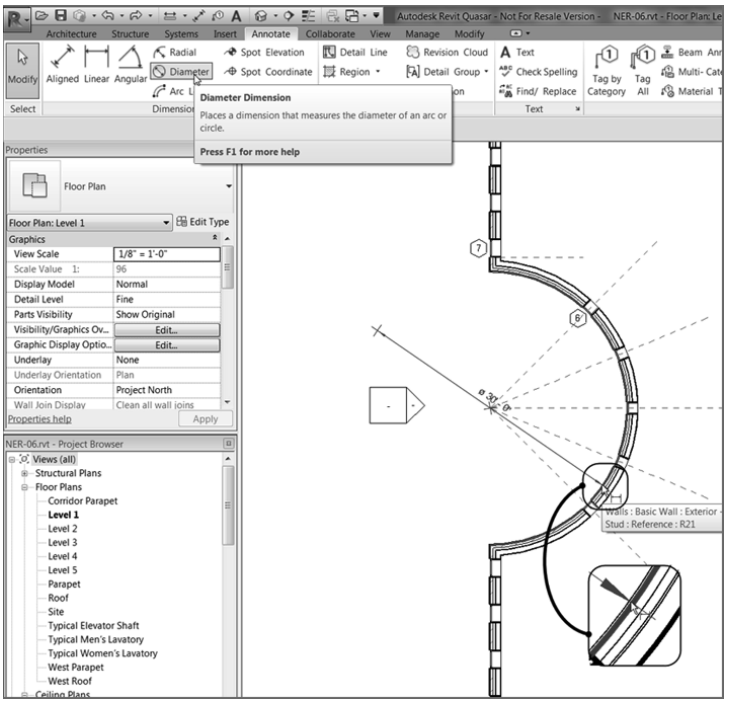


FIGURE 5.21: Adding a diameter dimension

WARNING **All too often, you can easily dimension from the wrong reference point. This book uses a wall with a concrete ledge below the brick to emphasize that you need to be deliberate in how and where you choose your references for dimensions. Don't be afraid to zoom in and out as you add dimensions.**

If you're careful in how you add a radial dimension, you'll find this process quite simple. The next type of dimension, however, can be a little tricky.

Arc Length Dimensions

Measuring the length of an arc is a handy capability that was added in the 2009 release. I have found the arc length dimension extremely useful in locating items such as windows along an arc. That is, in fact, what you need to do in the west wing of the building.

The following procedure will lead you through adding an arc length dimension:

1. Zoom in on the west radial entry of the west wing, as shown in Figure 5.22.

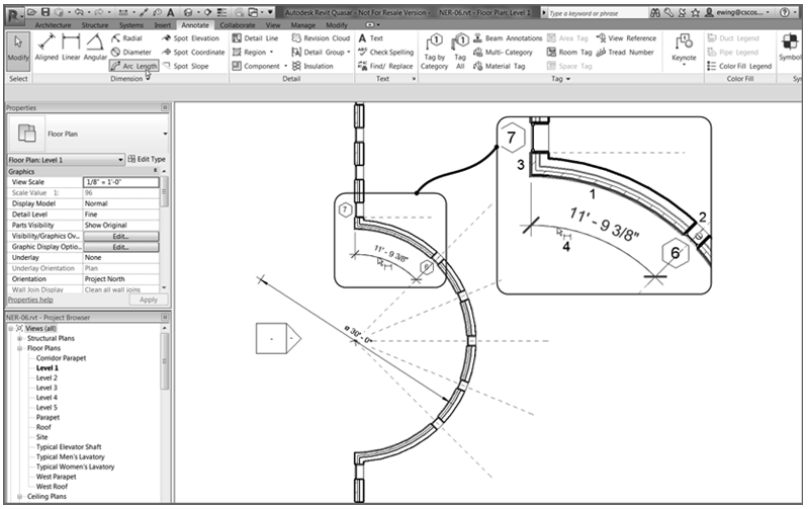


FIGURE 5.22: Placing an arc length dimension involves four separate picks.

2. On the Annotate tab, click the Arc Length button, as shown at upper left in Figure 5.22.
3. Pick the finish face exterior face of the brick on the radial wall marked 1 in Figure 5.22.
4. Pick the centerline of the uppermost window in the radial wall, marked 2. The NO symbol won't change, but you'll be able to pick the window centerline.
5. Pick a point along the exterior face of brick that runs along the vertical intersecting wall, marked 3 in Figure 5.22.
6. Pick a point at which to place the dimension, marked 4.

Let's try it again. This time the dimension will be taken from the first window (the one you just dimensioned) to the second window. The process is the same.

1. On the Annotate tab, click the Arc Length button if you aren't still in the command.
2. Pick the exterior face of the brick along the radial wall.
3. Pick the first window's centerline again.
4. Pick the second window's centerline.

5. Pick a point to place the dimension (see Figure 5.23).

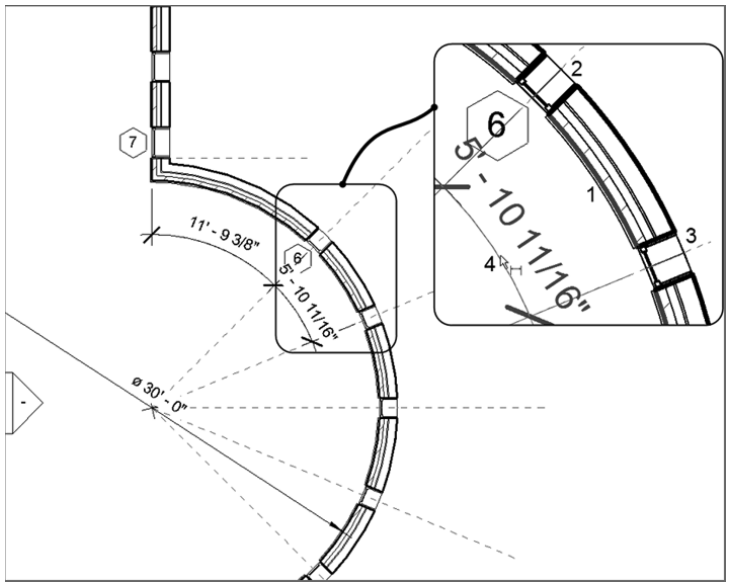


FIGURE 5.23: Adding a second arc length dimension

Now that you have experience adding dimensions to record the placement of items, it's time to see how you can physically use dimensions as a layout tool.

Using Dimensions as a Layout Tool

When it comes to dimensions, using them as a layout tool is my favorite topic. "OK, fine," you may say. "I can do that in CAD." Well, not quite. You see, in Revit Architecture you can't alter a dimension to reflect an increment that isn't accurate. You can, however, select the item you're dimensioning and then type a new number in the dimension. At that point, the item you're dimensioning will move. The result will be an accurate dimension.

The first task you need to explore is how to constrain a string of dimensions equally. You were exposed to this task earlier in the chapter, but now let's really dig in and gain some tangible experience using this tool.

For this procedure, you'll add some more walls to the west wing and then constrain them by using the EQ dimension function:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan (not a ceiling plan!).
2. Zoom into the west wing of the building.

3. Draw two interior-partition (2-hr) corridor walls, as shown in Figure 5.24.

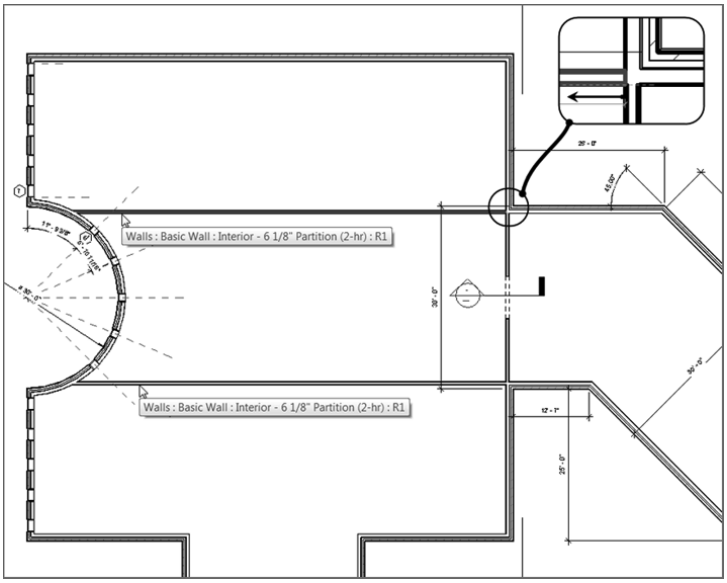


FIGURE 5.24: Adding two corridor walls

4. Draw five more walls, as shown in Figure 5.25. They don't have to be an equal distance from one another.

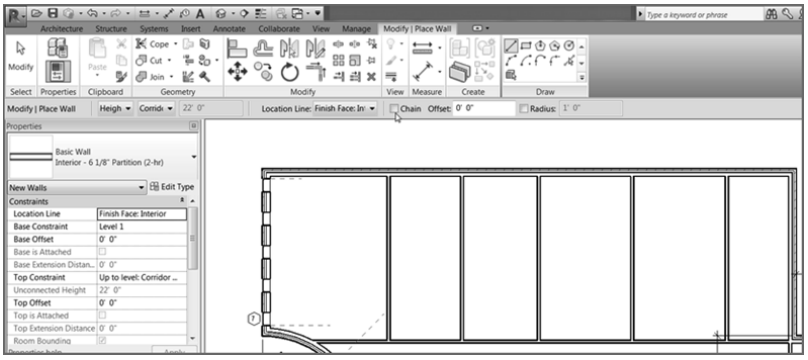


FIGURE 5.25: Place these walls as quickly as possible, and don't worry about their spacing.

Walls Kind of Sticky?

If you don't intend to draw continuous lines, check out the Options bar, and uncheck the Chain button. This allows you to draw separate walls with just two clicks.

5. On the Annotate tab, click the Aligned button (see Figure 5.26).

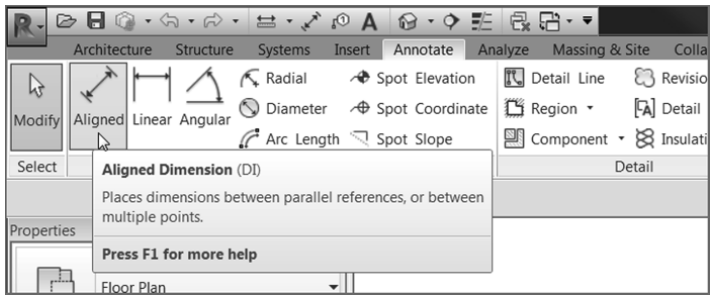


FIGURE 5.26: Changing the options for the dimension

6. On the Options bar, be sure Justification is set to Center Of Core.
7. Zoom in on the left exterior wall, as shown in Figure 5.27.

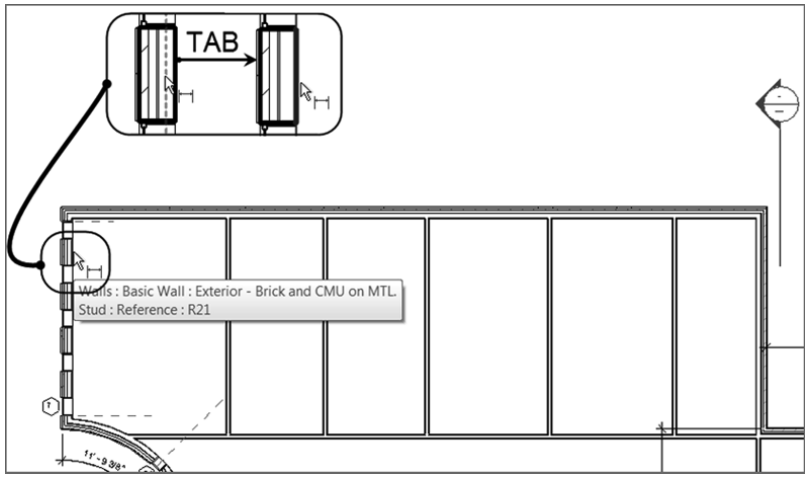


FIGURE 5.27: Press the Tab key to filter to the desired reference of the wall.

8. Hover your pointer over the wall. Do you notice that Revit is trying to locate the center of the wall? In this instance, you don't want this (even though you just told Revit to do that). You want Revit to start this dimension string by using the interior face of the finished wall. To do this, hover your pointer over the inside face of the wall (see Figure 5.27).
9. Tap the Tab key until Revit highlights the inside face of the wall.
10. Pick the inside face of the wall.
11. Move your cursor to the right until you pass over the first interior wall. Notice that the core centerline of the interior is highlighted, as shown in Figure 5.28. When you see this, pick the wall.

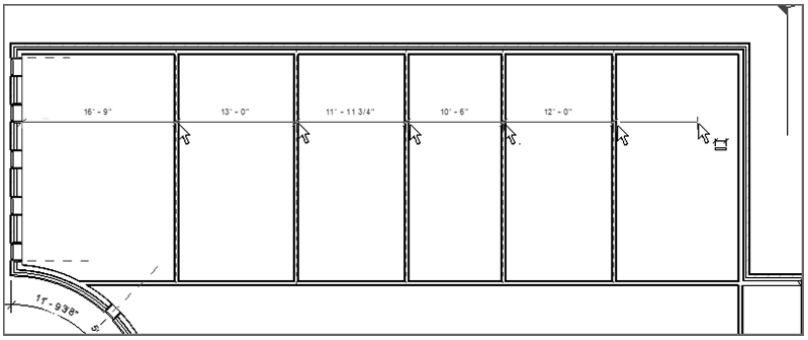


FIGURE 5.28: Adding a string of dimensions to the interior walls

WARNING Just as when you equally constrained the door in the previous procedure, you need to keep the Dimension command running. If you press Esc, undo the last dimension and start over.

12. After you pick the first interior partition, move to the right and pick the center of the next wall.
13. Repeat the procedure until you get to the last wall (see Figure 5.28).

When you reach the exterior wall to the right, you'll encounter the same issue as in steps 8–9. You want this string of dimensions to go to the inside face, not

the core of the exterior wall. To finally finish the dimension string, go through the following procedure:

1. Hover your cursor over the inside face of the wall, and tap the Tab key until the inside face of the wall becomes highlighted, as shown in Figure 5.29.

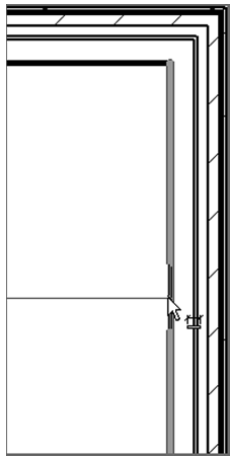


FIGURE 5.29: Press Tab to locate the inside face of the wall.

2. When you locate the inside face, pick it.
3. Move your cursor up the view. The entire dimension string follows.
4. Placing a dimension in Revit is a little awkward, but you'll get the hang of it. You need to pick a point away from the last dimension in the string, as shown in Figure 5.30, almost as if you're trying to pick another item that isn't there. When you do this, the dimension will be in place.

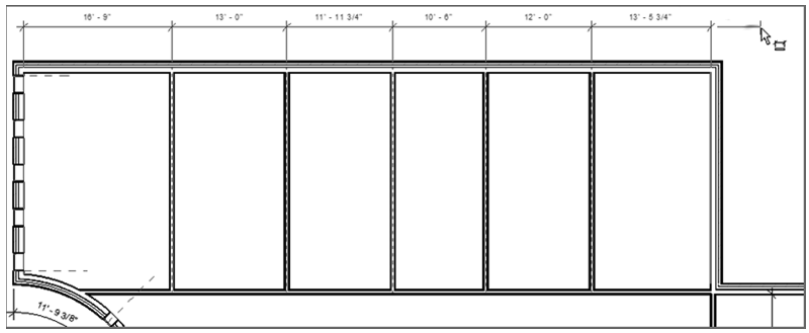


FIGURE 5.30: Pick a point away from the last dimension to place the string.

With the dimension string in place, let's move these walls so they're equidistant from one another. After you placed the dimension string, the familiar blue icons appeared. You can use them as follows:

1. Find the EQ icon in the middle of the dimension string, and pick it. The slash through it is now gone, and the walls have moved, as shown in Figure 5.31.

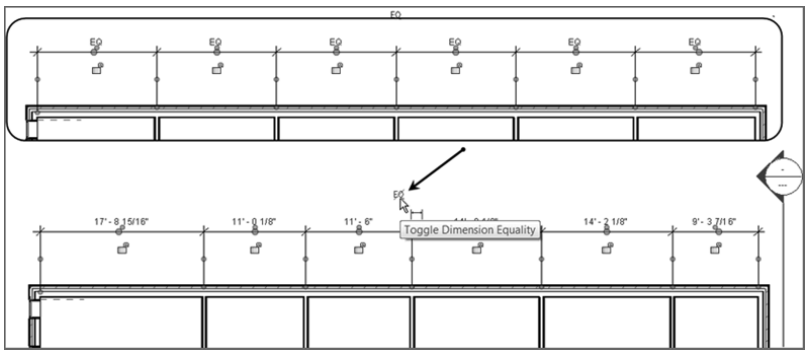


FIGURE 5.31: Before and after the EQ icon is selected

2. Press Esc twice to release the selection and exit the Aligned Dimension command.

Because these walls are constrained always to be equal, if one wall is moved, these five interior partitions will always maintain an equal relationship to one another—that is, as long as this dimension string is still associated with the walls.

In Revit Architecture, you can choose to keep the walls constrained or to use the dimension only as a tool to move the walls around.

If you placed the dimension string and then escaped out of the command, that's fine. You can simply select the string of dimensions again, and you'll be back in business.

Constraining the Model

Choices you make early in the design process, such as constraining a model, can either greatly benefit or greatly undermine the project's flow. As you gain more experience using Revit Architecture, you'll start hearing the term *overconstrained*. This is a term for a model that has been constrained in so many places that any movement of the model forces multiple warnings and, in many cases, errors that can't be ignored.

Given that, how you choose to constrain your model is up to you. You'll learn how to constrain (and, of course, *un*constrain) your model in this section, but deciding when and where to constrain your model will vary from project to project.

Unconstraining the Walls

The string of equal dimensions you now have in place has created a constraint with these walls. To unconstrain them, follow these steps:

1. Select the dimension string.
2. Press the Delete key on your keyboard.
3. Revit gives you a warning, as shown in Figure 5.32. You must choose whether to unconstrain the elements.

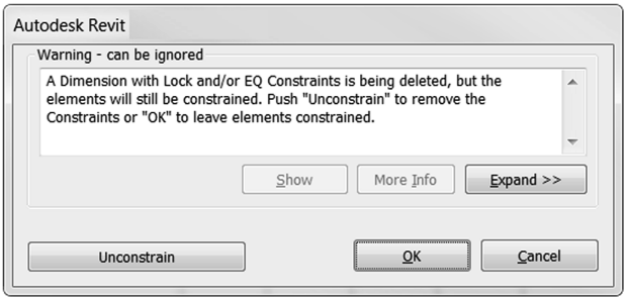
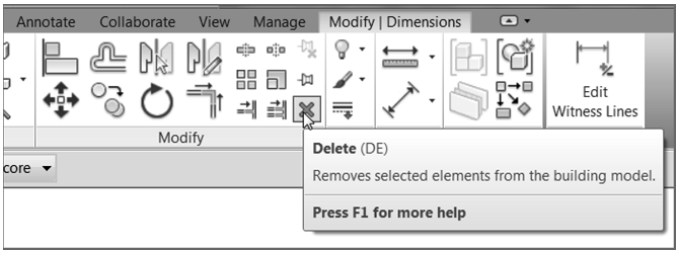


FIGURE 5.32: A Revit warning pertaining to the constraint of the walls

If you click the Unconstrain button, the EQ dimension will disappear as well as any constraint on the walls. If you move the exterior wall, the newly spaced walls won't reposition themselves.

Out of Sight, Out of Mind

In CAD, you type E and then press Enter to delete an item. This is no longer a good idea. If you do this to an item in Revit Architecture, you'll hide that element only from the current view—not from the entire model. You're better off either selecting the item and pressing the Delete key or selecting the item and clicking the Delete icon, as shown here:



4. Click OK. You'll learn how to unconstrain these walls via a different method.
5. Select one of the interior walls that were part of the EQ dimension string.
6. The EQ icon appears. Click it to release the constraint set for the walls (see Figure 5.33). You're now free to move around the building. (Note that the EQ icon may be hiding behind a wall in the middle of the array. Zooming out will make the icon larger and easier to pick.)

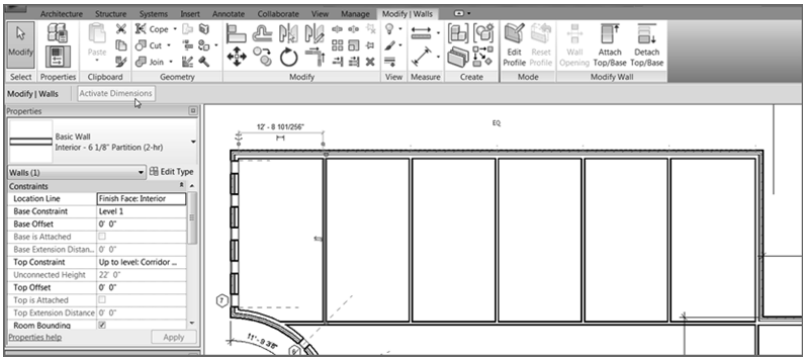


FIGURE 5.33: Unconstraining the walls

NOTE Sometimes, when you select an item that is being constrained, the dimensions are already activated and the Options bar doesn't provide the Activate Dimensions button. If you don't see the Activate Dimensions button on the Options bar for this example, your dimensions have been activated already.

TIP Notice in the figure the anchor icon to the left of the dimensions. You use this icon to determine which wall will remain stationary. You can move the anchor icon to any of the items involved in the constraint. For example, if you click and drag the anchor to the middle partition and then move one of the other constrained walls, the middle partition will stay in place while the other walls move an equal distance to the right and left of the anchored wall.

Now that you have experience with dimension equality constraints, it's time to learn about a different type of constraint that involves locking items together at a distance.

Locking a Dimension

At times you may want always to hold a dimension, no matter what else is going on around it. You can do this by physically adding a dimension to an item and then locking that dimension in place. For example, if you want to lock the middle space to a specific dimension, you simply add a dimension and lock it down. Sound easy? It is!

1. On the Annotate tab, click the Aligned button.
2. In the Properties dialog, select the Linear – 3/32″ dimension style, as shown in Figure 5.34.

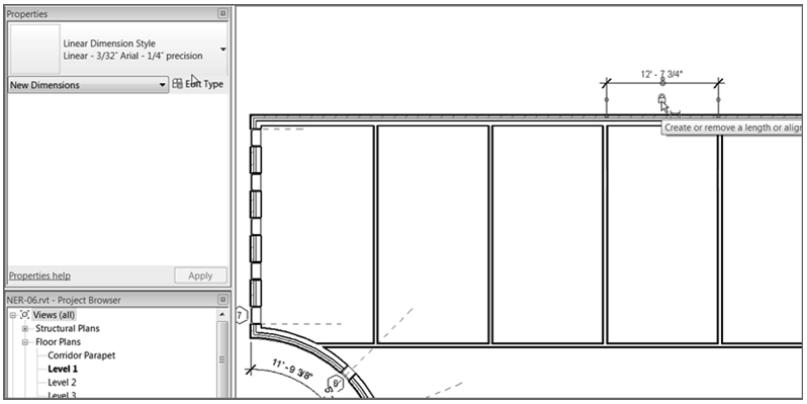


FIGURE 5.34: You can add a dimension and lock the distance between two items.

3. On the Options bar, change the alignment to Wall Faces.
4. Pick the inside faces of the two middle partitions, as shown in the upper-left corner of Figure 5.34.
5. After you place the dimension, a blue padlock icon appears. Pick it. It should change to a locked padlock icon. When it does, press Esc twice or click Modify to terminate the command.
6. Select the left wall that has been dimensioned.
7. Move the wall to the right 2′ (600 mm). Notice that the right wall moves as well. If you get a "constraints are not satisfied" message, you need to go back and un-EQ the five walls.
8. Click the Undo button, as shown in Figure 5.35.

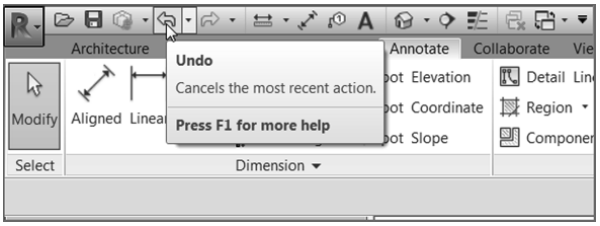


FIGURE 5.35: Click the Undo button.

9. Delete the dimension.
10. When you get the warning, click the Unconstrain button.
11. Save the model.
12. Add doors and windows to the plan, as shown in Figure 5.36. They can be any type of door or window you choose—just try to keep them similar to the ones in Figure 5.36. Also, placement doesn't matter. You'll adjust this in the next procedure.

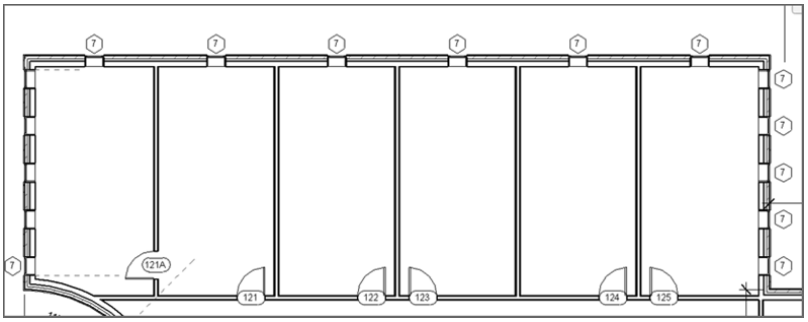


FIGURE 5.36: Adding doors and windows to the floor plan

In the next section, you'll start using dimensions as a tool to move elements around physically. Although this might seem like an exercise in futility, the practice is relevant to what you'll encounter in future projects.

Using Dimensions to Move Objects

As I have mentioned, you can't type over a dimension and cause the value in that dimension to be inaccurate. Revit does provide tools to get around this. When you add a dimension and select the object being dimensioned, the

dimension turns blue. This is a temporary dimension, which can be edited. Consequently, the object being dimensioned will move.

The goal of this procedure is to select an item and modify the temporary dimension, in effect moving the object.

1. Zoom in on the left side of the west wing, as shown in Figure 5.37.

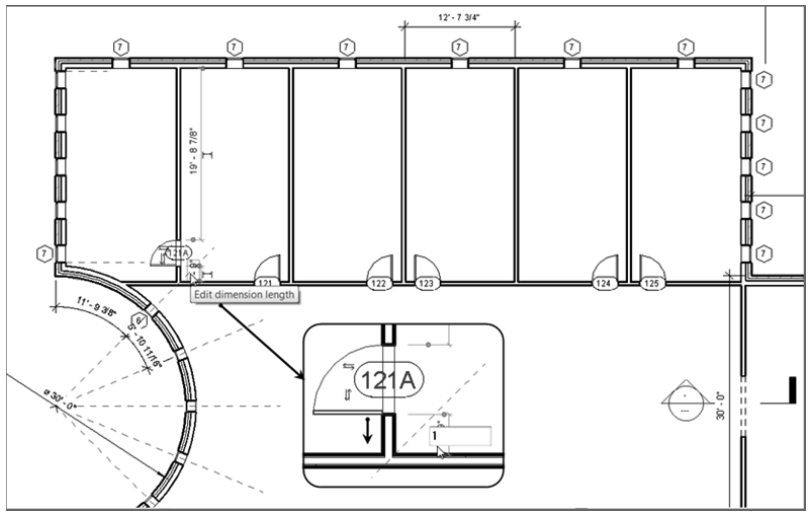


FIGURE 5.37: When you type a different value, the temporary dimension moves the object.

2. Select the door (see Figure 5.37). There is a blue dimension on each side of the door. These are temporary dimensions.
3. Pick the blue text in the lower temporary dimension (see Figure 5.37). The text might be obscured by the wall, but if you hover over it, it will activate, and then you can select it.
4. Type 1 (300). For Imperial users, this is the equivalent of 1′–0″ (300 mm). The door moves.
5. Press the Esc key to release the door.

This procedure used a temporary dimension that appeared when you selected the item. After you edited the dimension, it went away. In the next procedure, you'll add a permanent dimension and do the same thing:

1. On the Annotate tab, select the Aligned button.
2. Place a dimension between the door and the wall, as shown in Figure 5.38.

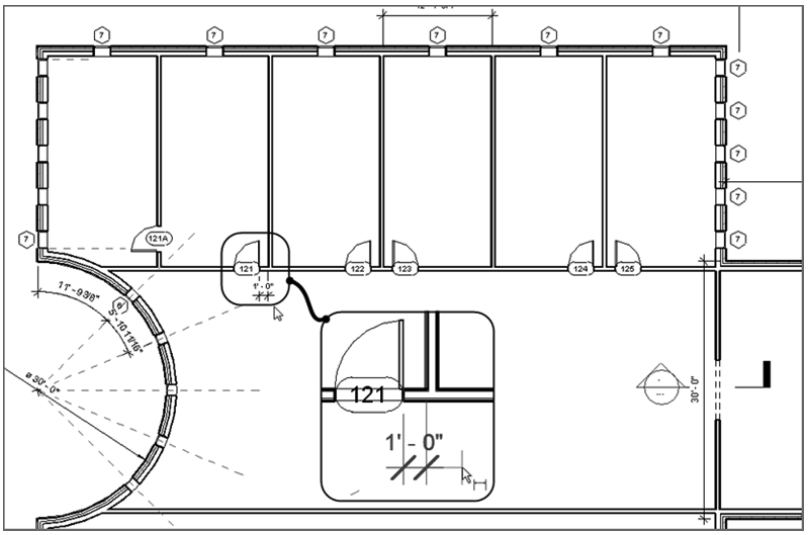


FIGURE 5.38: Placing a dimension

3. Press the Esc key twice.
4. Select the door shown in Figure 5.39. The dimension turns small and blue: it's ready to be modified.

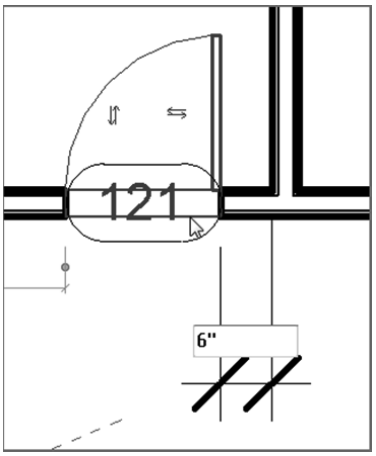


FIGURE 5.39: Making adjustments with the actual dimension

5. When the dimension turns blue, select the text, and type 6″ (150 mm). The door adjusts to the 6″ (150 mm) increment.

6. Press the Esc key, or click anywhere in open space to clear the selection.
7. Select the dimension.
8. There is a blue grip just underneath the text. Pick the grip, and move the text out from between the extension lines, as shown in Figure 5.40. Revit places a *leader* (an arrow line extending from the model to your text) in the text.

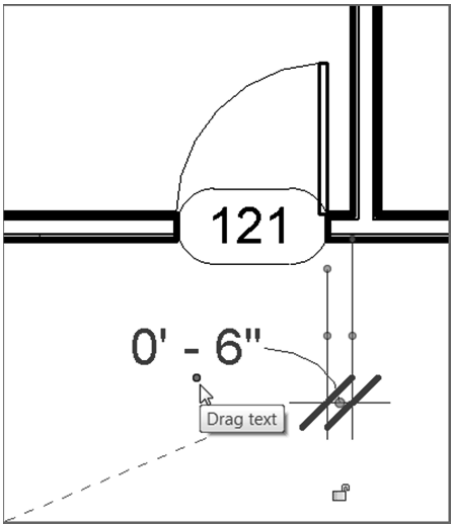


FIGURE 5.40: By grip-editing the text, you can slide it to a cleaner location. Revit automatically places a leader from the text to the dimension line.

The fact that Revit displays temporary dimensions lends itself to another common process: the double-check. All you need to do in Revit Architecture is select any item, and the temporary dimensions will appear. (If not, remember to click Activate Dimensions on the Options bar.) You can simply look at the dimension.

The process of using dimensions to move objects takes some getting used to. The next procedure delves into making further modifications to dimensions and provides a nice fail-safe procedure embedded within the Dimension Properties.

Using Dimension Text Overrides

Although I just told you that you can't override a dimension, the following steps get around that problem. In many cases, you may want text or, more commonly, a prefix or a suffix within a dimension. You can do all three in Revit Architecture.

1. Select the 6″ (150 mm) dimension.
2. The text turns blue. As you know, blue means this item is editable in Revit. Pick the text. You should see a dialog box like the one in Figure 5.41.

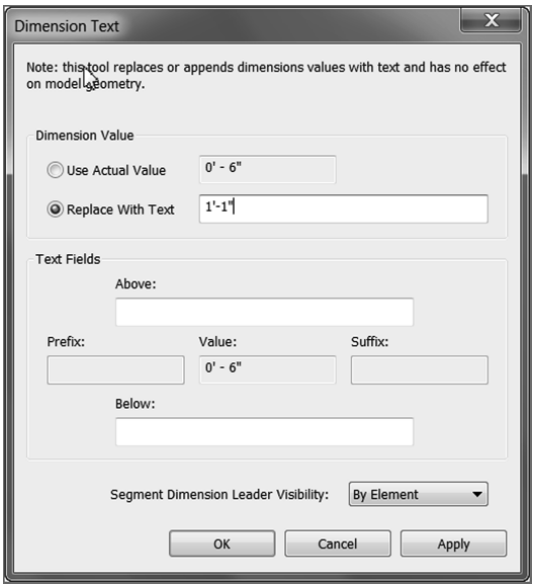


FIGURE 5.41: The Dimension Text dialog box

3. Under Dimension Value, click Replace With Text.
4. Type 1′–1″ (325 mm), and press Enter.
5. You get an Invalid Dimension Value message, as shown in Figure 5.42. Revit won't allow you to do such a foolish thing. Click Close.

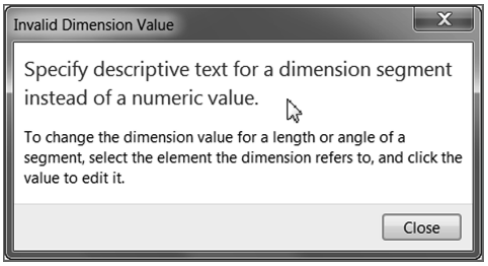


FIGURE 5.42: Any numeric value triggers a warning in Revit. You simply can't type a value over a dimension.

6. In the Dimension Text dialog box, select Use Actual Value.

7. Under Suffix, type **TYP.**, as shown in Figure 5.43.

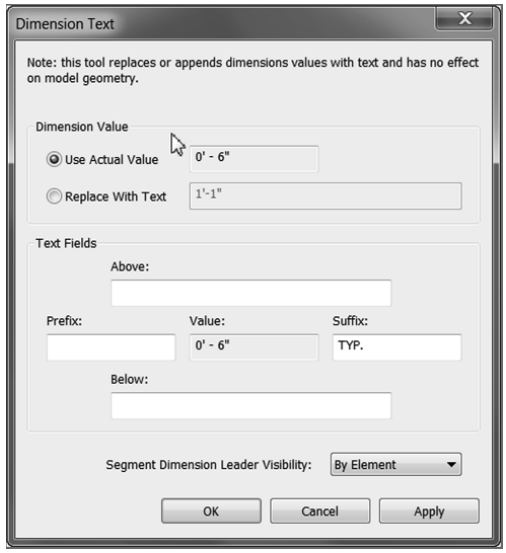


FIGURE 5.43: **Under Dimension Value, choose Use Actual Value, and type TYP. as the suffix.**

8. Click OK.

As a closing practice for dimensioning, move the rest of the doors along this wall to a 6″ (150 mm) increment from the finished, inside face of the wall to the door opening. Also, dimension the floor plan as shown in Figure 5.44 and Figure 5.45.

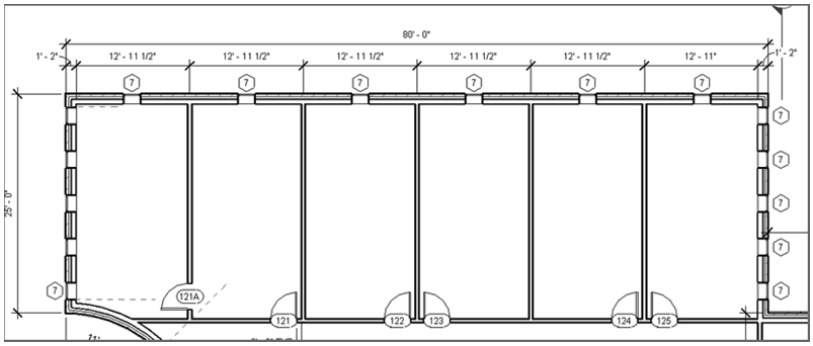


FIGURE 5.44: **The dimensional layout for the north part of the west wing**

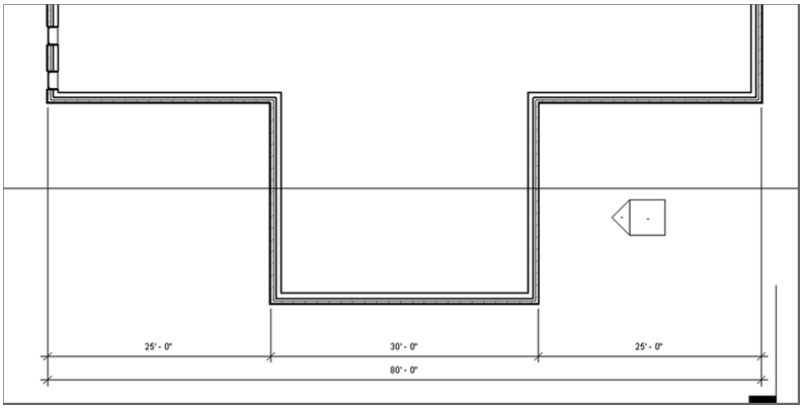


FIGURE 5.45: The dimensional layout for the south part of the west wing

Placing Text and Annotations

Text in Revit Architecture is a love/hate relationship for every Revit user. You'll love text because it automatically scales with the view's scale. You'll hate it because the text editor is something of a throwback from an earlier CAD application. Either way, the procedure for adding text doesn't change with your feelings toward it.

The objective of this procedure is simply to add text to the model, format it, and then add and format a leader:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Zoom in on the east wing's radial entry area, where the elevator shafts are located, as shown in Figure 5.46.
3. On the Text panel of the Annotate tab, click the Text button, as shown in Figure 5.47.
4. In the Type Selector, select Text : 3/32″ (2) Arial.
5. On the Format panel, you have choices for a leader. For this example, click the No Leader button. It's the button with the *A* on it, as shown in Figure 5.48.

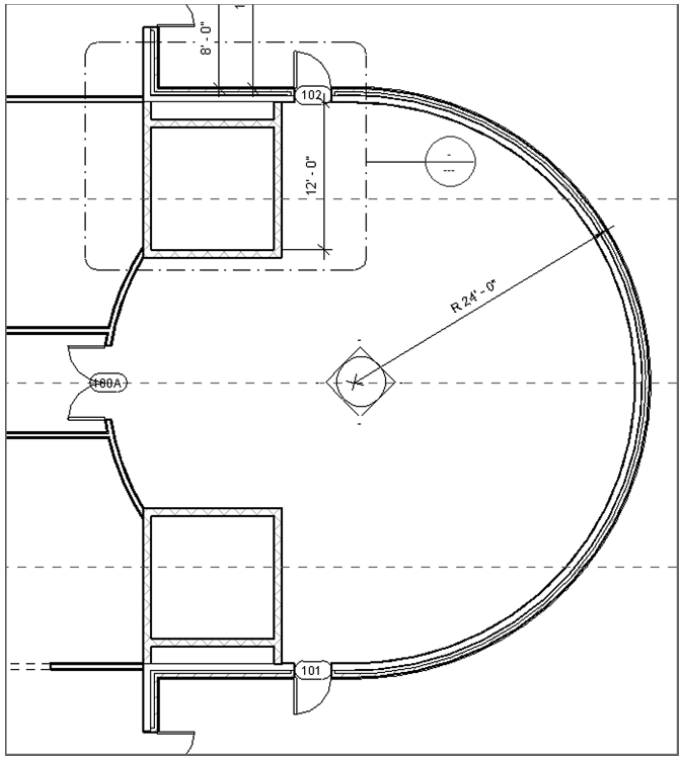


FIGURE 5.46: The radial entry

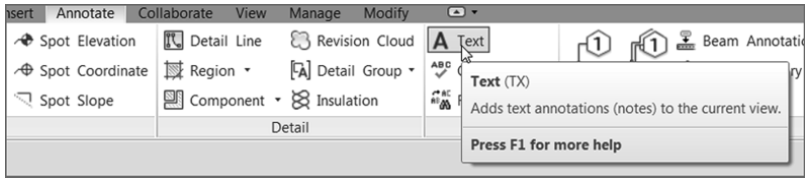


FIGURE 5.47: Click the Text button on the Text panel of the Annotate tab.

6. To place the text, you can pick a point or drag a window. Left-click at the point marked 1 in Figure 5.48. Keep the button down.
7. Drag the cursor to the point marked 2, and release the button.
8. Type **CMU SHAFT WALL**.
9. Click a point in the view outside the text box. You now have a note in the model. The text wraps to fit the size of the window you dragged.

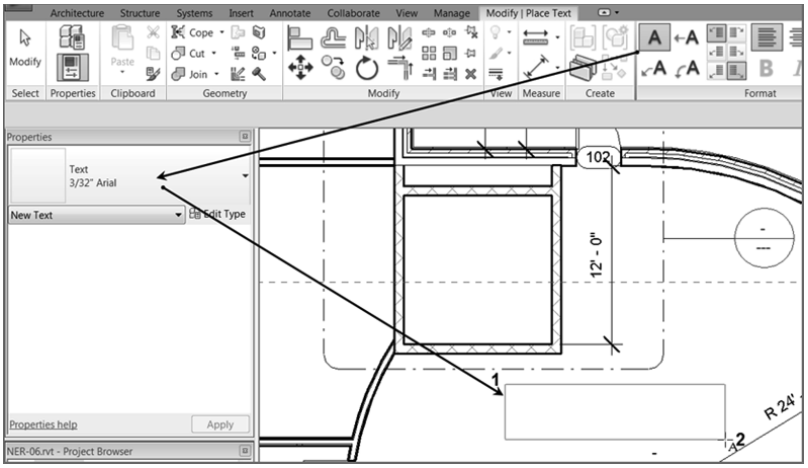


FIGURE 5.48: Placing text

10. Press the Esc key twice, or click Modify.
11. Select the text.
12. On the Format panel, review the choices you have to add a leader to the text.
13. Click the Add Left Side Straight Leader button, as shown in Figure 5.49. This option adds a leader to the left end of the text.

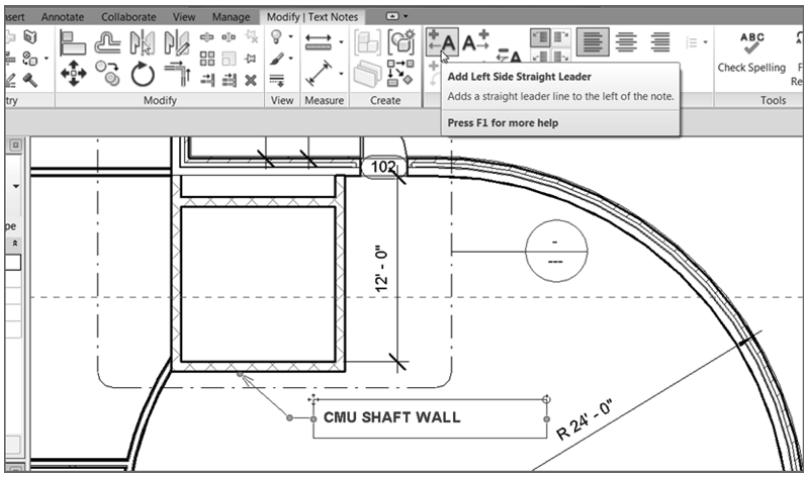


FIGURE 5.49: Adding and stretching a leader

14. By clicking the grips and moving the text around, configure the text and the leader to resemble Figure 5.49.

Adding Leader Text

You can add text to a model by placing a leader first and then adding the text within the same command. Although in Revit you can add leaders to all text, you can choose to add text to a model with or without a leader.

The objective of the following steps is to place text with a leader:

1. On the Text panel of the Annotate tab, click the Text button.
2. On the Format panel, click the Two Segments button, as shown in Figure 5.50.

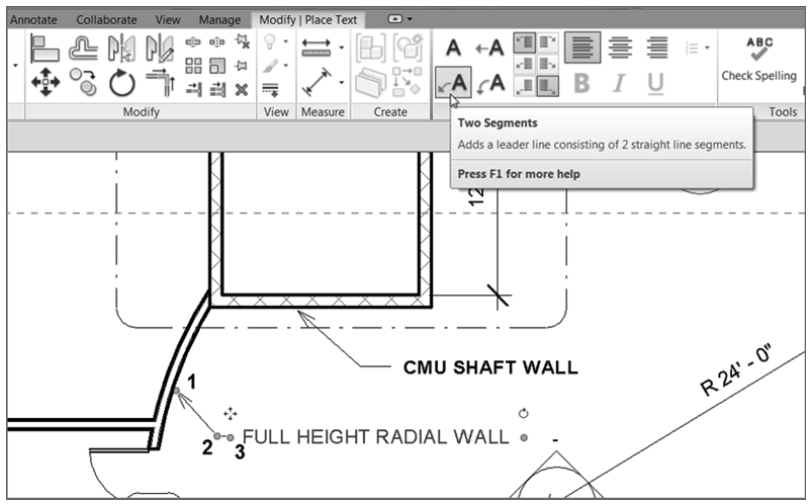


FIGURE 5.50: Adding a piece of leader text

3. Pick a point near the radial wall, marked 1 in Figure 5.50.
4. Pick a second point similar to the point marked 2.
5. Pick a third point just to the right of the second, marked 3.
6. Type **FULL HEIGHT RADIAL WALL**.
7. Click an area outside the text.

Now that you can add text to a model, let's investigate how to modify the text after you add it. You'll begin with the arrowhead on the end of the leader.

Changing the Leader Type

It almost seems as though Revit uses the ugliest leader as a default, forcing you to change it immediately. The large arrowhead you saw in Figure 5.50 isn't the only one Revit provides—had that been the case, Revit might have never have gotten off the ground!

To change the arrowhead that Revit uses with a text item, follow this procedure:

1. On the Text panel of the Annotate tab is a small arrow pointing down and to the right, as shown in Figure 5.51. Click it to open the Type Properties.

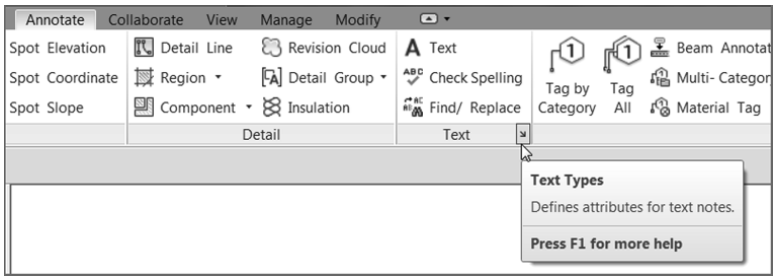


FIGURE 5.51: Accessing the Type Properties

2. Change the Leader Arrowhead parameter to Arrow Filled 15 Degree, as shown in Figure 5.52.
3. Click OK. You've changed a type parameter.

That's a handsome-looking arrowhead, as shown in Figure 5.53. The next item to address is how to modify the placement of text after you add it to the model.

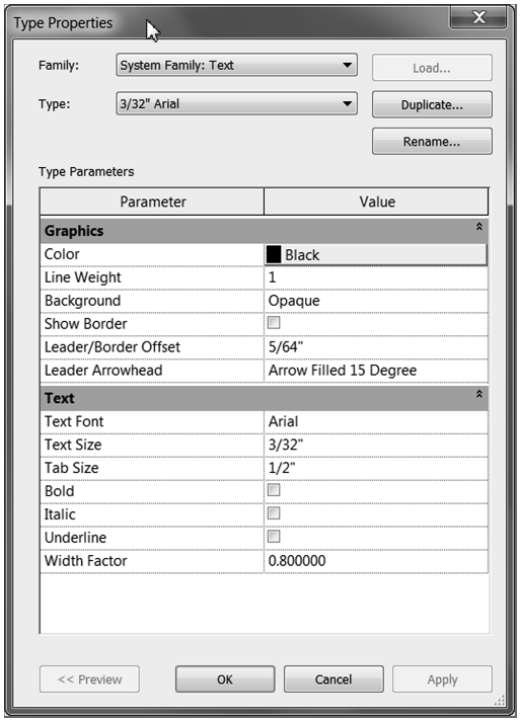


FIGURE 5.52: Changing that ugly arrow

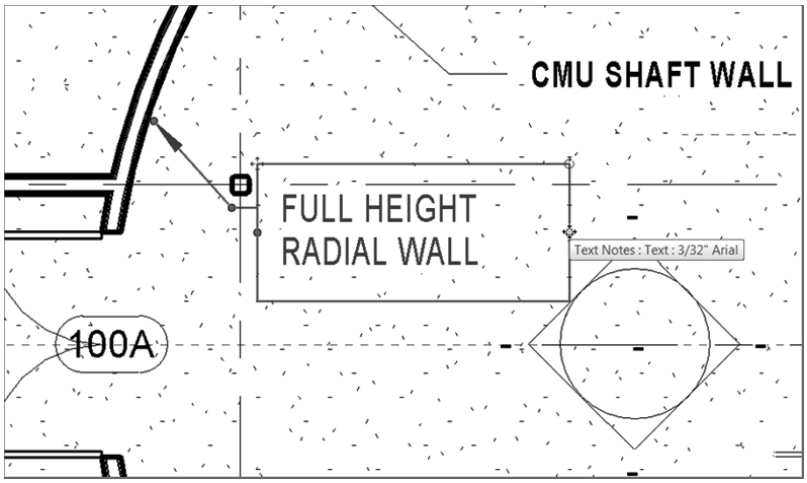


FIGURE 5.53: Configuring the arrowhead

Modifying the Text Placement

With any text item in Revit, you can select the text in your model, and you'll see grips for adjusting text: two grips on the text box, two on the leader, and a rotate icon.

Your next objective is to modify the text placement and to make the necessary adjustments.

1. Select the text you just added to the model.
2. Pick the right blue grip.
3. Stretch the text window to the left until it forces the text to wrap, as shown in Figure 5.53.

Observe the rotate icon. You don't need to rotate the text here, but notice that it's there, for future reference.

Modifying the placement of text is a straightforward process. Changing the actual font and size of the text in a model is another story and requires further investigation.

Changing Text Properties

Of course, you can change the font used for text. You can also change the text's height and width. Keep in mind, however, that the text height you specify is the actual text height you want to see on the sheet. You no longer have to multiply the desired text height to a line-type scale. Revit understands that text is scaled based on the view's scale.

To modify the text appearance, run through the following procedure:

1. Pick the Text Types arrow in the corner of the Text panel, as you did when you changed the leader type.
2. Click the Duplicate button.
3. Call the new text **3/16″ Tahoma (3.5 mm Tahoma)**.
4. Click OK.
5. Change the Text Font setting to Tahoma.
6. Change the Text Size setting to **3/16″ (3.5 mm)**, as shown in Figure 5.54.
7. Change the Width Factor setting to **0.8**.
8. Click OK.

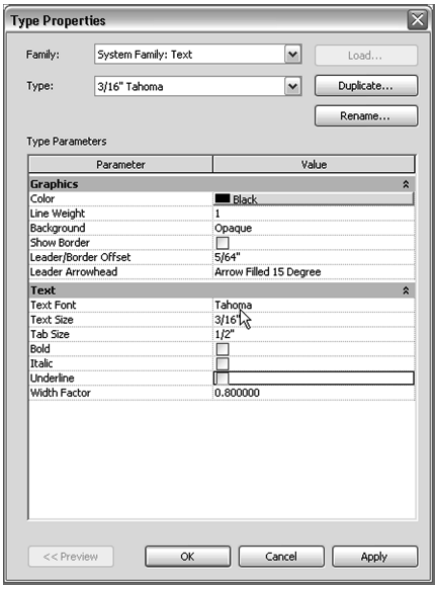


FIGURE 5.54: Changing the text values in the Type Properties dialog box

Revit doesn't use an SHX font. As a matter of fact, SHX can't be used at all in Revit. It was invented by Autodesk, but it works only with AutoCAD. Keep this in mind when you're setting up your company's templates. If you're using an SHX font, you'll need to find an alternate font or allow Revit to convert it to Arial. If you don't, this will cause issues in text formatting.

You've now successfully created a text style. (Of course, this large, nonuniform text isn't proper in this context.) You can use your new type easily.

1. Start the Text command.
2. In the Type Selector, verify that your new text is in the list.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ **add a multitude of different types of dimensions to your model simply by altering the options associated with the Dimension command**
- ✔ **equally constrain items in a model by adding a string of dimensions and clicking the EQ button**
- ✔ **use your dimensions as a layout tool, keeping the items constrained even after the dimension is deleted**
- ✔ **add text to a model by starting with either a leader or a paragraph of text**
- ✔ **change the text type and arrowhead type for leader text**

CHAPTER 6

Floors

It's going to be hard to convince you that floors are easy when an entire chapter is dedicated to this lone aspect of Autodesk® Revit® Architecture software. Well, floors *are* easy. I'm devoting an entire chapter to the subject because we need to address a lot of aspects of floors.

- **Placing a floor slab**
- **Building a floor by layers**
- **Splitting the floor materials**
- **Pitching a floor to a floor drain**
- **Creating shaft openings**

Placing a Floor Slab

Adding a floor to a model is quite simple, but in Revit Architecture, you're truly modeling the floor. That means you can include the structure and the finish when you create your floor. When you cut a section through the floor, you get an almost perfect representation of your floor system and how it relates to adjacent geometry, such as walls.

Floors, of course, are more than large slabs of concrete. Therefore, in this chapter, you'll also be introduced to creating materials, and you'll learn how to pitch these materials to floor drains. You'll examine how to create sloped slabs as well.

The first area you'll explore is how to place a slab into your model. It's as simple as it sounds, but you must follow certain steps, which I'll outline

next. As you've learned up to this point, in Revit Architecture you do need to add items the way Revit wants you to add them, or you'll probably generate errors—or, worse, inaccuracies in your model.

Creating the Slab

To begin, open the file you've been using to follow along. If you didn't complete Chapter 5, "Dimensioning and Annotating," go to the book's web page at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there you can browse to `Chapter 6` and find the file called `NER-06.rvt`.

NOTE **Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit won't accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.**

The objective of the following procedure is to create a floor slab to be placed into the model:

1. In your Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Zoom into the west wing.
3. On the Architecture tab, click the Floor button, as shown in Figure 6.1.

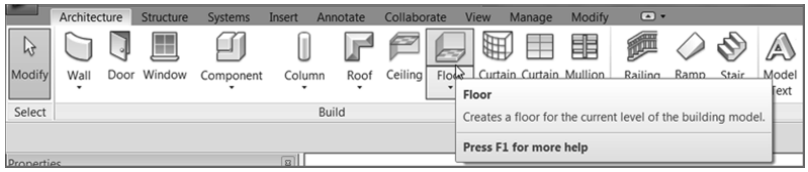


FIGURE 6.1: **The Floor button on the Architecture tab**

4. Switch to the Properties dialog. Make sure Floors is the current selection, as shown in Figure 6.2.

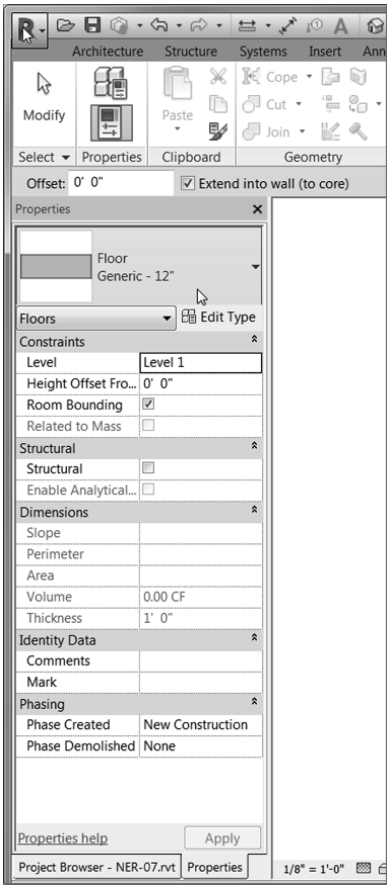


FIGURE 6.2: Changing the focus of the properties

5. At upper right in the dialog, click the Edit Type button (see Figure 6.3).

   You're now accessing the Type Properties. This means any change you make here will affect every slab of this type in the entire model.

TIP At this point, you should always either create a new floor system or rename the current one. This will avert much confusion down the line when you have a floor called Generic – 12″ (Generic 300 mm), and it's actually a 6″ (150 mm) concrete slab on grade.

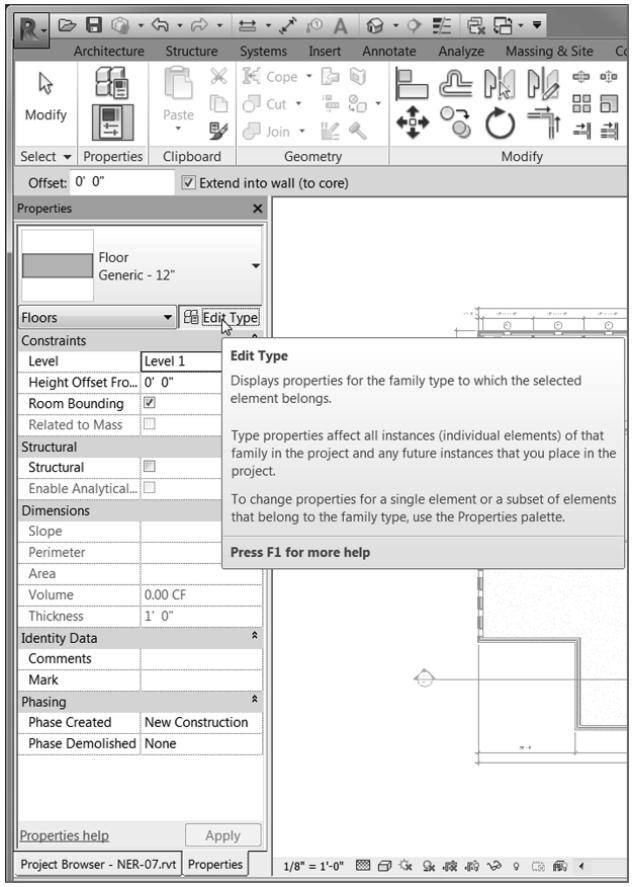


FIGURE 6.3: Clicking the Edit Type button to begin creating a new floor slab type

6. Click the Rename button, as shown in Figure 6.4.
7. Call the floor system **6″ Slab on Grade (150 mm Slab on Grade)**; see Figure 6.4.
8. Click OK.
9. Change Function to Exterior, as shown in Figure 6.5.
10. In the Structure row, click the long Edit button (see Figure 6.5).

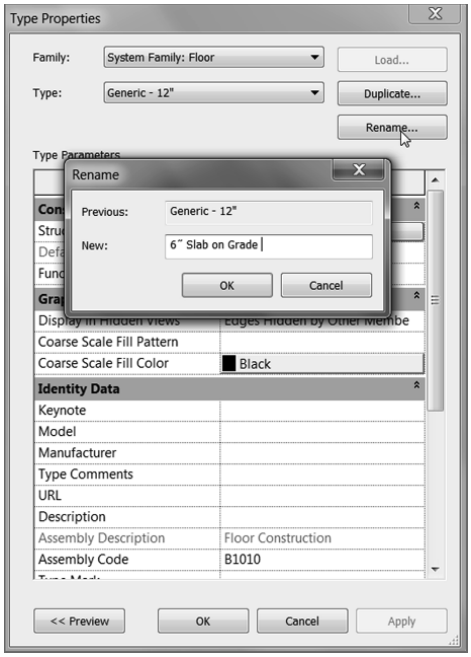


FIGURE 6.4: Renaming the current floor type. You'll never have a Generic 12″ (300 mm) floor in your model, so it's a good idea not to keep this floor type around.

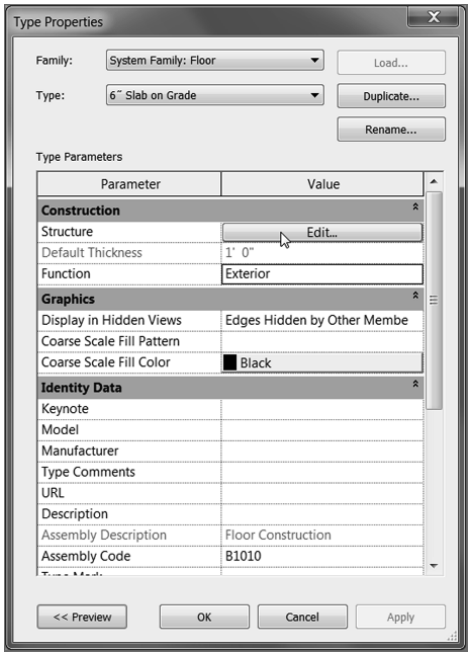


FIGURE 6.5: Clicking the Edit button to access the structure of the floor

The term *layer* may throw you off a bit. Revit uses layer here to describe a component of the floor. This is not to be confused with an Autodesk® AutoCAD® layer.

You're now in the Edit Assembly dialog box. This is where you can specify a thickness for your slab. You can add layers of materials here as well.

In the middle of the Edit Assembly dialog box is a large spreadsheet-type field that is divided into rows and columns. The rows are defined by a structural component and include a boundary above and below the structure. It's the Structure row in which you're interested here.

1. The Structure row is divided into columns. Click in the Material column within the Structure row, as shown in Figure 6.6.

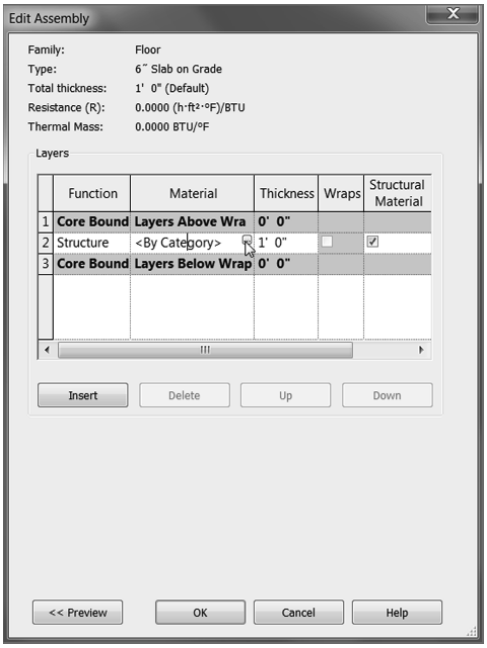


FIGURE 6.6: By clicking in the Material cell within the Structure row, you can access the Material Browser.

2. A small […] button appears when you click in the Material cell. This button indicates that you'll be given a menu if you click it. Click the […] button to open the Material Browser.
3. You can now choose a material from the menu. Scroll down until you arrive at Concrete, Cast-In-Place Gray, and select it.
4. Make sure the Graphics tab is current, as shown in Figure 6.7. You can display two different hatches: a sand hatch will be visible for

floor plans, and a concrete hatch will be visible for sections (see Figure 6.7). These hatches allow a filling region to designate specific materials graphically.

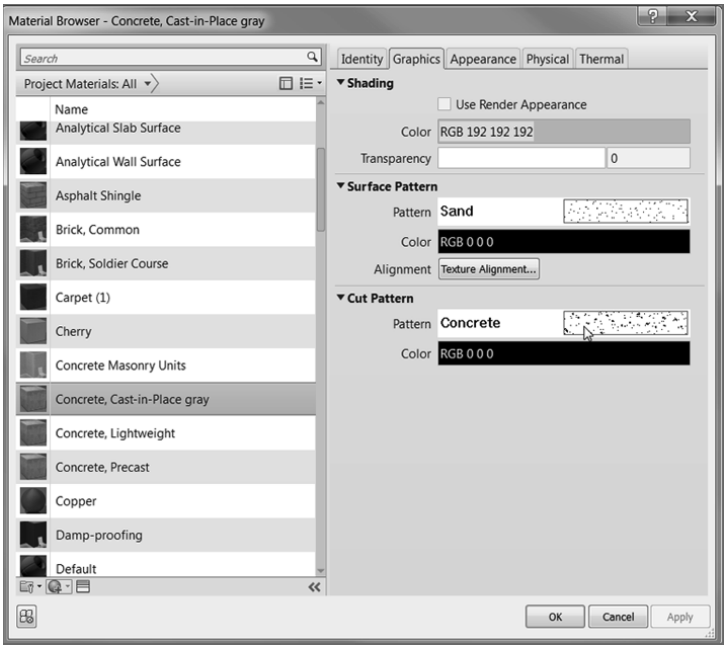


FIGURE 6.7: The Material Browser

5. Make sure Concrete, Cast-In-Place Gray is still selected, and click OK.
6. Back in the Edit Assembly dialog box, the Thickness column is directly to the right of the Material column. Currently the value in the Structure Row is 1′–0″ (300 mm). Click into the cell, and change the value to 6″ (150 mm).

TIP Imperial users, if you just type 6 and press Enter, you'll wind up with a slab 6′–0″ thick. Be sure to add the inch mark (″) after the 6. The value needs to read 0′–6″.

7. Click OK.
8. Click OK again to get back to the model.

Now that the slab type has been created, you can place an instance into the model. Notice that the Modify | Create Floor Boundary tab is in Sketch Mode. You'll now proceed to sketch the slab in place.

Sketching the Slab

You'll have to adjust to the way Revit wants you to proceed with the Create Floor Boundary tab; you're basically limited to the choices provided in this menu. Not to fear, you should have plenty of choices, but you'll still need to get a feel for how Revit works.

Here's what needs to happen: you must draw the perimeter of the slab into the model. This is basically a slab on grade, so you'll pour the concrete to the inside, finished face of the wall. You won't worry about a control joint between the wall and the slab at this point.

Picking Walls

The best way to add a slab is to use the Pick Walls button as much as possible (see Figure 6.8). In doing so, you tell Revit that this edge of the slab needs to move if this wall moves. Pick Walls is the default Draw option.

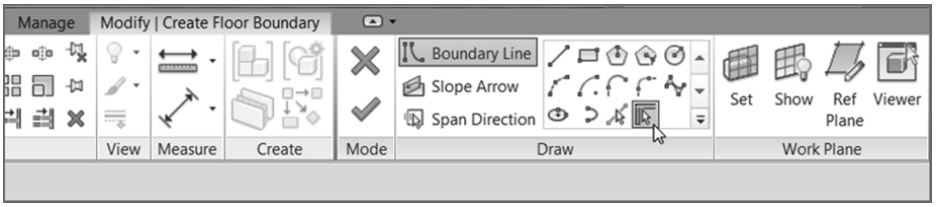


FIGURE 6.8: Picking walls ensures that that edge of your slab will move if the wall moves.

Let's start sketching the slab.

1. In the Modify | Create Floor Boundary tab, click the Pick Walls button, as shown in Figure 6.8, if it isn't already picked.
2. With the Pick Walls tool running, hover your mouse over the inside face of the wall.
3. After the wall becomes highlighted and you're sure you're on the inside of the wall, pick it (see Figure 6.9).

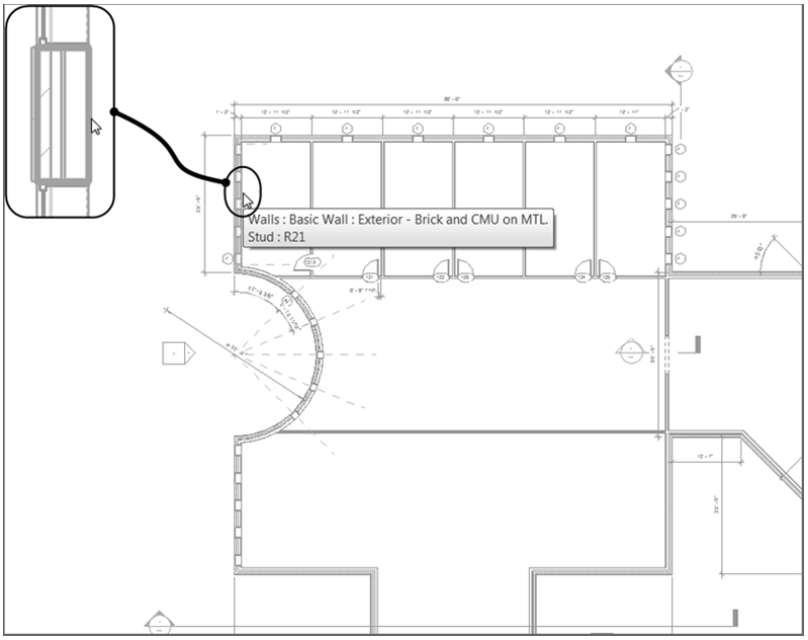


FIGURE 6.9: Picking the inside face of the first wall

4. With the inside face of the wall picked, you need to move on to the next wall. Pick the inside face of the north wall.

   Notice that, as you pick the walls, a magenta *sketch line* appears on the inside face of the walls. This is another indicator telling you whether you're on the correct side of the wall. The first line has two parallel lines, one on each side. These indicate the slab direction for structural decking.

5. Keep picking the walls, as shown in Figure 6.10. You need to have a continuous loop—no gaps and no overlaps.

6. Apply some basic modify commands as well. To clean the lower-right corner, use the Trim command. For the bottom line where the jog occurs, use the Split Element command. (Make sure the Delete Inner Segment button is selected on the Options bar.)

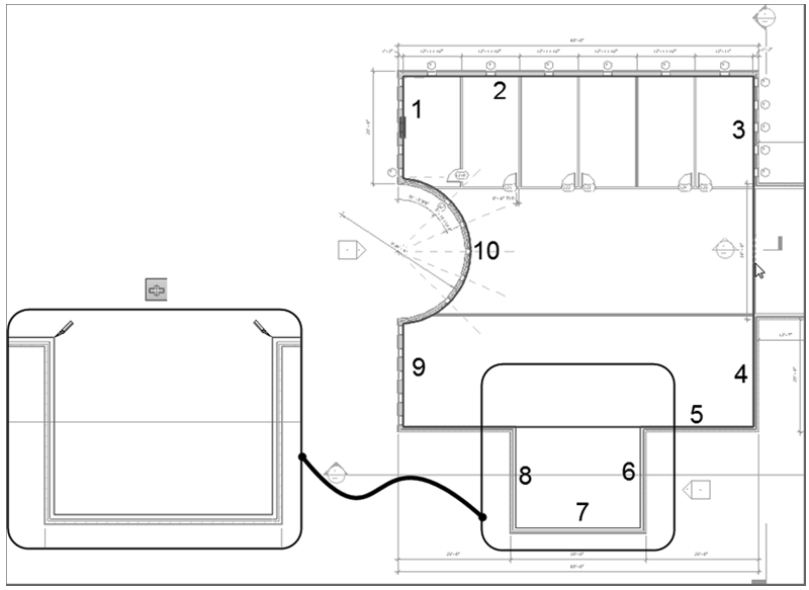


FIGURE 6.10: Selecting the walls

7. After you've picked the perimeter of the west wing, click Finish Edit Mode on the Modify | Create Floor Boundary tab, as shown in Figure 6.11. It may be a good idea to check out your model in 3D after making floors just to make sure nothing went wrong. (I constantly have to do that.)

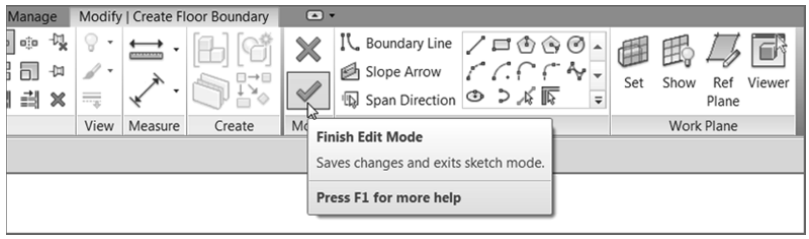
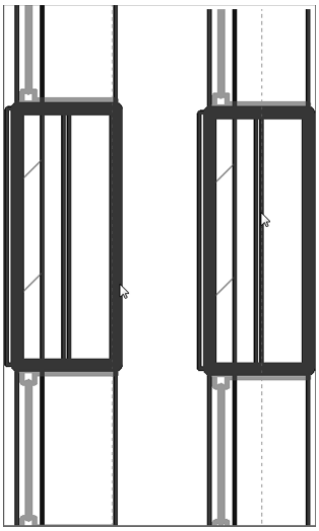


FIGURE 6.11: Clicking Finish Edit Mode to finalize the floor sketch

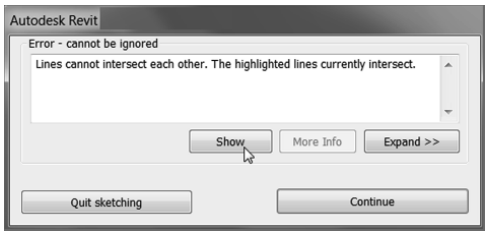
Watch What You Pick!

As you pick the walls to place your edge of slab, be careful. If you don't pick the inside face, there is a chance that Revit will try to extend the slab to the core of the wall. Also, make sure the Extend Into Wall core option is unselected. This will help keep the edge of the slab where you intend it to be. If you zoom into the area that you're picking, an alignment line will appear. Make sure this line is where you want it, as shown here:



Picky, Picky, Picky!

I'll keep repeating this, but if you get the error message shown here saying that your lines are overlapping, that means your lines are in fact overlapping. You *must* have a single, closed loop. Click the Show button to zoom in on the offending area.



After you finish the floor, you'll have plenty of opportunity to practice adding floors in this model. You need to add a floor to the corridor as well as the west wing. Follow these steps:

1. Zoom into the corridor, as shown in Figure 6.12.

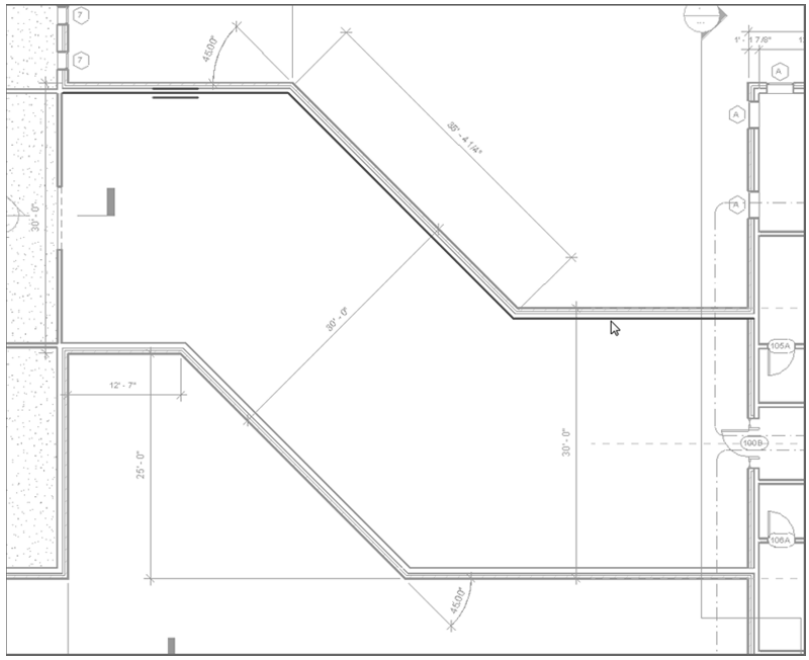


FIGURE 6.12: Picking the north walls of the corridor

2. On the Architecture tab, start the Floor command.
3. In the Modify | Create Floor Boundary tab, click the Pick Walls button.
4. Uncheck Extend Into Wall.
5. Pick the three north walls of the corridor. Remember to keep the blue line to the inside face (see Figure 6.12).
6. Revit may not let you pick the wall to add the east edge of the slab. If you do, the magenta line will go either to the core centerline or to the opposite face of the wall. At this point, click the Pick Lines button on the Modify | Create Floor Boundary tab, as shown in Figure 6.13.

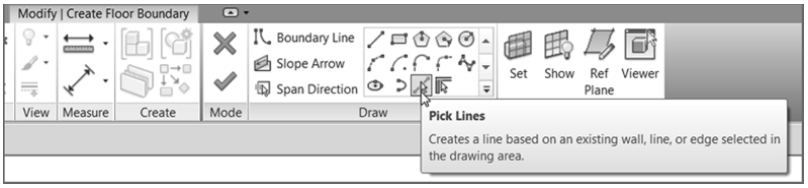
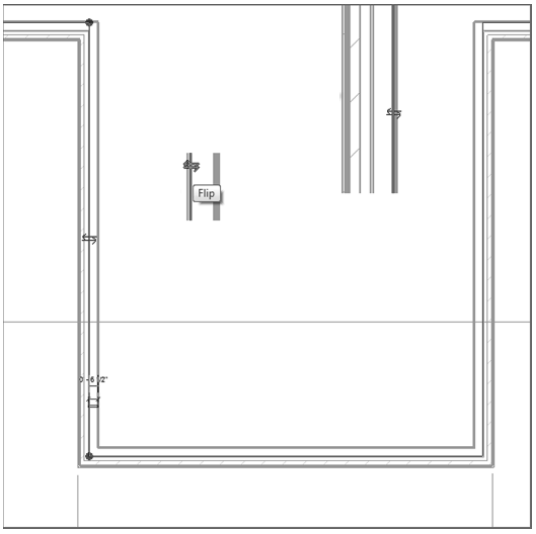


FIGURE 6.13: Sometimes you'll need to click the Pick Lines button to select the edge of the slab. If you have to resort to this, however, the slab edge won't move if the wall does.

Using Flip Arrows

If you accidentally pick the wrong place in the wall, that's OK. Flip arrows appear as you place lines. Realize that a previous line is wrong? Press Esc, and then select the magenta line—a flip arrow will appear. Pick the flip arrow, and the magenta line will flip back to the correct face of the wall, as shown here. Also, if other sketch lines are on the wrong face, this one flip will take care of any connected sketch lines.



7. Pick the face of the east wall, as shown in Figure 6.14.

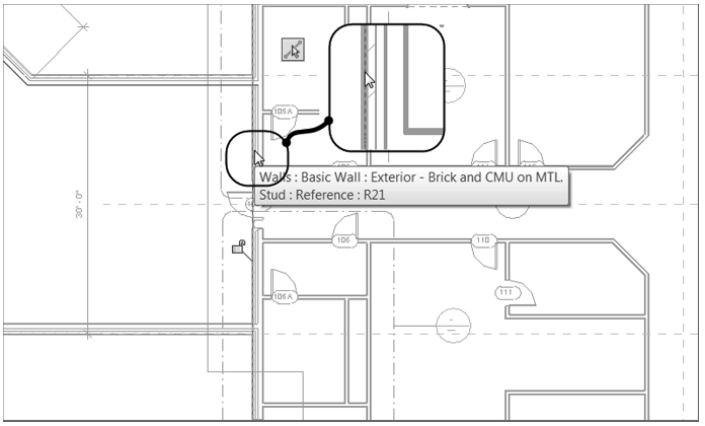


FIGURE 6.14: Picking the face of the east wall. The line will run past the corridor. That's OK; you'll trim it in a moment.

8. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Walls button.
9. Pick the south corridor walls. (Remember to keep the magenta line to the inside of the corridor.)
10. Pick the west wall of the corridor. This time you want to be sure the magenta line is to the left of the wall. This will ensure that the two slabs meet. If not, you may need to move the line manually (see Figure 6.15).

When you pick the west wall of the corridor, you may find that Revit won't let you pick the opposite face of the wall. Simply click the inside face of the wall, and then move the magenta line to the opposite face of the wall by dragging it.

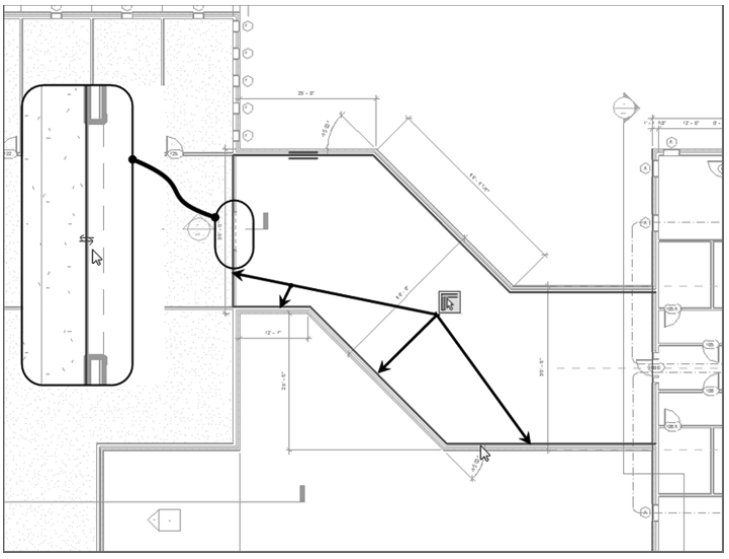


FIGURE 6.15: Adding the slab edge to the left side of the west corridor wall

Now that you understand the process of adding sketch lines to the model, you can start to look into how to clean up the sketch so you can finish.

Using Trim to Clean Up the Sketch

With the lines placed, you need to make sure you don't have any gaps or overlaps. And you do. To fix these gaps and overlaps, you'll use the basic modify commands from Chapter 5.

The east wall has a giant gap at the bottom and an overlap at the top. The command you need to use here is Trim.

1. Pick the Trim/Extend To Corner button from the Modify panel, as shown at the top of Figure 6.16. Then click the portions of the two lines you want to keep. This removes the excess from the corner.

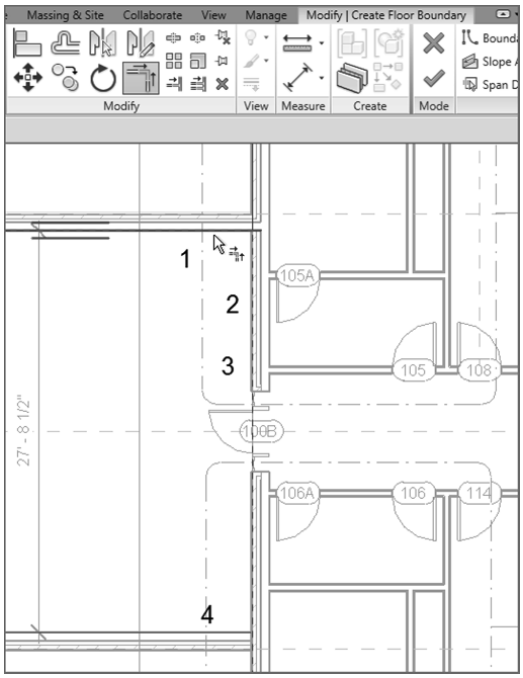


FIGURE 6.16: Pick the magenta lines in the numbered order illustrated in the figure.

2. With the corners successfully trimmed, click Finish Edit Mode.

While you create the floor boundary, you can access the basic editing commands such as Trim, Split Element, and Offset that work for sketching.

When Revit allows you to finish the sketch, your west wing and corridor should have a continuous slab underneath them, as shown in Figure 6.17.

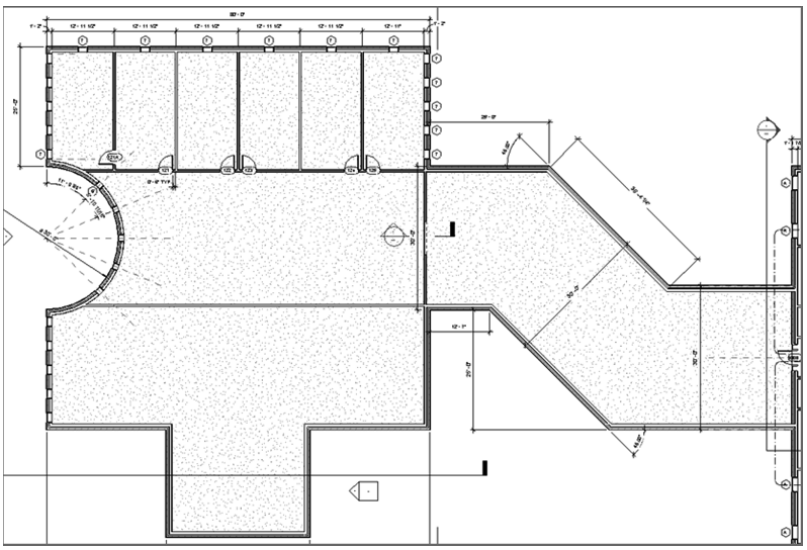


FIGURE 6.17: The two slabs under the west wing and the corridor

TIP I hope you don't get an error stating that lines are overlapping. If you do, keep going with the Trim/Extend To Corner command. You may need to investigate each corner. You may also want to consider whether you've accidentally placed double lines along a wall. This can be easy to do when you're picking walls.

It's time to add a slab under the east wing. Go ahead and try it on your own. Look at these directions only if you get lost:

1. Zoom in on the east wing.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Floor button.
3. In the Modify | Create Floor Boundary tab, click the Pick Walls button.
4. Pick the exterior walls of the east wing.
5. Trim any gaps or overlaps that occur in the corners, as shown in Figure 6.18. Also, pay special attention to the radial entry; it can be tricky.

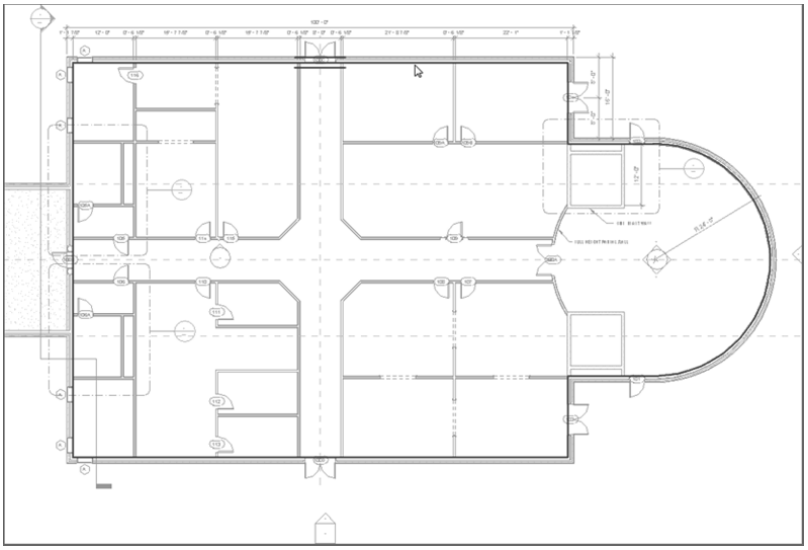


FIGURE 6.18: Adding a slab to the east wing

6. Click Finish Edit Mode.

Now that you have a nice slab on the first floor, you need to add some more slabs to the rest of the levels. The trick with the slabs on upper levels is that they must extend into the core of the walls. This is where Revit can get sticky. Follow along with the next section, and let's work out this issue together.

Building a Floor by Layers

As mentioned in the previous section, the term *layer* doesn't equate to an AutoCAD layer. It does, however, equate to layers of materials used to design a floor system. When you create a floor system in Revit Architecture, you should do it with the mind-set of how a floor is actually constructed. You can also specify which material in the floor will stop at an exterior wall and which will pass through to the core.

In this section, you'll build on your experience of creating a floor. With the concrete slab in place, you'll start adding materials to create a floor finish.

Adding Materials

Your objective is to create a floor system with a structure and a finish material. You'll also design the floor to interrupt the exterior framing, while letting the brick façade pass from grade to parapet. Let's get started.

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 2 floor plan. (Remember not to go to the Level 2 ceiling plan.)
2. In the View Control bar (located at the bottom of the view window), be sure the detail level is set to Fine.
3. On the Architecture tab, click the Floor button.
4. In the Properties dialog box, click the Edit Type button.
5. Click the Duplicate button.
6. Call the new floor **6″ concrete with 1″ Terrazzo** (see Figure 6.19). For metric users, it's **150 mm concrete with 25 mm Terrazzo**.

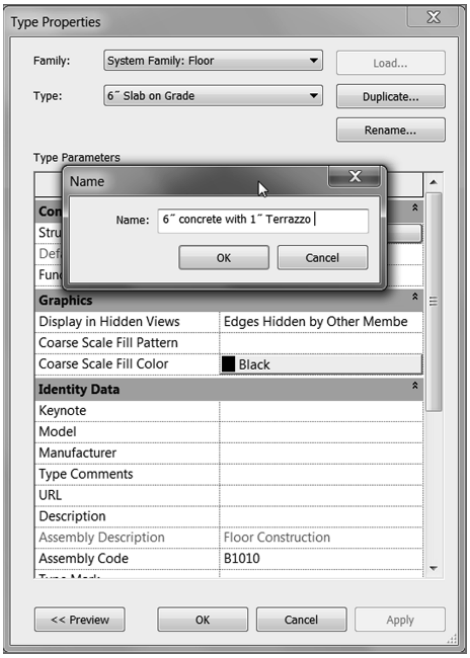


FIGURE 6.19: Duplicating the existing floor

7. Click OK.

8. In the Structure row, click the Edit button, as shown in Figure 6.20.

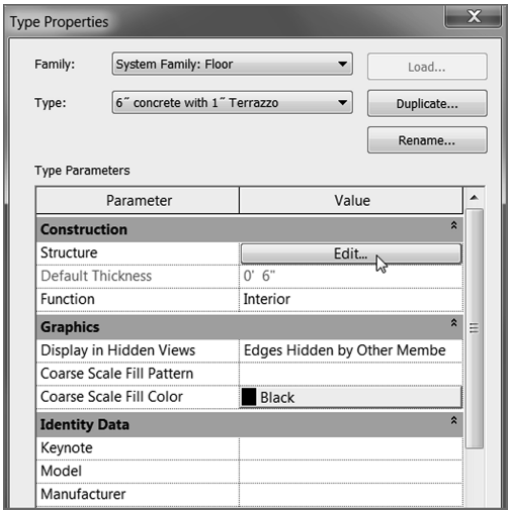


FIGURE 6.20: Clicking the Edit button in the Structure row

You're now in the Edit Assembly dialog box, as you were in the previous procedure. The objective is to add 1″ (25 mm) Terrazzo flooring to the top of the 6″ (150 mm) concrete.

Adding a Layer

To add the additional material, you must understand how the Edit Assembly dialog box is broken down. Because you want to add a material to the top of the slab, you need to click above the concrete and insert a new layer, as follows:

1. In the Layers field are three rows. Each row has a corresponding number. Click the number 1. This is the top row that reads Core Boundary | Layers Above Wrap (see Figure 6.21).
2. Under the Layers field, click the Insert button, as shown in Figure 6.21.
3. The new layer is added. The field is now divided into columns. The first column is Function, which is currently set to Structure. This cell is a drop box containing the other available functions. Click the drop-box arrow, and select Finish 1 [4] (see Figure 6.22).

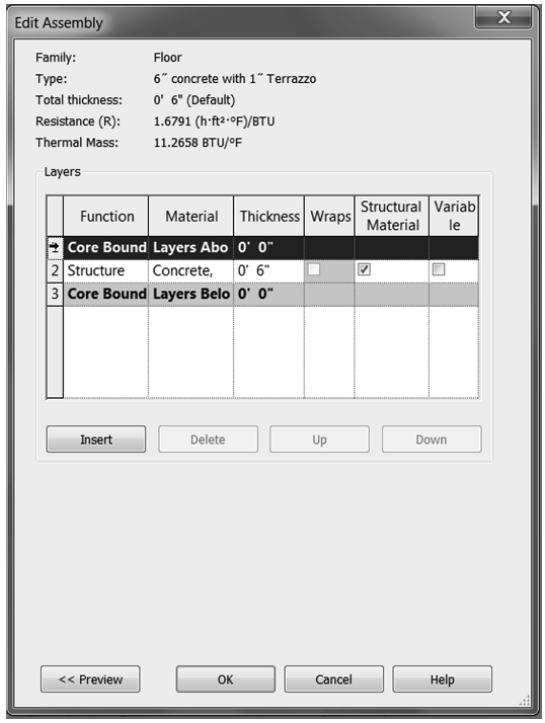


FIGURE 6.21: Inserting a new layer for the Terrazzo

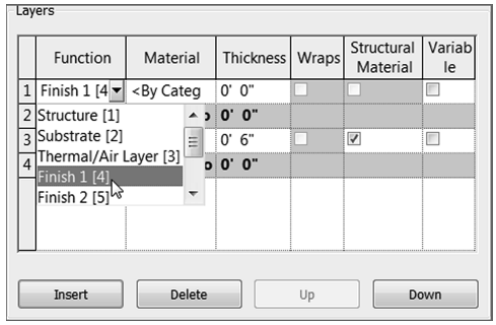


FIGURE 6.22: Choosing a layer function

4. Click in the Material cell for the new Layer 1.
5. Click the […] button.

6. In the Material Browser, type **terrazzo**, as shown in Figure 6.23. Your Terrazzo material appears. When it does, select it, and click OK.

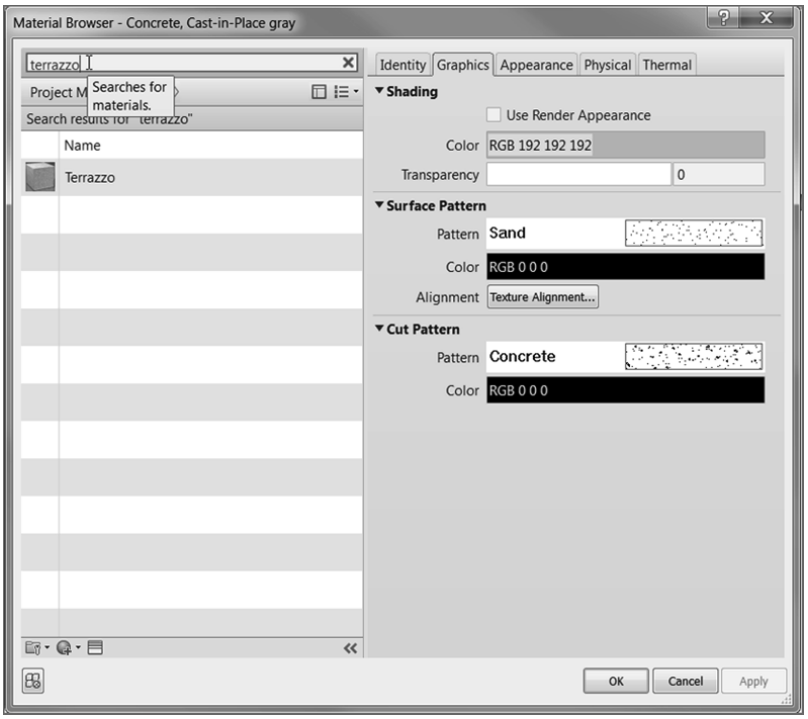


FIGURE 6.23: Selecting a material and adding it to the project

7. Scroll down, and double-click Terrazzo (see Figure 6.23).
8. Find the Terrazzo material in the top portion, select it, and click OK.
9. Click OK.
10. In the Thickness column, enter **1″ (25 mm)**. Imperial users, make sure you're typing 1 inch and not 1 foot (see Figure 6.24).
11. At the far right in the rows in the Layers field are Variable check boxes. Select Variable for the Structure row, as shown in Figure 6.25. This will enable you to slope the top of the slab if need be. Only the layer that is set to be variable will actually slope. Any layer that is on top of this variable layer will be pitched.

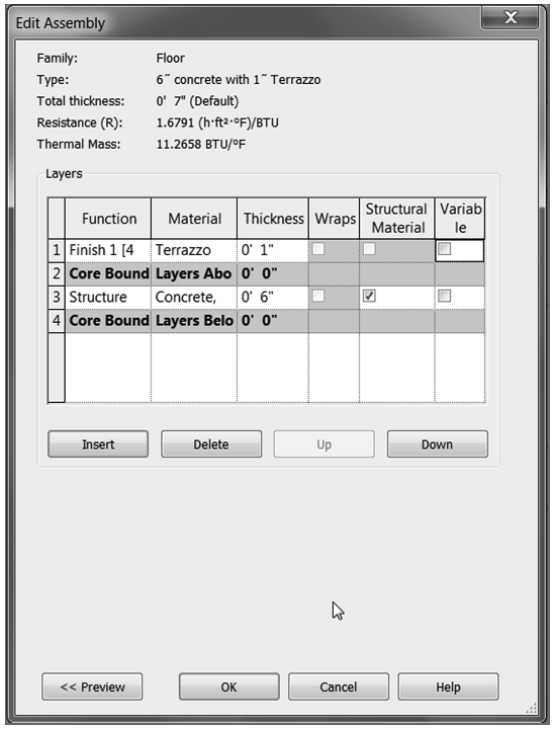


FIGURE 6.24: The completed layers for the floor system

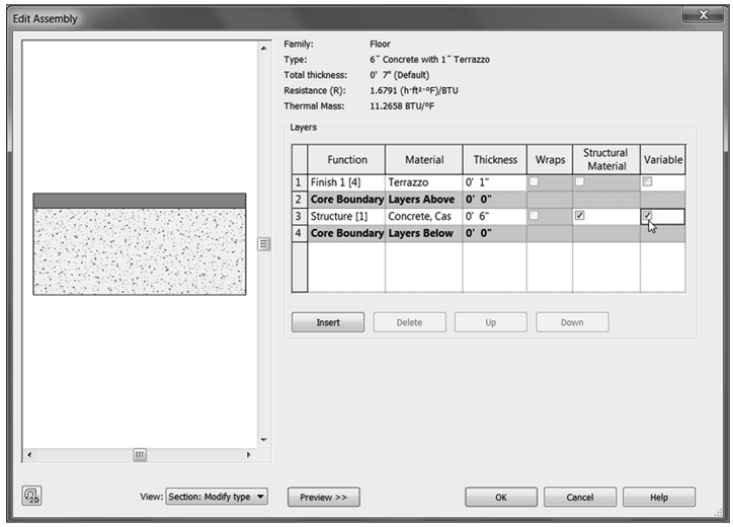


FIGURE 6.25: You can see a preview of the floor section as it's being built.

12. At the bottom of the Edit Assembly dialog box, click the Preview button. A graphic preview of your floor appears in a sectional view (see Figure 6.25).

13. Click OK twice to get back to the model.

Great job—you now have a floor with a finish material on it!

Now you can place your new floor into the model. Remember that you're on the second floor. When you place the slab, you want it to extend directly into the wall core. To do so, follow these steps:

1. Click the Pick Walls button on the Draw panel. You'll pick every exterior wall in the east wing except the radial wall.

2. Start picking walls, as shown in Figure 6.26. Do *not* pick the radial wall at the east entry.

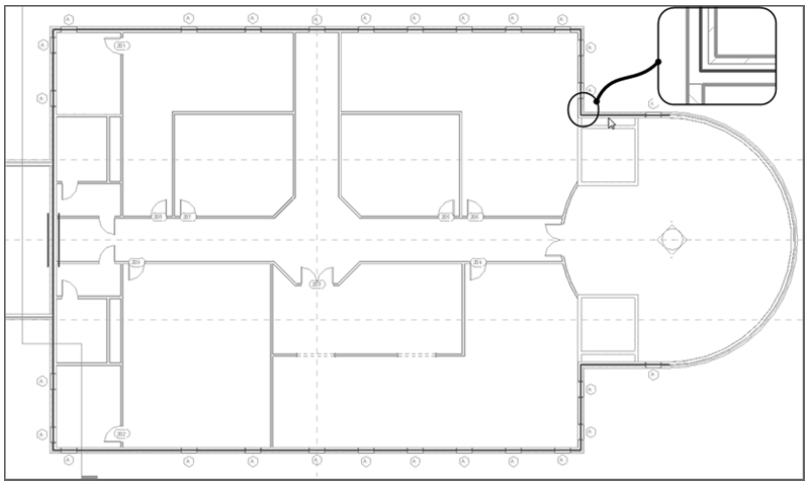


FIGURE 6.26: Picking the core centerline of the exterior walls, except the radial east wall

3. On the Draw panel, click the Line button.

4. Draw a line from the endpoint of the magenta line at the north wall of the east entry (see 1 in Figure 6.27) to the endpoint of the magenta line in the south wall (see 2 in Figure 6.27).

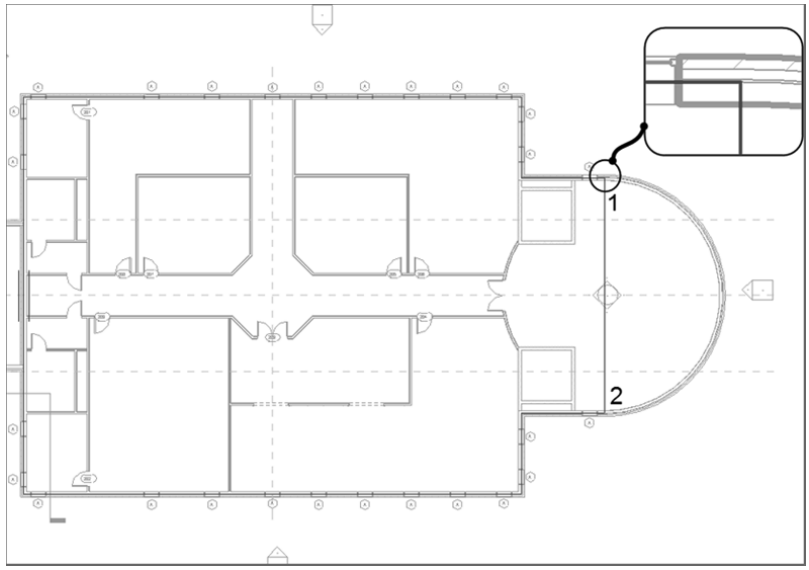


FIGURE 6.27: Sketching a line for the east portion of the entry slab

5. On the Modify | Create Floor Boundary tab, click Finish Edit Mode.
6. Revit begins asking you questions. First it asks whether you want to attach the walls that go up to Level 2 to the bottom of the floor. You *do* want to do this; this cuts the interior walls down to meet the bottom of the floor. Any change in the floor's thickness will alter the tops of the wall. Click Yes, as shown in Figure 6.28.

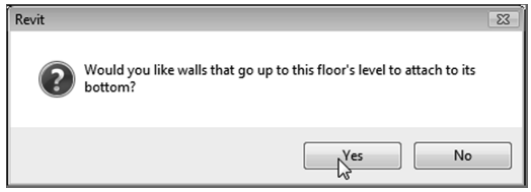


FIGURE 6.28: Click Yes to attach the walls to the floor's bottom.

7. The next message pertains to the exterior walls. Revit asks whether you would like to cut the section out of the walls where the slab is intersecting. In this case, you do, so click Yes in the message box, as shown in Figure 6.29.

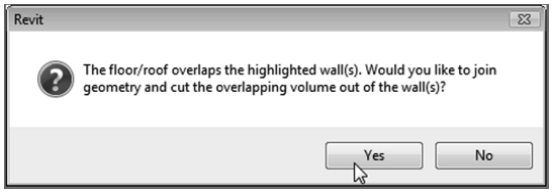


FIGURE 6.29: Click Yes if you want to cut overlapping volumes out of the exterior walls.

NOTE As these messages come up, Revit usually does a good job of highlighting the relevant items in the model. Get into the habit of looking past the messages to see what items in the model are being highlighted.

With the second floor in place, you can now add it to the floors above. To do so, you can use the Copy/Paste Aligned feature you used in Chapter 3, "Creating Views." Try to do this on your own. If you don't remember how or if you skipped Chapter 3, follow these steps:

1. Select the floor in Level 2 if it isn't still selected. (It's easiest to select the floor at the east edge.)
2. On the Modify | Floors tab, click the Copy To Clipboard button on the Clipboard panel, as shown in Figure 6.30.

A good indication that you've successfully copied the floor to the Clipboard is that the Paste icon directly to the right of the Copy icon becomes activated.

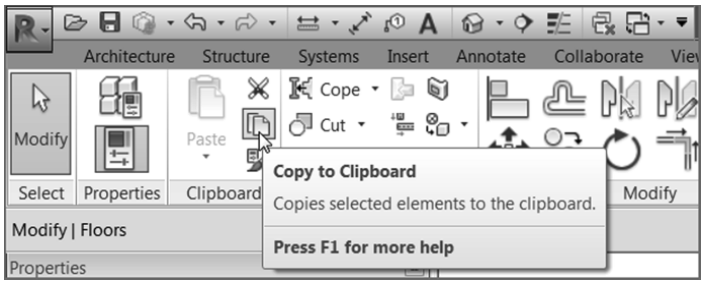


FIGURE 6.30: Clicking the Copy To Clipboard button

3. Go to the default 3D view, as shown in Figure 6.31.
4. From the Paste flyout on the Clipboard panel of the Modify tab, click Aligned To Selected Levels, as shown in Figure 6.32.

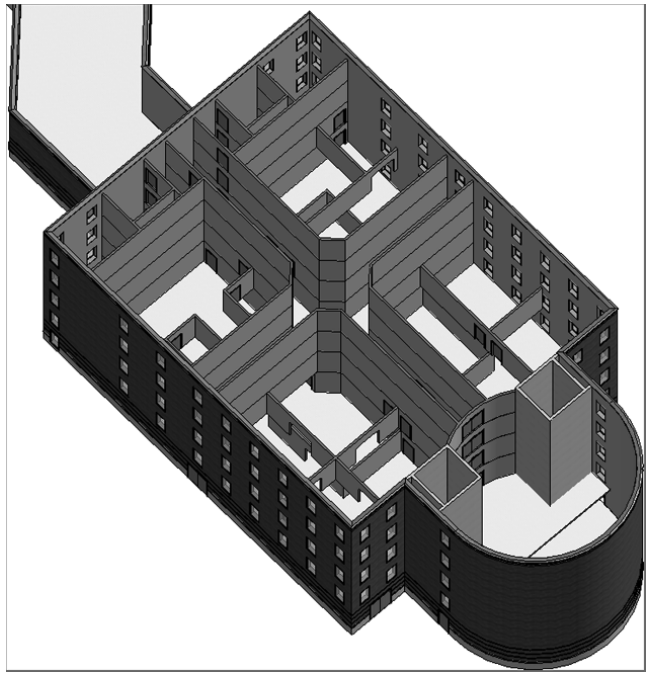


FIGURE 6.31: The walls on the floors above

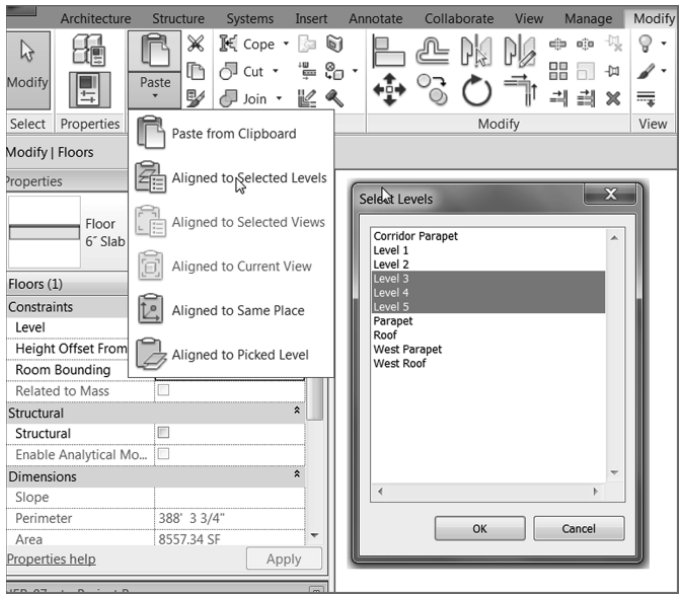


FIGURE 6.32: Selecting the levels where you want the slab to be copied

5. The Select Levels dialog box appears, where you'll choose the levels to which you want to paste your floor. Choose Levels 3, 4, and 5 (see Figure 6.32; use Ctrl to select more than one level).
6. Click OK. The floors are pasted to the specified levels, as shown in Figure 6.33.

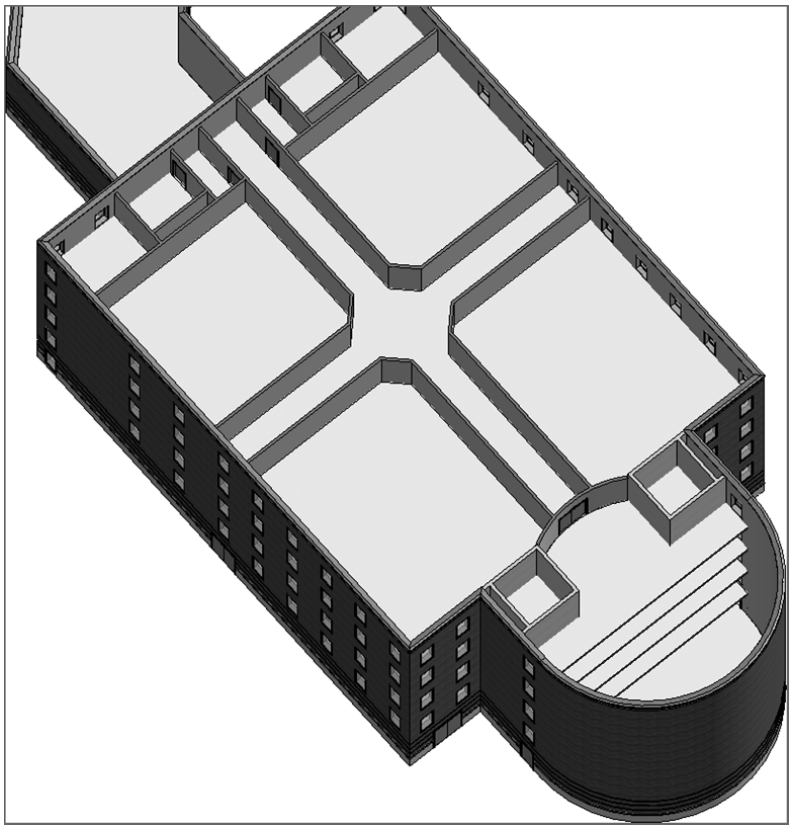


FIGURE 6.33: The completed floor placement

Notice that the fifth-level floor isn't joined to any of the walls. This is because when you pasted the floor to this level, Revit didn't prompt you to cut the overlapping geometry from the exterior walls. To fix this, follow these steps:

1. After the floors have been pasted, select the fifth-level floor, as shown in Figure 6.34.
2. On the Modify | Floors tab, click the Edit Boundary button.

Note that if Selected Levels isn't available, Selected Views will be. This is because you selected an annotation such as a window tag or a door tag. You can pick Selected Views to achieve the same results.

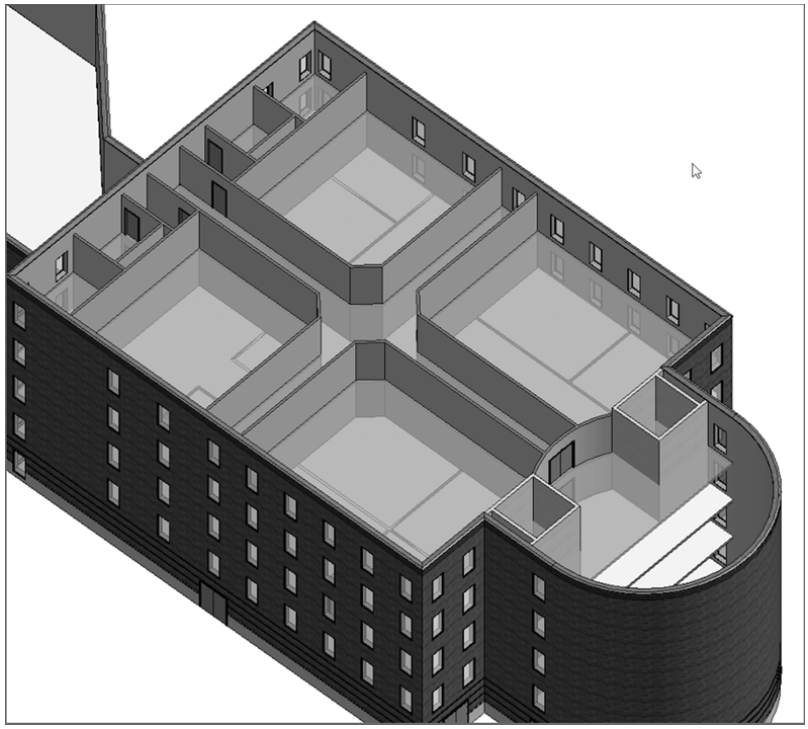


FIGURE 6.34: The fifth floor is now cutting the walls.

3. On the Mode panel of the Modify | Floors ➢ Edit Boundary tab, click Finish Edit Mode.
4. Click Yes to attach the walls that go up to this floor's bottom.
5. Click Yes to cut the overlapping volume out of the walls. Figure 6.34 shows that the walls are now being cut by the slab.
6. Repeat steps 1 through 5 for floors 4 and 3.
7. Save the model.

Not too bad. You have a full building with floors placed. Now you'll drill into these floors (literally) and see how you can make them perform to your specifications.

Your next task is to create different floor materials for a few specific areas such as the restrooms. You'll then pitch the restroom floors to floor drains.

Splitting the Floor Materials

If you have a floor that includes a slab and you have a single material of, say, vinyl composition tile (VCT) for the entire surface, won't that cause a problem in the restrooms? Better yet, suppose the floor is carpeted. Carpet never seems to perform well around a toilet!

Adding an Alternate Material

The goal of this procedure is to create a new material layer for the first-floor slab and then specify a new material for the restrooms. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan and then zoom into an area of the east wing similar to the area shown in Figure 6.35.

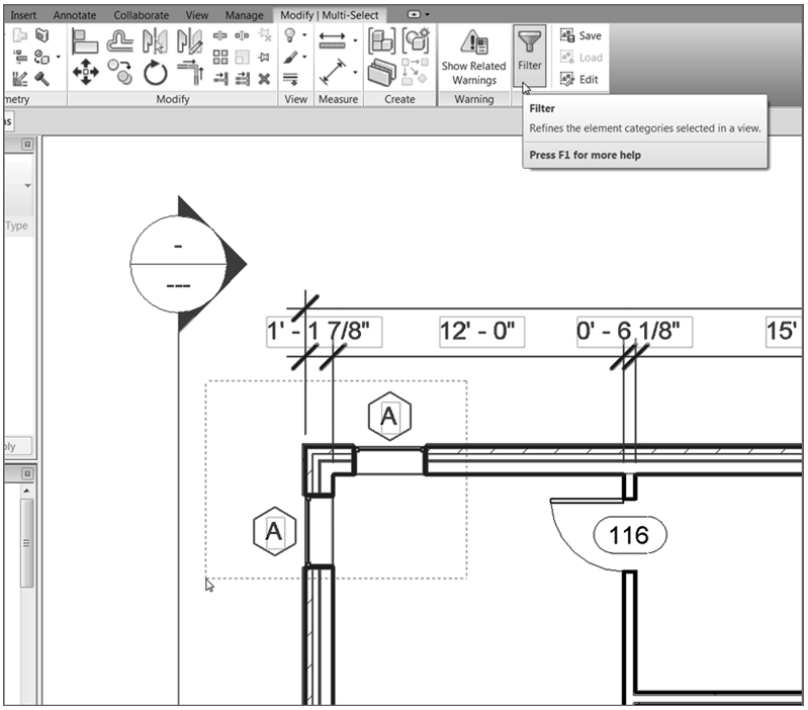


FIGURE 6.35: To select the slab, you'll find it easier to pick an entire area and filter the floor.

2. Drag a right-to-left selection window around the corner of the building, as shown in Figure 6.35.
3. On the Modify | Multi-Select tab, click the Filter button (see Figure 6.35).
4. In the Filter dialog box, click the Check None button, as shown in Figure 6.36.

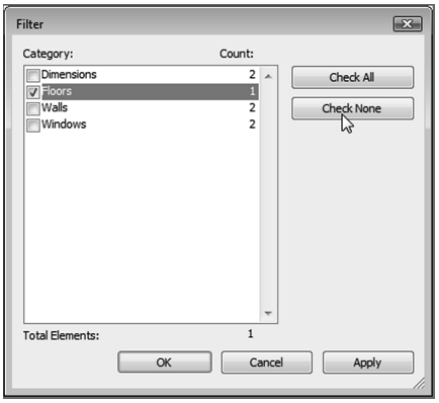


FIGURE 6.36: Deselect all the elements, and then select Floors.

5. Select the Floors option (see Figure 6.36), and click OK.
6. With the floor selected, click Edit Type in the Properties dialog box.
7. Click Rename.
8. Call the floor **6″ Slab on Grade with 1″ Finish (150 mm Slab on Grade with 25 mm Finish)**.
9. Click OK.
10. Click the Edit button in the Structure row, as shown in Figure 6.37.
11. In the Edit Assembly dialog box, click the 1 button to the left of the Core Boundary item that is above the Structure layer, as shown in Figure 6.38.
12. Click the Insert button (see Figure 6.38).
13. Select Finish 1 [4] from the Function drop-down list.
14. Click in the Material cell.
15. Click the […] button.

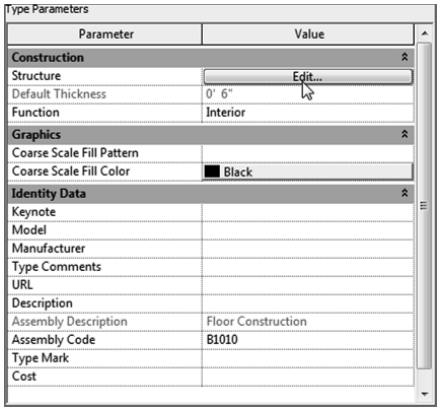


FIGURE 6.37: Editing the structure of the slab

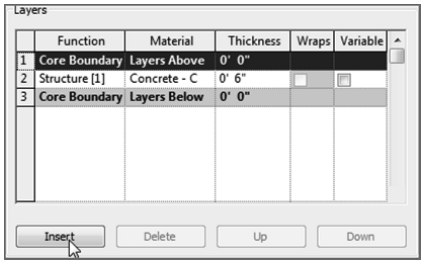


FIGURE 6.38: Adding a new layer

16. Search for Carpet (1), and click OK.
17. Give the material a thickness of 1″ (25 mm).
18. In the Structure [1] row, select the Variable check box, as shown in Figure 6.39.

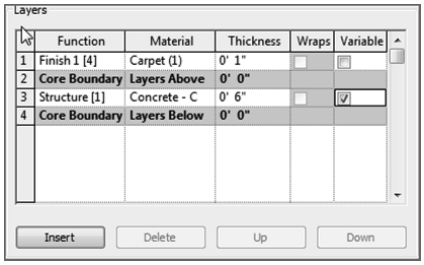


FIGURE 6.39: Adding the new material

19. Click OK twice.
20. Press Esc.

Now that you have experience adding a new material layer to the floor (you've done it twice in this chapter), you can specify a different material for the various rooms.

Splitting and Painting

Adding a new material to a floor is a two-part procedure. To specify an alternate material in an area, you must first split the floor's face. Then you can add (or paint) the desired material to that area.

The objective of the next two procedures is to add an alternate material to the restrooms. Follow these steps:

1. Zoom in on the lavatory north of the corridor.
2. On the Geometry panel of the Modify tab, click the Split Face button, as shown in Figure 6.40.

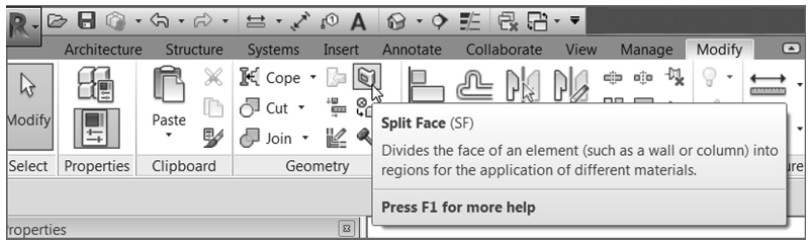


FIGURE 6.40: The Split Face button is located on the Geometry panel of the Modify tab.

3. Move your cursor into the lavatory area, as shown in Figure 6.41.
4. Notice the little cube at your cursor. Hover the cursor over the wall shown in Figure 6.41. You should get a tooltip telling you that you're directly over the floor. When you see this indication, pick the floor.
5. After you select the floor, you need to draw three lines around the inside face of the lavatory walls. To do so, on the Draw panel of the Modify | Split Face ➢ Create Boundary tab, make sure the Line button is selected.

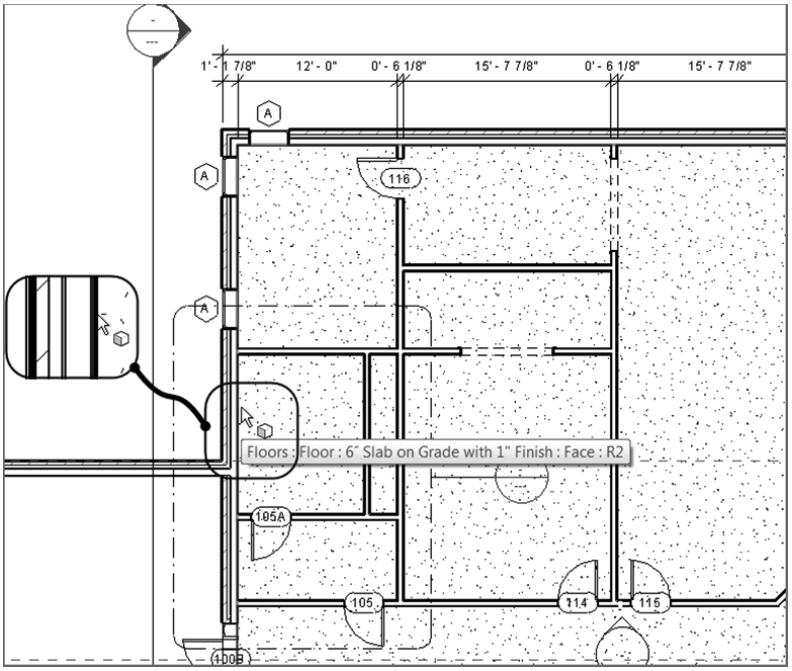


FIGURE 6.41: Finding the edge of the floor

6. Draw the three lines shown in Figure 6.42 (you may have to trim and extend the lines).

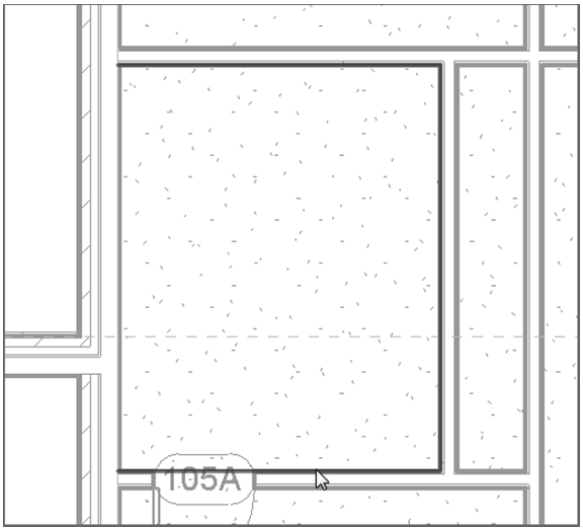


FIGURE 6.42: Placing the three split lines around the perimeter of the lavatory

WARNING **Because the line you're splitting is up against the edge of the slab, the actual floor's edge serves as one of the split lines. When you're adding the three additional lines, you must be snapped to the edge of the floor. There can be no overlaps or gaps.**

7. On the Modify | Split Face ➢ Create Boundary tab, click Finish Edit Mode.

   The lavatory area should now be split.

Although it appears as if nothing happened, you just can't see it. The next series of steps will change the material of the region. At this point, it will become obvious that there is a different material.

Save Your Model!

Crashing has been a way of life since we got off the drafting boards and booted the first CAD station. Although the Revit material catalog is now more robust, it isn't the most stable addition to Revit. Do yourself a favor and save your model before you click that Paint button.

The floor is split, and it's time to add the new material to this room. This procedure is almost like adding a hatch to an area in AutoCAD. Here are the steps:

1. On the Geometry panel of the Modify | Split Face tab, click the Paint button, as shown in Figure 6.43.

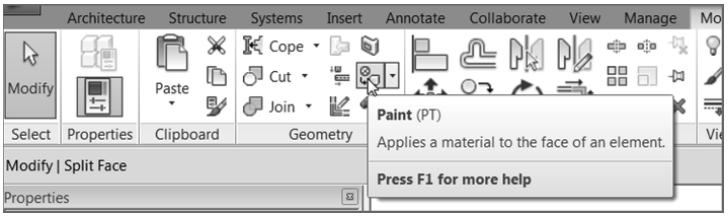


FIGURE 6.43: **The Paint button on the Geometry panel**

2. From the material list, select Tile, Mosaic, Gray from the menu, as shown in Figure 6.44.

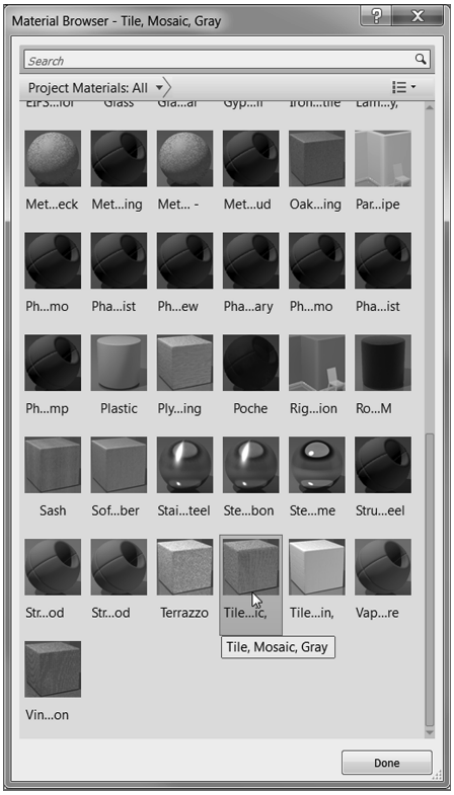


FIGURE 6.44: Finding the correct material

3. With the Material Browser still on the screen, move your cursor over the region you just created. Notice the Paint icon next to your cursor, as shown in Figure 6.45. The tooltip identifies the face region.

TIP If you don't see the Paint icon next to the cursor when you hover over the region as shown, simply click a point anywhere on the screen, and the icon will appear. You can then proceed to paint the floor.

4. When you see the perimeter of the small region you created around the inside of the lavatory, pick a spot. The area fills with the new material (see Figure 6.46). Click Done to close the Material Browser.

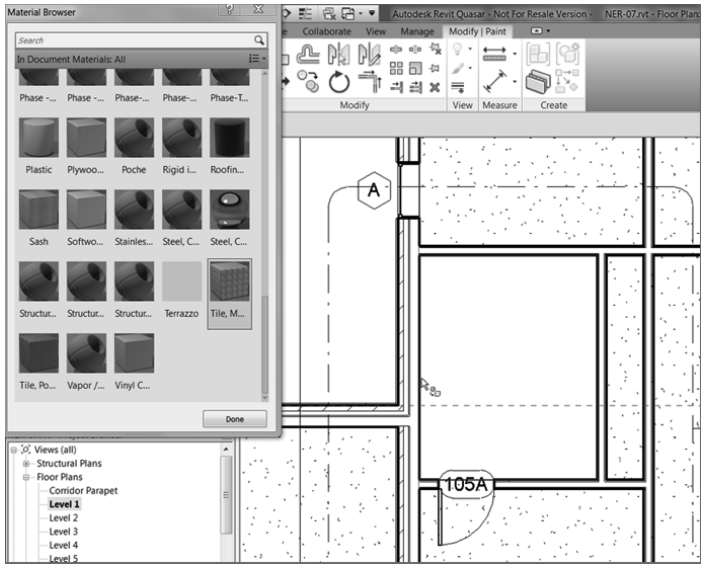


FIGURE 6.45: Filling the region with the new material

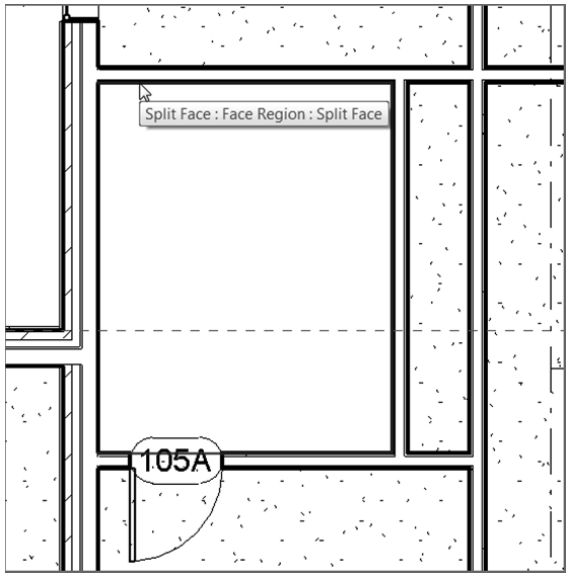


FIGURE 6.46: The completed lavatory

5. Do the same thing to the lavatory south of the corridor. If you get stuck, go back through the steps.
6. Save your model.

Next you'll create a pitched floor situation. In some cases, this is an easy procedure. In others, it isn't.

Pitching a Floor to a Floor Drain

Sure, it's the responsibility of the plumbing engineer to specify what floor drains to use, but it's generally the responsibility of the architect to specify where they'd like the floor drain. That being said, let's move on to creating a pitched floor area in the restrooms. Because you have five floors with which to work, let's go up to the second floor and start pitching some slabs!

The objective of this procedure is to add points in the surface of the slab in order to pitch to a drain:

1. In the Project Browser, double-click the Level 2 floor plan. (Make sure you aren't in the Level 2 ceiling plan.)
2. Zoom in on the lavatory areas, as shown in Figure 6.47.

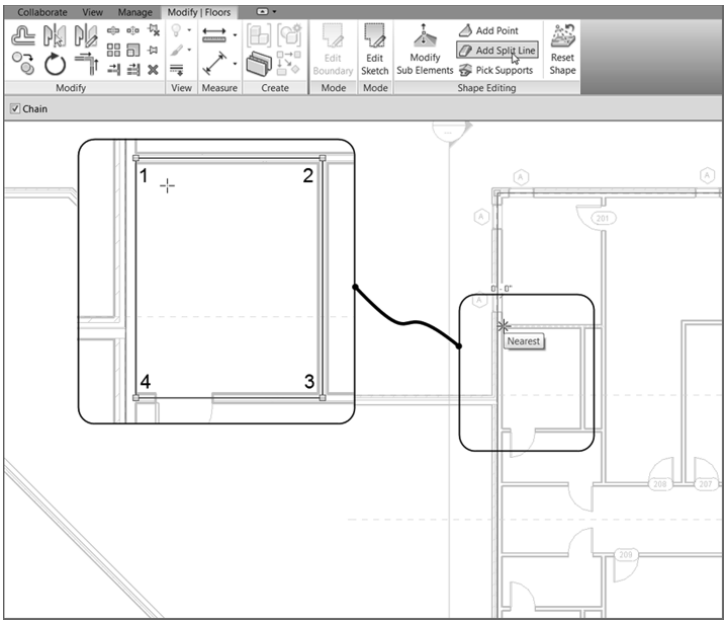


FIGURE 6.47: Drawing a split frame around the inside of the lavatory

3. Select the floor.
4. The Modify | Floors tab shows several choices. In the Shape Editing panel, click the Add Split Line button (see Figure 6.47).
5. On the Options bar, click the Chain button.
6. Draw lines along the finished inside face of the lavatory (see Figure 6.47). As always, there can be no gaps or overlaps.

NOTE **Yes, it's true that the snapping feature is tedious at best when you're using the Split Line command. Be patient. You'll basically need to get as close to the face of the wall as possible before you pick the point. This is one case where you'll need to eyeball the exact pick points.**

With the split lines drawn, you've isolated the lavatory area from the rest of the floor. Now you can pitch the floor in this area without affecting the rest of the floor. The pitch will extend only as far as the split lines.

To create a drop in the floor, follow these steps:

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Model Lines button (see Figure 6.48).

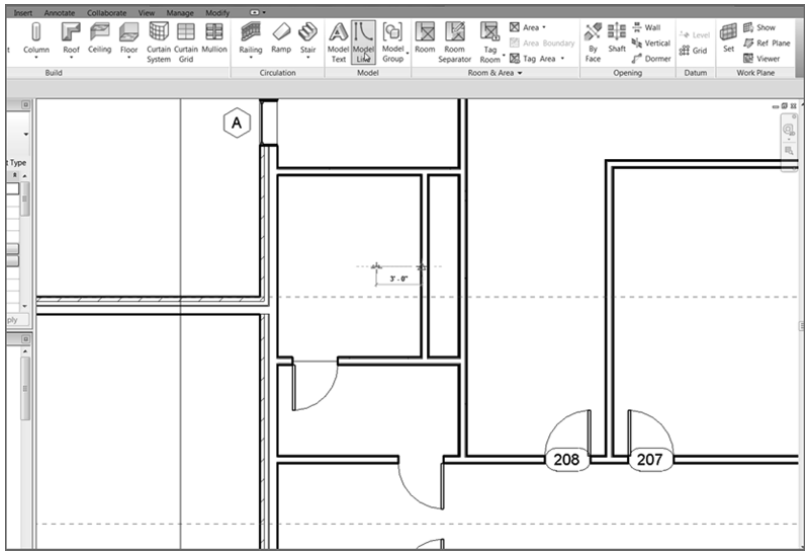


FIGURE 6.48: **Drawing a line to establish the point to where the floor will slope**

2. Draw a line from the midpoint of the restroom's right wall to the left 3′–0″ (900 mm), as shown in Figure 6.48.
3. Press Esc twice.
4. Select the floor. (Remember the Filter dialog box.)
5. On the Modify | Floors tab, click the Add Point button, as shown in Figure 6.49.

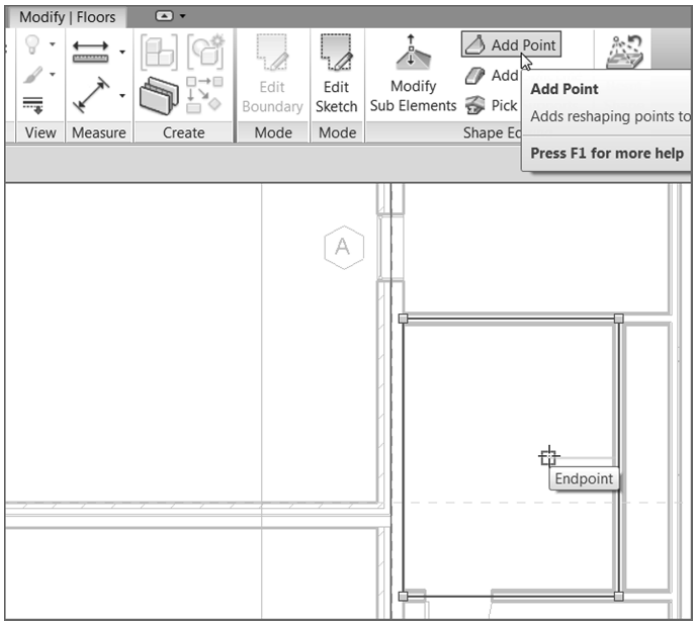


FIGURE 6.49: Picking the endpoint of the line

6. Pick the endpoint of the line you just drew (see Figure 6.49).
7. Press Esc once. This puts you in Modify Sub Elements Mode. You'll know you're in this mode by the icon next to your pointer, as shown in Figure 6.50.
8. Pick the point you just placed into the model. The point turns red, and a blue elevation appears. As you know, any blue item is modifiable. Click the 0′–0″ (0 mm) value, and change it to -1″ (-25 mm)—Imperial users, negative 1 inch.

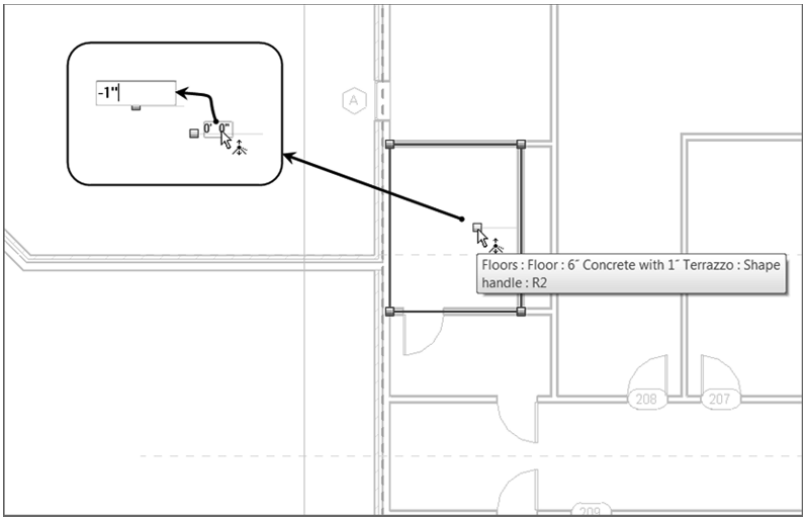


FIGURE 6.50: **Dropping the elevation of the drain down 1″ (25 mm) from the surface of the floor**

9. Press Enter. Revit drops that area of the floor and adds the slope lines as if you drafted them in.
10. Press Esc twice.
11. Delete the line you drew as a guideline.
12. Save the model.

    See Figure 6.51: does your floor look like this? If not, go back and see where you went wrong.
13. Repeat the steps to add a pitch to the lavatory south of the corridor.
14. Save the model (see Figure 6.52).

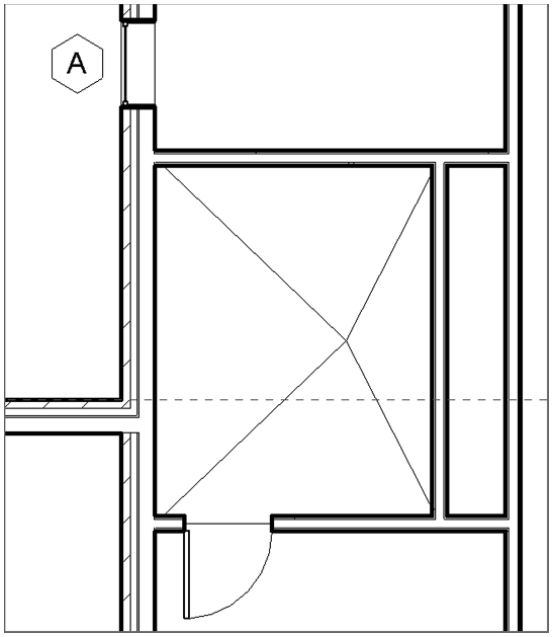


FIGURE 6.51: The final slab in the restroom

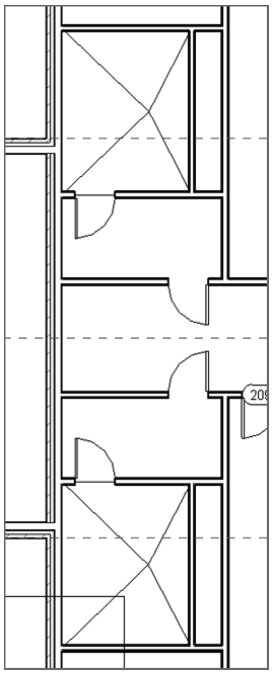


FIGURE 6.52: Both lavatories are pitched and ready to have fixtures added.

Now that you have experience in creating and placing floors, as well as pitching a floor in a specific area, let's look at one more item: shaft openings.

Can I Erase This and Start Over?

Often, you may need to clear shape edits of the entire slab and start over. You can do this by selecting the floor and clicking the Reset Shape button on the Options bar, as shown here:

Creating Shaft Openings

To create a shaft opening, you just create a void through your model. This void, however, can conform to walls that are set in the model. The elevator shaft walls, for instance, will define the outside edge of your shaft opening. You may notice that the floors you added to the model are indiscriminately running uninterrupted, straight through the shafts. You need to void the floor. Also, the good thing about creating a shaft opening is that if you create another floor, the shaft will be cut out automatically.

First, you need to create two more levels. You need a subterranean level (T.O. Footing) and a penthouse level, through which you'll extend the elevator shaft. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the South elevation.
2. On the Datum panel of the Architecture tab, click the Level button.
3. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines button, and set an offset of 10′–0″ (3000 mm), as shown in Figure 6.53.

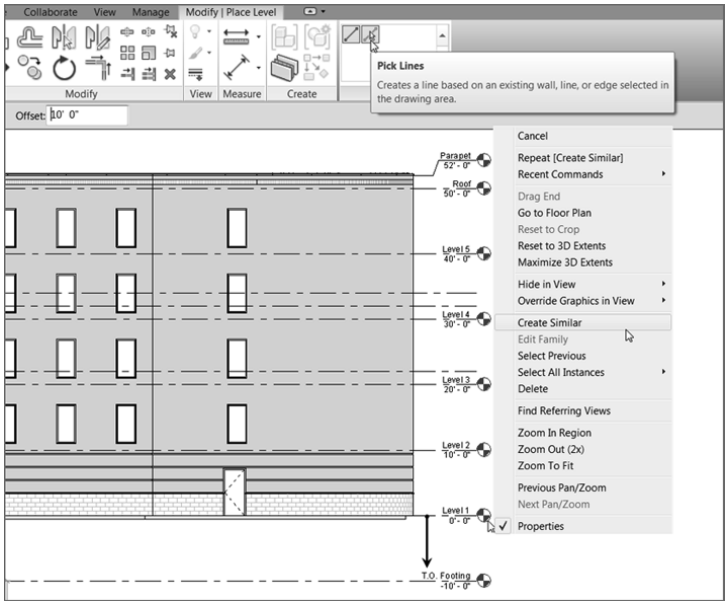


FIGURE 6.53: Adding a new Top of Footing level

4. Hover your cursor over Level 1. Make sure the alignment line is below Level 1. When you see the alignment line, pick Level 1. You now have a new level at -10′–0″ (-3000 mm).
5. Click the Modify button on the Select panel to terminate the command.
6. Pick the level that is set to -10′–0″ (-3000 mm), and rename it **T.O. Footing** (see Figure 6.53).
7. Click Yes when Revit prompts you to rename corresponding views.

The next step is to select the CMU elevator shaft walls and modify their properties so the bottoms are extended down to the top of the footing.

1. Go to a 3D view.
2. Select all of the east entry elevator CMU walls. Remember to press and hold the Ctrl key as you select the walls.
3. In the Properties dialog box, in the Constraints category, set Base Constraint to T.O. Footing, as shown in Figure 6.54.

To select all of the CMU walls, you can select one, right-click, and then click Select All Instances ➢ In Entire Project. Be careful, though; if there are other objects of the same type in the model, they will become selected as well.

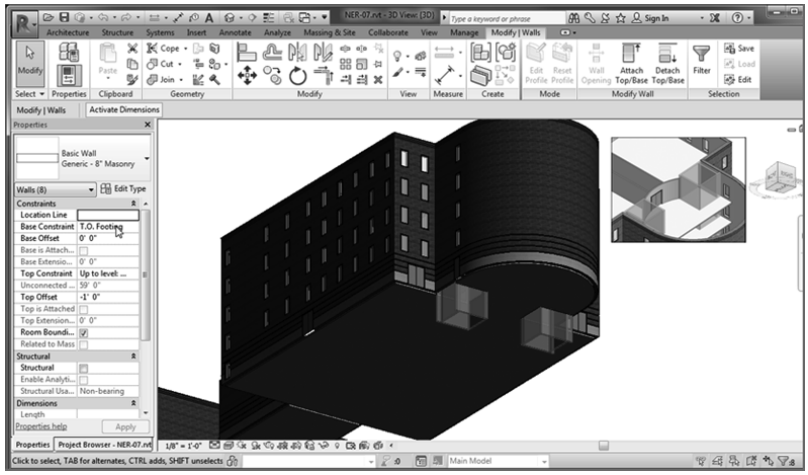


FIGURE 6.54: In the Properties dialog box, change Base Constraint to T.O. Footing.

4. Click Apply.

With the bottom established at the correct level, it's time to add the shaft.

1. Go to the Level 1 floor plan. (Note that it doesn't matter which floor you're in when you place a shaft opening.)
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Shaft button in the Opening panel, as shown in Figure 6.55.

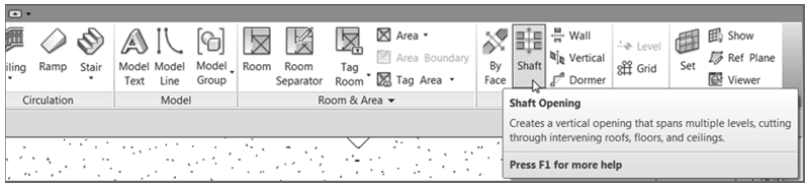


FIGURE 6.55: Clicking the Shaft button on the Architecture tab

3. On the Modify | Create Shaft Opening Sketch tab, click Pick Walls, as shown in Figure 6.56.
4. Pick the walls shown in Figure 6.56. Notice that you can have more than one shaft opening in the same command.

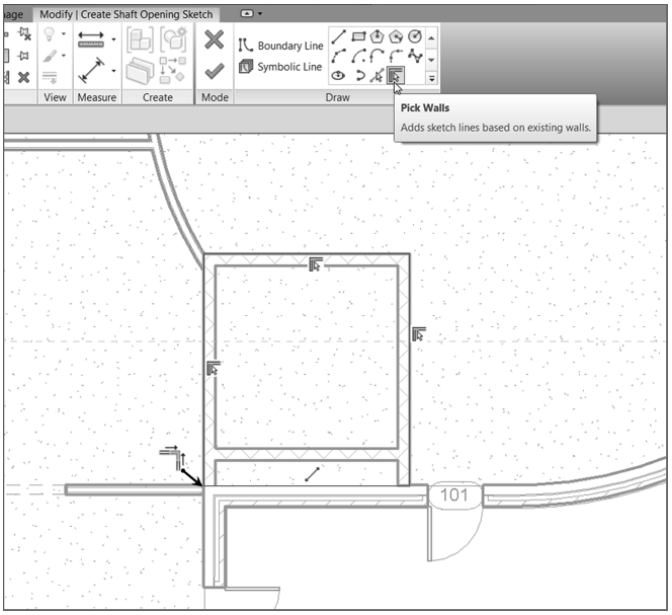


FIGURE 6.56: Adding the magenta lines to form the shaft opening to the outside of the CMU walls

5. Use the Line button on the Draw panel to draw the line across the inside face of the exterior wall.
6. Use the Trim command to clean up any corners (see Figure 6.56).
7. Mirror the lines you just drew up to the other shaft.

With the perimeter established, it's time to choose which floors this opening will extend to. Just because you picked the CMU walls, this doesn't mean a base and a top height have been established. Follow these steps:

1. In the Properties dialog box, make sure Shaft Openings is selected, as shown in Figure 6.57.
2. In the Properties dialog, set Base Constraint to T.O. Footing.
3. Set Top Constraint to Up To Level: Roof.
4. Set Top Offset to **-1′–0″** (**-300** mm); this keeps the roof from having two giant square holes in it.
5. Click Apply. Figure 6.57 shows the settings.

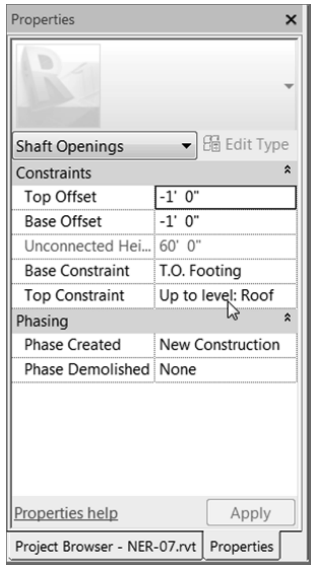


FIGURE 6.57: Setting the properties of the shaft opening

6. On the Modify | Create Shaft Opening Sketch tab, click the Symbolic Line button. This will allow you to sketch an opening graphic into the shaft.
7. Draw an X in both openings, as shown in Figure 6.58.
8. Click Finish Edit Mode.

The floor is now voided from the openings. Go to a 3D view, and look down the shafts. They're wide open, as shown in Figure 6.59. The symbolic lines you drew will appear in the floor plans only.

NOTE A shaft opening voids only floors and roofs. Any other geometry, such as walls and structural framing, isn't voided. You need to modify these elements on a piece-by-piece basis.

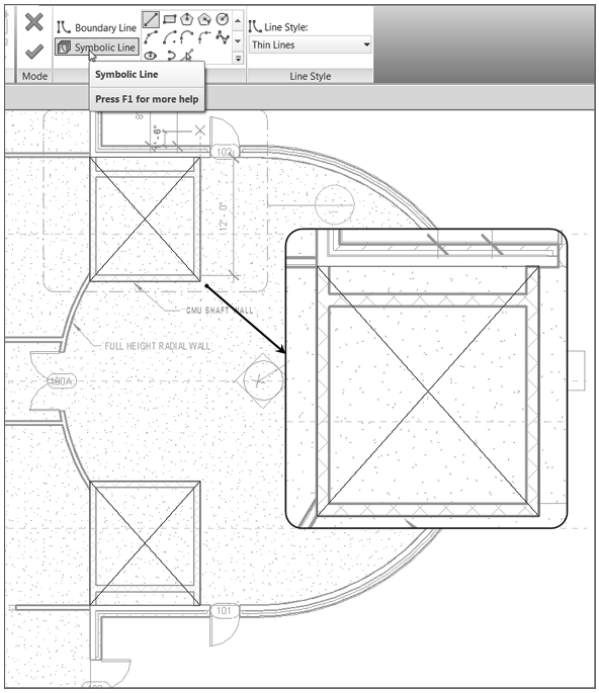


FIGURE 6.58: You can add any "drafting" symbolic lines you deem necessary.

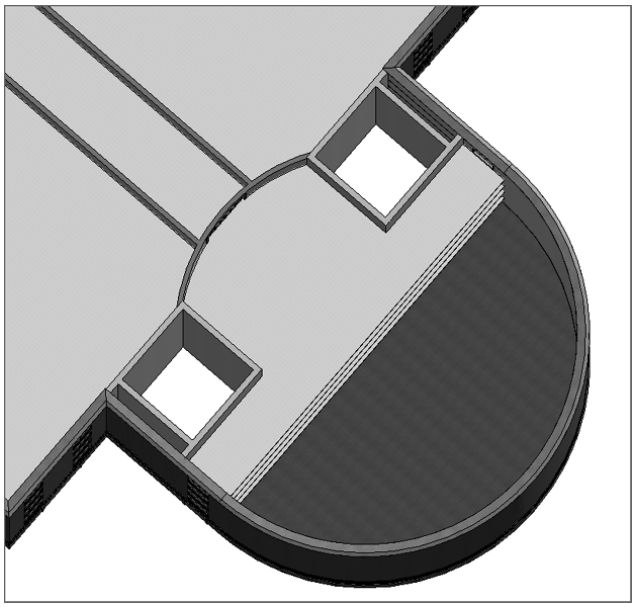


FIGURE 6.59: The completed shafts as seen in 3D

Now that you know how to pitch floors, you can begin using Revit for its unique capabilities. Also, you're better prepared to move on to the next chapter, which focuses on creating roofs.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ **add a floor to your model by using the building's footprint as a guide and by picking the walls and drawing lines**
- ✔ **add additional floors to higher levels by using the Copy/Paste Aligned method of quickly repeating the geometry up through the building**
- ✔ **add a specific, alternate material to different parts of the floor by using the Split Face command in conjunction with the paint materials function**
- ✔ **split a floor into segments and add additional points to set a negative elevation for pitching to floor drains**
- ✔ **create a shaft opening that will cut out any new floor slab**
- ✔ **use symbolic lines within a shaft opening to indicate the opening**

CHAPTER 7

Roofs

Roofs come in all shapes and sizes. Given the nature of roofs, there is a lot to think about when you place a roof onto your building. If it's a flat roof, pitch is definitely a consideration. Drainage to roof drains or scuppers is another concern. But how about pitched roofs? Now you're in an entirely new realm of options, pitches, slopes, and everything else you can throw at a roof design. Also, there are always dormers that no pitched roof can live without! Do the dormers align with the eaves, or are they set back from the building?

This chapter covers the following topics:

- **Placing roofs by footprint**
- **Creating a sloping roof**
- **Creating roofs by extrusion**
- **Adding a roof dormer**

Placing Roofs by Footprint

This book can't address every situation you'll encounter with a roof system, but it will expose you to the tools needed to tackle these situations yourself. The techniques you'll employ in this chapter start with the concept of adding a roof to the model by using the actual floor-plan footprint. As with floors, you'll also build the roof's composition for use in schedules, quantities, and material takeoffs.

The command you'll probably use most often when working with roofs is the one to place a roof by footprint. Essentially, you'll create a roof by using the outline of the building in the plan view. There are three roof types you'll place by using a footprint.

- A flat roof (OK, no roof is actually flat, but you get the point)
- A gable roof, which has two sides that are sloped and ends that are left open
- A hip roof, which has all sides sloped

You have only these options while placing a roof by footprint because you're looking at the roof in the plan, which limits your ability to place a roof with nonuniform geometry. Later in the book, you'll explore doing just that, but for now let's start with placing a flat roof by using the footprint of the east wing.

Flat Roofs by Footprint

To begin, open the file you've been using to follow along. If you didn't complete Chapter 6, "Floors," go to the book's web page at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there, you can browse to `Chapter 7` and find the file called `NER-7.rvt`.

NOTE **Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. The Autodesk® Revit® Architecture platform won't accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.**

The objective of this procedure is to create a flat roof by outlining the building's geometry in the plan. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, double-click the Roof view in the Floor Plans section (be careful not to click Roof in the Ceiling Plans).
2. Zoom into the east wing.
3. In the view Properties, find the Underlay row, and select None from the menu, as shown in Figure 7.1.
4. Click the Apply button if it's not already active.
5. Select all of the CMU walls.
6. Set Top to Up To Level: Roof.
7. Set Top Offset to -1′-0″ (-300 mm).
8. On the Architecture tab, click Roof ➢ Roof By Footprint, as shown in Figure 7.2.
9. On the Modify | Create Roof Footprint tab, be sure the Pick Walls button on the Draw panel is selected, as shown at the right in Figure 7.3.
10. On the Options bar, deselect Defines Slope.
11. On the Options bar, make sure Overhang is set to 0′–0″ (0 mm).
12. Deselect Extend Into Wall Core (if it's selected).

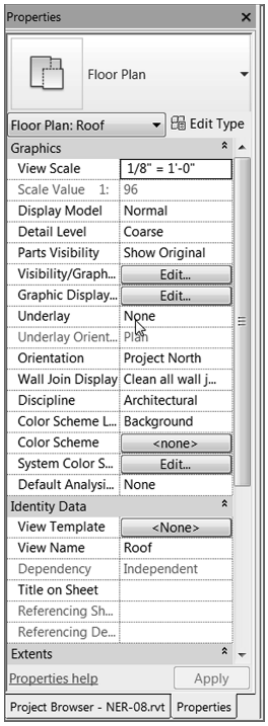


FIGURE 7.1: Changing the view's Underlay to None

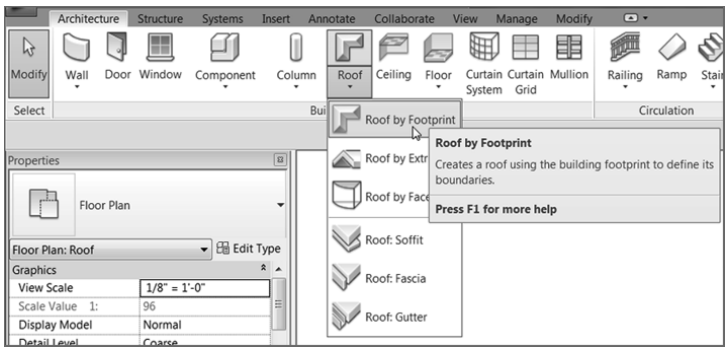


FIGURE 7.2: Clicking Roof By Footprint on the Architecture tab of the Design bar

13. Hover your pointer over the leftmost vertical wall. When it becomes highlighted, press the Tab key on your keyboard. All the perimeter walls highlight (see Figure 7.3). When they do, pick (left-click) anywhere along the wall. This places a magenta sketch line at the perimeter of the building.

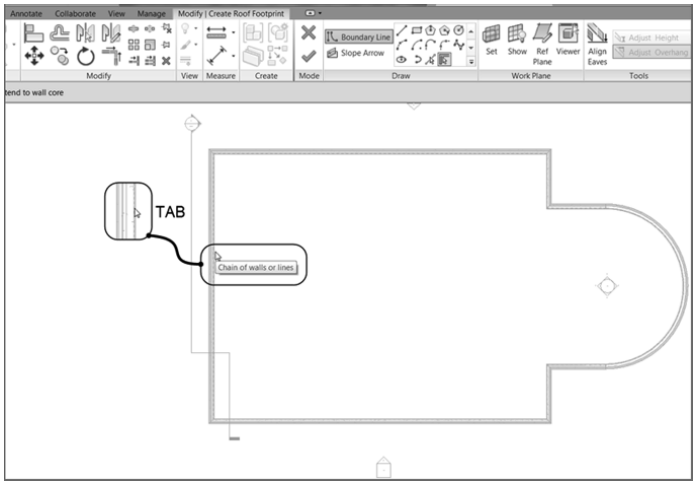


FIGURE 7.3: Adding a sketch line to the perimeter of the building by picking walls

14. On the Modify | Create Roof Footprint tab, click Finish Edit Mode.
15. Go to a 3D view, as shown in Figure 7.4.

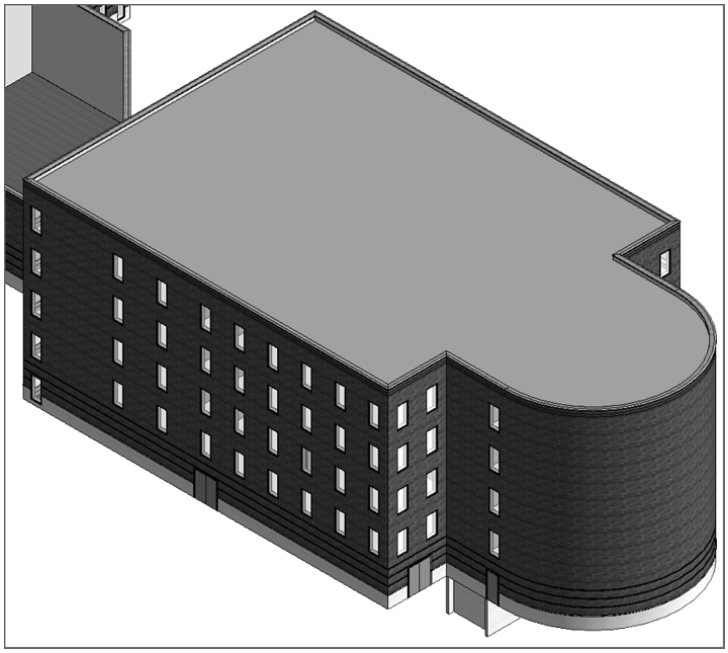


FIGURE 7.4: The roof has been added. You still have a lot of work to do, though.

With the roof added, step 1 is out of the way. Now you need to create a roof system. You'll do this the same way you created your floor system in Chapter 6.

Creating a Flat Roof System

Although you can use this system for a pitched roof, the steps for a flat roof system differ slightly. In Revit Architecture, there are two ways to look at a roofing system. One way is to create it by using all the typical roof materials and a large space for the structural framing. In this book, I don't recommend that approach. Creating a roof by using only the roofing components is necessary, but adding the structure will lead to conflicts when the actual structural model is linked with the architectural model. Also, it's hard for the architect to guess what the depth of the structural framing will be. In Revit, you want each component to be as literal and as true to the model as possible. The second way to look at a roofing system, as you're about to explore, is to build the roof in a literal sense—that is, to create the roof as it would sit on the structural framing by the structural engineer.

The objective of this procedure is to create a roof system by adding layers of materials. Follow these steps:

1. Select the roof. (If you're having trouble selecting the roof, remember the Filter tool.)
2. In the Properties dialog box, click Edit Type.
3. Click Duplicate.
4. Call the new roof system **4″ Insulated Concrete Roof (100 mm Insulated Concrete Roof)**.
5. Click OK.
6. Click the Edit button in the Structure row.
7. Change the material of Structure 1 to Concrete, Lightweight. (You do this by clicking in the cell and then clicking the […] button. You can then select the material from the menu.) After the material is selected, click OK.
8. Change the structure Thickness to **4″ (100** mm), as shown in Figure 7.5.
9. Insert a new layer above the core boundary. (You do this by clicking the number on the left side of the Layers Above Wrap row and clicking the Insert button below the Layers section, as shown in Figure 7.5.)

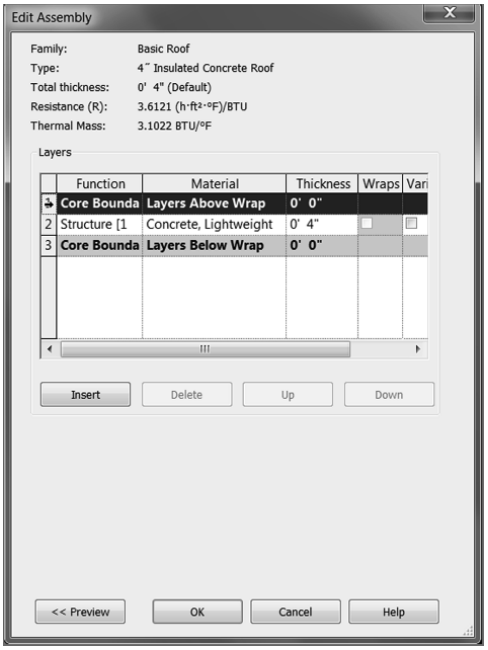


FIGURE 7.5: Changing the material and adding a layer

10. Change the function of the new layer to Thermal/Air Layer [3].
11. Click in the Material cell.
12. Click the […] button to open the Material Browser.
13. Select Rigid Insulation for the material.
14. Click OK.
15. Change Thickness to 4″ (100 mm).
16. Click the Variable button. When you modify the roof, this insulation layer will warp, enabling you to specify roof drain locations.
17. Insert a new layer above Insulation.
18. Give it a Function of Finish 1 [4].

19. Select Roofing – EPDM Membrane for the Material.
20. Click OK.
21. Change Thickness to 1/4″ (6 mm), as shown in Figure 7.6.

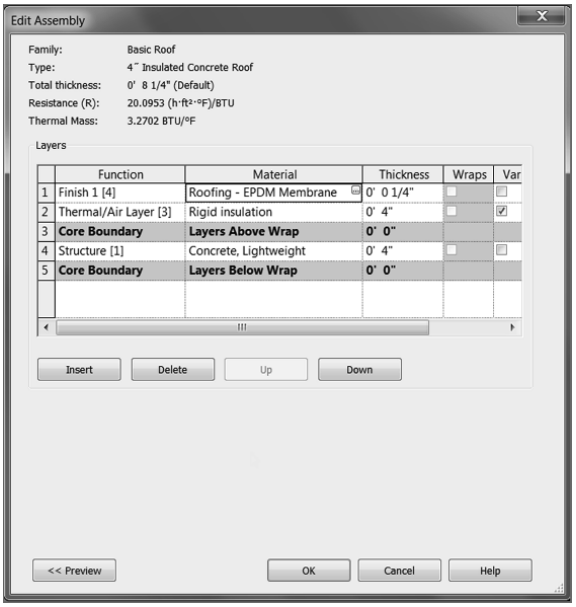


FIGURE 7.6: The completed roof system

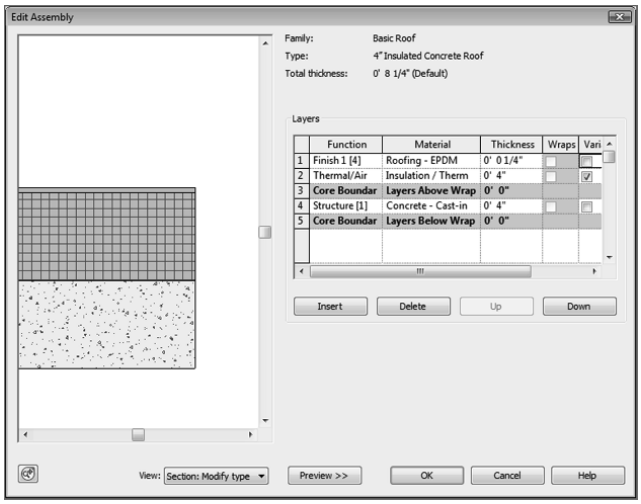
22. Click OK.
23. Click OK again to get back to the model.
24. Press Esc or click in open space to clear the roof selection.

Phew! That was a long procedure. It was worth it, though. You'll be using this process a lot in Revit Architecture.

For the next procedure, you'll add some roof drain locations and then taper the insulation to drain to those locations.

Take a Look

It's always a good idea to keep the preview window open when you modify the roof system. If you look toward the bottom of the Edit Assembly dialog box, you'll see a Preview button, as shown here. Click it, and you can see the roof as it's being constructed.



Tapering a Flat Roof and Adding Drains

If you went through the floor procedure in Chapter 6, you'll see that the process for tapering a roof is similar to pitching a floor. You may have also noticed that creating a roof system is identical to creating a floor system.

To taper the roof insulation, you must first divide the roof into peaks and valleys and then specify the drain locations based on the centering of these locations. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, make sure you're in the Roof floor plan.
2. Select the roof. (You may have to use the Filter tool.)

TIP **Even when you do successfully select the roof, you may not be able to tell. The roof doesn't seem to highlight. When the roof is selected, the Options bar shows the Modify icons. Also, look in the top of the Properties dialog box—it should read Basic Roof : 4″ Insulated Concrete Roof.**

3. Click the Add Split Line button, as shown in Figure 7.7.

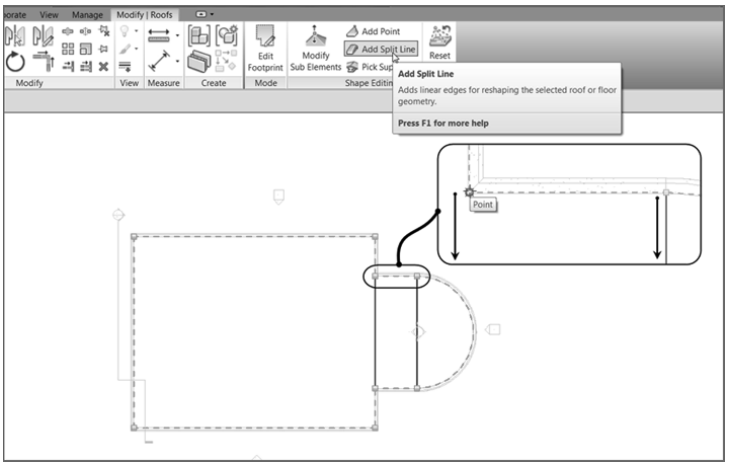


FIGURE 7.7: Start splitting the radial portion of the roof.

4. Draw lines from the points shown in Figure 7.7.
5. Press Esc twice.
6. Select the roof.

TIP The Chain tool is nice, but make sure it's deselected if you only want to draw single items.

TIP One really nice thing about modifying the roof is that now, to select the roof, all you need to do is pick one of the ridgelines.

7. Click the Add Point button, as shown in Figure 7.8.
8. Add two points at the midpoints marked 1 and 2 in Figure 7.8.
9. Click the Add Split Line button, and draw a ridge across the entire length of the building from point 1 to point 2, as shown in Figure 7.9.
10. Press Esc twice, or click Modify. Then, on the Architecture tab, click Ref Plane, as shown at the upper right in Figure 7.10.

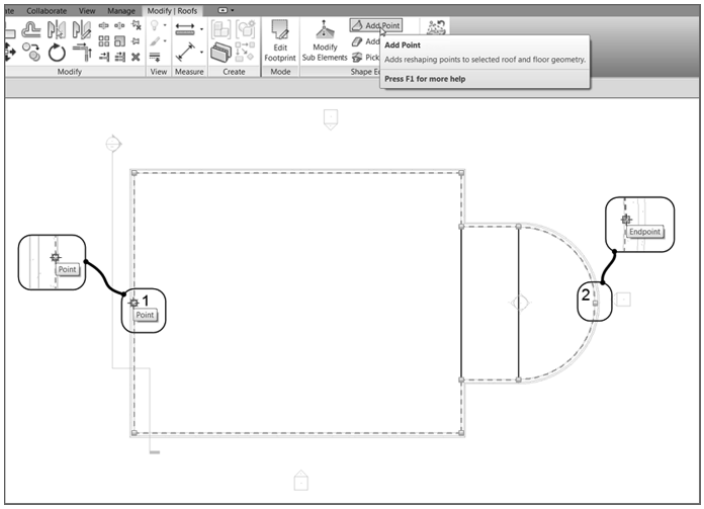


FIGURE 7.8: Click the Add Point button, and add the two points.

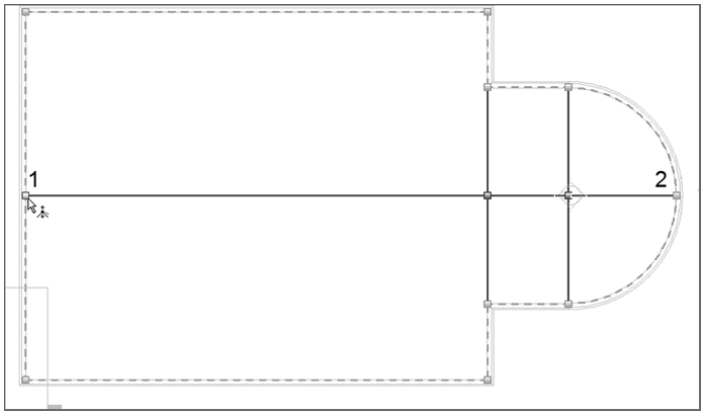


FIGURE 7.9: Drawing a new ridge between the two points

11. Draw four reference planes spaced approximately the same as in Figure 7.10.
12. On the Annotate tab, click the Aligned Dimension button.
13. Add a dimension string starting at the exterior wall to the left and ending at the exterior wall to the right (see Figure 7.10).
14. Click the blue EQ icon. This equally constrains the reference planes.
15. Press Esc twice, or click Modify to terminate the command.

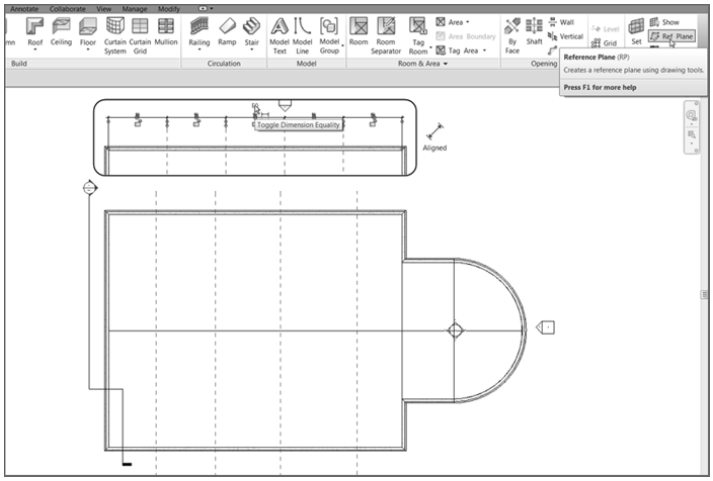


FIGURE 7.10: Add a dimension string to the reference planes shown here.

16. Select the roof.

17. Click Add Split Line, as shown in Figure 7.11. Be sure to clear the Chain option.

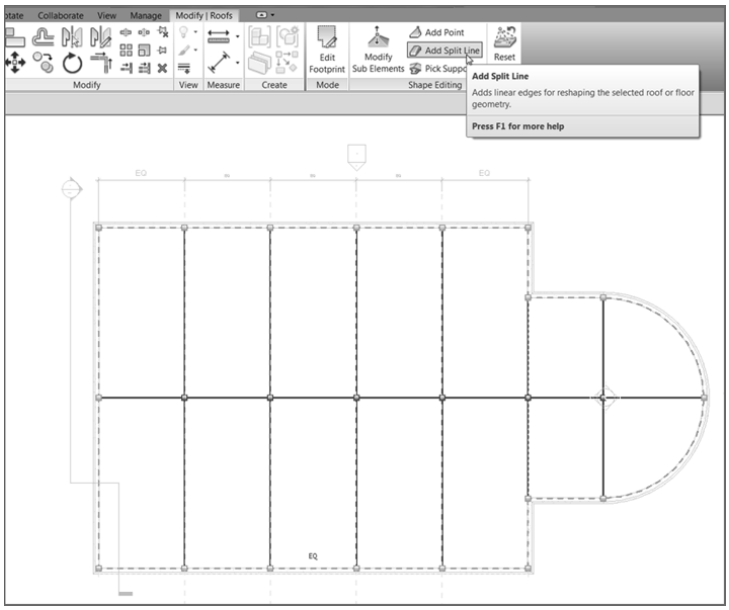


FIGURE 7.11: The ridges are in. All that is left is to create some points and start tapering the roof.

18. Draw four ridges at the intersections of the reference planes (see Figure 7.11).
19. Press Esc.
20. Change Visual Style to Wireframe.
21. On the Annotate tab, click the Detail Line button.
22. Draw a diagonal line between the two points shown in Figure 7.12.

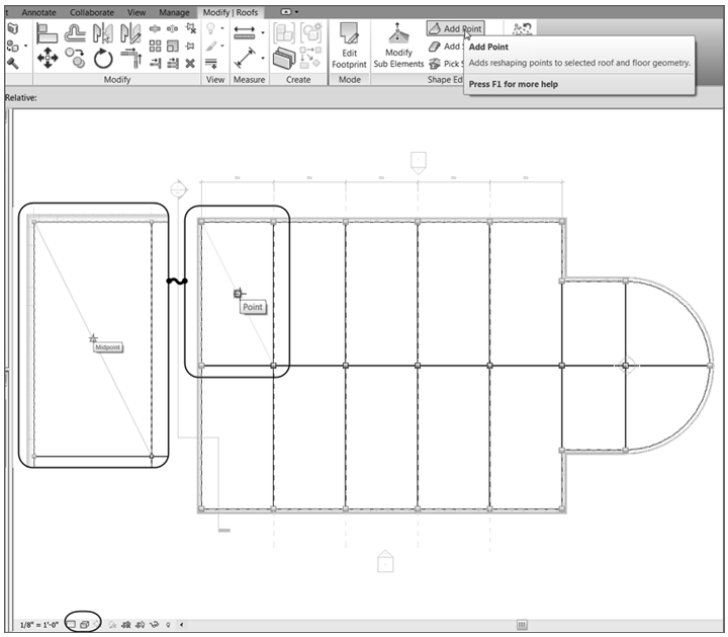


FIGURE 7.12: Adding a temporary line

23. Click Modify, and then select the roof.
24. Click the Add Point button.
25. Pick the midpoint of the diagonal line.
26. There is a node where you picked the point. To access the node, click the Modify Sub Elements button on the Shape Editing panel, as shown in Figure 7.13.

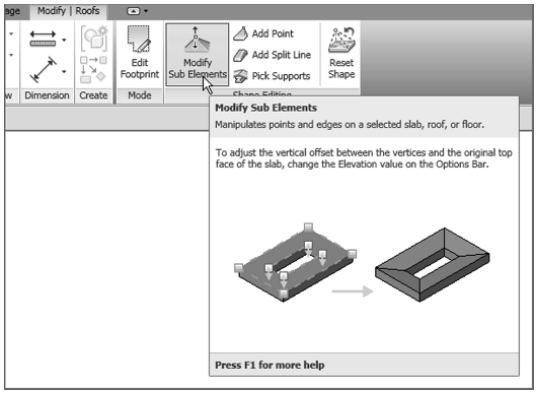


FIGURE 7.13: Click the Modify Sub Elements button to gain access to the points on the roof.

27. Pick the point you just added. A blue elevation appears, as shown in Figure 7.14. Click the elevation, and type -3″ (-75 mm).

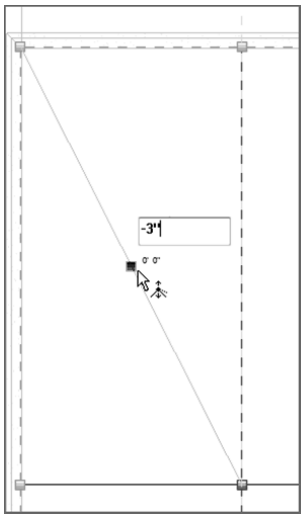


FIGURE 7.14: Click here to taper the roof to this point.

28. Press Esc twice.

This process tapers the insulation only in this bay, as shown in Figure 7.15. The objective now is to do the same thing for every bay. Because you can't copy a point, you need to move the temporary line to the next bay and add a new point.

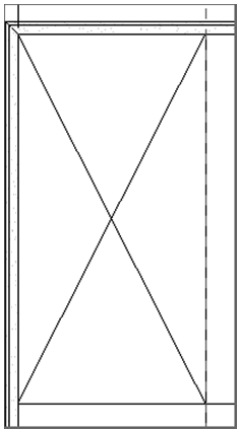


FIGURE 7.15 The taper is in place.

Follow along to create another taper:

1. Move the diagonal line (which you drew as a reference) to the next bay to the right.
2. Select the roof.
3. Click the Add Point button.
4. Click the Modify Sub Elements button, and add a point to the midpoint of the line.
5. Type -3″ (-75 mm) in the blue elevation. The roof tapers.
6. Move the line to the next bay, and repeat the process.

NOTE As you're adding additional lines in this section, remember that I'm merely recommending that you use the Move tool. At this point, you have enough experience either to draw in the lines or to use any tool you've studied thus far.

7. Complete every bay.
8. Add points to the radial area as well.
9. Delete the dimensions, the reference lines, and the detail lines.
10. Change Visual Style back to Hidden.
11. Your roof should look like Figure 7.16 when you've finished.

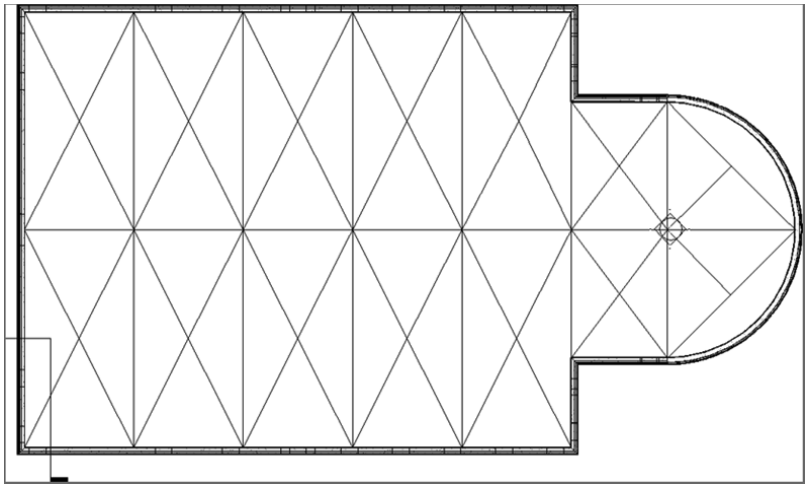


FIGURE 7.16: The completed roof

To further investigate how this roof works and to illustrate the benefits of using this approach rather than drafting the lines, let's cut a section through the roof and see how the detail looks.

1. On the Create panel of the View tab, click the Section button.
2. Add a section through the roof, as shown in Figure 7.17.

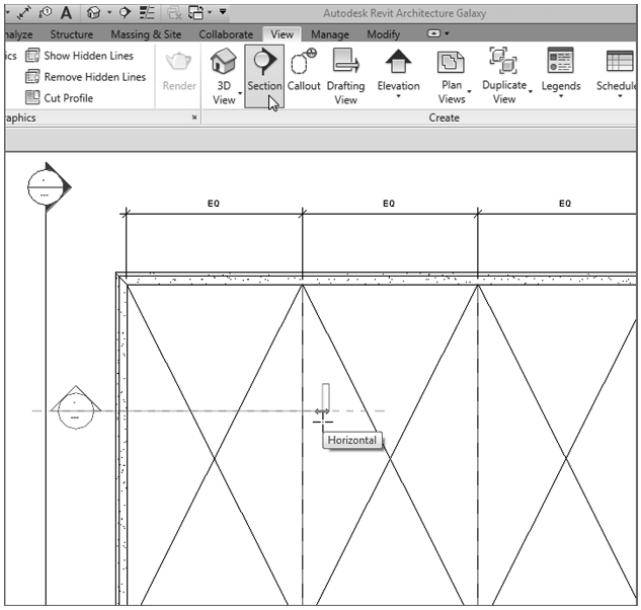


FIGURE 7.17: Adding a section through the roof at this point

3. In the Type Selector, make sure the type of section is a building section, and change View Scale to 3/4″ = 1′–0″ (1:20 mm).
4. Change Detail Level to Fine.
5. Change the View Name option (under Identity Data) to Roof Taper Section (see Figure 7.18).

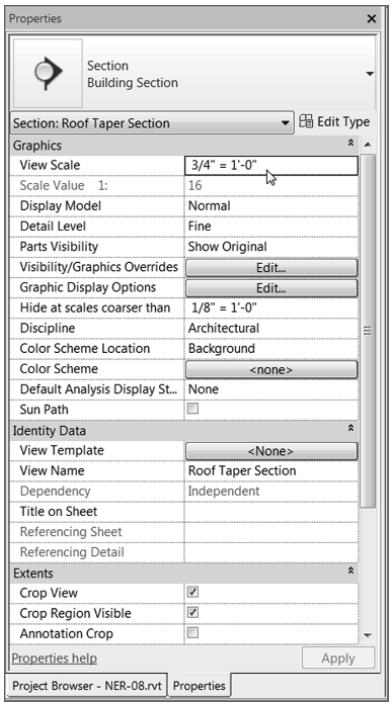


FIGURE 7.18: Changing the properties of the section

6. Click the Apply button.
7. Double-click the section head (or find the section called Roof Taper Section in the Project Browser).
8. Adjust the crop region so you're looking only at the roof area, as shown in Figure 7.19. Zoom to fit.

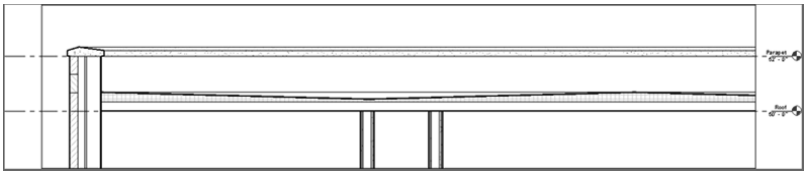


FIGURE 7.19: By adding the points to the roof, you now have an almost perfect section.

This concludes modeling a flat roof. You can now move on to creating a pitched roof. Again, although these types of roofs can be easy to add in the beginning, more work will be required to get them exactly the way you want them.

The Proof Is in the Roof!

This is a perfect example of why the Revit approach to design documentation is the way to go. Although the sloping of the slab may have seemed tedious, in reality it didn't take much longer than it would have if you had drafted those lines in a CAD application. But now, to produce a section, all you need to do is to cut one. Also, if you change the location or the depth of the roof pitch, your lines in the plan will be accurate, as will your section.

Pitched Roofs by Footprint

You'll add a pitched roof in a manner identical to the way you added the flat roof. The only real difference is that each magenta sketch line will need more attention before you finish the sketch. But after tapering the roof's insulation, this will be a cakewalk.

You'll place the pitched roof over the corridor. The problem with the corridor is that you used a wall system with a parapet cap. This isn't the best wall system to receive a pitched roof. First, you'll change to a simpler wall system, as follows:

1. Go to a 3D view of the model.
2. Select the six corridor walls, as shown in Figure 7.20.
3. In the Properties dialog box, click the Edit Type button.
4. Click the Duplicate button.
5. Call the new wall system **Exterior – Brick and CMU on MTL. Stud (No Parapet)**.

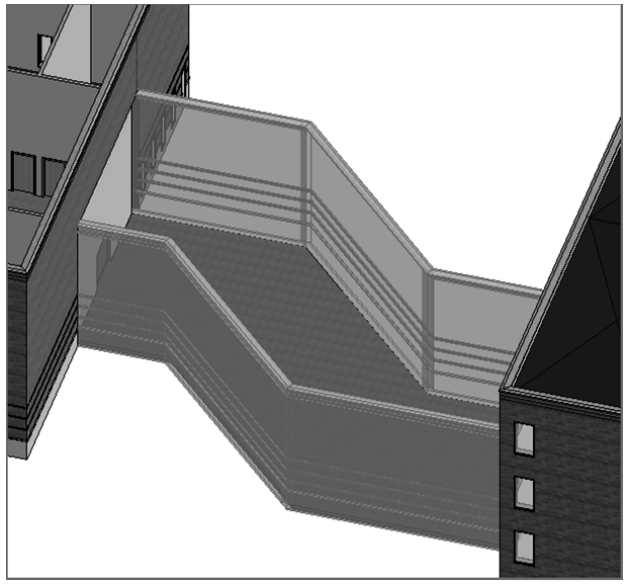


FIGURE 7.20: Select the six walls to be modified.

6. In the Structure row, click the Edit button.
7. In the Edit Assembly dialog box, make sure the Preview button is selected and the view is set to Section, as shown at the bottom of Figure 7.21.

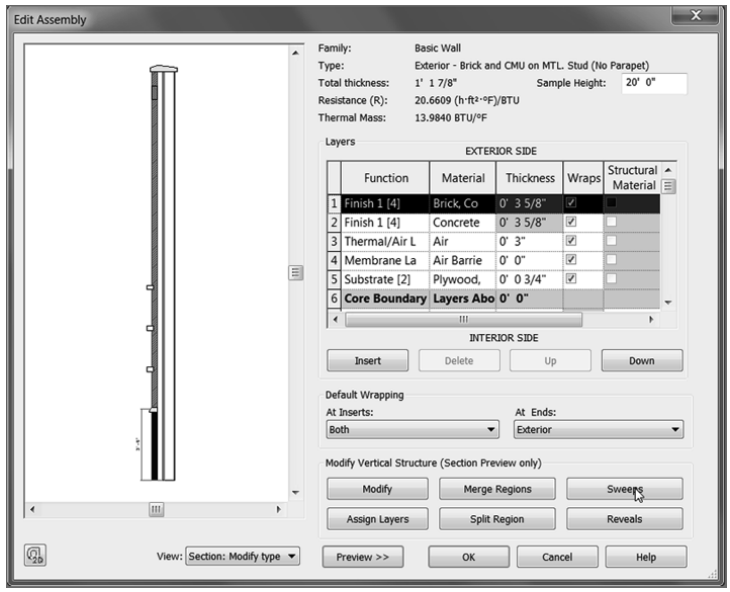


FIGURE 7.21: Without the Preview button selected and set to Section, you can't modify the parapet sweep.

8. Click the Sweeps button (see Figure 7.21).
9. In the Wall Sweeps dialog box, you see three sweeps. The top sweep is the parapet cap. Select sweep 1 (Parapet Cap), and click the Delete button, as shown in Figure 7.22.

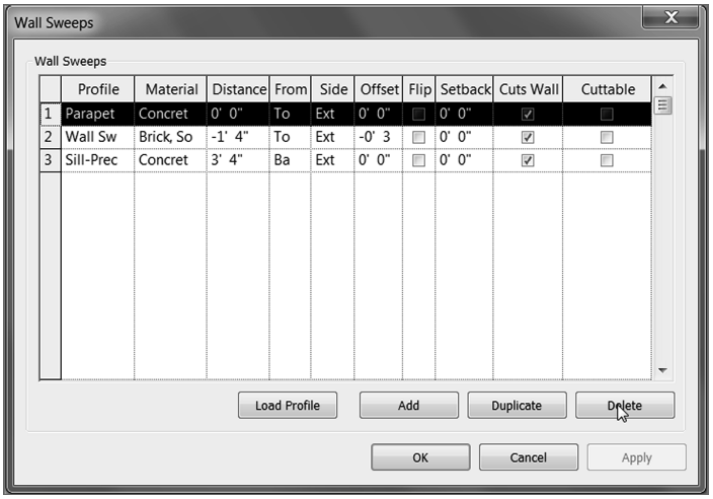


FIGURE 7.22: Deleting the Parapet Cap sweep

10. Click OK three times.

Your corridor walls should look the same, but they're now void of the concrete parapet cap.

NOTE Although you have pretty good experience with walls up to this point, Chapter 15, "Advanced Wall Topics," is dedicated to the advanced concepts and creation of wall systems.

Remember, your preview must be in Section: Modify Type for all the buttons to be active.

It's time to add the roof to the corridor. Because the walls your roof will bear on are now correct, the rest will be a snap! Here are the steps:

1. Go to the Level 3 floor plan. (This is the roof level for your corridor.)
2. On the Architecture tab, choose Roof ➢ Roof By Footprint.
3. On the Draw panel, make sure the Pick Walls button is selected.
4. On the Options bar, make sure the Defines Slope button is selected.
5. Type 1′ (300 mm) in the Overhang field.

6. Pick the six walls that compose the corridor, as shown in Figure 7.23.

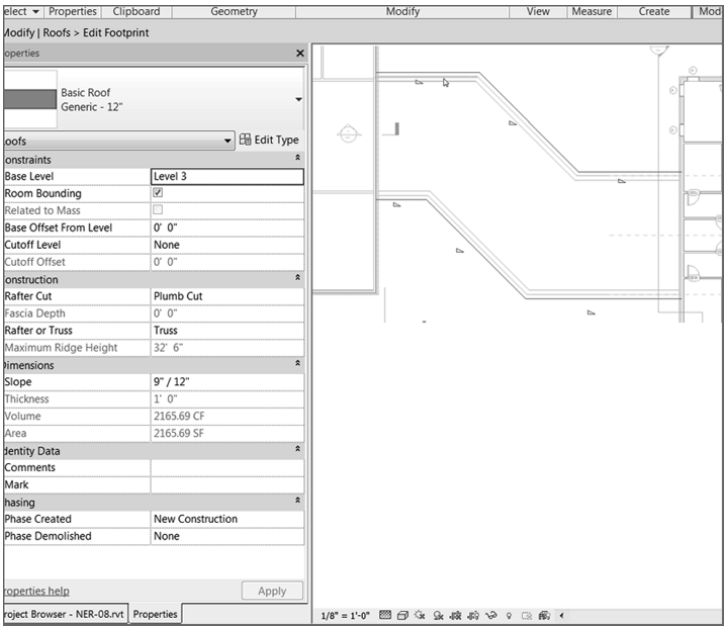


FIGURE 7.23: Pick these walls for the roof's footprint.

With the easy walls out of the way, let's create the gable ends. You should still be in Pick Walls Mode. This is OK, but there are a few things you need to change on the Options bar.

1. Click the Boundary Line button on the Draw panel if it isn't still active.
2. On the Draw panel again, click the Pick Lines icon, as shown in Figure 7.24.
3. On the Options bar, deselect Defines Slope.
4. For the offset, enter 0.
5. Pick the east wall of the west wing and the west wall of the east wing (see Figure 7.24).

As you pick the walls, notice that you now have an overhang. This overhang obviously needs to extend to the outside of the walls. Just be aware of this as you pick the walls, and watch your alignment lines as you proceed.

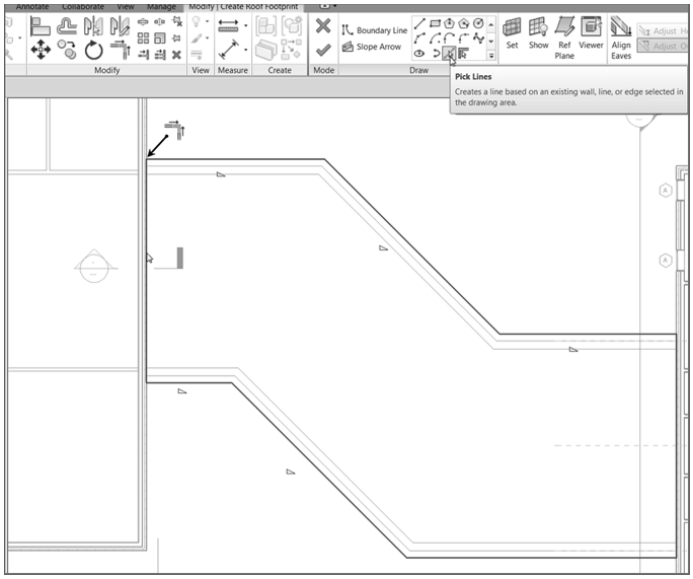


FIGURE 7.24: You must pick lines to trace the terminating walls of the roof.

It's cleanup time! Of course, the magenta lines are overlapping at the long walls. This is OK—you're an expert at the Trim command by now, especially in Sketch Mode:

1. On the Modify | Create Roof Footprint tab, select the Trim/Extend To Corner command.
2. Trim the intersections that overlap. There are four of them (see Figure 7.25).

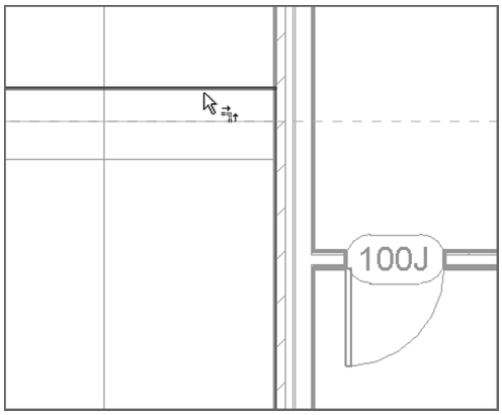


FIGURE 7.25: Using the Trim command in conjunction with the roof sketch

3. On the Mode panel, click Finish Edit Mode, and go to a 3D view.

One ugly roof, huh? Welcome to the world of pitched roofs in Revit. You'll get the roof you want—you just need to add two roofs here. You'll understand this process, but it's going to involve patience and trial and error!

To fix this roof, you simply have to make two separate roofs and join them. This is a common procedure for the more complicated roof systems in Revit. Here are the steps:

1. If you aren't in Level 3, go there now, and select the roof.
2. On the Modify | Roofs tab, click the Edit Footprint button, as shown in Figure 7.26.

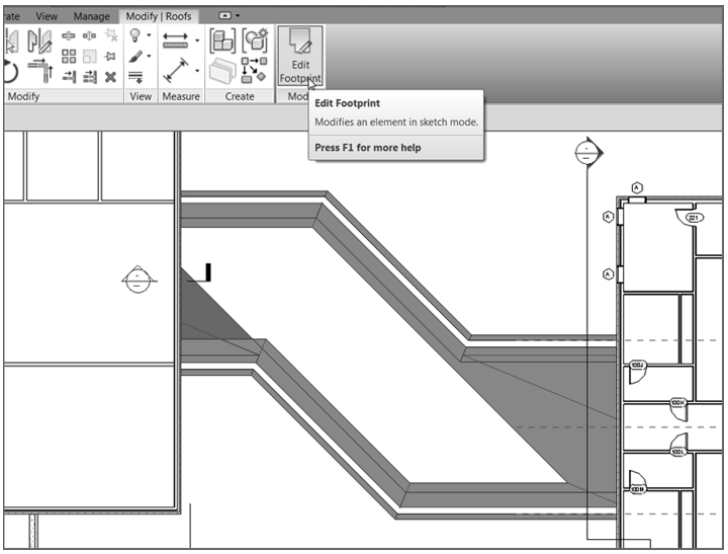


FIGURE 7.26: Selecting the roof and clicking the Edit Footprint button

3. Delete every line other than the three shown in Figure 7.27.
4. On the Draw panel, click the Line button.
5. Draw a diagonal line between the endpoints of the two lines, as shown in Figure 7.28. Make sure the Defines Slope button isn't selected.
6. On the Modify | Roofs ➢ Edit Footprint tab, click Finish Edit Mode. The roof displays. It still looks funny, but you'll take care of that soon by altering the view range to make the view deep enough to display the ridge of the new roof.

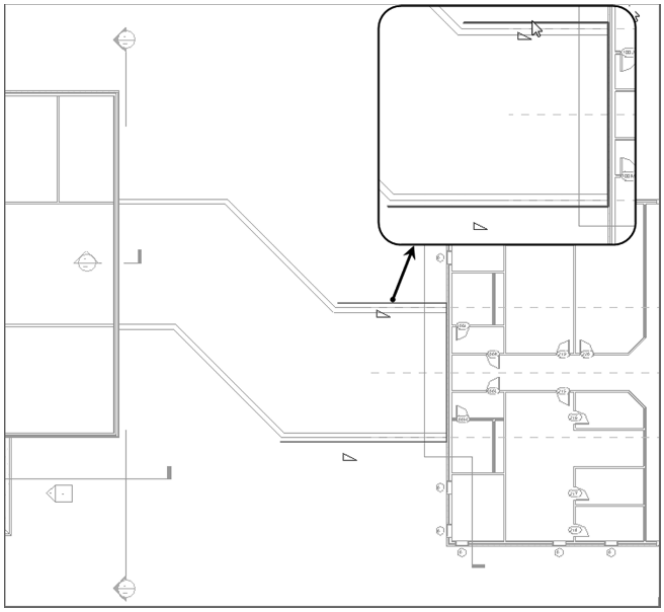


FIGURE 7.27: Keep these three lines.

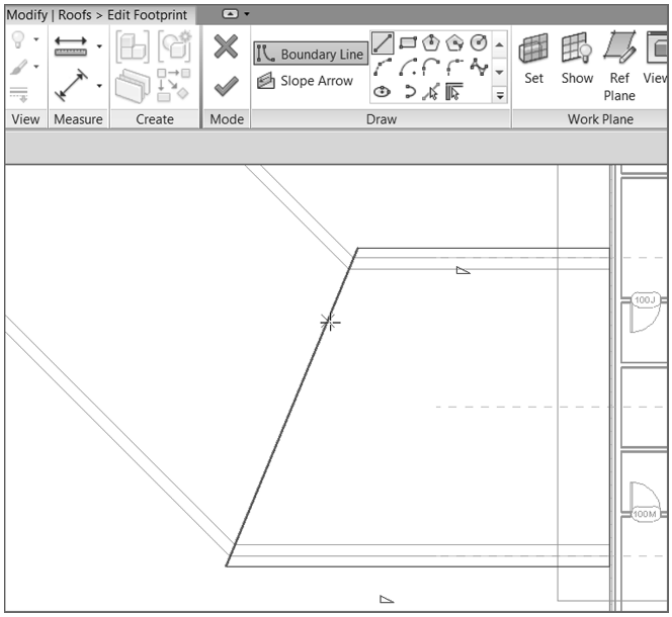


FIGURE 7.28: Draw a diagonal line as shown.

7. Start the Roof ➢ Roof By Footprint command again on the Architecture tab. You can also select the roof and click Create Similar on the Modify | Roofs tab that is currently active.
8. On your own, sketch the roof shown in Figure 7.29. Make sure the lines along the walls are defining a slope. The lines that represent the ends of the roof don't slope.

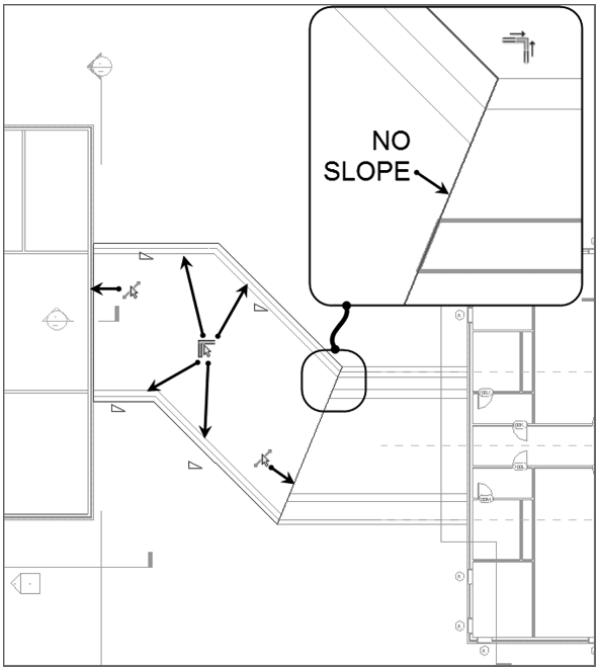


FIGURE 7.29: The new outline of the second roof

9. To add the line that matches the roof to the right, make sure the Boundary Line button is selected on the Draw panel and that Pick Lines is selected as well. Now simply pick the roof to the right, and the line appears.
10. Review Figure 7.29 to see whether your sketch matches. You should have six lines total, and the right and the left ends should not have a slope.

11. On the Modify | Create Roof Footprint tab, click Finish Edit Mode.
12. Go to a 3D view. Does your roof look like Figure 7.30?

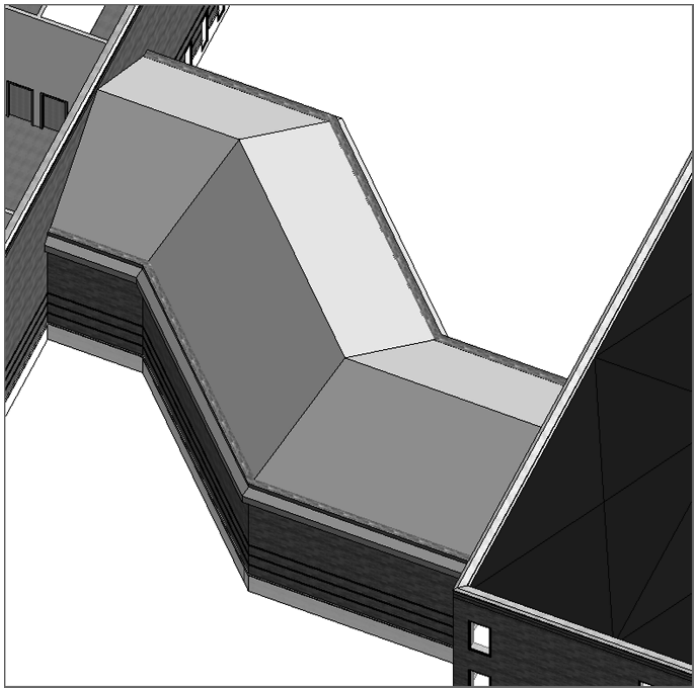


FIGURE 7.30: The corridor roof in 3D

If you accidentally add a line with (or without) a slope, that's fine. You can change it. First, press Esc (to clear the command), and then select the line that needs to be changed. On the Options bar, you can select (or deselect) Defines Slope.

The walls need some help! They're indiscriminately poking up through the roof. Let's do some wall cleanup. First, you need to force the walls to use a mitered join at the 45° intersections. The following procedure shows you how:

1. Go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Zoom into the wall intersection, as shown in Figure 7.31.
3. On the Modify tab, click the Wall Joins button (see Figure 7.31).

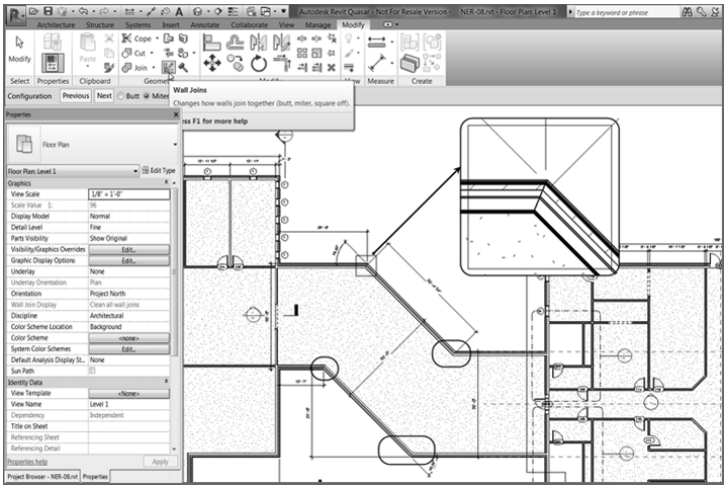


FIGURE 7.31: Modifying the walls' corners

When you've successfully mitered a corner and are ready to move to the next, nothing indicates that you can safely pick another corner. You don't need to keep trying to trim. When you see that the walls are at a miter, you can pick the next intersection. When you've finished all four, press Esc.

4. Move your cursor over the intersection. A box forms around the corner. When you see this box, pick the wall.
5. On the Options bar, click the Miter radio button. The walls are now joined at a miter.
6. Perform this procedure at all four corners.

You can now attach the tops of the walls to the bottom of the roof, as follows:

1. Go back to a 3D view, and select one of the corridor walls.
2. On the Modify | Walls tab is an option to attach the top or base of the wall, as shown in Figure 7.32. Click the Attach Top/Base button.
3. Pick the roof that the wall is under. The wall no longer sticks up past the roof.
4. Perform steps 1 through 3 for each corridor wall. When you've finished, your corridor roof should be magnificent, just like Figure 7.33.

You don't always have to modify the wall's mitering. This exercise is a special situation in which the corners won't attach to the roof properly unless you do so. There's really no explanation for why and when this will occur. Just know that you have some tools under your belt to get out of these real-life situations.

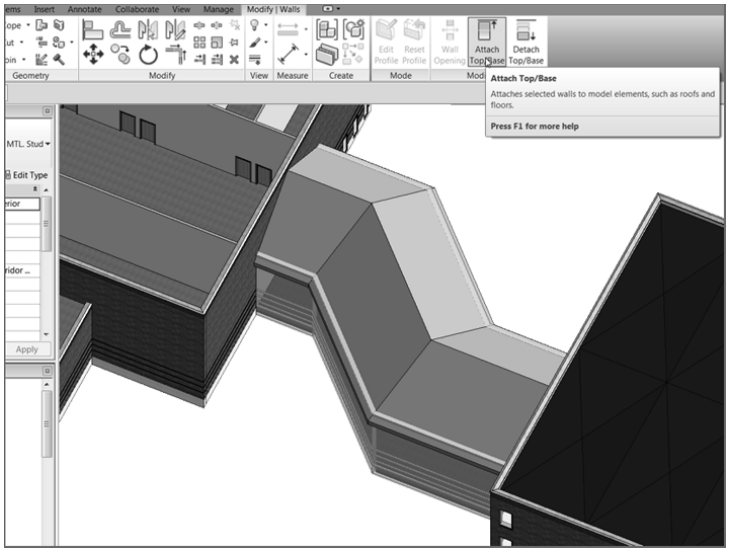


FIGURE 7.32: Attaching the top or the base

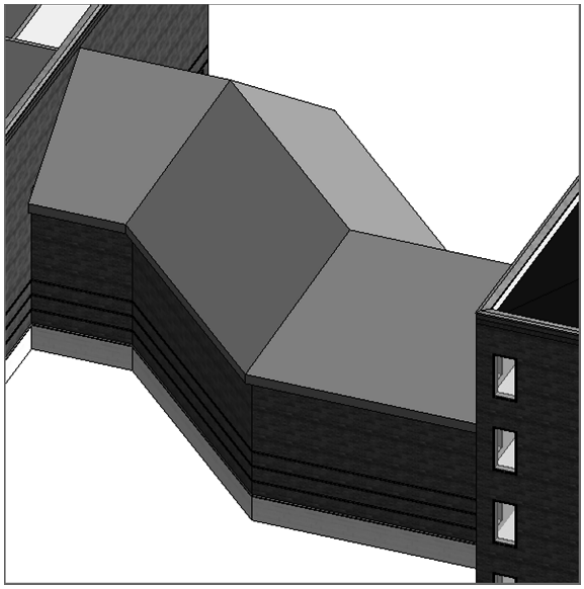
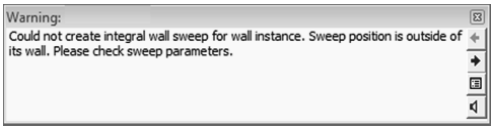


FIGURE 7.33 The completed corridor roof

But I Got This Warning!

Sometimes Revit doesn't like you hacking up its perfectly fine walls. The warning shown in this image pertains to the soldier course in the wall. Because the walls are now lower than that elevation, Revit is kind enough to tell you.



Viewing a Sloped Roof in the Plan

Back in Level 3 (the level in which the corridor roof resides), you're having a view problem: the roof is showing up only to the cut plane for that level. This can't be. There is a procedure to correct this, called a *plan region*. Here are the steps:

1. Go to the Level 3 floor plan.
2. On the View tab, choose Plan Views ➢ Plan Region, as shown in Figure 7.34.

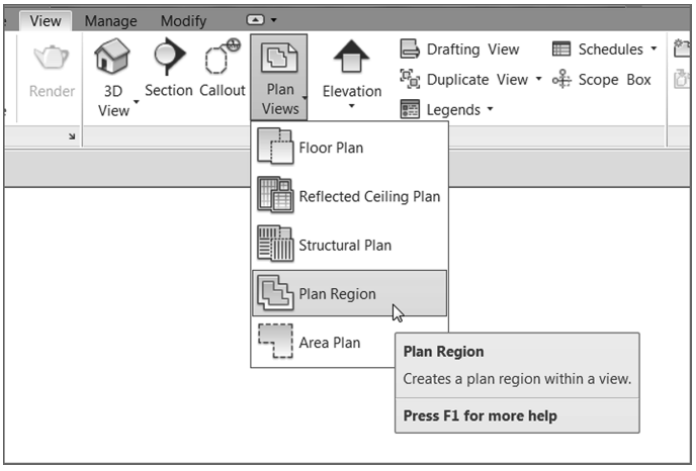


FIGURE 7.34: Using a plan region enables you to alter the view range in a specified area of a plan.

3. On the Draw panel, click the Rectangle button, as shown in Figure 7.35.

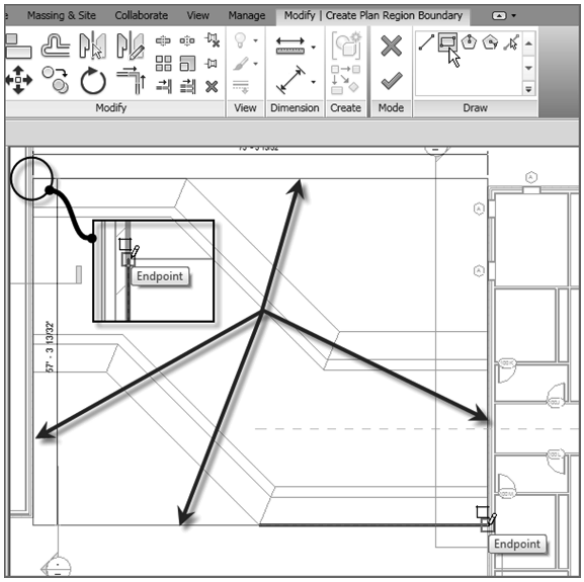


FIGURE 7.35: Creating the rectangle that forms the perimeter of the plan region

4. Draw a rectangle around the corridor (see Figure 7.35). Be sure to snap to the exact points where the roof meets the taller walls on the east and west wings.

5. In the Properties dialog box, click the Edit button in the View Range row (see Figure 7.36).

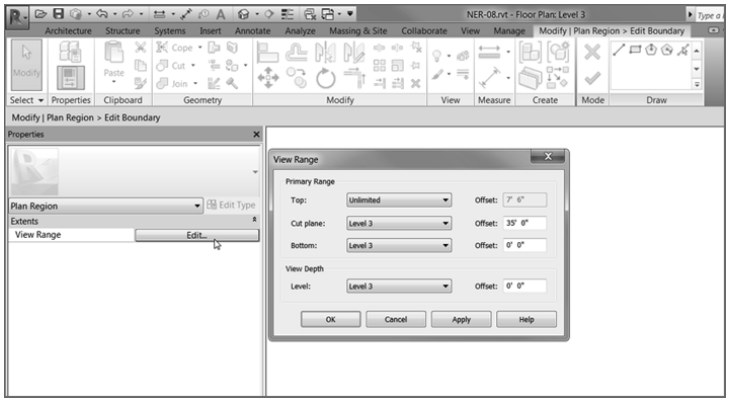


FIGURE 7.36: Setting the View Range for the plan region

6. In the View Range dialog box, set Top to Unlimited and Level 3 Cut Plane Offset to 35′–0″ (11500 mm), as shown in Figure 7.36.
7. Click OK.
8. On the Modify | Create Plan Region Boundary tab, click Finish Edit Mode.

   You can now see the roof in its entirety, as shown in Figure 7.37.

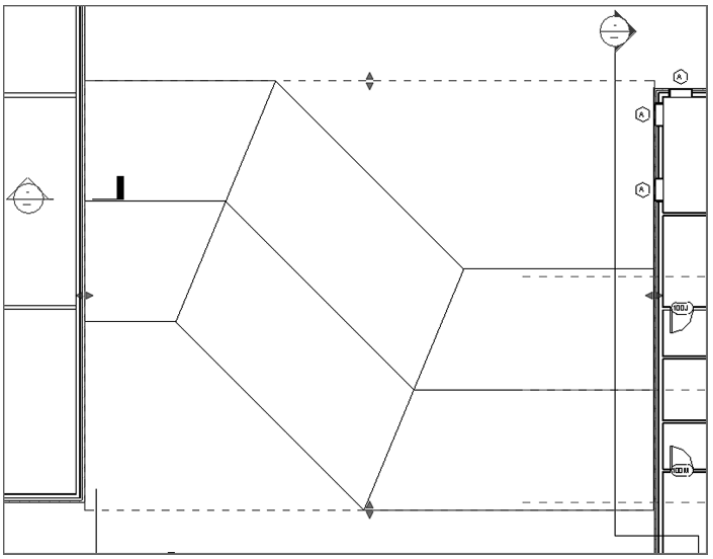


FIGURE 7.37: The finished roof plan

There is one more kind of roof to add. It will be a flat roof that has a slope in a single direction. Although you can do this by simply creating a roof with one edge specified as a pitch, at times you'll want a roof sloped at an odd direction that can't be handled by angling a roof edge.

Creating a Sloping Roof

To begin the process of creating a sloping roof, you'll cap off the west wing of your building. The exterior walls used for the perimeter need to be altered. You're already a pro at this, so let's start right there.

1. Go to a 3D view.
2. Select the west wing exterior walls (see Figure 7.38).

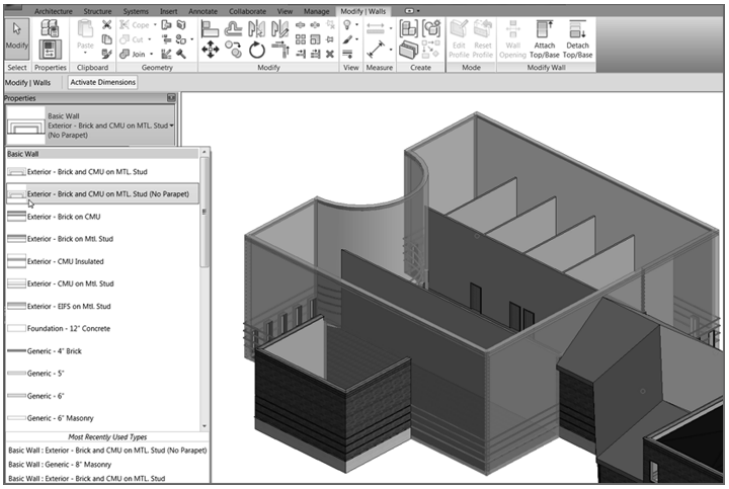


FIGURE 7.38: Changing the walls to Exterior – Brick And CMU On MTL. Stud (No Parapet)

3. In the Type Selector, select Exterior – Brick And CMU On MTL. Stud (No Parapet), as shown in Figure 7.38.
4. In the Project Browser, go to the West Roof floor plan.
5. On the Architecture tab, choose Roof ➢ Roof By Footprint.
6. On the Draw panel, verify that the Pick Walls button is selected.
7. On the Options bar, deselect Defines Slope.
8. Type 1′ (300 mm) for the Overhang value.
9. Move your cursor over a wall. Make sure the overhang alignment line is facing outside the walls to the exterior.
10. Press the Tab key. All the walls are selected.
11. Pick the wall. The magenta lines are completely drawn in. Your sketch should look like Figure 7.39.

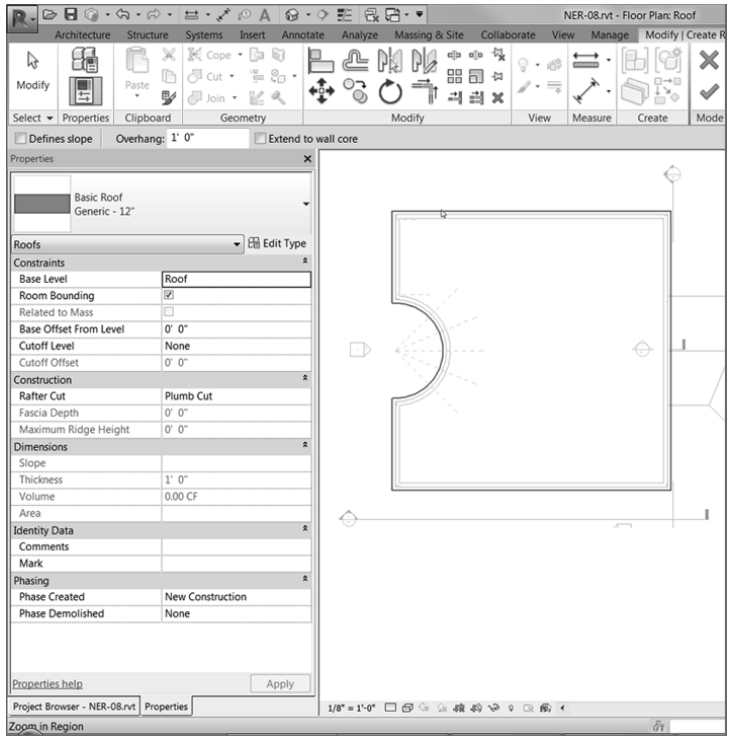


FIGURE 7.39: The perimeter of the roof is set.

Now it's time to set the slope. The objective here is to slope the roof starting at the northeast corner (as the low point) and ending at the southwest corner (the high point). You do this by adding a slope arrow, as follows:

1. On the Draw panel, click the Slope Arrow button, as shown in Figure 7.40.

FIGURE 7.40: Clicking the Slope Arrow button on the Draw panel

2. Pick the corner at the upper right and then the corner at the lower left, as shown in Figure 7.41.
3. Press Esc.

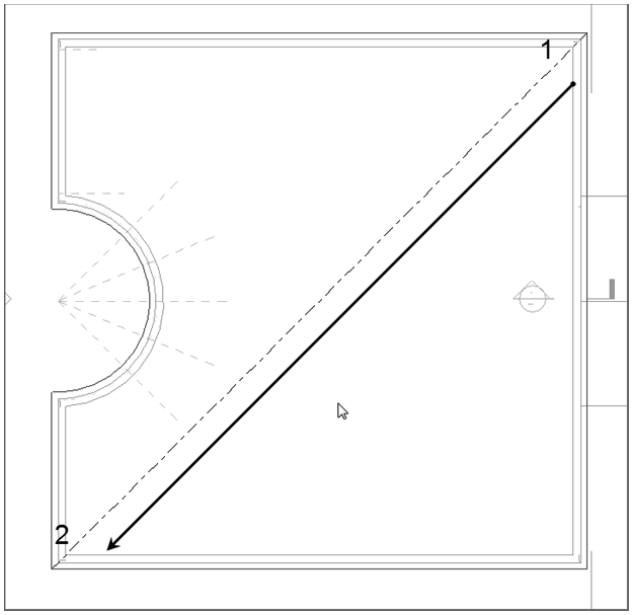


FIGURE 7.41: Adding the slope arrow

4. Select the slope arrow you just added to the model.
5. In the Properties dialog box, under Constraints, change Specify to Slope.
6. Under Dimensions, change Slope to 3″ / 12″ (250 / 1000 mm), as shown in Figure 7.42.

FIGURE 7.42: Changing the Slope Arrow properties

7. Click Finish Edit Mode on the Modify | Create Roof Footprint tab.

Again, you have a view range issue. You can see only the corner of the roof that sits below the cut plane. You can change that with the view range:

1. Press Esc to display the view properties in the Properties dialog box.
2. Scroll down the list until you arrive at the View Range row. When you do, click the Edit button.
3. In the View Range dialog box, under Primary Range, set Top to Unlimited.
4. Set the Cut Plane Offset to 40′ 0″ (12000 mm), as shown in Figure 7.43.

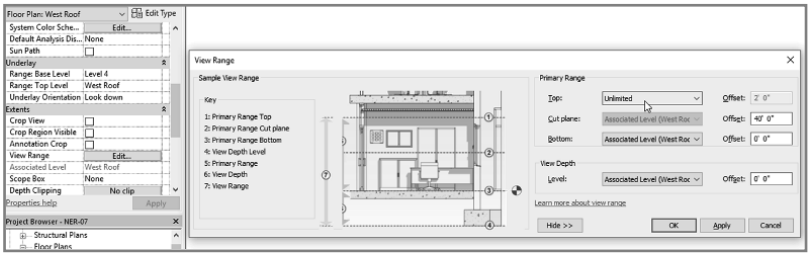


FIGURE 7.43: Setting the view range

5. Change the rest of the settings to reflect Figure 7.43.
6. Click OK. You can see the entire roof.
7. Go to a 3D view. You now have a cool, sloping roof, as shown in Figure 7.44.

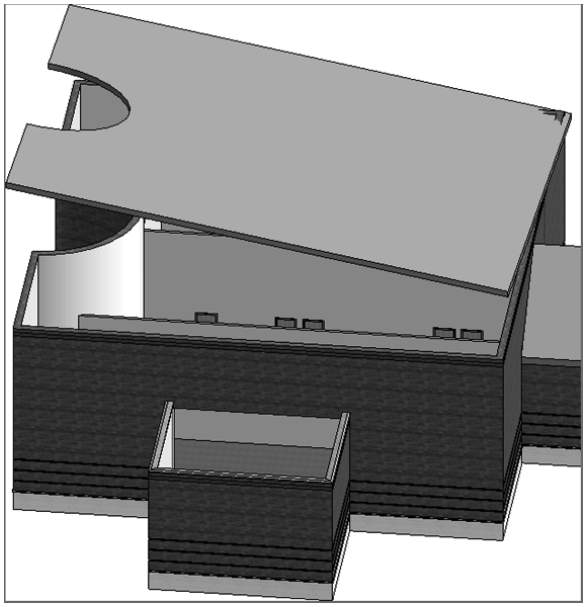


FIGURE 7.44: The sloping roof

Of course, there is a wall issue. You can attach most of the walls to the roof simply by selecting them and attaching the tops. But you'll have to modify the profile for one wall, as follows:

1. In the 3D view, select all of the exterior west wing walls, excluding the one on the east side that is west of the corridor. (You can see it in Figure 7.45.)

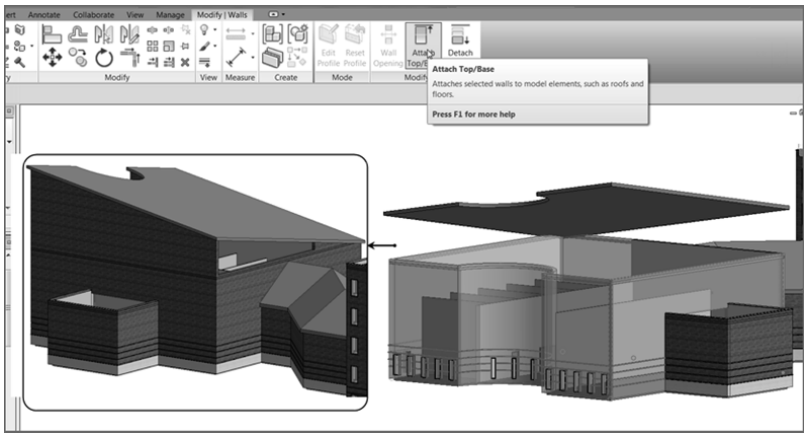


FIGURE 7.45: Attaching the tops of the walls to the sloping roof

2. On the Modify | Walls tab, select Attach Top/Base.
3. Pick Top from the Options bar (it's all the way to the left).
4. Pick the sloping roof (see Figure 7.45).
5. In the Project Browser, go to the section called West Corridor Section.
6. Select the wall that doesn't attach to the roof.
7. On the Mode panel, click Edit Profile.
8. Trace the roof with the Line tool. Be sure you delete the magenta line that established the top of the wall.
9. On the Sketch tab, click Finish Edit Mode. All the walls are now joined to the roof. This would be a good time to check out the roof in 3D just to make sure the results are pleasing to you.
10. Save the model.

The next item to tackle will be creating a roof by extrusion. This is where you can design a custom roof.

Creating Roofs by Extrusion

Creating a roof by extrusion is almost always done in an elevation or a section view. The concept is to create unique geometry that can't be accomplished by simply using a footprint in a plan. A barrel vault or an eyebrow dormer comes to mind, but there are literally thousands of combinations that will influence how your roofs will be designed.

To get started, the last roof left to be placed is the south jog in the west wing of the model. This is the perfect area for a funky roof!

The first thing to do is to change the three walls defining the jog to the Exterior – Brick And CMU On MTL. Stud (No Parapet) wall type.

1. Go to a 3D view.
2. Select the three walls that compose the jog in the south wall (see Figure 7.46).
3. From the Properties dialog box, switch these walls to Exterior – Brick And CMU On MTL. Stud (No Parapet), as shown in Figure 7.46.
4. Go to the Level 1 floor plan.

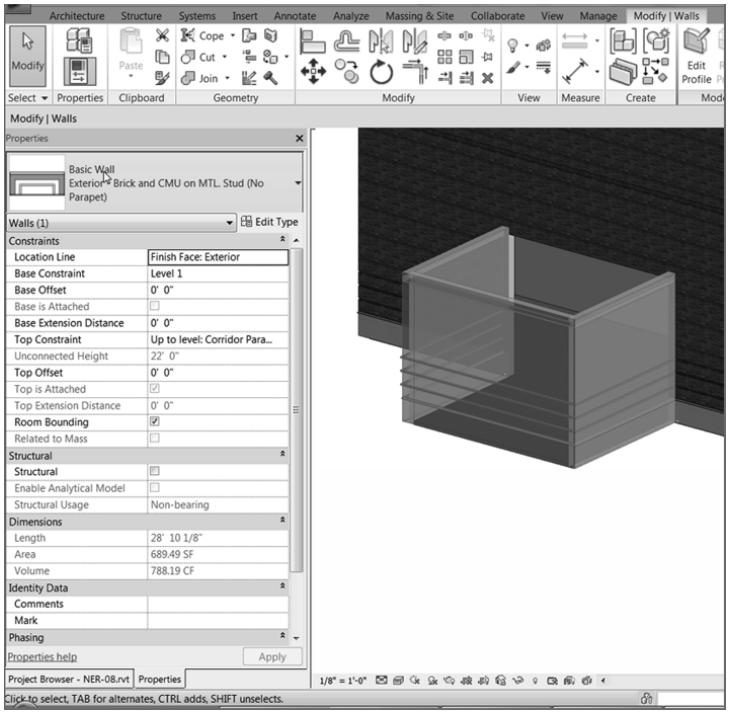


FIGURE 7.46: Changing the wall types as you have been doing all along

5. On the View tab, click the Elevation button.
6. In the Properties dialog box, be sure that the elevation is a Building elevation (you're given the choice in the drop-down menu at the top of the dialog box).
7. Place the elevation as shown in Figure 7.47.
8. Open the elevation you just created.
9. Pick the view extents (the blue grips at the ends of the elevation), and drag them in so that you can see only the west wing.
10. Make sure you pull the view depth window back to see the wall beyond (see Figure 7.47).
11. Change View Scale to 1/2″ = 1′–0″ (1:20 mm).
12. Change Detail Level to Fine.
13. Change View Name to **South Entry Elevation**.
14. Click the Apply button.

After you place the elevation, you'll have no idea where the view is extended to. Is it to the end of the building? You just don't know. If you pick the elevation arrow (the part of the elevation marker), you can then grip-edit the elevation to see what you need.

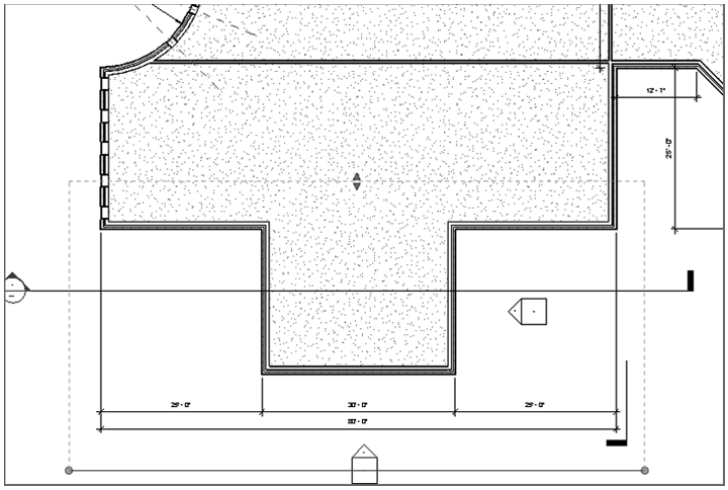


FIGURE 7.47: Adjusting the view

15. On the Architecture tab, click the Ref Plane button; then, in the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines button.
16. Set Offset to 1′–6″ (450 mm).
17. Pick the southernmost wall, and offset the reference plane away from the building (see Figure 7.48).

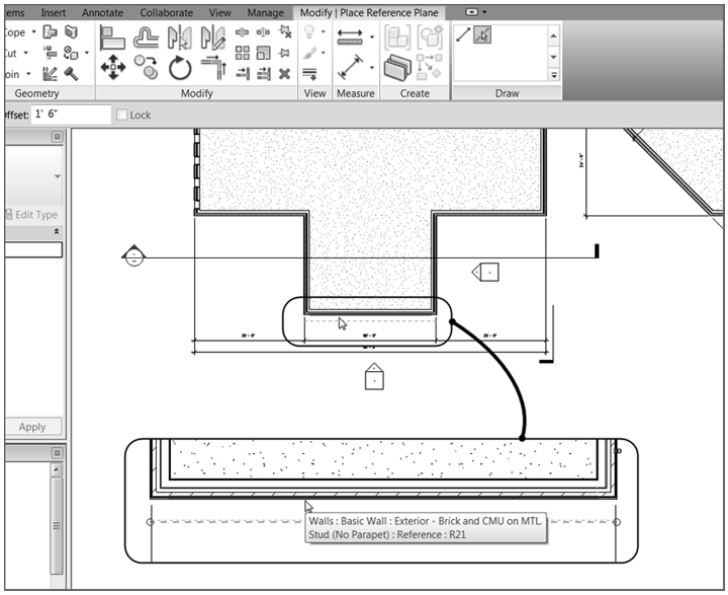


FIGURE 7.48: Adding a reference plane

18. Press Esc twice, or click Modify to clear the command.
19. Select the reference plane.
20. In the Properties dialog box, change the name to **South Entry Overhang**.
21. Click Apply.
22. Open the elevation called South Entry Elevation.

The importance of the reference plane that you just added becomes obvious at this point. You needed to establish a clear starting point for the roof you're about to add. Because the roof will be added in an elevation, Revit doesn't know where to start the extrusion. This reference plane will serve as the starting point. Naming reference planes is the way you can use them when they aren't visible in the view. Continue with these steps:

1. On the Architecture tab, choose Roof ➢ Roof By Extrusion, as shown in Figure 7.49.

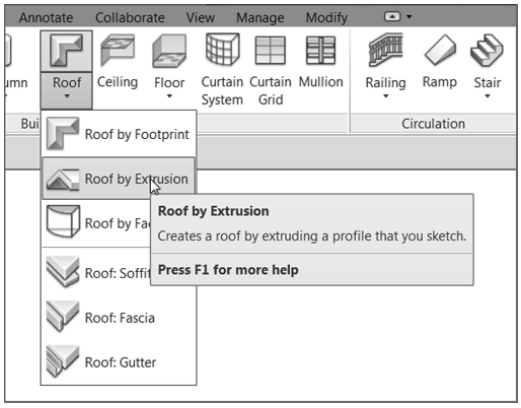


FIGURE 7.49: The Roof ➢ Roof By Extrusion command

2. When you start the command, Revit asks you to specify a reference plane. Select Reference Plane: South Entry Overhang from the Name drop-down list, as shown in Figure 7.50.
3. Click OK.
4. In the next dialog box, change the Level setting to Level 3, and click OK.

FIGURE 7.50: Selecting the South Entry Overhang reference plane

5. In the Work Plane panel, click Ref Plane, as shown in Figure 7.51, and then click the Pick Lines button.

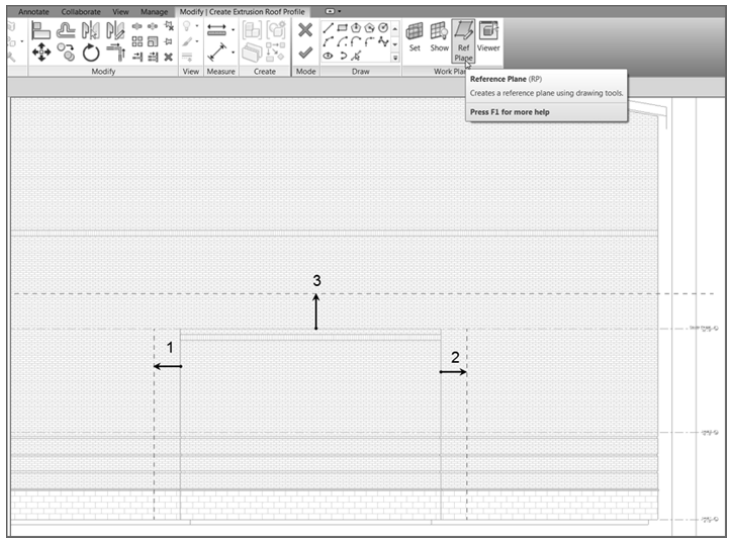


FIGURE 7.51: Adding reference planes to use as construction lines

6. Offset a reference plane 3′–0″ (900 mm) to the left and to the right of the exterior walls, marked 1 and 2 in Figure 7.51.
7. Offset a reference plane 4′–0″ (1200 mm) up from the top of the wall, marked 3 in Figure 7.51.

8. In the Properties dialog box, select Roofs from the drop-down list, and then click the Edit Type button.
9. Click Duplicate.
10. Change the name to **Canopy Roof**.
11. Click the Edit button in the Structure row.
12. In the Edit Assembly dialog box, change the structure thickness to 4″ (100 mm), as shown in Figure 7.52.

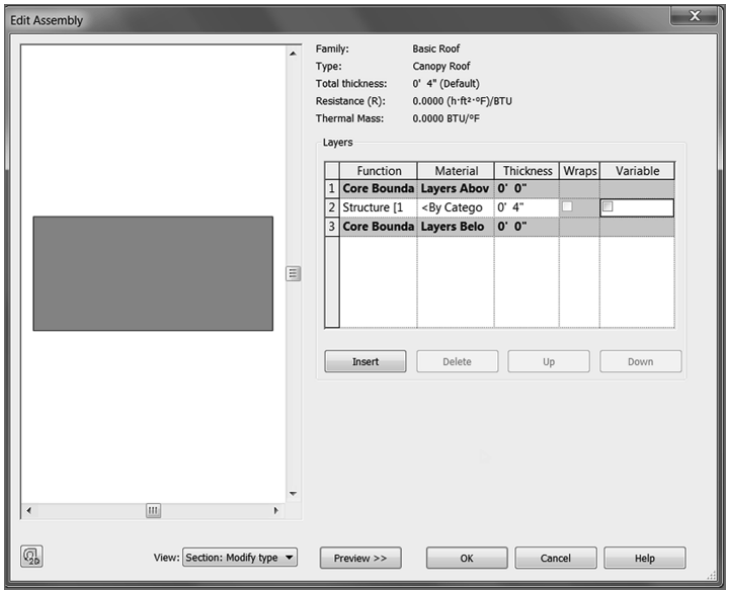


FIGURE 7.52: Changing the thickness of the canopy roof

13. Click OK twice to get back to the model.

It's time to put the actual roof into the model. So far, you've been using great discipline in terms of setting reference planes and creating a separate roof for this canopy. Try to make this a habit! Follow these steps:

1. On the Draw panel of the Modify | Create Extrusion Roof Profile tab, click the Start-End-Radius Arc button, as shown in Figure 7.53.
2. Draw an arc from the points shown in Figure 7.53.

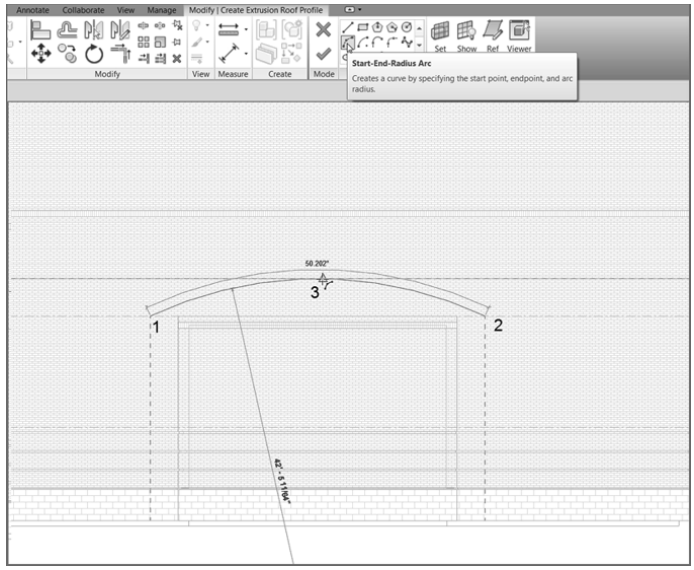


FIGURE 7.53: Drawing an arc, which will define the outside face of the roof

TIP When you're adding a roof by extrusion, you need to draw only one line. The thickness is defined in the roof you're using. After you click Finish Edit Mode, the 4″ (100 mm) thickness will be added to the bottom.

3. In the Properties dialog box, set Extrusion End to -2′–0″ (-600 mm), as shown in Figure 7.54.

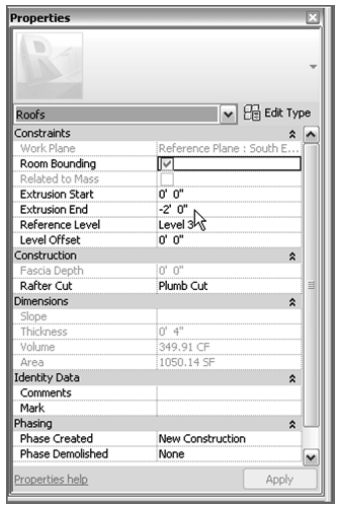


FIGURE 7.54: Setting Extrusion End

4. Click Finish Edit Mode.
5. Go to a 3D view. Your roof should look like Figure 7.55.

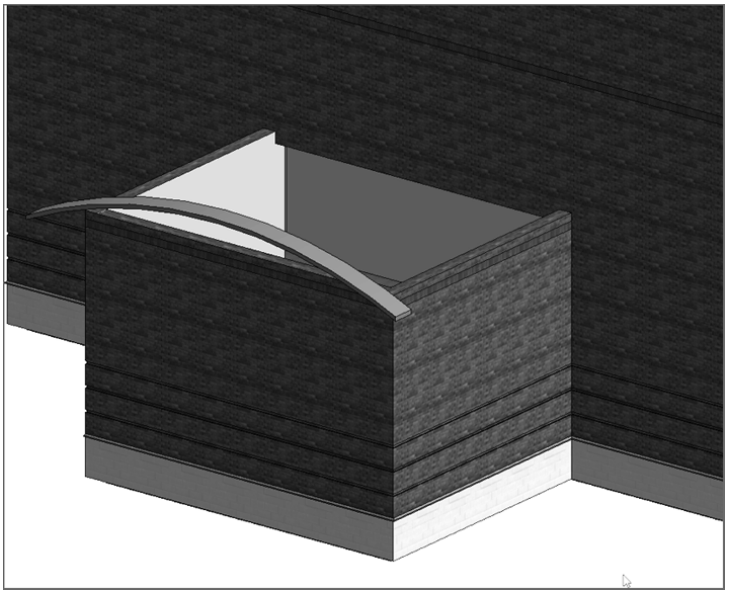


FIGURE 7.55: The almost completed canopy roof

There is just one thing left to do, and it's pretty obvious: you need to attach the roof to the wall. This can be done in one command.

1. On the Modify tab, click the Join/Unjoin Roof button, as shown in Figure 7.56.
2. Pick the top, back arc on the canopy roof, as shown in Figure 7.56.
3. Pick the wall into which the roof needs to terminate (see Figure 7.56).
4. Your roof should look like Figure 7.57. Select the three walls below the roof.
5. On the Modify | Walls tab, click the Attach Top/Base button.
6. Select the canopy roof.

Picking the wall is easier said than done, mostly because it's hard to tell whether you're picking the correct wall. Simply hover your pointer over the wall until the entire face becomes highlighted. When you see this, pick the wall. The roof will then extend to the wall.

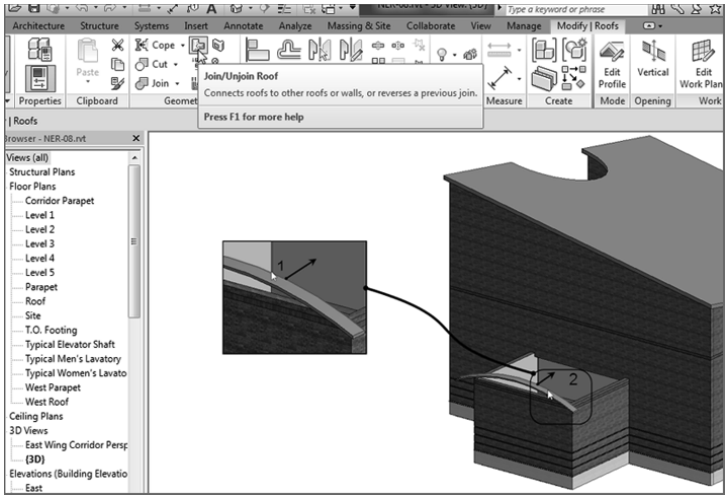


FIGURE 7.56: Picking the roof and the wall to join the two together

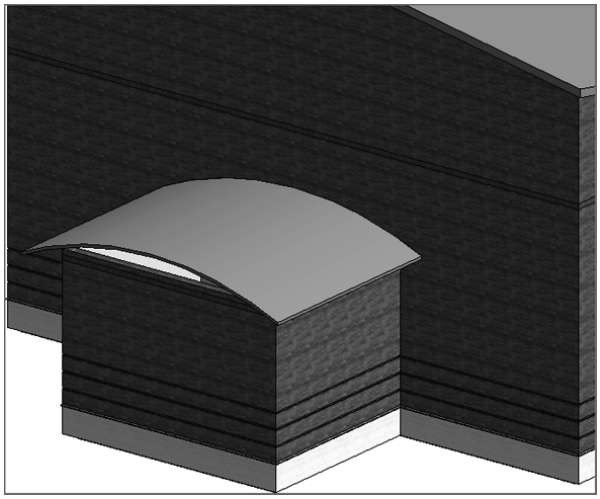


FIGURE 7.57: The completed canopy

The walls are now joined to the roof, as shown in Figure 7.58.

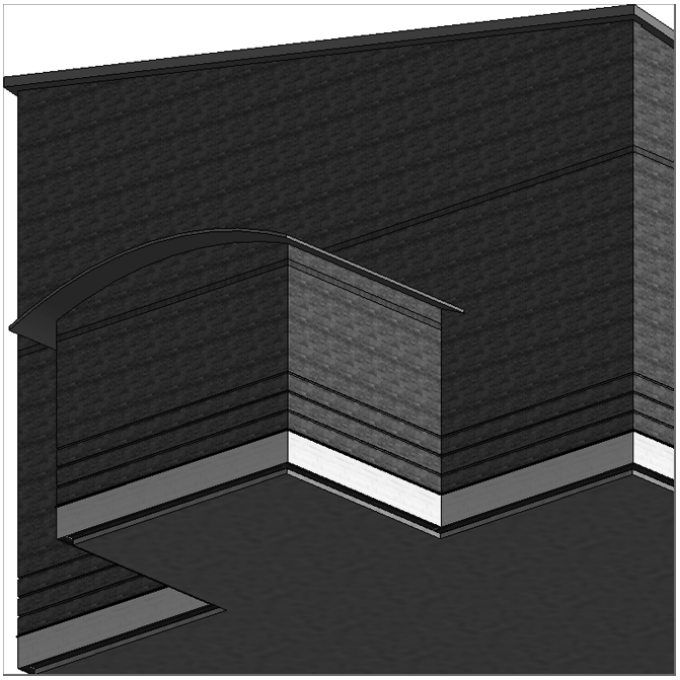


FIGURE 7.58: The walls are now attached to the roof.

All of the conventional roofing systems have been added. Let's move on and add some dormers. This process will require the use of a collection of the tools with which you've gained experience up to this point.

Adding a Roof Dormer

The best way to add a roof dormer is to modify an existing roof. You certainly have plenty of those in this model, so there should be no shortage of roof surfaces you can chop up into dormers.

To begin adding a roof dormer, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Level 3 floor plan.
2. Zoom in on the corridor roof.
3. Select the corridor roof, as shown in Figure 7.59.

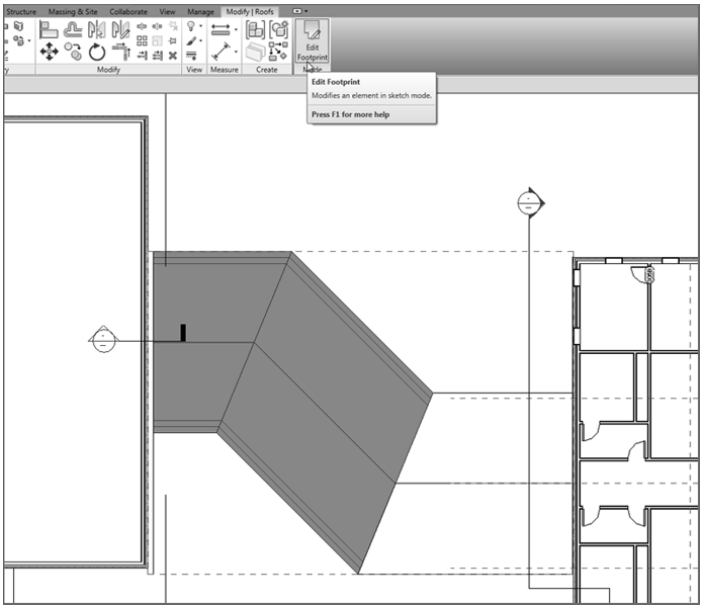


FIGURE 7.59: Selecting the roof to be modified

4. On the Modify | Roofs tab, click the Edit Footprint button.

You're now in the Sketch Mode for this roof.

The procedure to modify the roof is reminiscent of climbing up on an actual roof and adding a dormer.

1. On the Modify | Roofs ➢ Edit Footprint tab, select the Split Element button, as shown in Figure 7.60.
2. On the Options bar, deselect Delete Inner Segment.
3. Pick two points on the roof edge (see Figure 7.60).
   The two points are an even 4′ (1200 mm) in from each edge.
4. Press Esc twice.
5. Select the middle line.
6. On the Options bar, deselect Defines Slope.

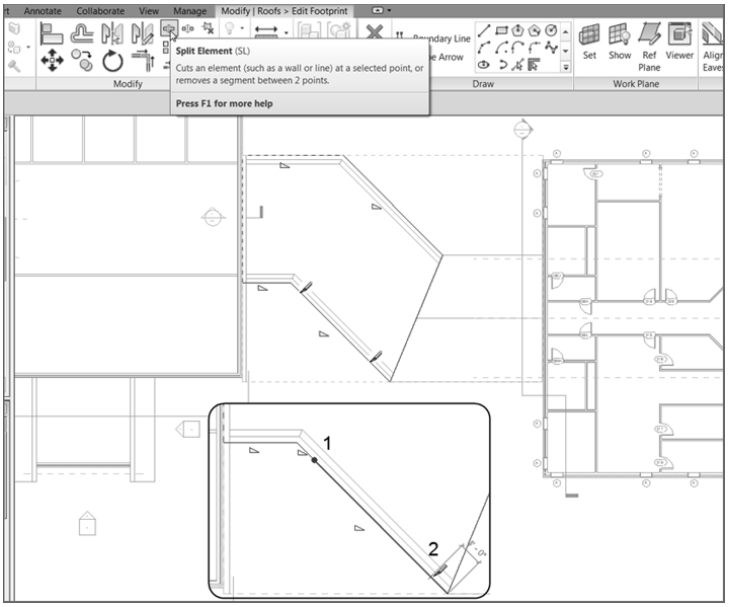


FIGURE 7.60: Splitting the line into three pieces

With the length of the dormer established, you need to indicate to Revit that you want it to be a gable-end dormer. You do this by adding slope arrows:

1. On the Draw panel, click the Slope Arrow button.
2. For the first point of the slope arrow, click the endpoint of the first point you split (marked 1 in Figure 7.61).
3. For the second point of the slope arrow, pick the endpoint of the same line (see Figure 7.61).
4. Add a second slope arrow coming from the opposite side of the ridgeline, as shown in Figure 7.62.
5. Press Esc twice.
6. Select both slope arrows.
7. In the Properties dialog box, under Constraints, change Specify to Slope.

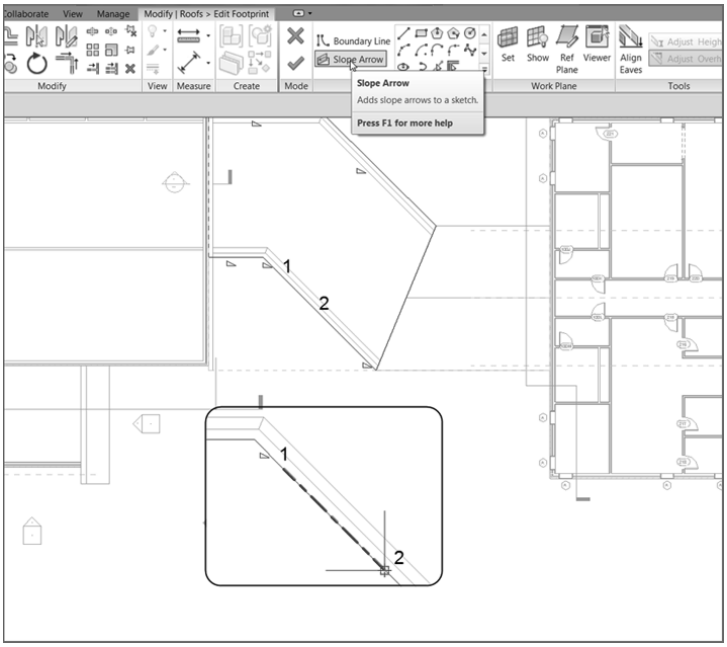


FIGURE 7.61: Adding the first slope arrow

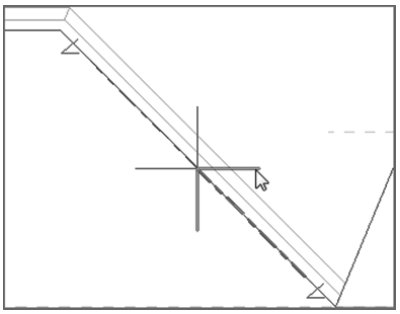


FIGURE 7.62: Adding a second slope arrow

8. Under Dimensions, keep the slope at 9″ / 12″ (750 / 1000 mm) (see Figure 7.63).
9. Click Finish Edit Mode.
10. Go to a 3D view to check out the dormer. It should look identical to Figure 7.64.

FIGURE 7.63: Changing the values of the slope arrows

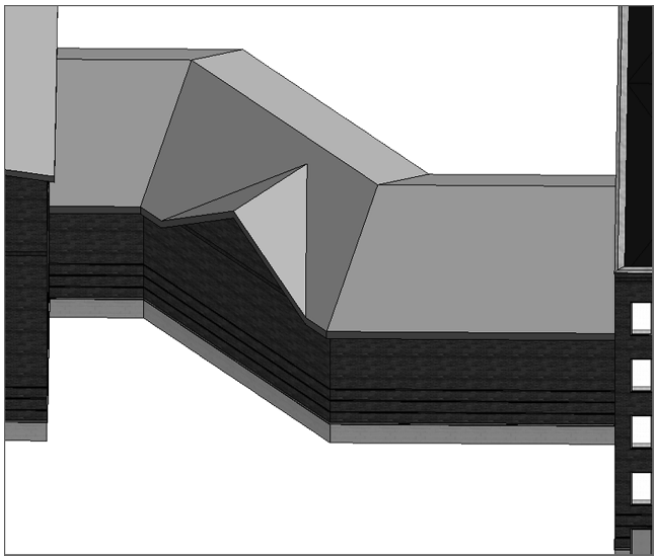


FIGURE 7.64: The completed roof dormer

Adding roof dormers takes some practice to become efficient. If you don't feel confident that you can add a roof dormer on your own, either go back through the procedure or find another place in the building to add a second dormer.

NOTE Notice in the 3D view that the wall followed the modification in the roof. This is because you attached the wall to the roof back when you added the roof to the corridor. The walls have no choice but to comply!

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ place different types of roofs, including flat roofs, pitched roofs, and unconventional sloping roofs, using the footprint of your building
- ✔ analyze tricky areas and make multiple roofs if needed instead of relying on a single roof to flex and conform to the situation at hand
- ✔ edit wall joins to allow walls to attach to roofs after they're created
- ✔ design different roof systems based on their functionality
- ✔ create a tapered roof plan using a variable material in the roof system
- ✔ create a roof by extrusion by setting work planes and using them to lay out a custom roof
- ✔ create a roof dormer by editing an existing roof and adding slope arrows to indicate a gable end

CHAPTER 8

Structural Items

Well, I can't avoid the topic of structure forever. You need to consider your structure from pretty much the beginning of the project, so I had better add it to the first half of the book before getting too carried away!

This chapter covers the following topics:

- **Adding structural grids**
- **Adding structural columns**
- **Using structural framing**
- **Understanding foundation systems**
- **Adding structural footings**
- **Using structural views**

Adding Structural Grids

Now that the full Autodesk® Revit® Architecture, Autodesk® Revit® Structure, and Autodesk® Revit® MEP applications have been blended together into one complete application with no separate, stand-alone applications for the different trades, you, the architect, have the same full spectrum of structural tools as your structural consultant. How far you delve into the structural design of your projects is between you and your structural consultant.

This chapter explores the structural world by presenting the basic functions of structural architecture. The first item you'll tackle is usually the first item in the model: structural grids. Although you add structural grids line by line, you'll soon discover that these grids are just as smart as the rest of Revit. The starting point for all things structural is most certainly the grid. In Revit, you'll quickly find that placing a structural grid into a model isn't a complicated task. Grids are essentially placed one line at a time. Those lines you place, however, have intelligence. For example, if you place a vertical grid line called A and then place a horizontal grid line called 1 that

intersects with A, you'll have a grid location. If you place a column at that intersection, the column will assume a new property called Location. That location is—you guessed it—A-1.

Let's get started. To begin, open the file you've been using to follow along. If you didn't complete the previous chapter, go to `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`, browse to `Chapter 8`, and find the file called `NER-08.rvt`.

Placing a Grid

Placing a grid means drawing grid lines one by one. You can copy grids to speed up placement and array them if the spacing is regular. This task sounds tedious, but it's a welcome change from other applications that force you to create an entire, rectangular grid, which you have to keep picking at until it resembles your layout. Grids are like snowflakes: no two are the same.

NOTE **Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit will not accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.**

To place a grid, follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan. (Make sure you aren't in the Level 1 ceiling plan.)
2. Zoom in to the east wing's radial entry.
3. The Datum panel that holds the Level and Grid tools appears on both the Architecture and Structure tabs. On the Datum panel of the Structure tab, click the Grid button, as shown in Figure 8.1.

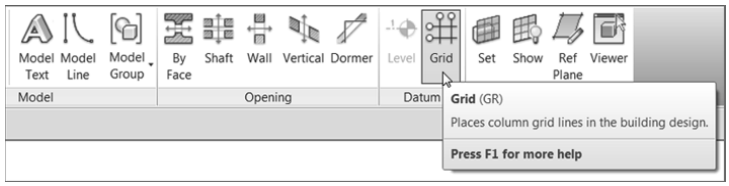


FIGURE 8.1: **The Grid button on the Datum panel of the Structure tab**

4. On the Draw panel of the Modify | Place Grid tab, click the Pick Lines icon, as shown in Figure 8.2.

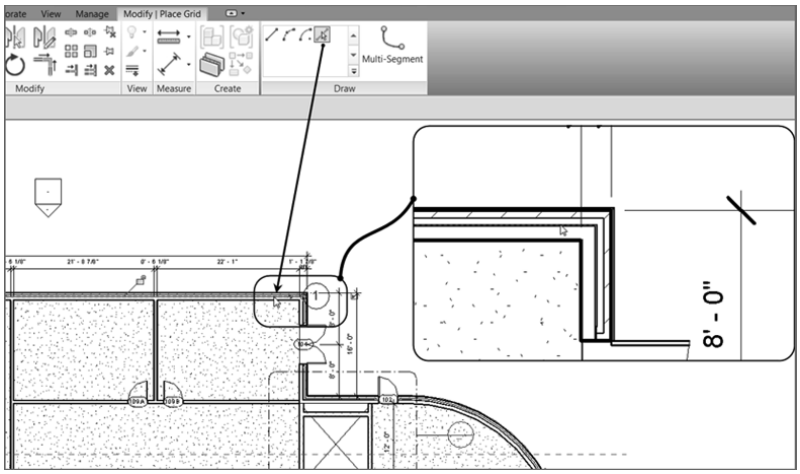


FIGURE 8.2: Your first column grid

5. Pick the centerline of the north wall (see Figure 8.2).
6. The grid bubble needs to be moved. Press Esc twice, or click Modify (to clear the command) and select the grid bubble. Notice the round blue grip similar to that in Figure 8.3.

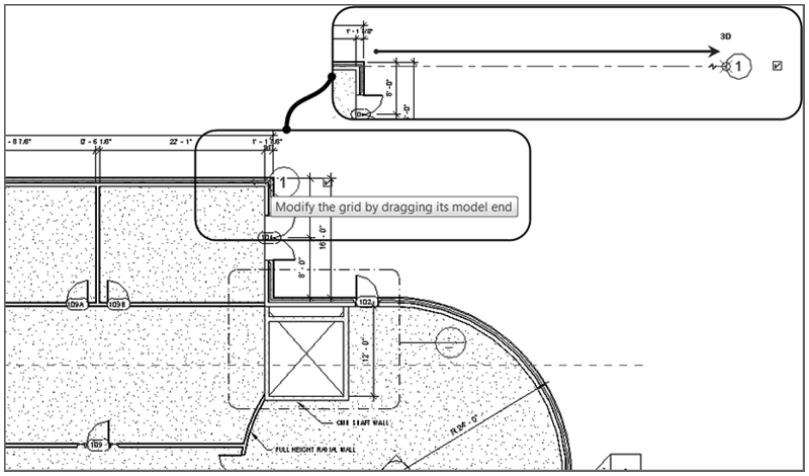


FIGURE 8.3: Examining the column grid grips

7. Pick that round blue grip, and drag the column bubble to the right about 50′ (15,000 mm), as shown in Figure 8.4.

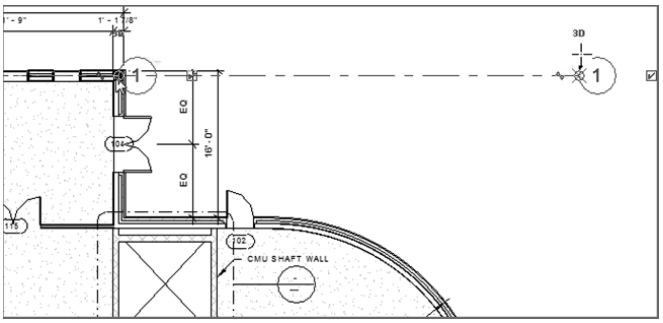


FIGURE 8.4: Dragging the column bubble to the right

Notice that a column grid has functionality similar to that of levels, right down to the grips.

8. On the Datum panel, click the Grid button again.
9. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon if it's not picked already.
10. Pick the core centerline of the interior wall that terminates at the exterior wall, as shown in Figure 8.5.

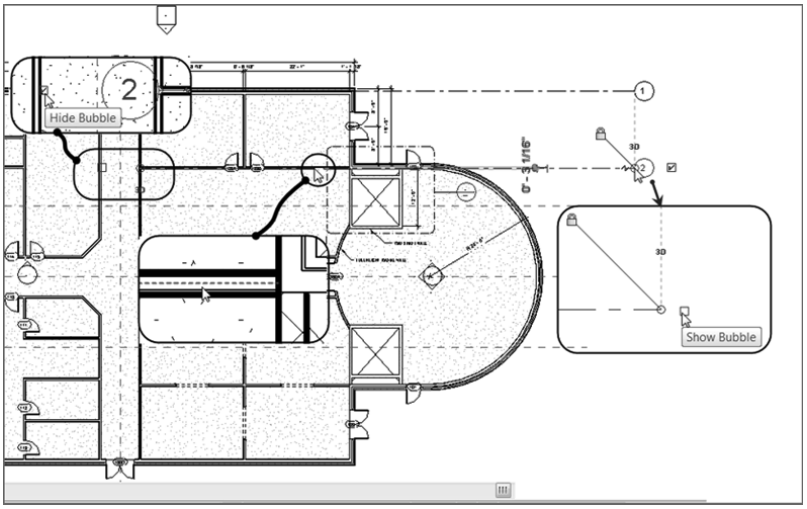


FIGURE 8.5: Adding the second grid line

11. Drag the right end of the line to align with grid 1. It snaps weakly. After you move your line to the length of grid 1, pick the second point. An alignment line appears.

TIP **Alignment lines, however useful, can be tricky to get to display. The percentage of your zoom has an effect. If you aren't getting the alignment lines, simply zoom back (or in) a small amount, and they will appear.**

12. If the grid bubble doesn't appear on the right side as shown, but rather on the left side, find the blue check box on the right side of grid 2 and pick it. Doing so turns on the grid head.
13. On the left side of grid 2 are a grid bubble (see Figure 8.5) and the same blue check box. Click the check box to turn off the grid head at this location.
14. Press Esc.

Being able to pick lines is certainly an advantage, but you won't always be in a situation where you have geometry in place to do so. In the following procedure, you'll add grid 3 by picking two points:

1. Click the Grid button on the Architecture tab.
2. On the Draw panel, select the Line icon.
3. Pick a point along the center reference plane, as shown in Figure 8.6.

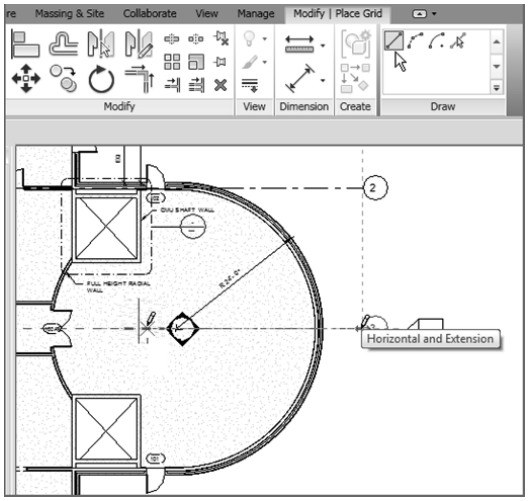


FIGURE 8.6: **Adding grid 3 at the center of the building**

4. Pick a second point in alignment with grid 2 (see Figure 8.6).
5. Add grids 4 and 5 to the exact opposite ends of the east wing (see Figure 8.7).

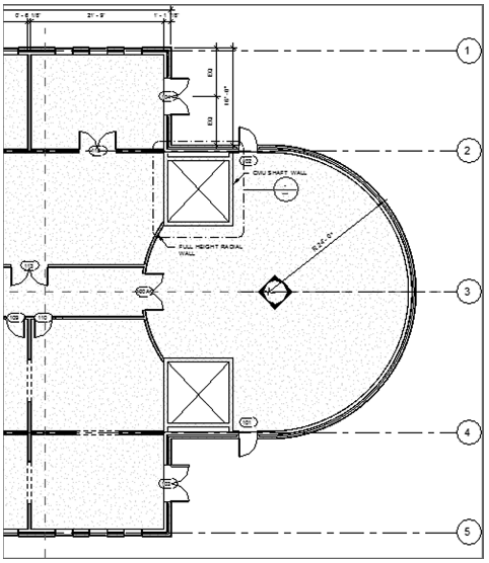


FIGURE 8.7: The completed horizontal grids

With grid lines, you can still copy, rotate, move, and mirror. Remember this when you're placing grids.

You need to add two more grids at 45° angles. This will be as easy as drawing lines. The objective here is to manipulate the grids to read the appropriate numbering.

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Grid button if it's not selected already.
2. Pick the center of the radial wall.

TIP If you can't find the center of the radial wall, simply type SC (snap center) and then hover over the radial wall. When the center snap appears, pick that point.

3. Draw the line at a 45° angle until you're beyond the radial wall, as shown in Figure 8.8.

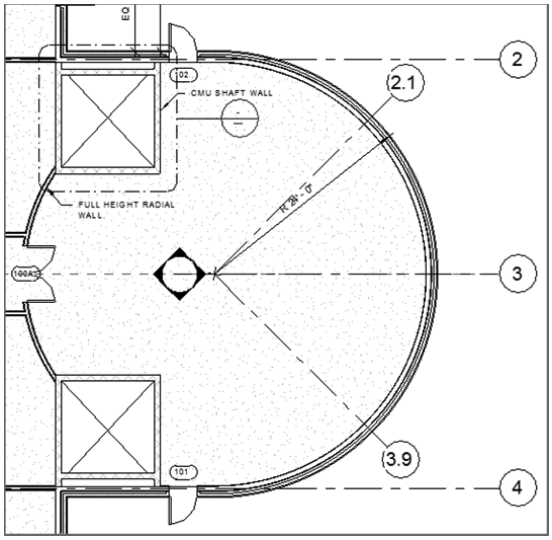


FIGURE 8.8: Adding two additional grids and renumbering them

4. Click in the bubble for the angled grid, and rename the grid line **2.1**. You can do this while placing grids. Click outside the grid number field to enter the change.
5. Draw another grid line at a 45° angle in the opposite direction.
6. Renumber it to read **3.9** (see Figure 8.8).

NOTE In many instances, you'll encounter elevation markers and other annotation items that get in the way. You can move these items, but be careful. After you move an item, open the referring view to make sure you didn't disturb anything.

You need two more horizontal column lines that span the length of the building. You'll number these lines 2.10 and 3.1. They will run centered on the corridor walls. To do this, you'll use the Pick Lines icon on the Draw panel. Here are the steps:

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Grid button if it's not selected already.
2. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon.
3. Pick the core centerline of the north corridor wall, as shown in Figure 8.9.

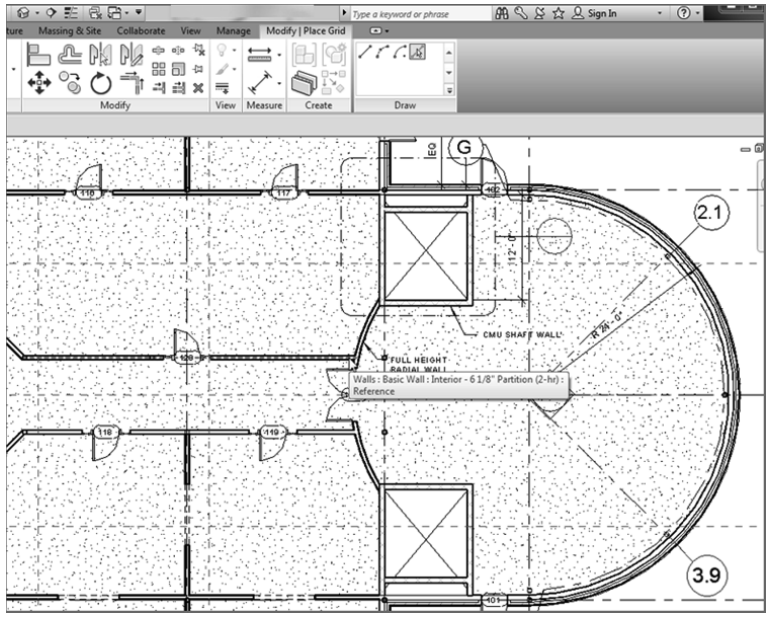


FIGURE 8.9: Adding a column line to the north corridor wall

4. Pick the blue grip at the end of the line, and stretch it to align with the already-placed bubbles, as shown in Figure 8.10.

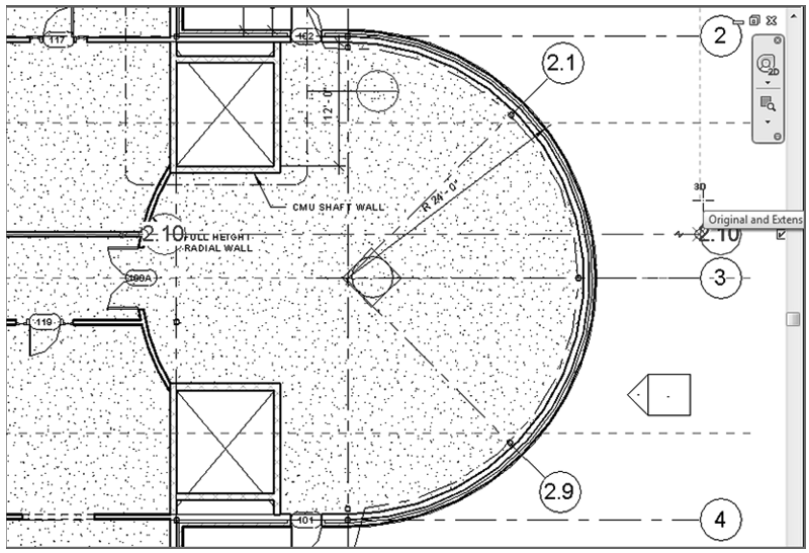


FIGURE 8.10: Dragging the line and turning on the bubble so you can rename the grid 2.10

5. Click the Show Bubble button if necessary.
6. Rename the grid **2.10** (see Figure 8.10).
7. Zoom to the other end of the grid line, and deselect the Show Bubble check box if necessary.
8. Repeat the process for the south corridor wall, adding an additional grid line numbered **3.1**, as shown in Figure 8.11.

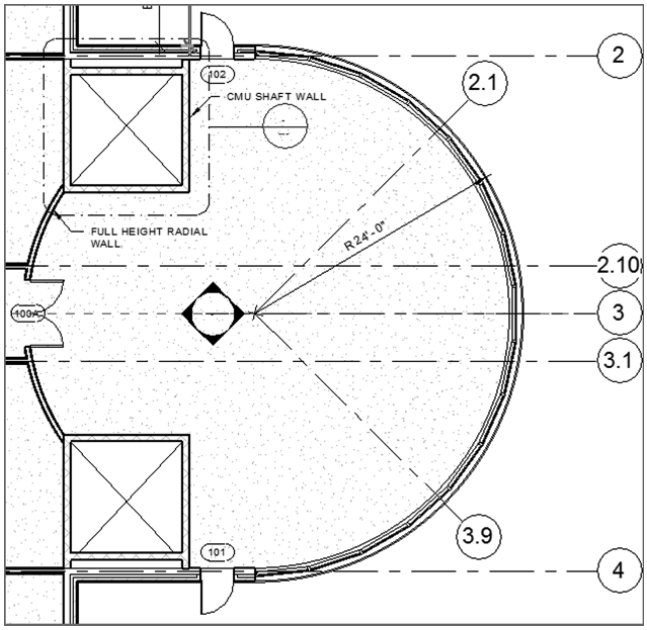


FIGURE 8.11: Adding the grids along the corridor walls

The grids are laying out OK, but it looks like you should make some adjustments to move the bubbles apart a little. You can do this by adding an elbow to the grid's end.

Adding Elbows

As with levels, you can add a break in the line of the grid, allowing you to make adjustments as if the grid were an arm with an elbow. Follow these steps:

1. Click Modify. Select grid 2.10.
2. Several blue grips appear. Pick the one that appears as a break line, as shown in Figure 8.12.

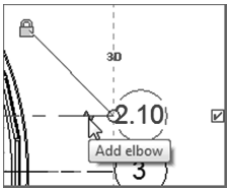


FIGURE 8.12: Clicking the Add Elbow grip after selecting the grid

3. Picking this break line adds an elbow to your grid line, as shown in Figure 8.13.

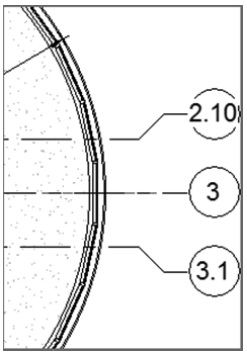


FIGURE 8.13: The cleaned-up grid bubbles

4. Repeat the procedure for grid 3.1. Your grids should now look like Figure 8.13.
5. Save the model.

NOTE Notice that the bubble was broken, and it was moved up and out of the way. This won't always happen. In most cases, the grid will move in the wrong direction. You can then select the blue grips and move the bubble in the direction you intended.

It's now time to add the vertical grids. This will be a simple process until you get to the radial entry area. At that point, you'll need to do some additional manipulating of the grid.

Adding Vertical Grids

The only real issue with adding vertical grids is the numbering-versus-lettering issue, because Revit continues the sequencing from the horizontal grids. Make sure that when you add your first grid going in the opposite direction, you renumber (or rename) the first occurrence of the grid.

The objective of the next procedure is to create a grid pattern running vertically across the view.

1. Zoom out so you can see the entire east wing.
2. On the Datum panel of the Architecture tab, click the Grid button.
3. On the Draw panel of the Modify | Place Grid tab, click the Pick Lines icon.
4. Pick the centerline of the west exterior wall of the east wing (see Figure 8.14).

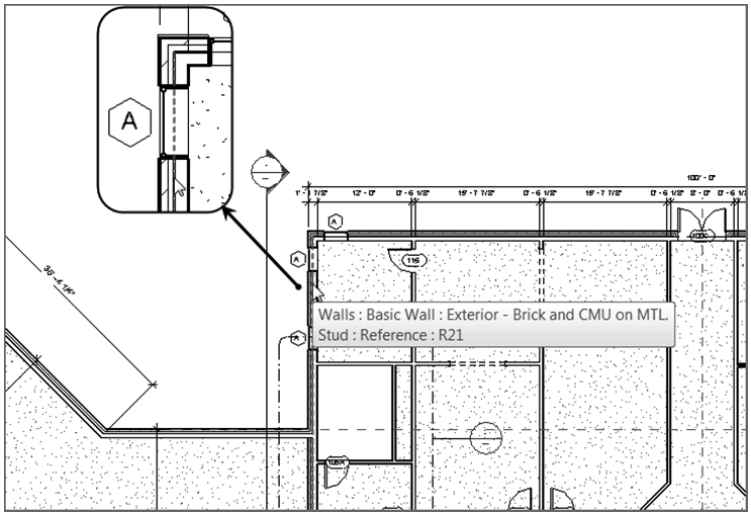


FIGURE 8.14: Adding the first vertical grid by picking the centerline of the exterior wall

5. When you pick the wall, the grid is added, but it doesn't have the name or number you want. You'll change that. But first, pick the round blue grip and drag the bubble up past the dimensions, as shown in Figure 8.15.

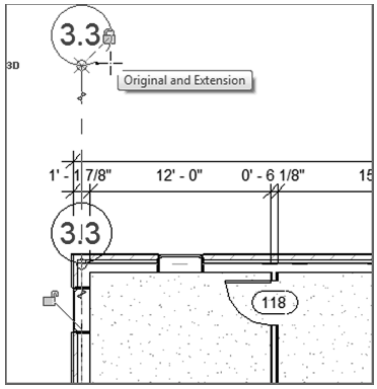


FIGURE 8.15: Dragging the new bubble out of the wall

6. Press Esc.
7. Select the new vertical grid.
8. Click in the bubble, and rename it A, as shown in Figure 8.16.

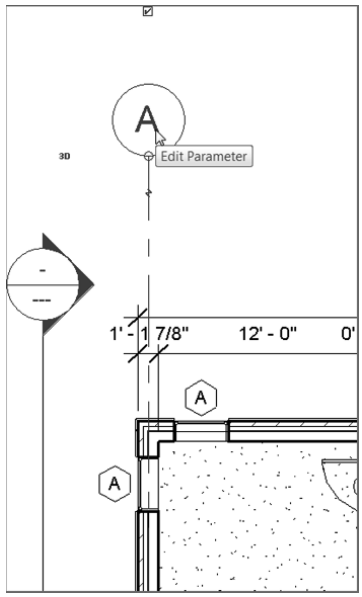


FIGURE 8.16: The grid is now named A.

Next, you'll duplicate this grid. Because you have an arsenal of modify commands under your belt, the best way to duplicate this grid is to copy it, as shown in the following steps:

1. Select grid A.
2. On the Modify | Grids tab, click the Copy button, as shown at the top of Figure 8.17.

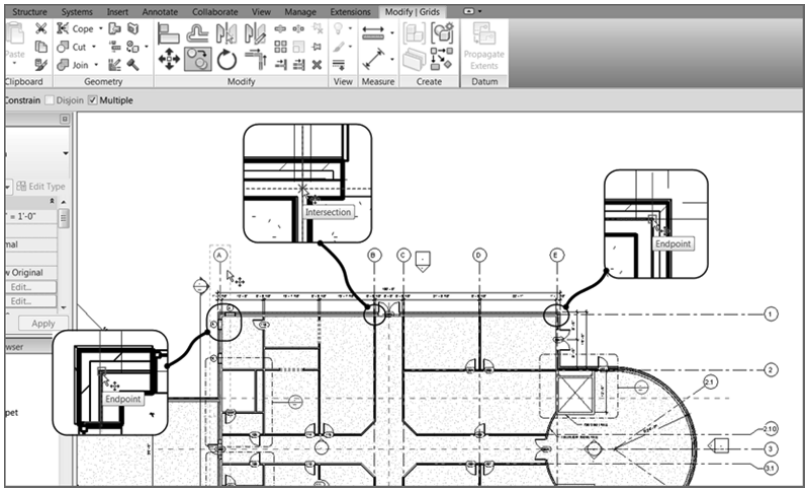


FIGURE 8.17: Copying the grid line to the other walls

3. On the Options bar, make sure the Multiple check box is selected, as shown at upper left in Figure 8.17.
4. Pick a base point along the grid line within the wall (see Figure 8.17).
5. Copy grid A to the wall centerlines (see Figure 8.17). The grid lines auto-sequence as you go.
6. Press Esc twice.
7. Start the Grid command again.
8. On the Draw panel, make sure the Line button is selected.
9. Pick a start point at the endpoint of the radial wall, where it intersects with the straight wall, as shown near the bottom of Figure 8.18.

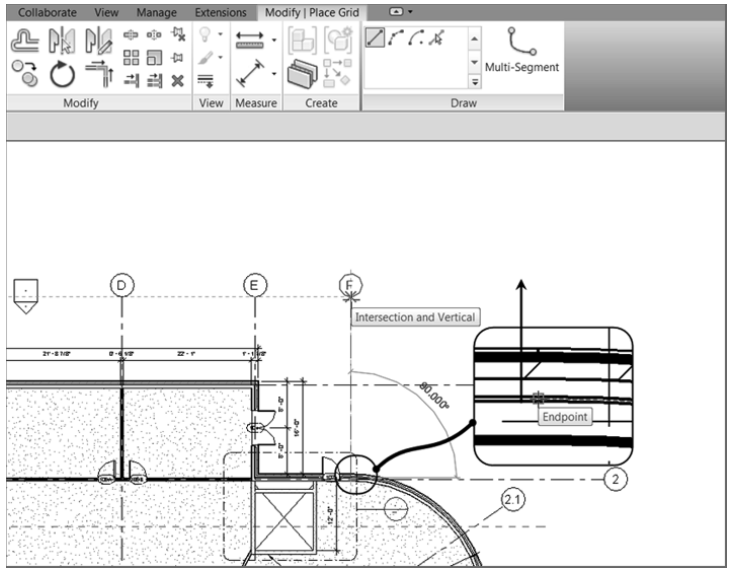


FIGURE 8.18: Adding grid F

10. Pick the second point in line with the adjacent grid bubbles (see Figure 8.18).
11. Press Esc.
12. Pick the grip on the bottom of the line, and drag it down past the south part of the radial wall.

The next step is to add the grid to the radial entry area. This won't be as easy as simply picking a wall's centerline. The trick is to establish a reference point to place the grid and, subsequently, a column.

Adding a Radial Grid Line

Sometimes you have to think outside the box—literally. Because you have radial geometry with which you must contend, you need to add a radial grid as follows:

1. Zoom in on the radial entry of the east wing.
2. Click the Grid button on the Architecture tab, if the Grid command isn't currently running.
3. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines button, as shown in Figure 8.19.

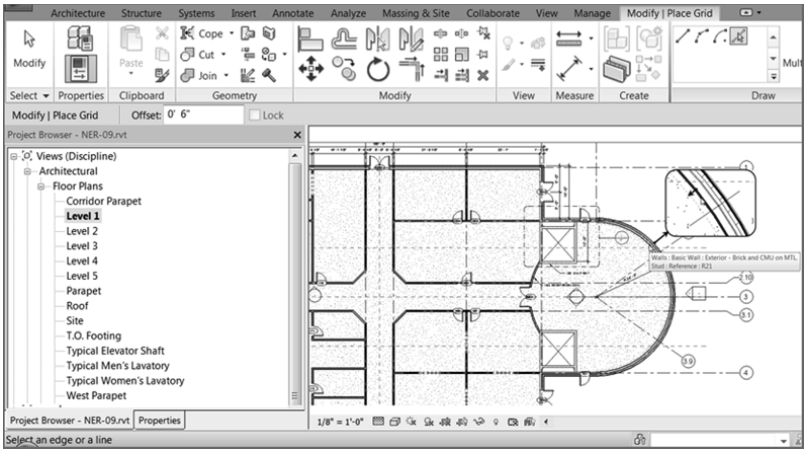


FIGURE 8.19: Adding a grid line offset from the finish inside face

4. Type in an Offset value of 6″ (150 mm) on the Options bar.
5. Pick the finished, inside face of the radial wall (see Figure 8.19). Make sure the alignment line indicating where the grid will go is on the inside of the wall.
6. The grid bubble lands in a congested area. Fix this by adding an elbow and adjusting the bubbles, as shown by grid G near the top of Figure 8.20.

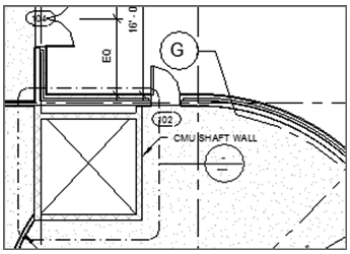


FIGURE 8.20: Adding bubbles to the radial grid line and adjusting their placements with elbows

One last thing you need to do is to make sure the grids extend all the way to the west side of the east building. This will play a major role when you start placing columns. Follow these steps:

1. Select grid 1.

2. Pick the grip icon to the left of the grid line.
3. Drag the grid to the left, past the west wall.
4. Repeat the procedure for grids 2, 2.10, 3.1, 4, and 5.
5. Repeat the procedure, stretching the vertical grids south. This will include grids A, B, C, D, and E. If you drag the lower end of grid A down, the copied grids B, C, D, and E will move with it. Make the lower end of grid F snap into alignment with the others.

I think you get the picture on adding grids. In the next procedure, you'll begin adding columns to these grid intersections. To do so, you'll explore the Structure tab on the Ribbon.

Adding Structural Columns

The hard part is over. Determining where to put the columns is more difficult than physically placing them in the model. But of course there are rules to follow, as well as rules you need to bend in order to accomplish the results you want to see.

This next series of procedures includes adding structural components to the model and placing framing systems in areas where a structural engineer may defer to the architect for structural integrity, given the design intent. (Try using that phrase in a meeting.)

To add columns to the model, follow this procedure:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Zoom into the radial entry area in the east wing.
3. On the Structure tab, choose Column ➢ Structural Column, as shown in Figure 8.21. This tool is also on the Architecture tab.

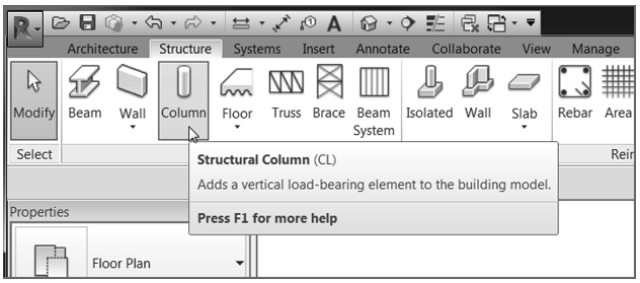


FIGURE 8.21: Column ➢ Structural Column on the Structure tab of the Ribbon

4. Click the Load Family button, as shown in Figure 8.22.

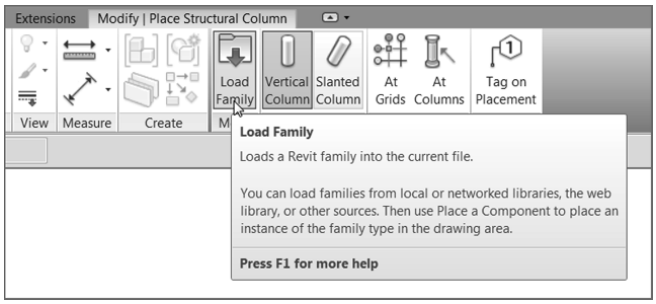


FIGURE 8.22: You can click the Load Family button to add additional columns to your project.

5. Browse to US Imperial ➢ Structural Columns ➢ Steel (or Metric ➢ Structural ➢ Columns ➢ Steel).
6. In the `Steel` folder, browse to `HSS-Hollow Structural Section-Column.rfa` (or `M_HSS-Hollow Structural Column.rfa`).
7. Double-click `HSS-Hollow Structural Section-Column.rfa` (or `M_HSS-Hollow Structural Column.rfa`). A dialog opens, enabling you to select the type, as shown in Figure 8.23.
8. Select the HSS6×6×5/8 (HSS152.4×152.4×12.7) column.

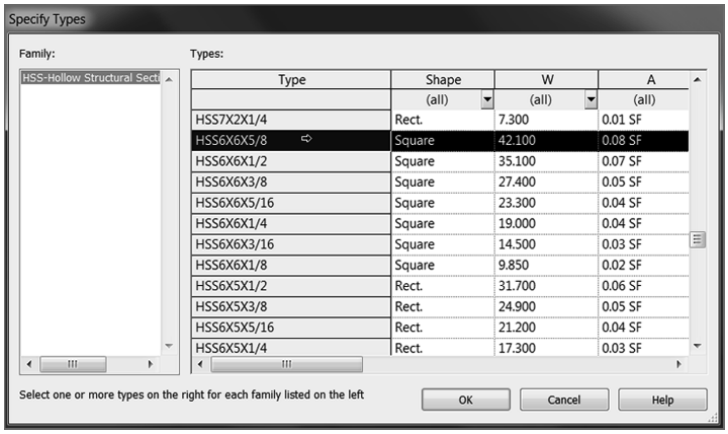


FIGURE 8.23: Select `HSS-Hollow Structural Section-Column.rfa`, and choose the HSS6×6×5/8 (HSS152.4×152.4×12.7) type.

9. Click OK.
10. On the Options bar, make sure Height is set to Roof, as shown in Figure 8.24.

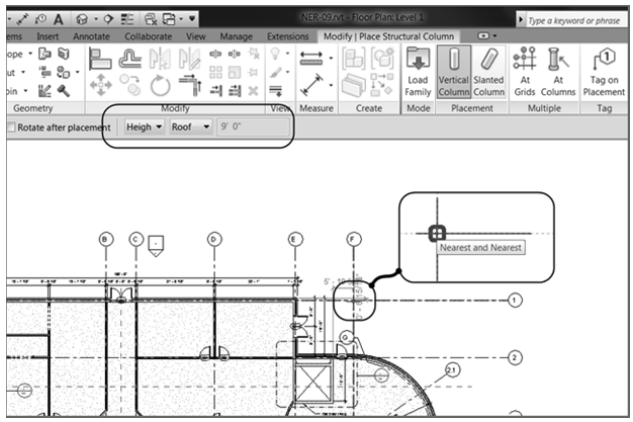


FIGURE 8.24: Placing the column at grid intersection F-1

11. Place the column at grid intersection F-1.
12. Press Esc twice.
13. Choose Column ➢ Structural Column on the Architecture tab.
14. Place a column at grid intersection F-2. Before you place this column, be sure Height is set to Roof.
15. Place another column at grid intersection F-G (see Figure 8.25).

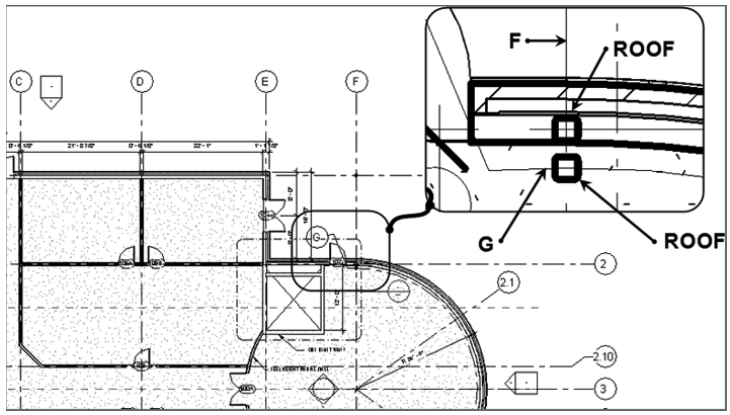


FIGURE 8.25: Placing the two additional columns

16. Click Modify.
17. Select the column you just placed (column F-G).
18. In the Properties dialog, make sure Top Level is set to Up To: Roof, as shown in Figure 8.26 (just to check).

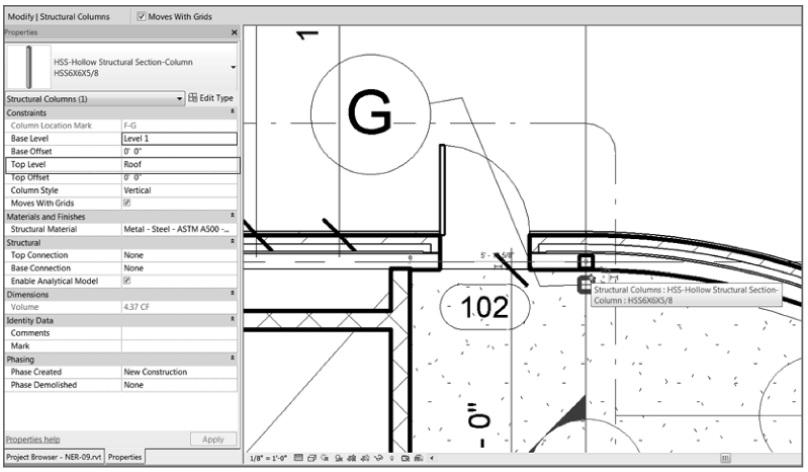


FIGURE 8.26: Setting the column's top level to extend to the roof

NOTE Notice that Column Location is set to F-G. This is important because if the column is offset from one of these lines, Revit still considers the column to be at that column location but with an offset dimension.

19. Mirror the three columns to the opposite side of the entry, using column line 3 as the reference plane.
20. Save the model.

Let's add some full-height columns at the rest of the grid locations. You'll begin with the radial grid and then place the rest of the columns in the walls of the exterior and the corridor. Here are the steps:

1. On the Structure tab, click the Column button.
2. On the Options bar, be sure Height is set to Roof.

Because you rotated the first column, notice that as you follow the radius, the column rotates on its own.

3. Hover your cursor over grid intersection G-2.1. You can see the column, but it's at the wrong orientation.
4. Press the spacebar on your keyboard, and the column rotates to align with the grid, as shown in Figure 8.27.

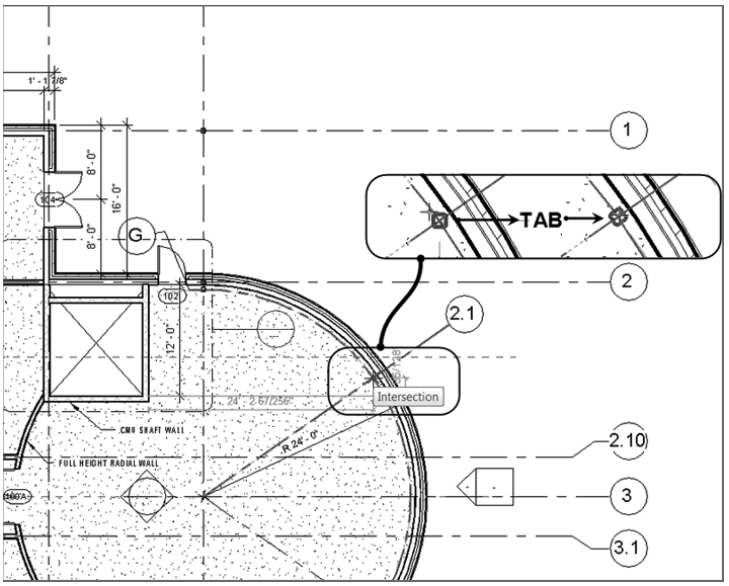


FIGURE 8.27: Placing and rotating a column

5. When the column is aligned, pick the intersection. The column is placed.
6. Repeat the steps for columns 3 and 3.9.

Now you'll place columns in the main part of the wing. Place a column at every grid location. Note that you must stretch the column lines to the left side of the wing. You should also turn on the grid bubbles at the west and south sides of the building, as shown in Figure 8.28.

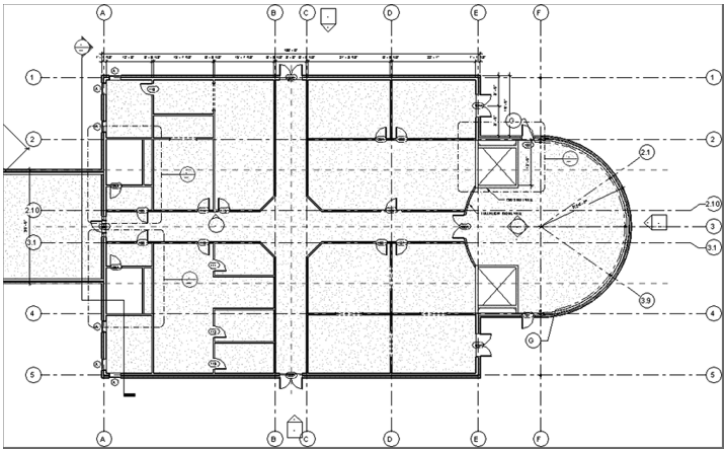


FIGURE 8.28: Extend the grids, and turn on the bubbles at each end.

To add columns by intersection, follow these steps:

1. Start the Structural Column command.
2. On the Modify | Place Structural Column tab, click the At Grids button on the Multiple panel, as shown in Figure 8.29.

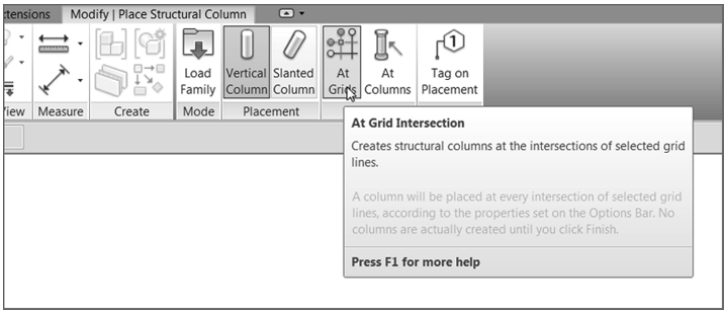


FIGURE 8.29: Using the Place Column At Grids function

3. Pick a window around the rectangular portion of the east wing (from right to left), as shown in Figure 8.30.

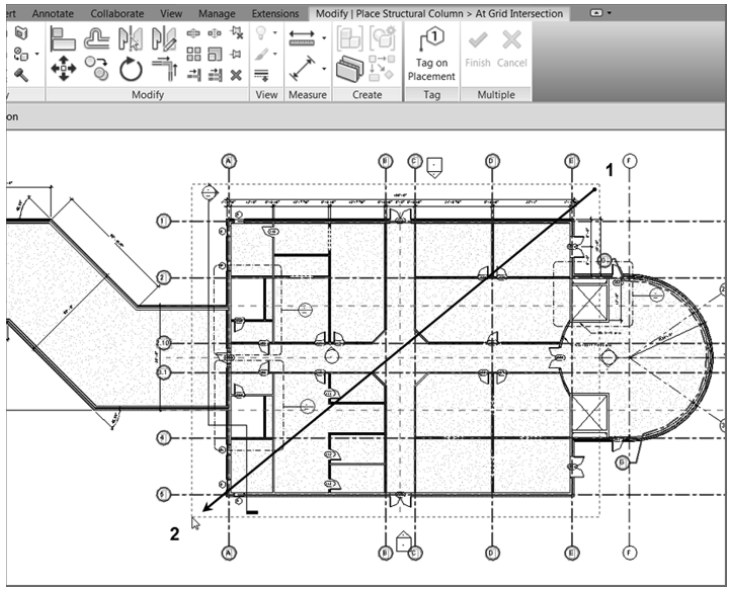


FIGURE 8.30: Picking a window where the columns will be placed

4. The Modify | Place Structural Column ➢ At Grid Intersection tab changes to allow you to either finish or cancel. After you have the window placed, click the Finish button on the Multiple panel, as shown at the top of Figure 8.30.
5. Press Esc.

Quite a few columns are placed. You'll need to move some of them, including the four columns in the corridor intersection area. Revit will still locate each column at a grid intersection, but it will add the offset in the column's properties.

To move the columns and create a column offset, follow these steps:

1. Zoom into the middle of the east wing at the corridor intersection.
2. Select the two columns at the left of the corridor, as shown in Figure 8.31.
3. Move the columns 4′–0″ (1200 mm) to the left (see Figure 8.31).
4. Repeat the same procedure for the other two columns (see Figure 8.32).

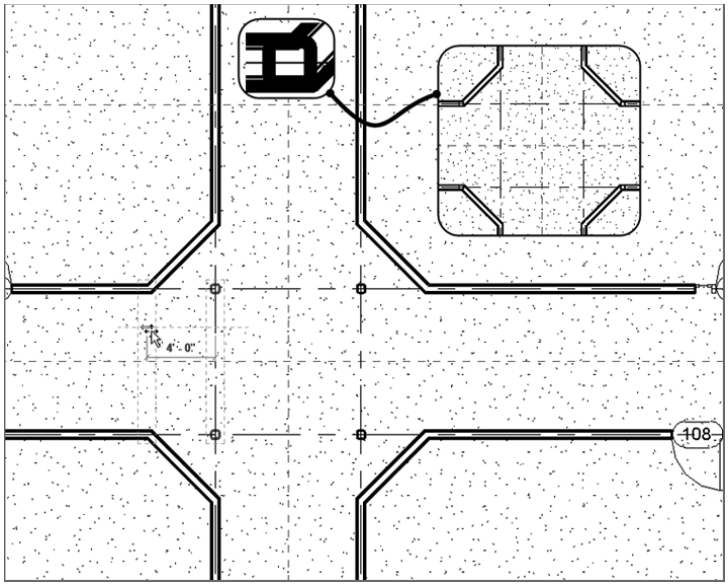


FIGURE 8.31: Moving the columns to the left 4′–0″ (1200 mm)

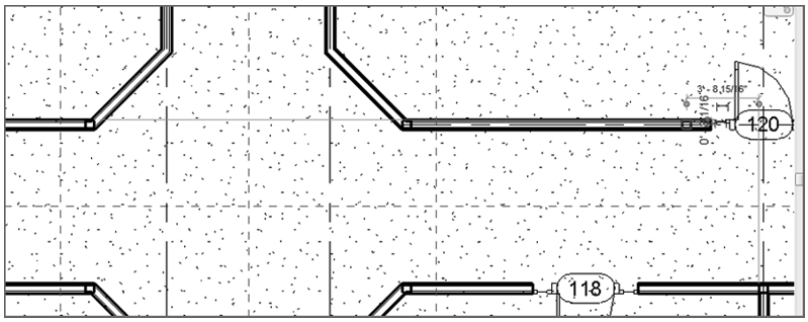


FIGURE 8.32: Adjustments such as moving a column will be necessary quite often.

5. Zoom into the door shown in Figure 8.32.
6. Move the column to the left 4′–0″ (1200 mm).
7. Thank your structural engineer for allowing this. The engineer is extremely understanding.
8. Save the model.

That's enough on columns for now. It's time to move on to adding some structural framing. You'll add framing primarily in the canopy areas surrounding the east entry of the east wing.

Using Structural Framing

Although you won't create much structural framing in Revit Architecture, you'll need to add framing in a few areas. Canopies with light structural framing are certainly one area that could call for the architect to wander over to the structural side of the fence.

To begin adding structural framing, follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 2 floor plan.
2. Zoom into the radial entry area.
3. Select columns F-1 and F-5 (these are the columns outside the building).
4. In the Properties dialog, set Top Level to Level 2. (This makes the columns disappear for a moment.)
5. Press Esc.
6. In the Properties dialog, scroll down to the View Range row, and click the Edit button (see Figure 8.33).

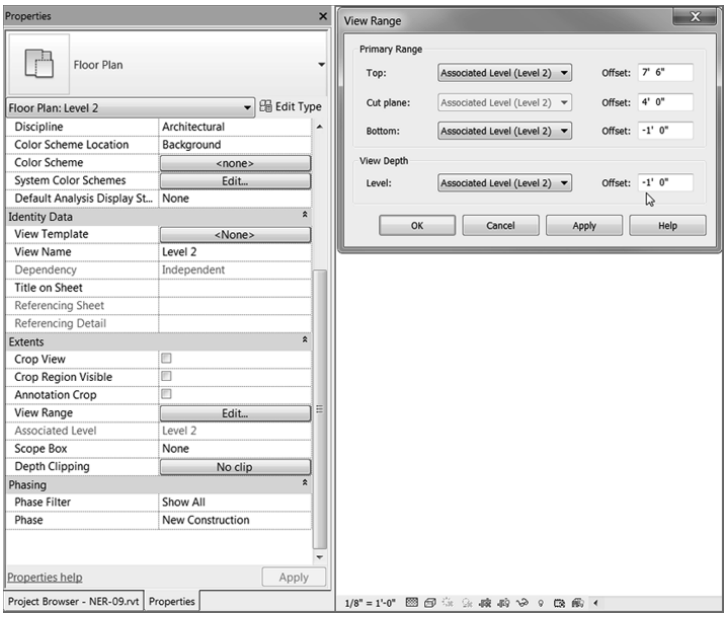


FIGURE 8.33: Setting the view range so you can see below the level

7. In the dialog that opens, in the Primary Range section, set Bottom Offset to -1′–0″(-300 mm).
8. For View Depth, set Level Offset to -1′–0″ (-300 mm), as shown in Figure 8.33.

WARNING **Be careful! Remember that when you make an adjustment to the view range, you're changing the view range for the entire view. Be sure you aren't inadvertently causing items on other floors to appear in the rest of the current view.**

9. Click OK. You can now see the column.

Next, you'll place the structural framing. Make sure you're zoomed into the northeast corner of the east wing. Here are the steps:

1. On the Structure panel of the Structure tab, click the Beam button, as shown in Figure 8.34.

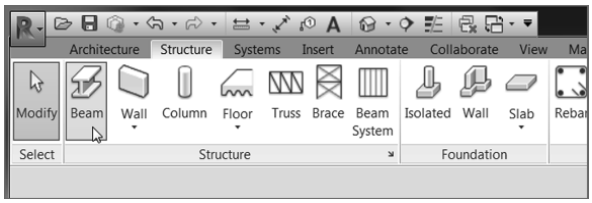


FIGURE 8.34: The Beam button on the Structure panel of the Structure tab

2. Click the Load Family button.
3. Browse to Structural ➢ Framing ➢ Steel.
4. Select `HSS-Hollow Structural Section.rfa` (or `M_HSS-Hollow Structural Column.rfa`). Click Open.
5. In the Specify Types dialog, select HSS6×6×5/8 (HSS152.4×152.4×12.7), and click OK.
6. Pick the first point at column E-1, which is buried in the corner of the wall.
7. Pick the second point at exterior column F-1, as shown in Figure 8.35.

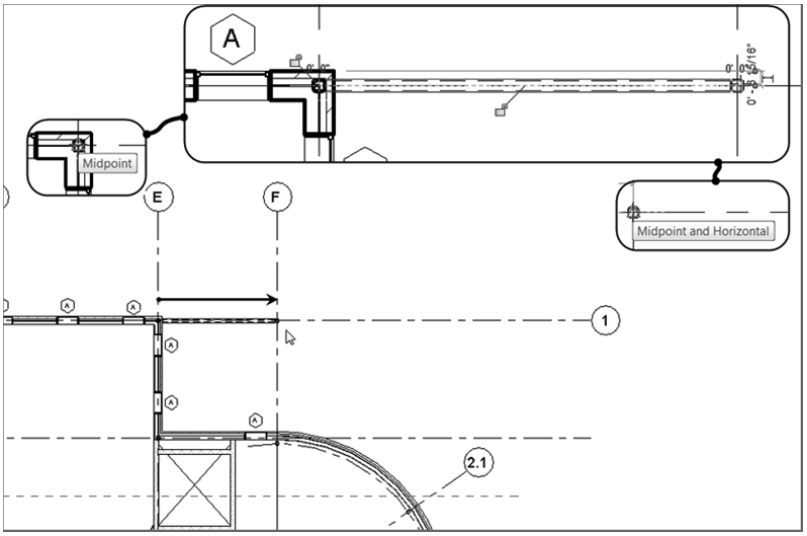


FIGURE 8.35: Adding the beam requires picking two columns.

I Can't See My Grids!

If your grids aren't showing up on the second floor, do the following:

1. Go back to Level 1.
2. Select all of your grids.
3. Click the Propagate Extents button.
4. Select the floors on which you want to see your grids.

8. With the Beam command still running, pick the exterior column (F-1) and then column F-2, as shown in Figure 8.36.
9. Press Esc.
10. Draw a beam 6″ (150 mm) off the finish face of the wall, starting at the top beam and ending on column line 2, as shown in Figure 8.37. (This beam will later be supported by the framing within the building.)

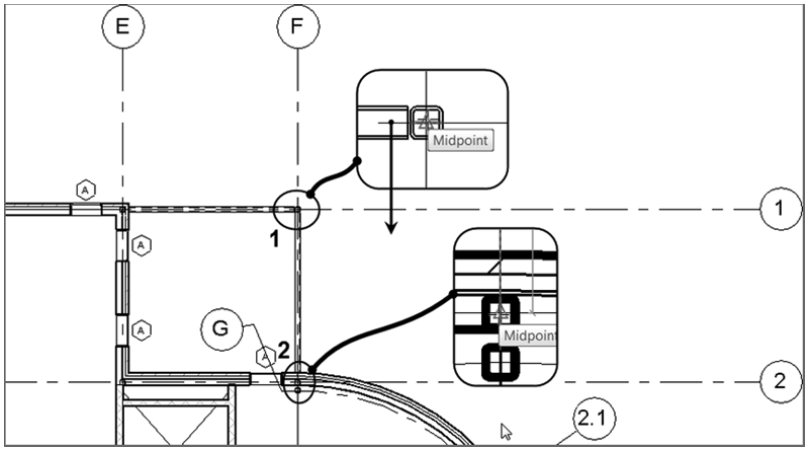


FIGURE 8.36: Adding the second beam

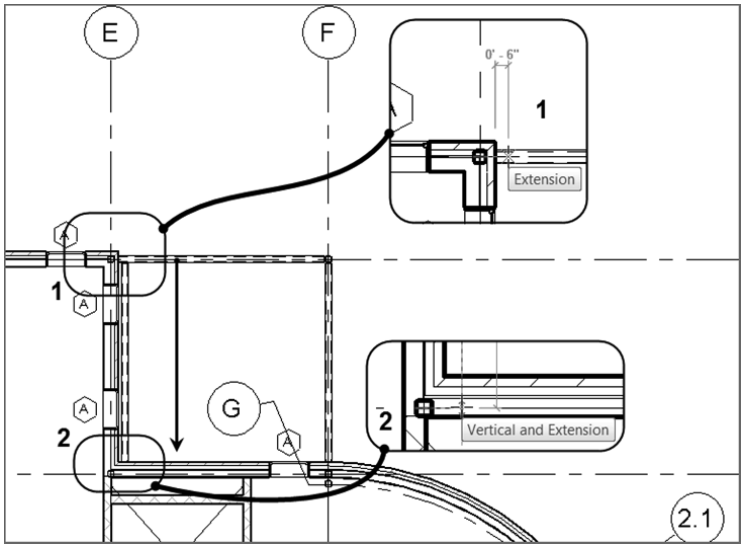


FIGURE 8.37: Adding a beam 6″ (150 mm) off the face of the wall to column line 2

NOTE Revit may think you're bearing a beam on a nonbearing wall. If you're asked to make this wall bearing, click Make Wall Bearing.

11. In the View Control bar, change Visual Style to Wireframe. This allows you to see the beam within the wall you're about to draw.
12. Draw another beam from left to right, inside the wall, as shown in Figure 8.38.

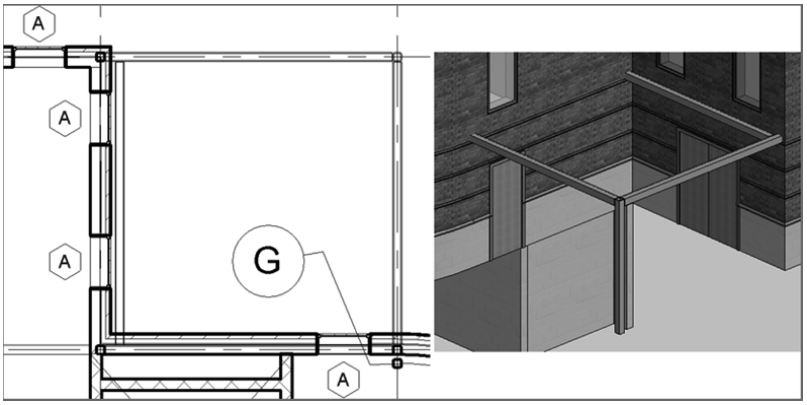


FIGURE 8.38: Completing the framing for the canopy

13. Save the model.

Why Is It Cutting Back the Beams?

Well, that's an inherent function of Revit. If you draw your framing to and from beam centerlines, Revit will keep the connection points in the correct locations but will trim back the beam for you. You can adjust these cutbacks by using the Beam/Column Joins tool from the Geometry panel of the Modify tab.

Now let's add some filler beams. In Revit Architecture, you can add a beam system that is controlled by a specified spacing. After the system is in place, you can control the properties for the duration of the project.

Adding a Beam System

Although adding beam systems in Revit is much more crucial for structure, it's useful for architecture as well. Having the ability to space a framing system equally can be quite advantageous.

To create a beam system, follow along with these steps:

1. On the Structure panel of the Structure tab, click the Beam System button, as shown in Figure 8.39.

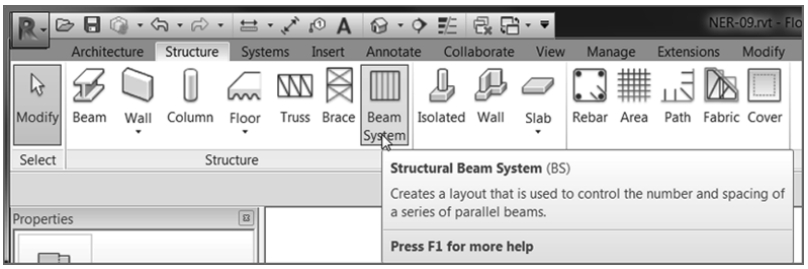


FIGURE 8.39: The Beam System button

2. Make sure the Automatic Beam System button is picked, as shown in Figure 8.40.

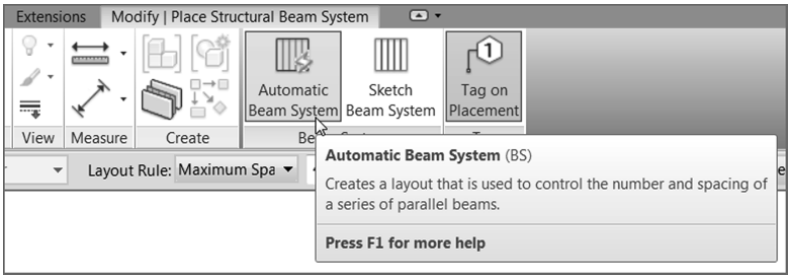


FIGURE 8.40: Selecting the Automatic Beam System and Tag On Placement options

3. Click the Tag On Placement button (see Figure 8.40).
4. On the Options bar, make sure HSS6×6×5/8 (HSS152.4×152.4×12.7) is the Beam Type selection.
5. Change Layout Rule to Maximum Spacing, as shown in Figure 8.41. Set the distance field to 4′–0″ (1200 mm).

FIGURE 8.41: Setting the maximum spacing and the tag style on the Options bar

6. Change Tag Style to Framing.

NOTE The support you pick first determines the direction in which the beams will run. Notice the double lines in the horizontal beam? They indicate the direction of the beam system. If you want to change this direction, click the Beam Direction button on the Draw panel.

7. Hover your cursor over the top, horizontal beam, as shown in Figure 8.42. Notice the green dashed lines: this is where your beams will be placed.

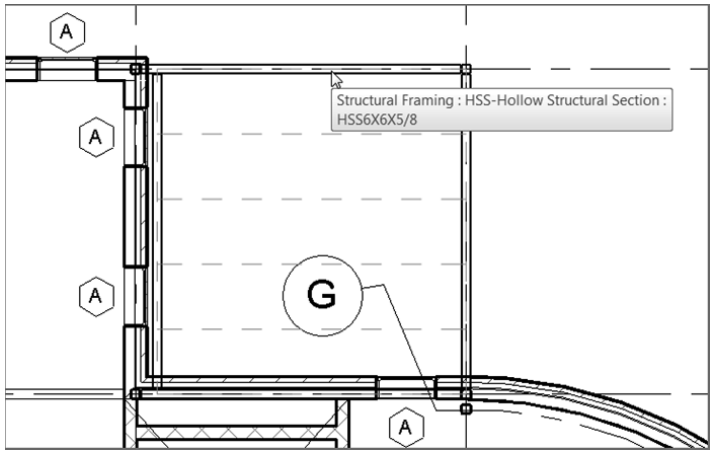


FIGURE 8.42: Getting ready to place the framing system

8. When you see the green lines, pick the top beam, and your framing is placed (see Figure 8.43).

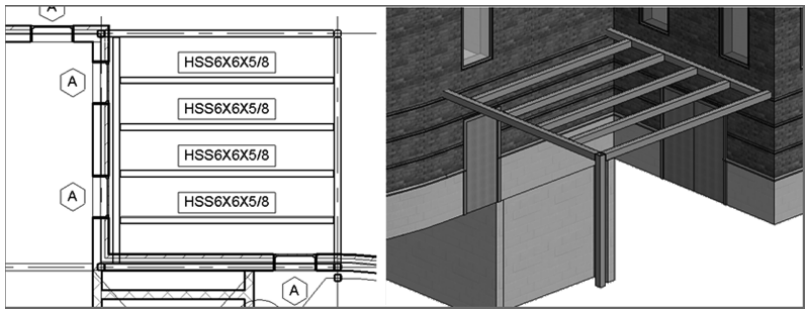


FIGURE 8.43: The framing of the canopy

9. Click Modify. Mirror the canopy to the other side of the radial entry. Be careful not to mirror the columns accidentally.
10. You may receive the message about bearing a structural member on a nonbearing wall. Click the Make Wall Bearing button.

By using the Beam System command, you can easily and quickly add multiple occurrences of framing members. In some cases, however, you need non-uniform members on a different plane, such as lateral bracing.

Adding Bracing

It would be nice to add a rod to the top of this canopy at an angle. You can accomplish this by using the Brace command. To do so, you'll need to load the rod (considered a family in Revit) into the model.

To use the Brace command, first add the rod family to your model.

1. Go to the Insert tab on the Ribbon.
2. Click the Load Family button.
3. Browse to Structural ➢ Framing ➢ Steel, and open the file `Round Bar.rfa` (or `M_Round Bar.rfa`).
4. Go to the North elevation in the Project Browser. Notice that grid lines A–F are visible in this view—very useful!
5. In the Properties panel for the North elevation, change Detail Level to Fine and Visual Style to Shaded.
6. Zoom in on the east canopy.
7. On the Structure panel of the Structure tab, click the Brace button, as shown in Figure 8.44.
8. Revit displays a dialog asking you to specify a work plane. In the Name drop-down list, select Grid : 1, as shown in Figure 8.45, and then click OK.
9. Verify that Round Bar: 1″ (M_Round Bar 25) is the current framing member in the Type Selector.
10. Draw a diagonal bar, as shown in Figure 8.46. (I'll let you eyeball this one, or you can make the top offset a specific increment.)

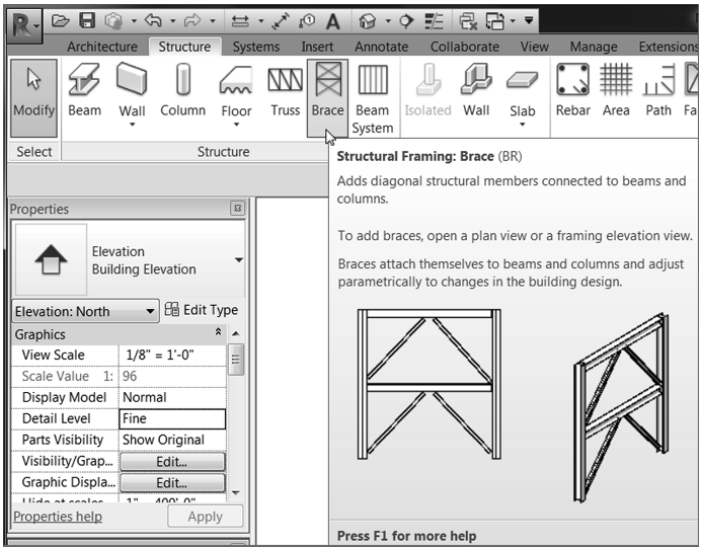


FIGURE 8.44: The Brace button on the Structure tab

FIGURE 8.45: Specifying Grid : 1 as the work plane for the bracing

11. Go to the Level 2 floor plan.
12. On the Quick Access toolbar, click the Section button.

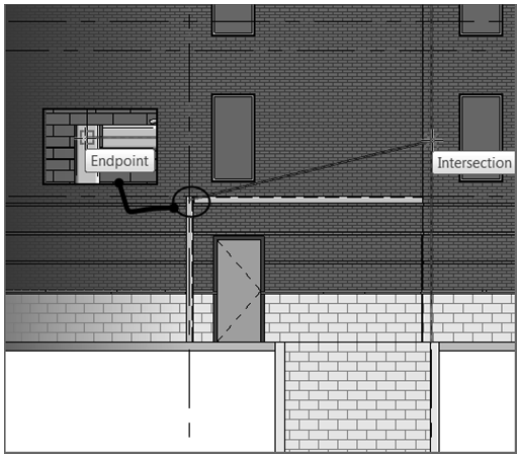


FIGURE 8.46: Adding the rod at an angle

13. Place the section along column line F, as shown in Figure 8.47, starting at point 1 and ending at point 2.

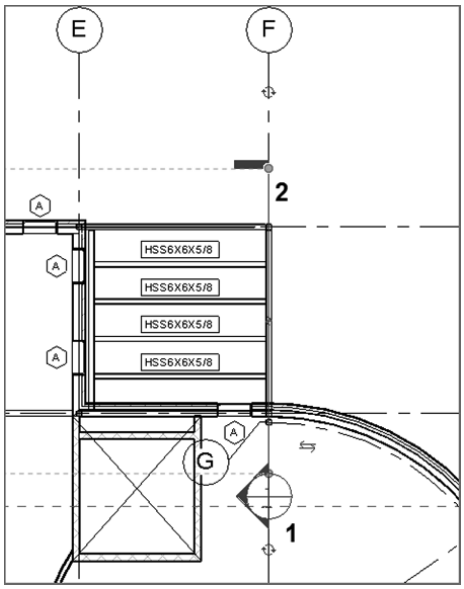


FIGURE 8.47: Cutting a section through the framing

14. Open the section.
15. Rename the section **Framing at North East Canopy**.
16. Change Detail Level to Fine and Visual Style to Shaded.
17. On the Structure panel of the Structure tab, click the Brace button.
18. Choose Grid : F as the work plane. Click OK.
19. Draw a diagonal rod between the points shown in Figure 8.48, and press Esc.

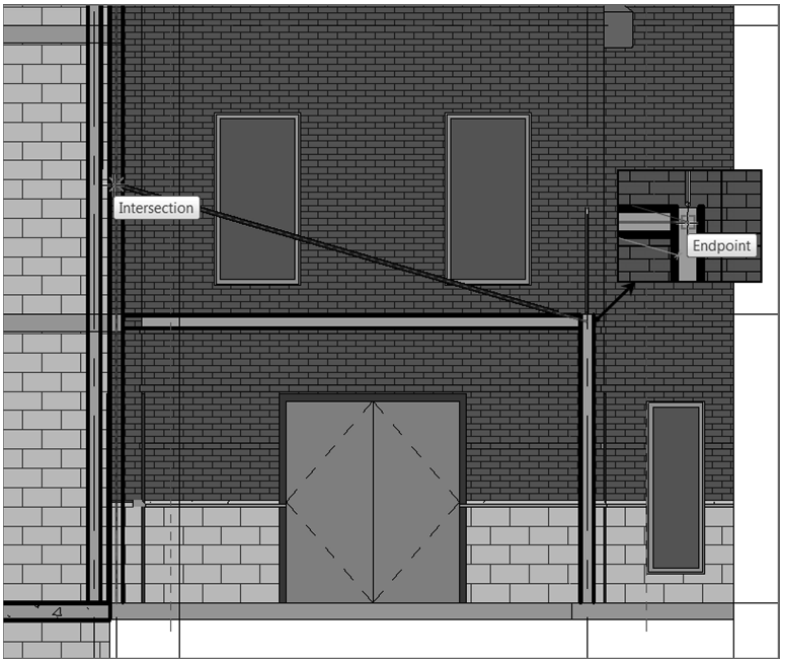


FIGURE 8.48: Finding the points along the column and beam to attach the rod

20. Compare Figure 8.49 to your rods.
21. Mirror the rods to the other canopy. You can open the East elevation to do so.

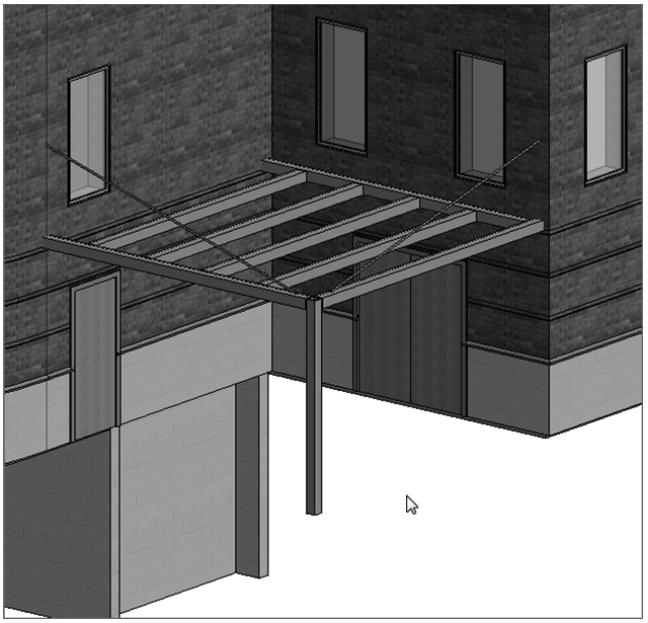


FIGURE 8.49: Isometric of the bracing

NOTE If you receive a warning about a circular reference chain, click Unjoin Elements.

22. Save the model.

That pretty much covers it for framing. The next section will bring you underground into the foundation. Although the structural engineer usually specifies the foundation system, architects must have access to foundation tools to place concrete foundation walls as well as to strip and isolate footings and piers. The next section addresses these topics.

Understanding Foundation Systems

The first question that arises while addressing structural foundations is, "What if the architect places a foundation in the model and then the structural engineer places one in their model?"

What will happen is the structural engineer will use a method called Copy/Monitor, whereby the engineer takes the architect's foundation and makes it

their own. The engineer is then free to alter the foundation. This method is addressed fully in Bonus Chapter 2, "Creating Families."

This section focuses on creating foundation walls. Although adding this type of wall is similar to adding architectural walls, you need to be aware of a few things.

For now, let's add a foundation and deal with coordination later. The task before you is to create a foundation wall constructed of 18″ (450 mm) of solid concrete. To proceed, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Click the Wall ➢ Wall: Structural button on the Structure tab. The same tool is on the Architectural tab.
3. In the Type Selector, in the Properties dialog, select Generic 8″ Masonry (Generic – 200 mm).
4. Click the Edit Type button.
5. Click the Duplicate button.
6. Name the new wall **18″ Concrete (450 mm Concrete)**, as shown in Figure 8.50.

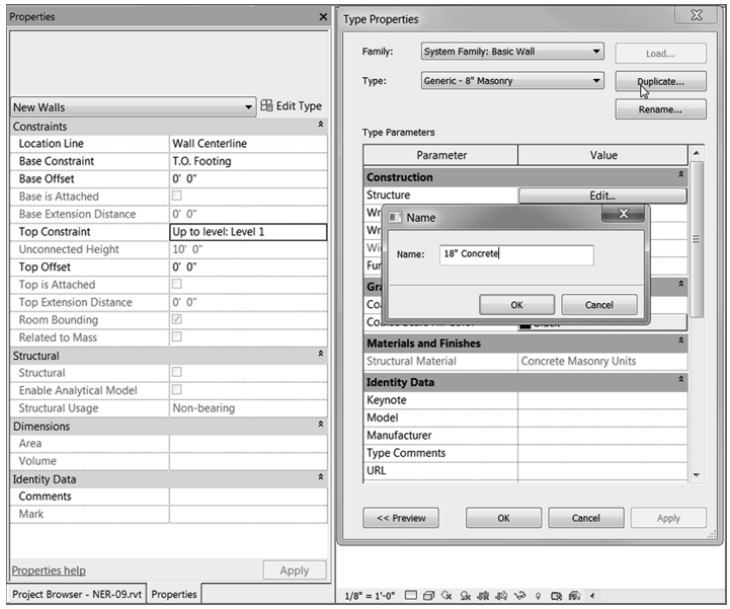


FIGURE 8.50: Adding a structural wall

7. Click OK.
8. Just under the Wall Function row is the Coarse Scale Fill Pattern row. Change the hatch to Concrete by clicking the […] button and selecting Concrete from the menu. Click OK.
9. Click the Edit button in the Structure row.
10. In the second row in the Layers chart, click in the Material cell.
11. Click the […] button.
12. Find Concrete – Cast-in-Place Gray, and select it.
13. Click OK.
14. Change Thickness to 1′–6″ (450 mm) by typing **1 6** (with a space between the numbers), as shown in Figure 8.51.

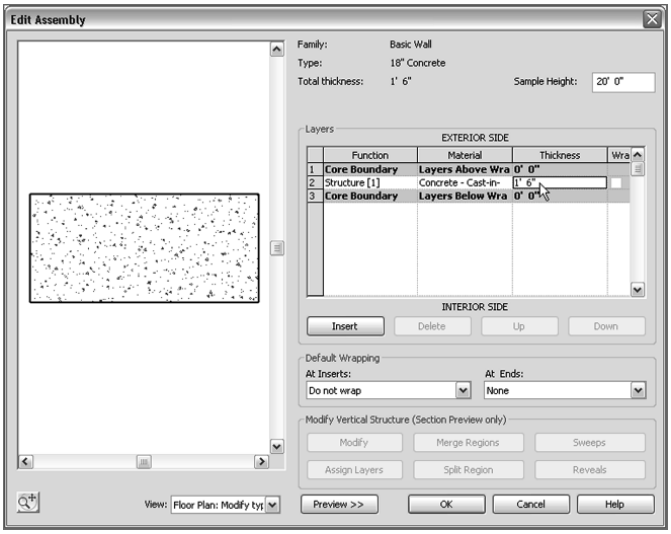


FIGURE 8.51: Changing the Material and Thickness settings

15. Click OK twice.

You're about to place a wall under this level. This view is currently set not to show anything below this level, forcing you to alter the view range.

To modify the view range, follow these steps:

1. Press Esc twice, and then scroll down to View Range in the Properties dialog and click the Edit button.

2. For Primary Range, set Bottom Offset to -1′–0″ (-300 mm).
3. For View Depth, set Level Offset to -1′–0″ (-300 mm).
4. Click OK.
5. Start the Structural Wall command again.
6. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon.
7. Foundation walls are placed top down, so Depth rather than Height appears on the Options bar. Make sure Depth is set to T.O. Footing and Justification is set to Wall Centerline.
8. Pick the centerline of the exterior wall, as shown in Figure 8.52.

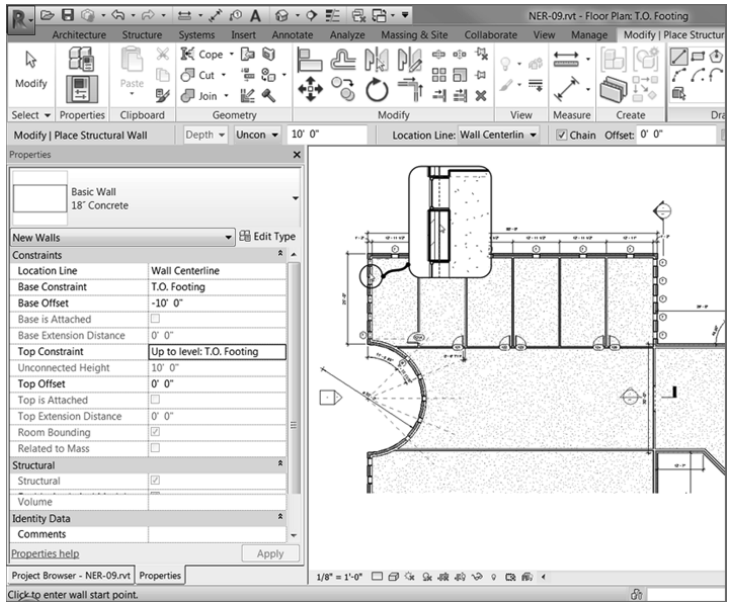


FIGURE 8.52: Picking the centerline of every exterior wall in the model. This includes the corridor and both wings.

9. Pick every exterior wall in all three sections of the model.

Your 3D model should look like Figure 8.53. Get into the habit of viewing the model in 3D, especially when you can't see exactly where the walls are being placed in the plan.

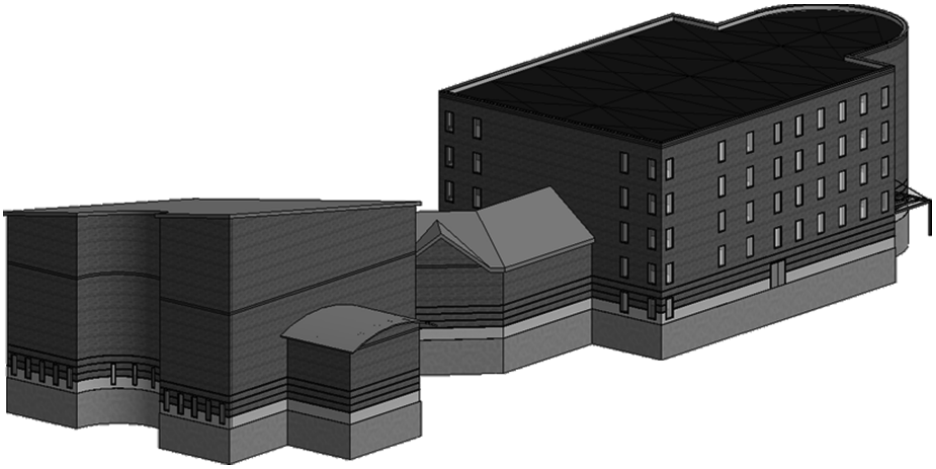


FIGURE 8.53: The foundation walls

Now you can travel into the ground and check out how your walls are joining. Some cleanup will be involved.

1. In the Project Browser, double-click the T.O. Footing floor plan.
2. Zoom into the east wing area, where the north elevator meets the foundation wall. However, the walls are funky, as shown in Figure 8.54.

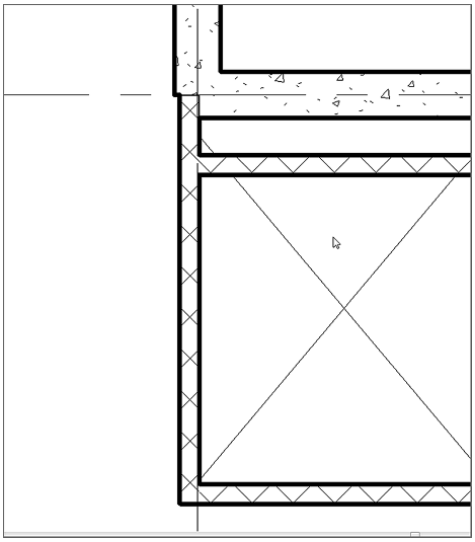


FIGURE 8.54: The walls aren't behaving as you would like them to behave.

3. Select the left masonry elevator shaft wall.
4. Drag the end blue grip of the wall out so that it abuts the foundation wall.
5. The masonry wall to the right needs to be joined to the foundation wall. To do this, click the Join Geometry button on the Modify tab, as shown in Figure 8.55.

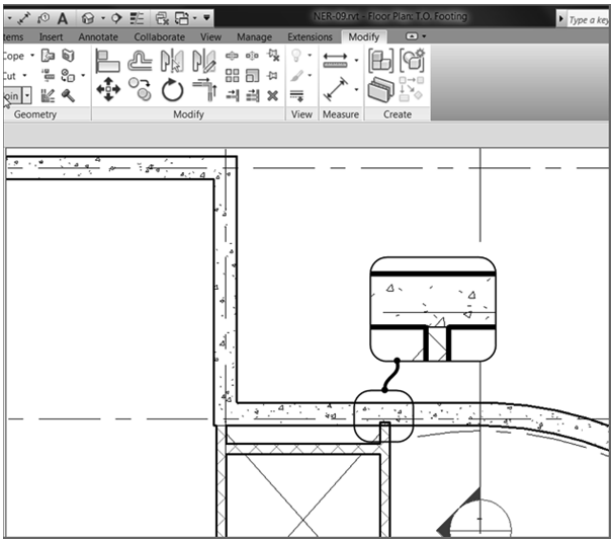


FIGURE 8.55: Joining the walls so the foundation walls terminate as expected

6. Pick the foundation wall.
7. Pick the masonry wall. The masonry wall is notched back for the foundation.
8. Repeat the procedure for the south elevator. The condition may be slightly different from that of the north elevator, but the process to fix it is the same.

Moving to the west wing, you need to fix one wall. You'll use the Split command, as follows:

1. Zoom in on the area, as shown in Figure 8.56.

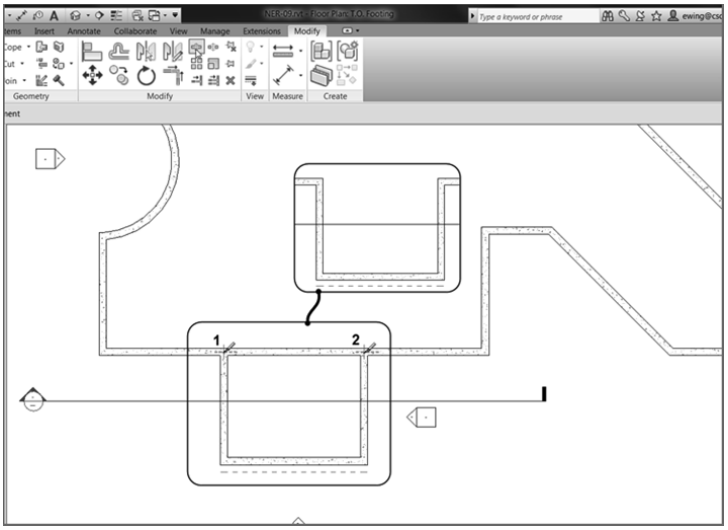


FIGURE 8.56: Splitting the foundation wall to follow the profile of the wall above

2. On the Modify tab, click the Split Element button (see Figure 8.56).
3. On the Options bar, click the Delete Inner Segment check box.
4. Pick the points marked 1 and 2 in Figure 8.56, and press Esc twice.

Now that the foundation walls are in place, let's think about what these walls are bearing on. Revit Architecture has tools to add footings to the bottom of the walls.

Adding Structural Footings

If you're going as far as placing structural foundation walls, you might as well continue and place footings under them, right? Luckily, this isn't a difficult task.

Before you begin adding structural footings to the plan, you need to acknowledge that, by default, this view isn't set up to see objects that are physically below its level. To correct this, you must alter the view range of this specific plan. Follow these steps:

1. Make sure you're still in the T.O. Footing plan.
2. In the Properties dialog, go to the View Range row, and click Edit.

3. Set Primary Range Bottom to Unlimited.
4. Set View Depth Level to Unlimited, as shown in Figure 8.57.

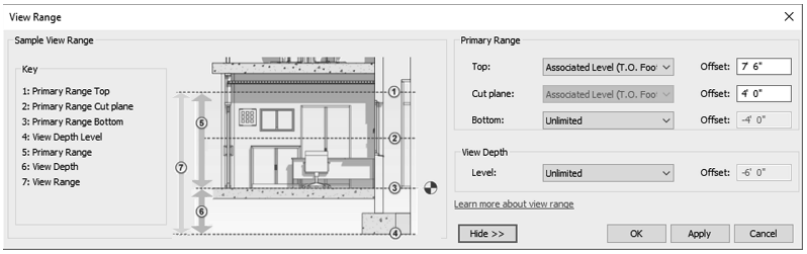


FIGURE 8.57: Again with the view range!

Just because this specific foundation is labeled Wall doesn't mean it's a wall. It's labeled Wall because it's a continuous (strip) footing that has a wall bearing on it.

5. Click OK.
6. On the Foundation panel of the Structure tab, click the Wall button, as shown in Figure 8.58.

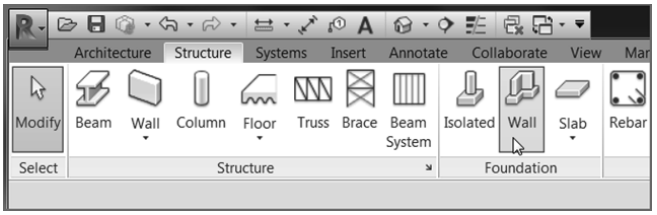


FIGURE 8.58: Adding a wall foundation

At the top of the Properties dialog, it says Bearing Footing – 36″ × 12″ (900 mm × 300 mm). This is a little big for your purposes, so let's make a new footing.

1. In the Properties dialog, click the Edit Type button.
2. Click Duplicate.
3. Call the new footing element **Bearing Footing – 30″ × 12″ (Bearing Footing – 750 mm × 300 mm)**.
4. Click OK.
5. Change the Width setting to **2′–6″ (750 mm)**, as shown in Figure 8.59.

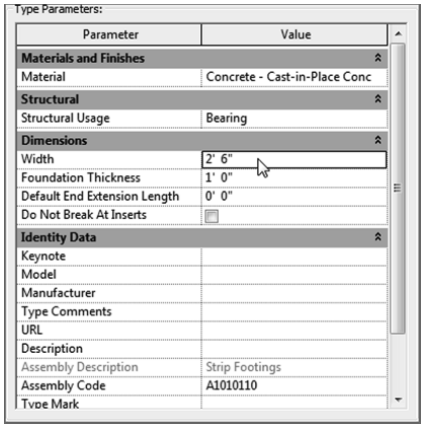


FIGURE 8.59: Changing the width

6. Click OK again to get back to the model.
7. Start picking walls. This footing will be centered under each wall you pick. Ignore the elevator shaft walls.
8. When you've finished picking the walls, go to a 3D view to make sure all the foundations are covered, as shown in Figure 8.60.

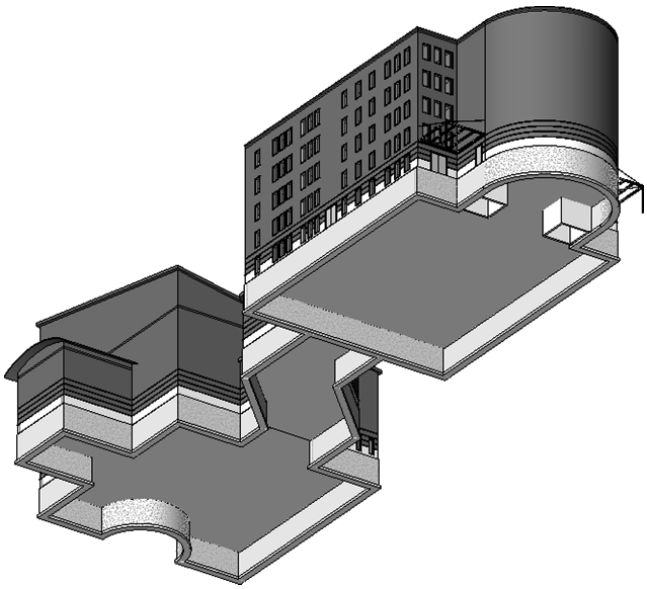


FIGURE 8.60: Doing a 3D investigation to see whether the footings are all in place

If you hover your cursor over a wall and press the Tab key, Revit selects all connecting walls, allowing you to add the bearing footing literally in two clicks.

When all the footings are in place, you can see that you need to focus on the elevator shafts. Because an entire foundation mat is required under the elevators, you can use a structural slab.

Structural Slabs

Structural slabs are basically thick floors. The one you're about to use is a solid concrete floor 12″ (300 mm) thick. Of course, Revit doesn't have something this thick built in the library, so you'll take this opportunity to make one. Here are the steps:

1. Go to the T.O. Footing floor plan.
2. Zoom into the elevator area.
3. On the Foundation panel of the Structure tab, choose Slab ➢ Structural Foundation: Slab, as shown in Figure 8.61.

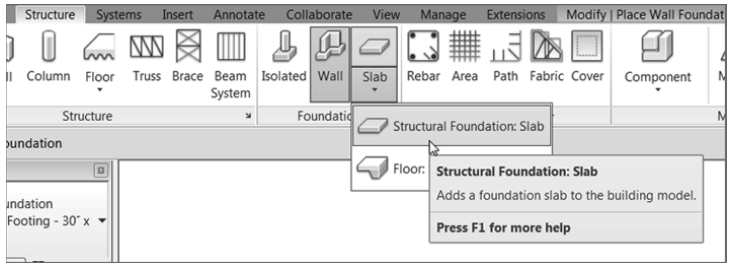


FIGURE 8.61: Choosing Structural Foundation: Slab

4. In the Properties panel, click Edit Type.
5. Click Duplicate.
6. Call the new slab **12″ Elevator Slab (300 mm Elevator Slab)**.
7. Click OK.
8. Click the Edit button in the Structure row.
9. In the Layers field, change Thickness to **1′–0″ (300 mm)**, as shown in Figure 8.62.
10. Click OK twice to get back to the model.
11. On the Draw panel, verify that the Pick Walls button is selected.

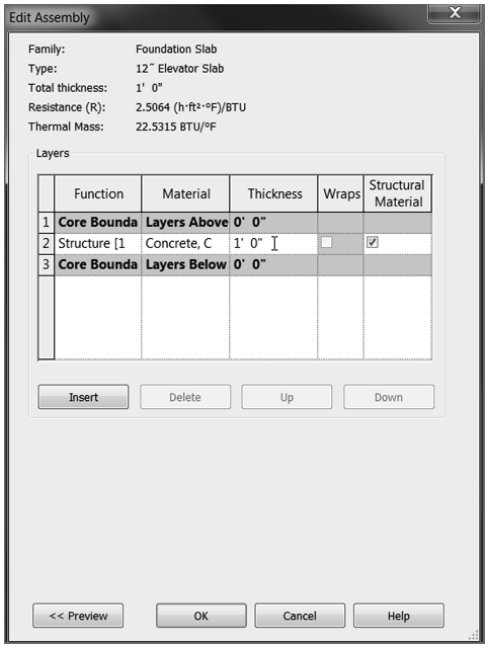


FIGURE 8.62: Changing the structure thickness

12. On the Options bar, set Offset to 1′–0″ (300 mm).

13. Pick the three elevator shaft walls, as shown in Figure 8.63.

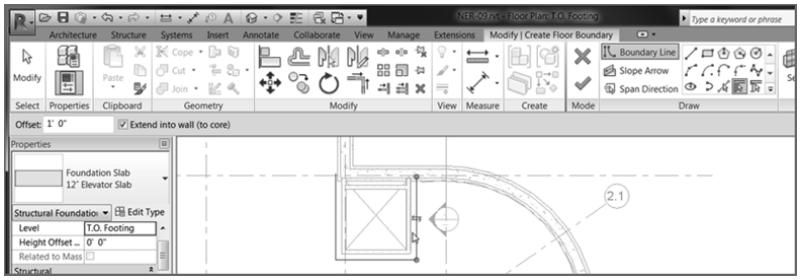


FIGURE 8.63: When picking the elevator shaft walls, be sure to include the 1′–0″ (300 mm) offset.

14. Set Offset back to 0.

15. Select the Pick Lines button. Verify that the offset is 0.

16. Pick the inside of the exterior foundation wall.

Now that the perimeter is set, it's time to trim the edges to make sure you have a continuous, closed loop.

1. On the Modify panel, click the Trim/Extend To Corner button.
2. Trim any overlapping corners, as shown in Figure 8.64.

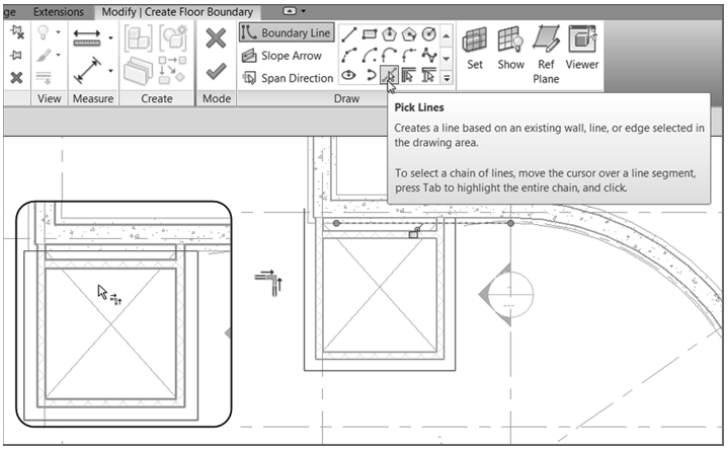


FIGURE 8.64: Trimming all the corners

3. On the Floor panel to the right of the Create Floor Boundary tab, click Finish Edit Mode.
4. Repeat the process for the south elevator.
5. Go to a 3D view.
6. If your slabs look more like a strip footing, as shown in Figure 8.65, hover your cursor over the inside of one of the foundations until the elevator shaft openings are highlighted.
7. Select the elevator shaft openings.
8. In the Properties dialog, change Base Offset to **0**.

Your view should look like Figure 8.66.

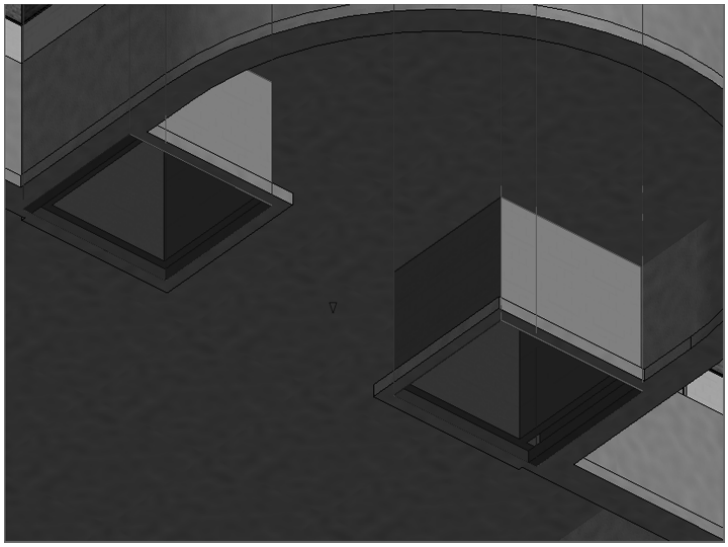


FIGURE 8.65: Selecting the elevator shafts to remove the base offset in the Properties dialog

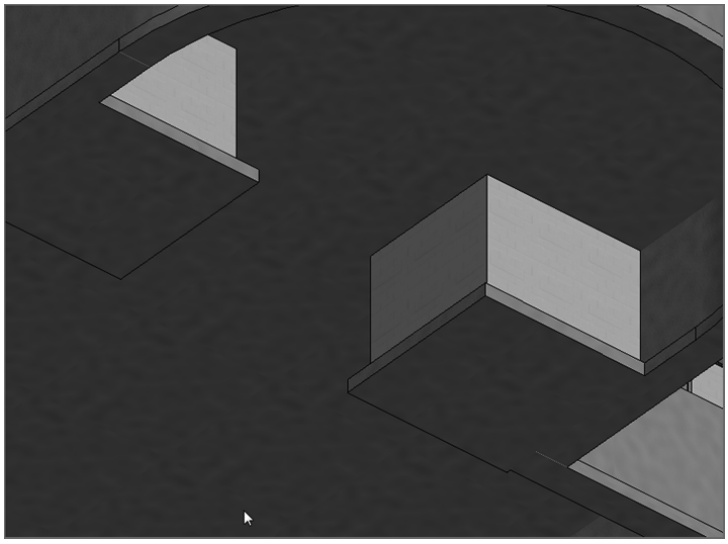


FIGURE 8.66: The finished elevator pads

With the footings mostly in place, you can think about placing piers and spread footings in the foundation. Luckily, as you're soon to discover, you already know how to do this.

Piers and Spread Footings

Piers and pilasters, simply put, are concrete columns. This is how Revit sees these items, and the following is the easiest placement method. A nice thing about this technique is that the grids are in place as well as the steel columns that bear on them. The only real trick is deciding which plan to put them in.

The objective of the next procedure is to add pilasters to support the columns bearing on them. Follow these steps:

1. Return to the T.O. Footing plan.
2. On the Structure panel of the Structure tab, click the Column button.
3. On the Modify/Place Structural Column tab, click the Load Family button, as shown at the top of Figure 8.67.

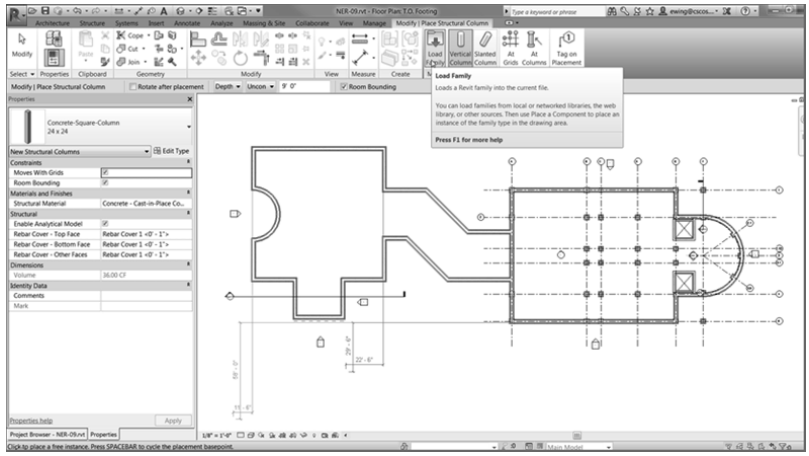


FIGURE 8.67: Starting to place piers

4. Browse to Structural ➢ Columns ➢ Concrete.
5. Pick the file called `Concrete-Square-Column.rfa` (`M_Concrete-Square-Column.rfa`).
6. Click Open.

7. In the Type Selector, select the 24 × 24 (600 × 600 mm) column. Verify that Height is set to Level 1.
8. Begin placing columns at the grid intersections, as shown in Figure 8.67. Using At Grids can speed up your work.
9. Press Esc, and then go to Level 1.
10. Zoom into the corridor.
11. Move the piers under the columns that you moved before.
12. Do the same for the pier under the doorway, as shown in Figure 8.68.

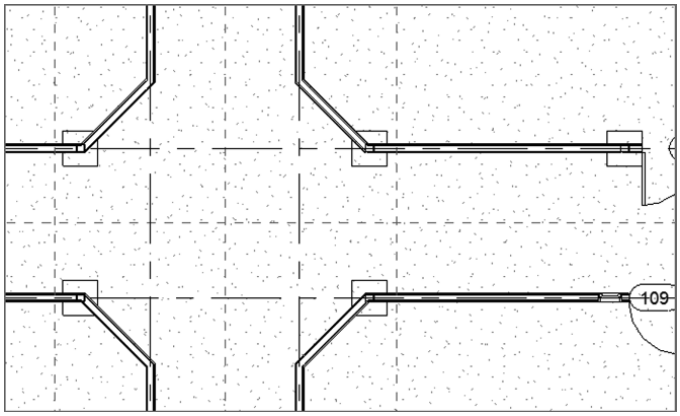


FIGURE 8.68: Making the necessary adjustments

13. Delete columns, footings, and piers D-1 and D-5.

Now you'll add the spread footings under the piers. This process is almost identical to the previous one.

1. Go back to the T.O. Footing floor plan.
2. On the Foundation panel of the Structure tab, select the Isolated Foundation button.
3. No structural foundations are loaded into the project, so click Yes.
4. Browse to Structural ➢ Foundations.
5. Select the file called `Footing-Rectangular.rfa` (`M_Footing-Rectangular.rfa`).

6. Click Open.
7. In the Properties dialog, click the Edit Type button.
8. Click Duplicate.
9. Call the new footing **36″ × 36″ × 12″ (900 mm × 900 mm × 300 mm)**.
10. Click OK.
11. Change Width to **36″** (900 mm).
12. Change Length to **36″** (900 mm).
13. Change Thickness to **12″** (300 mm).
14. Click OK.
15. Add these footings to each pier. The At Columns option on the Multiple panel works like At Grids and will speed up your work.

Your foundation plan should resemble Figure 8.69.

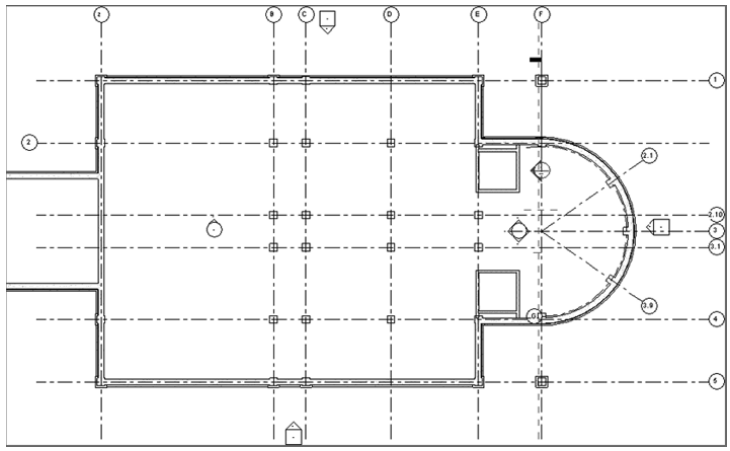


FIGURE 8.69: The completed foundation

Having a foundation in place in an architectural plan can be both good and bad. It can be bad because structural items begin appearing in places you may not want to see them. The last procedure of the chapter involves isolating the structure from the architecture.

Using Structural Views

By creating a structural view, you essentially duplicate an architectural view and hide the nonessential items in that view. Sound easy? That's because it is! But before you get started, you're going to remove some structural views that Revit provided for you.

To create structural views, follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, find the Structural Plans category.
2. Select all the structural plans in that category, right-click, and select Delete to delete the plans.

Continue as follows:

1. In the Project Browser, go to Floor Plans, right-click T.O. Footing, and select Duplicate View ➢ Duplicate With Detailing, as shown in Figure 8.70. The new view opens.

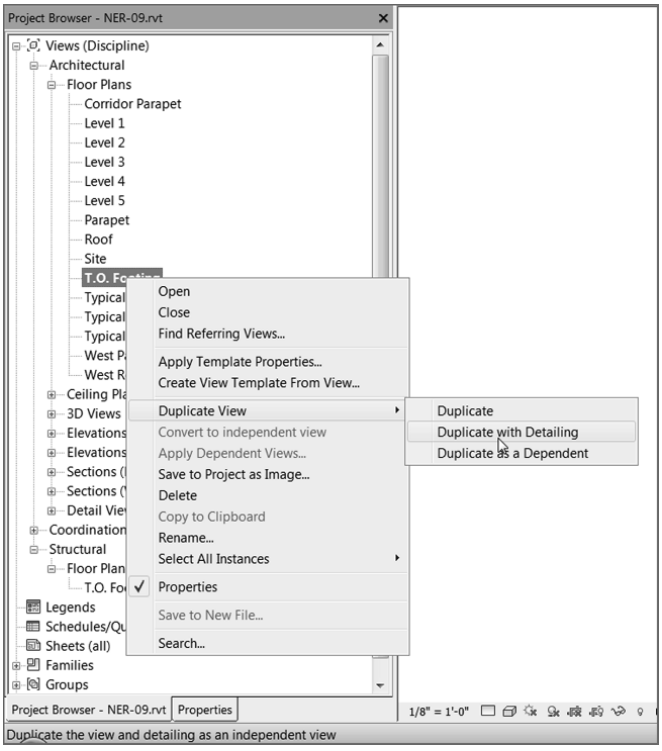


FIGURE 8.70: Selecting Duplicate View ➢ Duplicate With Detailing

2. Rename the view called Copy of T.O. Footing to **T.O. Footing Structural Plan**.

3. In the Discipline category of the View Properties, select Structural from the list, as shown in Figure 8.71. The sections disappear.

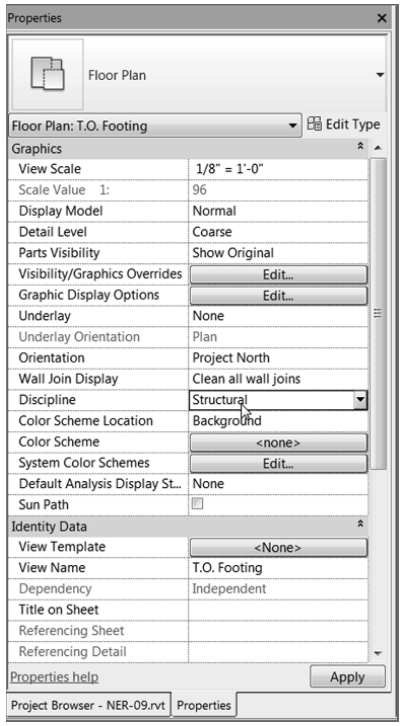


FIGURE 8.71: Changing Discipline to Structural

4. In the Project Browser, right-click Views (All), as shown in Figure 8.72.

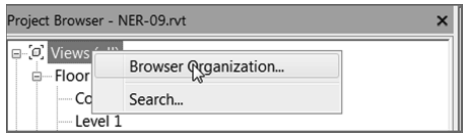


FIGURE 8.72: Right-clicking in the Project Browser

5. Select Browser Organization.
6. Select the Discipline option, as shown in Figure 8.73, and then click OK.

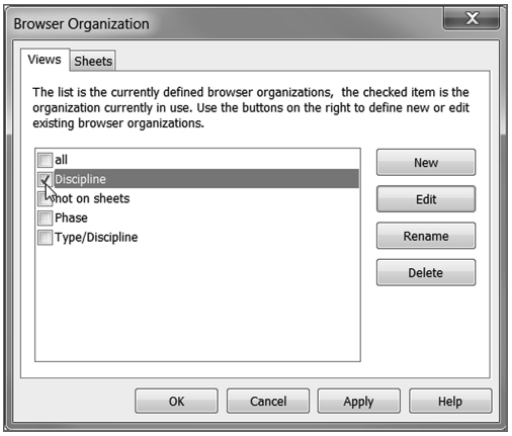


FIGURE 8.73: Selecting Discipline

Now the Project Browser is broken into categories. This will be helpful for large projects with a mix of structure and architecture.

This is getting easy! Let's make the Level 1 architectural plan truly architectural, as follows:

1. Open the Level 1 floor plan (architectural).
2. Scroll down to View Range.
3. Click the Edit button in the View Range row.
4. Change both the Bottom and View Depth offsets to 0.
5. Click OK.

The foundation information is no longer displayed in the Level 1 floor plan.

Although the last part of this chapter was short, it's a nice look into the Project Browser, and it shows how you can begin to get organized. If you would like more practice, go into the Project Browser on your own and organize it the way you'd like.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ place a structural grid in your model by using the architectural walls as a reference
- ✔ add additional grids at a radius or by sketch where needed
- ✔ add columns to the grid lines
- ✔ add columns at an offset, keeping the relationship to the grid intersection intact
- ✔ add structural beams to the model
- ✔ add structural beam systems, which can follow centering rules or equal-distance spacing
- ✔ use the Brace command to create brace framing to be used for both architectural appointments and structural bracing
- ✔ create entire foundation systems complete with foundation walls, piers, and spread footings
- ✔ organize the Project Browser to show your model broken into disciplines
- ✔ change a view's discipline to Structural

CHAPTER 9

Ceilings and Interiors

Now that the exterior shell is up and the rooms are basically laid out, it's time to start considering the interiors. As it stands, you have a bunch of rooms with the same wall finish, the same floor finish, and no ceilings to speak of. The restrooms don't have any fixtures, and the other rooms are going to be useless without furniture.

Another issue is that you don't have any separate views such as furniture plans or finish plans. This chapter dives into all these items—and then some!

- **Creating ceilings**
- **Creating ceiling openings and soffits**
- **Adding interior design**
- **Adding alternate floor materials**

Creating Ceilings

Placing a ceiling is quite easy; the hard part is finding the view in which to do it. As you've probably noticed, the Project Browser is divided into categories. The categories for plans are Floor Plans and Ceiling Plans. Whereas floor plans show the views standing at that level looking down, ceiling plans show the view standing at that level looking up. In the Autodesk® Revit® platform, you're looking at a true reflected ceiling plan.

NOTE **Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit will not accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.**

To begin, open the file you've been using to follow along. If you didn't complete Chapter 8, "Structural Items," go to the book's web page at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there, you can browse to `Chapter 9` and find the file called `NER-09.rvt`. Then, continue with these steps:

1. Go to the Level 1 ceiling plan, as shown in Figure 9.1 (remember, this is a ceiling plan, not a floor plan).

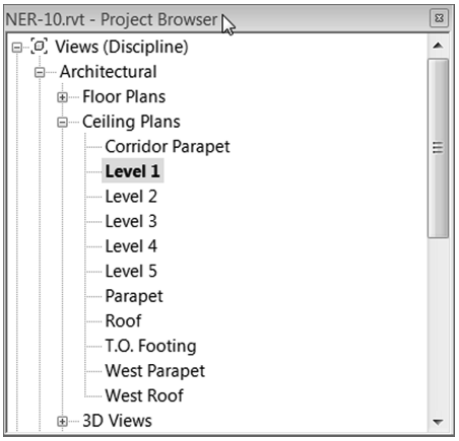


FIGURE 9.1: The Ceiling Plans category

2. On the Architecture tab, click the Ceiling button.
3. With the Ceiling command active, choose 2′ × 4′ ACT System (600 mm × 1200 mm Grid) from the Type Selector, as shown in Figure 9.2.

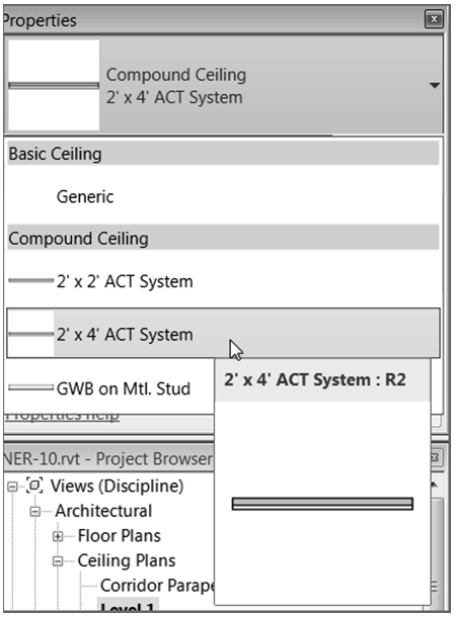


FIGURE 9.2: The available ceiling types listed in the Type Selector

4. Hover your mouse over the room shown in Figure 9.3. Notice that the perimeter is outlined in red. This indicates that the ceiling has found at least four walls you can use as a layout.

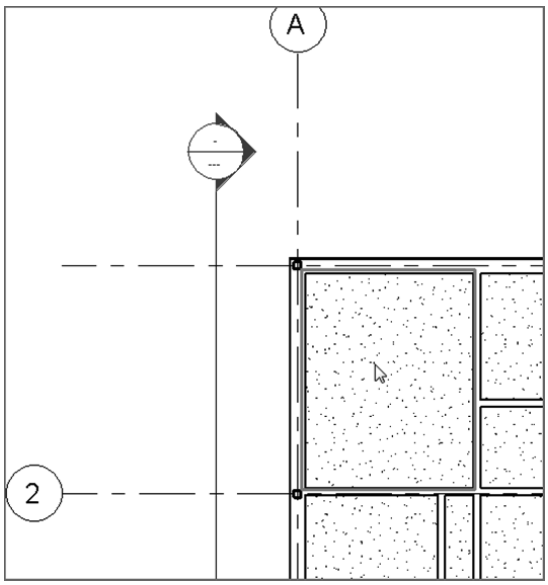


FIGURE 9.3: The Ceiling command finds bounding items such as walls.

5. When you see the red outline, pick a point in the middle of the room. Your ceiling should now look like Figure 9.4.

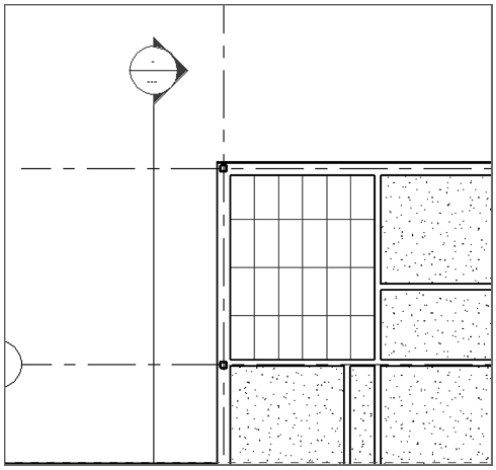


FIGURE 9.4: Placing the 2 × 4 tiled ceiling

6. Have at it! Add a ceiling to every room in the east wing except the bathrooms, the east radial entry, and, of course, the elevator shafts, as shown in Figure 9.5.

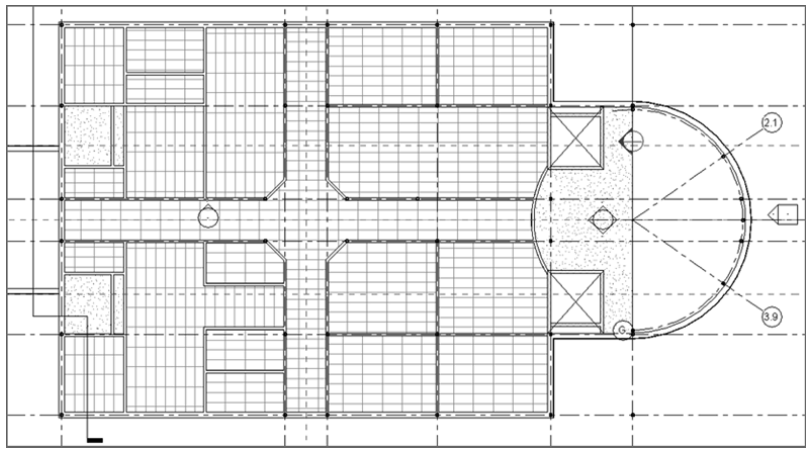


FIGURE 9.5: Adding 2 × 4 ACT ceilings to the specified rooms

7. With the Ceiling command still running, select Compound Ceiling : GWB On Mtl. Stud from the Type Selector.
8. Pick the bathrooms (not the chases) and the hallway.
9. Press Esc.

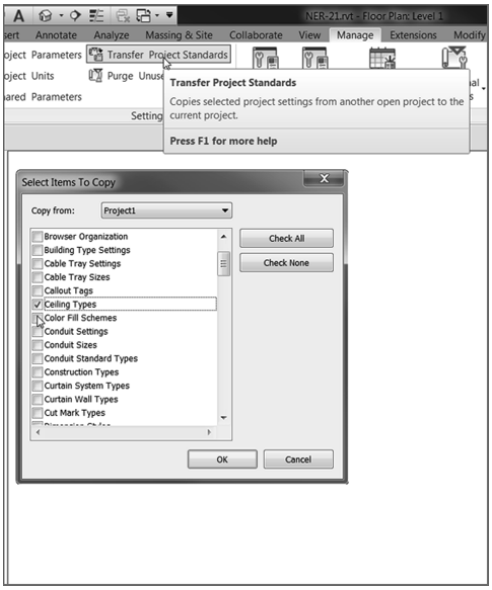
NOTE If you notice that some of the grids are running in the wrong direction, don't worry. You'll change that in a moment.

That was just too easy! Too good to be true, right? All right, it was. You always have to make adjustments to this type of item. You probably noticed that you had no control over the direction in which the grids were running. Also, you have no clue as to the height of these ceilings. Let's start modifying the ceilings.

Transferring Project Standards

At times, you won't have the system families you need to carry out the task at hand. Ceiling types seem to be the number-one system family to be inadvertently deleted from a model before being used. If you find that you don't have the ceiling types shown earlier, do the following:

1. Click the Application icon, and choose New ➢ Project.
2. In the New Project dialog box, click OK to start a new project using the default template.
3. On the View tab, click Switch Windows in the Windows panel, and select Reflected Ceiling Plan from the flyout to get back to the No Experience Required project.
4. On the Manage tab, click Transfer Project Standards in the Settings panel.
5. In the Select Items To Copy dialog box (see the following graphic), click the Check None button.
6. Click Ceiling Types.
7. Click OK.



Modifying Ceiling Grids

To be honest, a ceiling consists of nothing more than a basic hatch pattern applied to a material. Actually, everything in Revit is a basic hatch pattern applied to a material. That sure does make it easy to understand!

The one unique thing about hatch patterns in Revit is that you can modify them onscreen. That means you can move and rotate a hatch pattern. That also means you can move and rotate a grid pattern. Let's give it a shot.

1. Press Esc or Modify to cancel the command you're in.
2. Pick a ceiling grid line, as shown in Figure 9.6. (Make sure you're zoomed in close enough to make the Rotate command active.)

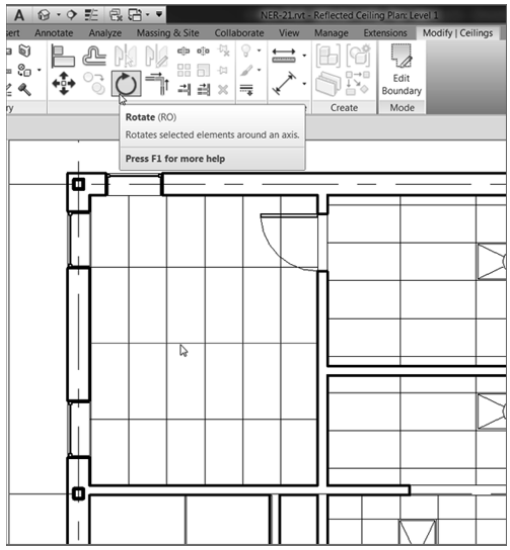


FIGURE 9.6: Select one of the grids, and click the Rotate button.

3. On the Modify | Ceilings tab, click the Rotate button (see Figure 9.6).
4. Rotate the grid 45° by using the two-pick method, as shown in Figure 9.7.

Your ceiling should now look like Figure 9.8.

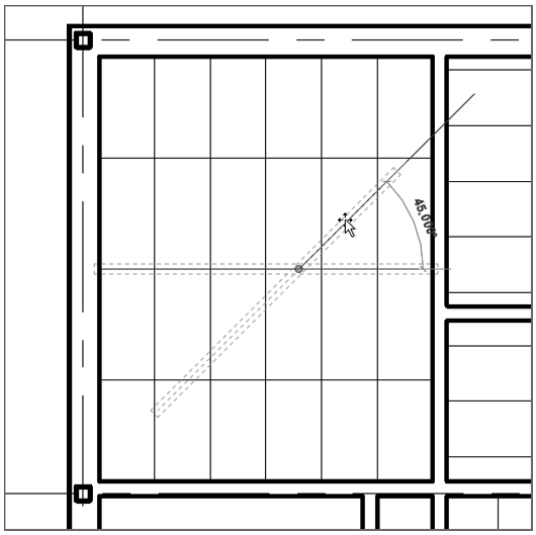


FIGURE 9.7: The rotate process

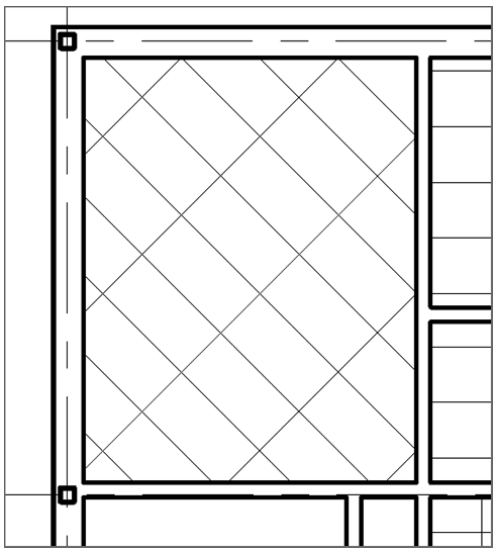


FIGURE 9.8: The ceiling at a 45° angle

Now that the ceiling is in, let's look at the ceiling's properties before you go too far. As a matter of fact, it's a good idea to investigate the ceiling's properties before you place it in the model.

Setting Ceiling Element Properties

As I mentioned earlier, ceilings are set up in a fashion similar to floors. So, it stands to reason that you'll see many similar properties.

Before you get started, let's make some modifications to the west wing. The objective of this procedure is to add a hard ceiling with metal framing, gypsum, and a 3/4″ (18 mm) cherry finish. To do so, however, you need to modify some of the walls.

1. Go to a 3D view of the model.
2. Select the sloped roof that covers the west wing, as shown in Figure 9.9.

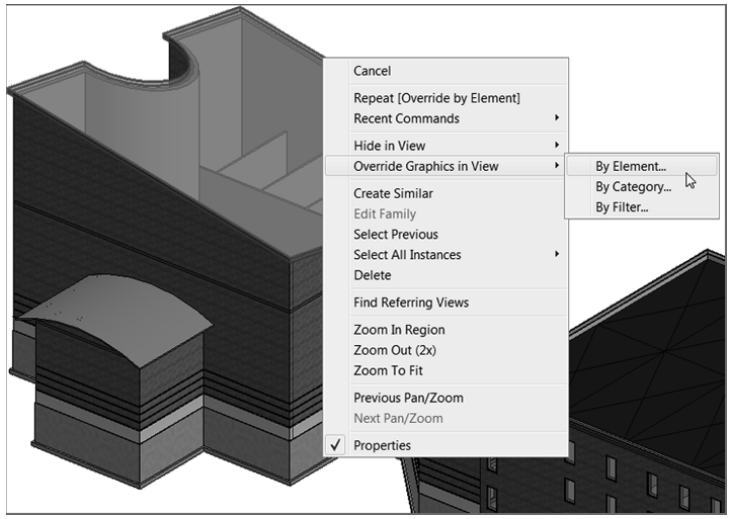


FIGURE 9.9: Selecting the roof and right-clicking

3. Right-click.
4. Select Override Graphics In View ➢ By Element (see Figure 9.9).
5. In the View-Specific Element Graphics dialog box, select the small downward-pointing arrow in the Surface Transparency row, and slide Transparency to 50 percent. See Figure 9.10.
6. Click OK. The roof is now transparent by 50 percent.

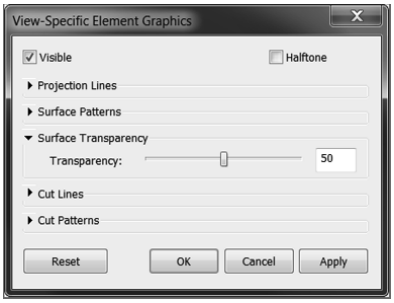


FIGURE 9.10: The View-Specific Element Graphics dialog box

This Thing Is Haunted!

You can set an object to be ghosted—that is, semitransparent—on the fly with the Transparent option. This helps especially with roofs and floors.

You made the roof transparent because some of the walls have to be attached to the roof. It's much easier to attach the walls in a 3D view. But to do so, you need to see the walls on which you'll be working.

1. Select the wall shown in Figure 9.11.

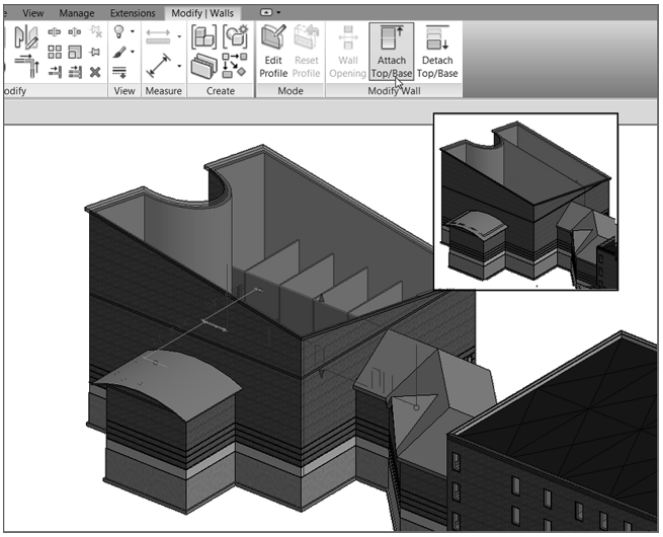


FIGURE 9.11: Attaching the wall to the roof

Rotating a ceiling grid is a good example of the hatch functionality in Revit. You can rotate and move hatch patterns whether they're ceilings, brick, or any other pattern you need to manipulate.

2. On the Modify | Walls tab, click the Attach Top/Base button.
3. Pick the roof.

Your wall should look like Figure 9.11.

The next step is to constrain the partition walls in this area to Level 3. The ceilings you'll add to these rooms will be much higher than those in the rest of the building. Follow these steps:

1. While still in a 3D view, select the partitions shown in Figure 9.12.

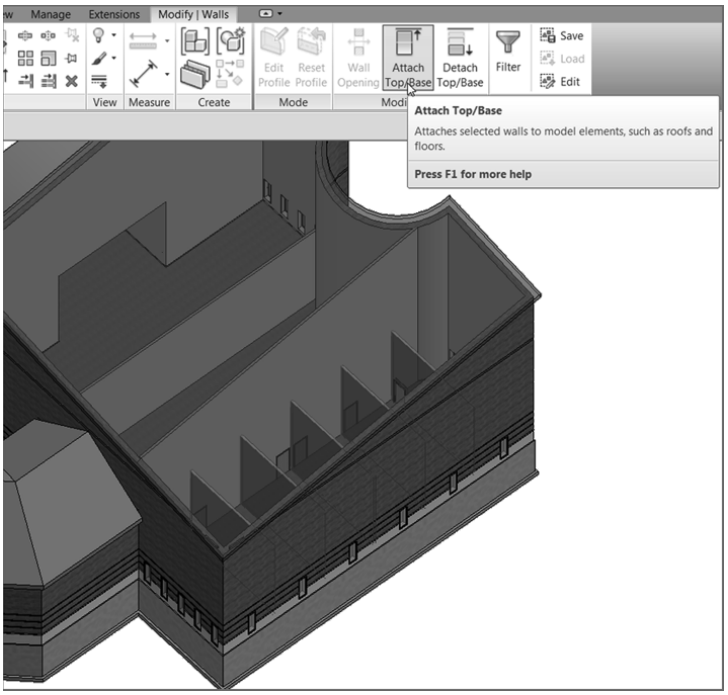


FIGURE 9.12: Selecting the partitions

2. In the Properties dialog box, set the Top constraint to Up To Level: Level 3.

   The walls are now constrained to Level 3.
3. Select the roof that is transparent, right-click, select Override Graphics In View ➢ By Element, click the Reset button, and then click OK.
4. Go to Level 1 under Ceiling Plans.

The next procedure is a tad off the beaten path, but it fits squarely within this process. Because you've specified the walls in this area to be of a greater height

than the rest of the walls in the model, you're obviously adding ceilings higher than 8′–0″ (2400 mm). This poses a problem in terms of the Level 1 ceiling plan view range.

Creating a Plan Region

Sometimes you'll need to set your view range in a specific area that differs from the view range in the plan as a whole. In this example, you'll add a ceiling at 14′–6″ (4350 mm) above the finish floor. If you do this with the current view range settings, Revit won't display the ceiling. If you modify the view range for the entire view, you'll see the 14′–6″ (4350 mm) ceilings, but you won't see the regular 8′–0″ (2400 mm) ceilings in the rest of the building in that view.

In the following procedure, you'll create a region that has a different view range as compared to the view range in the Level 1 ceiling plan:

1. In the Project Browser, make sure you're in the Level 1 ceiling plan.

WARNING **Double-check to be absolutely sure you aren't in a floor plan. You want to be in the ceiling plan! If you don't see the ceilings you placed earlier, you're in the wrong view.**

2. Zoom into the west wing.
3. On the View tab, select Plan Views ➢ Plan Region.
4. Pick the inside, finished face of the exterior walls around the north portion of the west wing (see Figure 9.13).

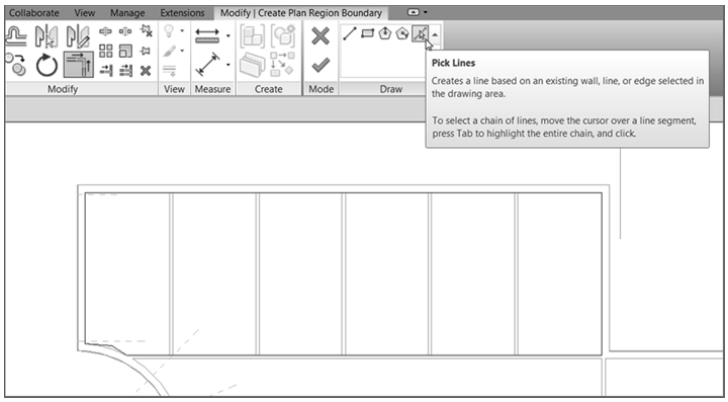


FIGURE 9.13: **Defining the limits of the plan region by drawing a rectangle around a specific area**

5. For the lower-left corner, draw a couple of straight lines, as shown in Figure 9.13, and trim them up if they do not intersect. (Unfortunately you can't have radial perimeter lines in a plan region.)

Notice that the View tab has now switched to the Modify | Create Plan Region Boundary tab. You need to define the view range for this region.

1. In the Properties dialog box, click the Edit button in the View Range row.
2. In the View Range dialog box, set Top to Level 3.
3. Set Cut Plane Offset to **14′–6″** (**4350** mm).
4. Set Bottom Offset to **7′–6″** (**2250** mm).
5. Set View Depth Level to Level 2 with an Offset value of **16′–0″** (**4800** mm), as shown in Figure 9.14.

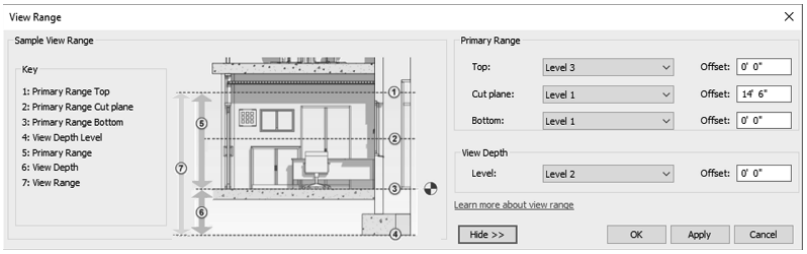


FIGURE 9.14: Configuring the view range for the crop region

6. Click OK.
7. On the Mode panel, click Finish Edit Mode.

You now have a plan region. Although it may not seem as though you did anything in the plan, when you place a ceiling at 14′–6″ (4350 mm), you'll be able to see it.

NOTE The dotted line you see represents the border of the plan region. Although these borders can get annoying (especially if you collect several plan regions), I recommend you keep them turned on. It's helpful to know where a plan region is in the model, and it's more important for others to know that there is a plan region in that area. Also, these borders won't plot.

With the plan region in place, you can now place a ceiling at a higher distance from the finish floor. Because you're going to the trouble of placing a high ceiling, you might as well make the ceiling something special.

Creating a Custom Ceiling

So, what do you do if your ceiling isn't an acoustical tile ceiling or a gypsum system? This is Revit! You make a new one.

As mentioned earlier, creating a ceiling is similar to creating a floor or a roof. The Properties dialog boxes are exactly the same. This procedure guides you through the process of creating a custom ceiling:

1. Be sure you're in the Level 1 ceiling plan, and zoom in on the northwest room.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Ceiling button.
3. In the Type Selector, select GWB On Mtl. Stud. To the right and below the picture of the ceiling is the Edit Type button. Click it.
4. Click Duplicate.
5. Name the new ceiling **Wood Veneer on Metal framing**, and then click OK.
6. In the Structure row, click the Edit button, as shown in Figure 9.15.

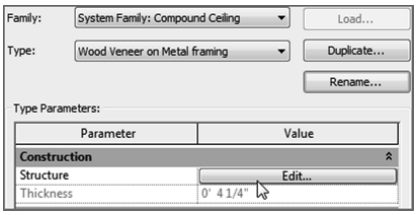


FIGURE 9.15: Clicking the Edit button in the Structure row to gain access to the ceiling's structural composition

7. In the Layers field, as shown in Figure 9.16, click row 4. This is the Finish 2 [5] Gypsum Wall Board row. The entire row should be highlighted in black when you have it selected properly.
8. Just below the Layers field is the Insert button. Click it.
9. Click the Down button to move the new row to the bottom.

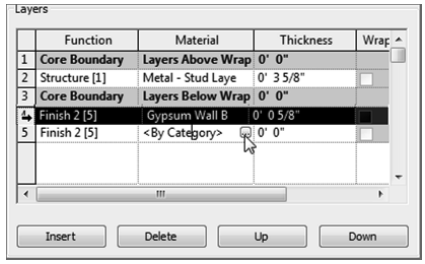


FIGURE 9.16: Clicking the button in the Material cell

10. Change the function from Structure to Finish 2 [5].
11. Click in the Material cell, and click the […] button (see Figure 9.16).
12. In the top of the Material Browser dialog box, type **Cherry**, as shown in Figure 9.17.

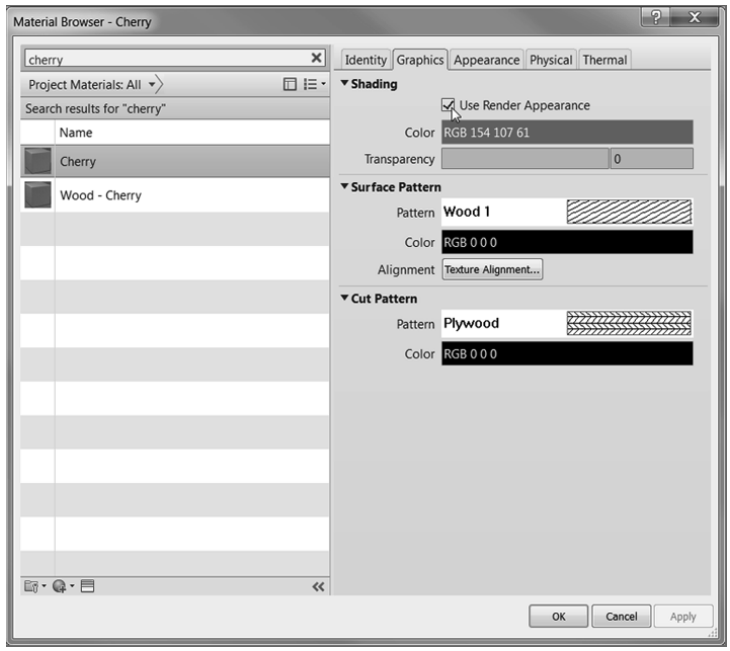


FIGURE 9.17: Selecting and configuring the material for the ceiling

13. In the Material Editor dialog box to the right, click the field next to Pattern in the Surface Pattern category. The field contains the word <none>.
14. A new dialog box opens. Scroll down until you see the Wood 1 pattern, and select it. Click OK.
15. Below the Surface Pattern category, expand the Cut Pattern category. Change the Pattern field to Plywood. Click OK. (See Figure 9.17.)
16. In the Shading category, click the Use Render Appearance box (see Figure 9.17).
17. In the Material Browser, click OK.
18. Change the Layer 5 thickness to 3/4″ (18 mm).
19. Click OK twice.
20. In the Properties dialog box, change Height Offset From Level to 14′–6″ (4350 mm), as shown in Figure 9.18.

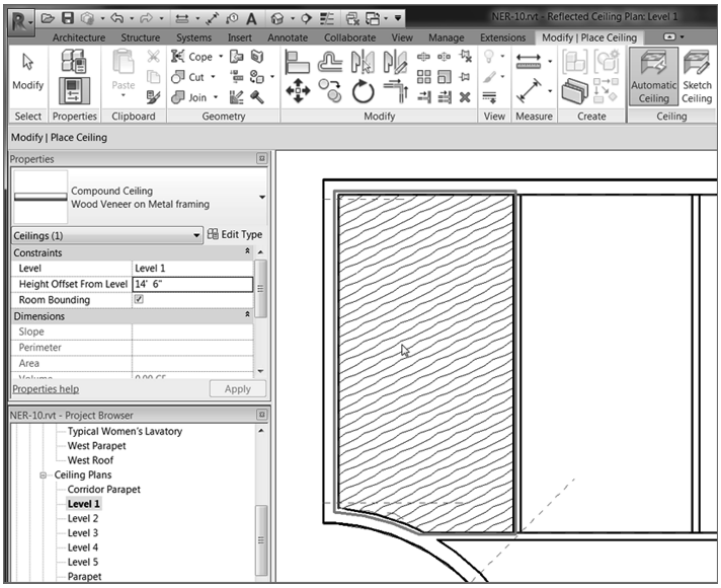


FIGURE 9.18: The cherry-veneered plywood ceiling

21. Place the ceiling in the room shown in Figure 9.18.

NOTE **Don't get discouraged if your final result isn't the same as shown in the figure. You took 21 steps to get to this wonderful cherry ceiling; any one of those steps could have gone wrong. Going back through the steps and retracing your path is something you may be doing quite often until you get used to the program. But remember, you're now set up for plans, sections, and even 3D views and renderings by completing one small task!**

For the adjacent rooms, add the same ceiling. You can keep the same height. You can follow along with these steps, but I encourage you to try to put in the ceilings from memory.

1. In the Project Browser, be sure you're in the Level 1 ceiling plan.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Ceiling button.
3. In the Change Element Type menu on the Element panel, find the ceiling called Compound Ceiling : Wood Veneer On Metal Framing. (It will probably be the current selection.)
4. In the Properties panel, set the height above the floor to 14′–6″ (4350 mm).
5. Pick the rooms shown in Figure 9.19. When you've finished, press Esc a couple of times or click Modify to clear the command.

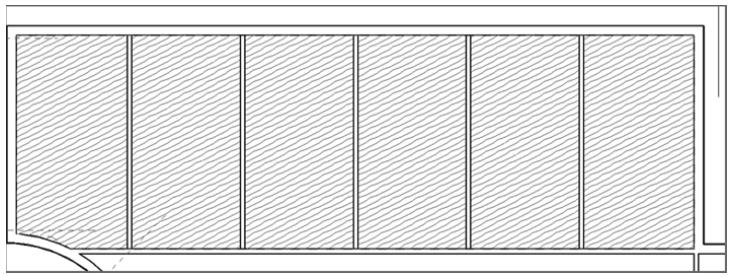


FIGURE 9.19: **The north row of rooms will receive cherry ceilings.**

Now that you have experience placing ceilings and creating custom ceiling systems, it's time to start adding features. The first items that come to mind are lighting fixtures, but you need to go back even further and figure out how to "cut holes" in the ceilings and add soffits.

Adding a Ceiling in Empty Space

Note that you can add a ceiling to a model even if there are no walls defining an enclosed space. To do this, start the Ceiling command in the typical manner by clicking the Ceiling button on the Architecture tab. When the Ceiling command starts, click the Sketch Ceiling button on the Ceiling tab, as shown in the following graphic. This will enable you to simply draft the ceiling boundaries.

Creating Ceiling Openings and Soffits

Unless you're in a residential dwelling, a prison, or a subway, you can look up and notice that a ceiling is merely serving as a host for electrical, mechanical, and architectural components. Seldom will you find a ceiling that doesn't require a modification in some capacity. This section of the chapter deals with this issue, starting with creating a ceiling opening.

Creating a Ceiling Opening

The objective of the next procedure is to cut an opening into a ceiling, into which you'll drop a soffit later:

1. Open the Level 1 ceiling plan.
2. Zoom into the wood ceilings in the west wing, as shown in Figure 9.20.
3. Select the ceiling in the northwest corner of the building, and click the Edit Boundary button.

TIP Ceilings can be difficult to select. If you hover your cursor over the perimeter of the ceiling, you'll see it highlight. If the wall or some other overlapping geometry highlights instead, tap the Tab key on your keyboard to filter through until you find the ceiling. When the ceiling highlights, pick it.

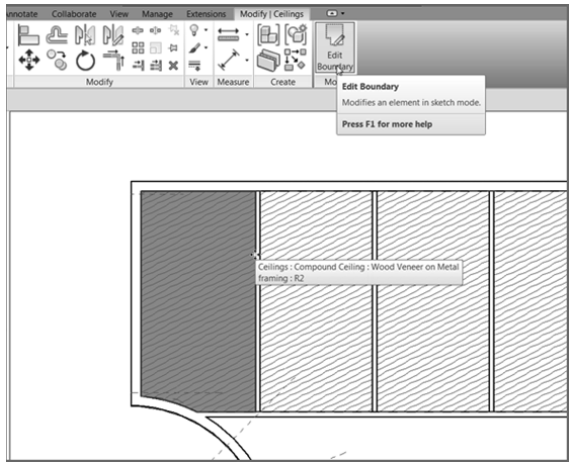


FIGURE 9.20: Clicking the Edit Boundary button on the Modify | Ceilings tab

4. Click the Ref Plane button on the Work Plane panel, as shown in Figure 9.21.

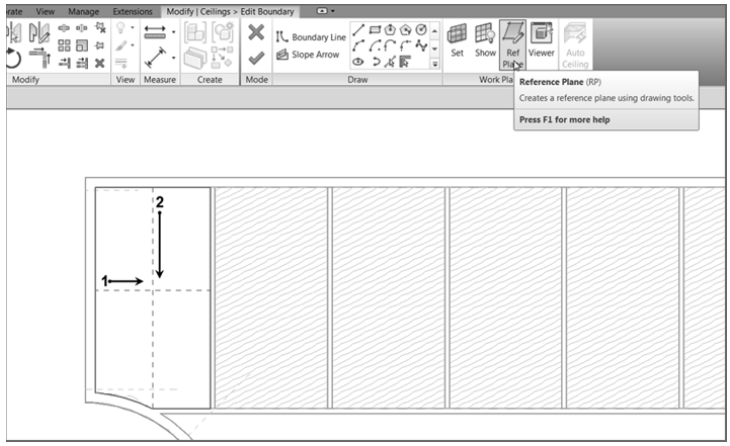


FIGURE 9.21: Drawing two reference planes to create a center intersection

5. Draw two reference planes (see Figure 9.21). Be sure to snap to the midpoints of the magenta sketch lines.
6. Press Esc a couple of times or click Modify to clear the Ref Plane command.
7. On the Draw panel, click the Boundary Line button. You see an expanded list of sketch choices. Pick the Circle choice, as shown in Figure 9.22.

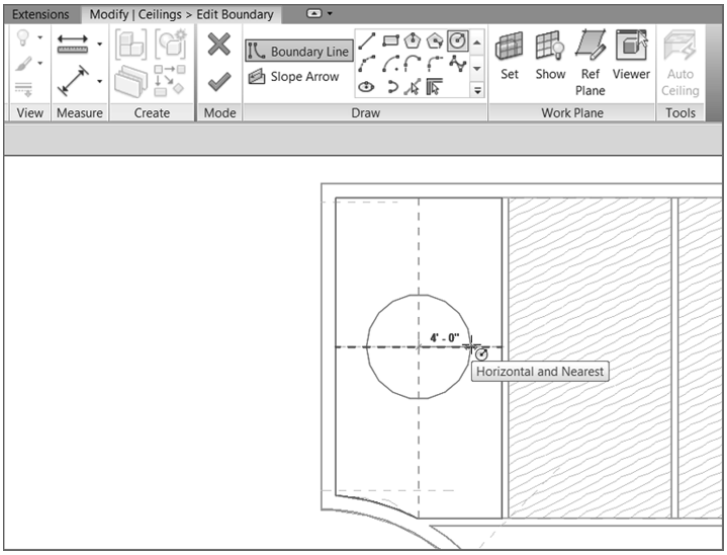


FIGURE 9.22: Sketching a 4′–0″ (1200 mm) radius circle

8. Draw a 4′–0″ (1200 mm) radius circle at the intersection of the reference planes (see Figure 9.22).
9. On the Mode panel, click Finish Edit Mode.
10. Verify that your ceiling looks like Figure 9.23.

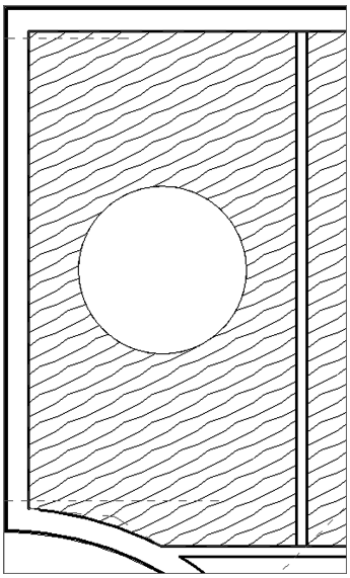


FIGURE 9.23: There's a hole in my ceiling!

With the cutout in place, you need to think about closing this feature with a soffit and, perhaps, another ceiling.

Creating a Soffit

Soffits are nothing more than walls with a base offset. This makes sense if you think about it. If your floor level moves, you certainly want the distance from the finish floor to the bottom of the soffit to remain consistent. This one is going to be easy! Here are the steps:

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Wall button.
2. In the Type Selector, select Basic Wall : Interior – 3 1/8″ Partition (1-hr) (79 mm), as shown in Figure 9.24.

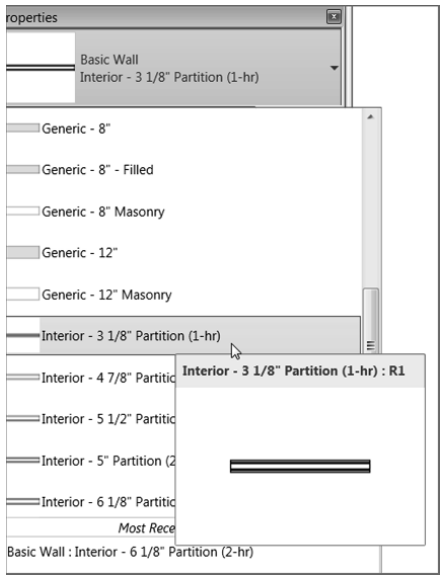


FIGURE 9.24: Basic Wall : Interior – 3 1/8″ Partition (1-hr) (79 mm)

3. In the Properties dialog box, set Base Offset to 14′–0″ (4200 mm), as shown in Figure 9.25.
4. Set Top Constraint to Up To Level: Level 3 (see Figure 9.25).

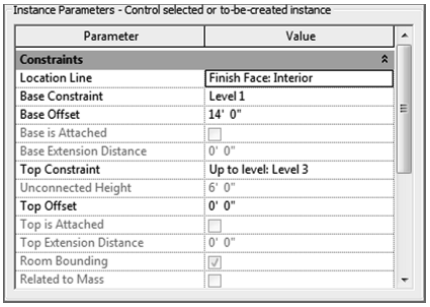


FIGURE 9.25: Setting Top Constraint and Base Offset

You're now ready to place the soffit. You'll add it to the radial hole in the ceiling. If you had nothing to guide you, you would need to draw the wall physically by using the Arc Sketch function. In this case, you can simply pick the radial portion of the ceiling opening.

1. With the Wall command still running, click the Pick Lines icon on the Draw panel.
2. Mouse over the radial ceiling opening. A blue alignment line appears. Make sure it's to the inside of the opening, and then press the Tab key twice.
3. The entire circle is selected, and the blue alignment line is facing the inside of the hole (see Figure 9.26). When you see this, pick a point to the inside of the hole.

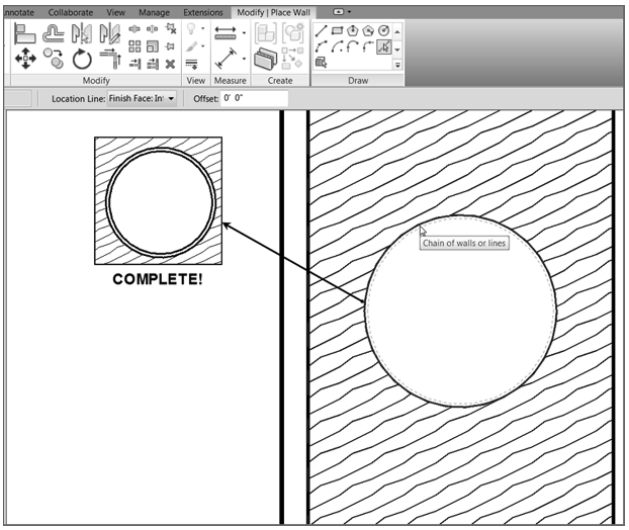


FIGURE 9.26: Creating one cool soffit

4. Press Esc twice, or click Modify.

Your soffit is complete.

Next you'll add a secondary ceiling to the inside of the soffit. This procedure is carried out exactly as it was when you added a ceiling to the entire room.

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 ceiling plan, and zoom in on the ceiling with the soffit if you aren't there already.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Ceiling button.
3. Select Compound Ceiling : Wood Veneer On Metal Framing (if it isn't the current selection).
4. Click the Edit Type button.
5. Click Duplicate.
6. Call the new ceiling **Mahogany Veneer on Metal Framing**, and then click OK.
7. Click the Edit button in the Structure row.
8. Click in the bottom layer's (5) Material column, and click the […] button to change the material that is now Cherry, as shown in Figure 9.27.

Revit will allow you to add the wall only as a 180° arc. You'll need to pick each side of the circle to accomplish a full 360° soffit.

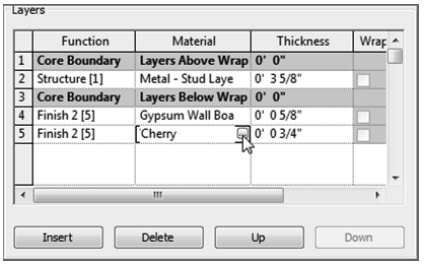


FIGURE 9.27: Click the button to change the material.

9. In the Material Browser, type **mahogany** in the search box, as shown in Figure 9.28.
10. Now that Mahogany is current, make sure you're on the Graphics tab, and make the values match Figure 9.29.

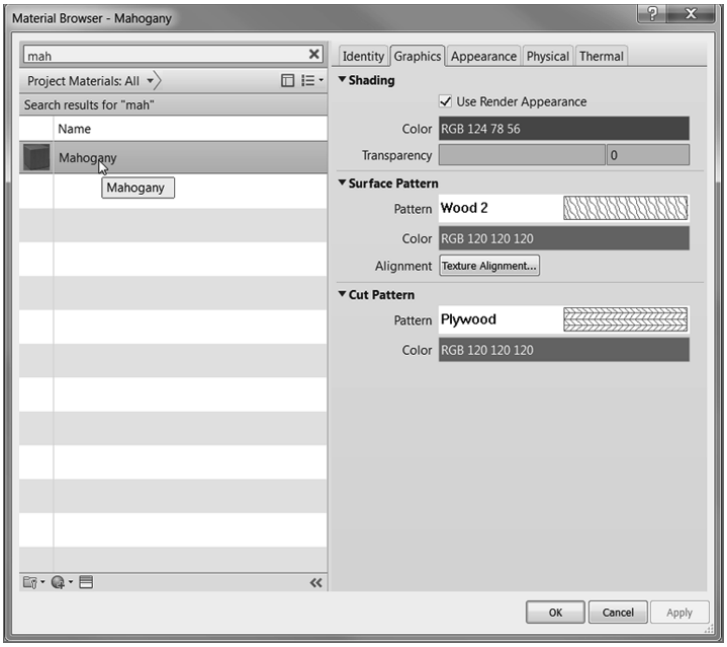


FIGURE 9.28: Adding a new material to the project

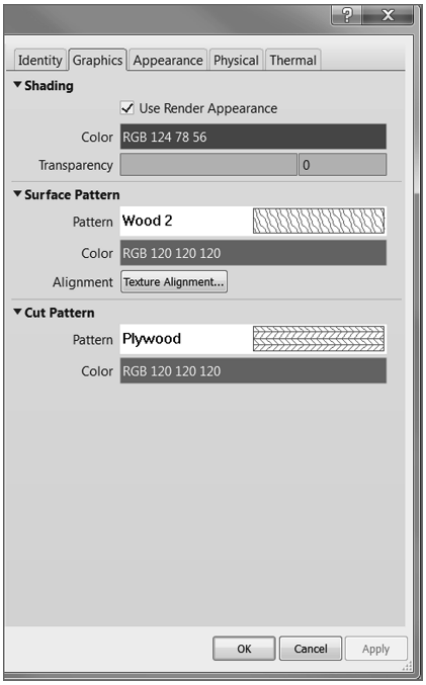


FIGURE 9.29: Making mahogany

11. Click OK twice.
12. Click OK one more time to get back to the model.
13. In the Properties dialog box, change Height Offset From Level to 14′–1″ (4225 mm).
14. Place the ceiling inside the soffit. Press Esc, or click Modify.

You need to adjust your plan region. It has to be set so the cut plane is either below or equal to 14′–1″ (4225 mm) so you can see the lower ceiling.

1. Pick the dotted rectangle surrounding the rooms. This is the plan region.
2. On the Modify | Plan Region tab, click the View Range button.
3. Change the Offset value for the cut plane to 14′–1″ (4225 mm).
4. Click OK.

Your ceiling plan should look like Figure 9.30.

You won't be able to see the ceiling at the lower elevation, so stop picking in the middle of the circle! As a matter of fact, if you picked inside the circle more than once, undo back to the point before you started picking in the circle—you probably have several overlapping ceilings.

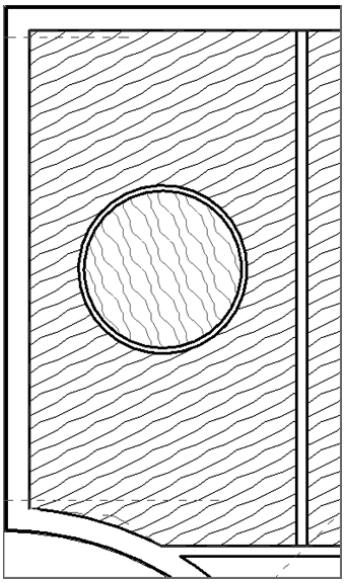
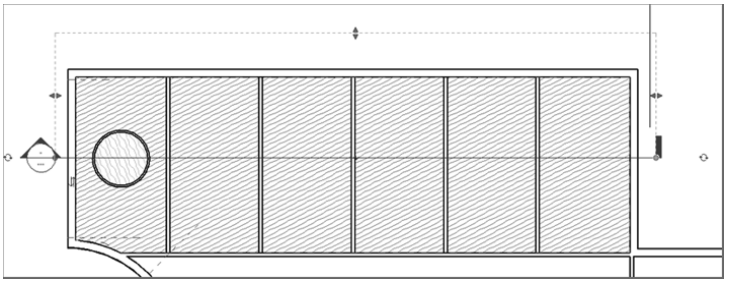


FIGURE 9.30: The completed ceiling

Never Assume Anything!

They say you should never assume anything, and in this case "they" are right! Let's add a section through this entire row of rooms to gain a perspective on what is going on here.

1. **On the View tab, click the Section button.**
2. **Cut a horizontal section through the entire side of the building, as shown here:**



3. **Select the section if it isn't still selected.**
4. **In the Properties dialog box, change Detail Level to Fine.**
5. **Change the name to Section at West Training. (Yes, these are eventually going to be training rooms.)**
6. **Open the new section. You now have a clear perspective of what is going on with this area.**

You're getting there with this ceiling, that's for sure! The only task left is to add some light fixtures.

Adding Light Fixtures to Ceilings

Adding lighting fixtures to a Revit Architecture model isn't a difficult task, but you must follow a few guidelines to achieve success in installing lighting. For example, you must work with the Ribbon to find a face in which to insert the component:

1. Go to the Level 1 ceiling plan where you've been adding the wood ceilings.

2. On the Architecture tab, click the Component button, as shown in Figure 9.31.

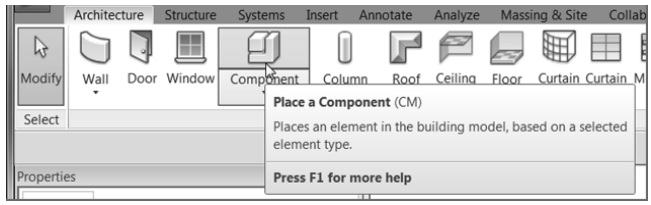


FIGURE 9.31: Click the Component button on the Architecture tab.

3. On the Mode panel of Modify | Place Component, click Load Family, and then browse to Lighting ➢ Architectural ➢ Internal ➢ Pendant Light – Disk.
4. Open the file `Pendant Light - Disk.rfa` (`M_Pendant Light - Disk.rfa`).
5. Place the light approximately in the center of the radial mahogany soffit (you'll have to move it in a second).
6. Press Esc twice.
7. Select the fixture.
8. Click the Move button.
9. Type SC (for Snap Center).
10. Pick a point in the center of the fixture.
11. Type SC again.
12. Hover your cursor over one of the inside radial walls. A center snap appears. Pick the radial wall. Your fixture should snap to the center of the soffit (see Figure 9.32).

NOTE There are no snaps when you're trying to place most components. You'll have to place the fixture and then move it into position. Needless to say, this is an extra step.

13. Open the section called Section At West Training. Notice that the light fixture is in the exact location where you expect it to be.

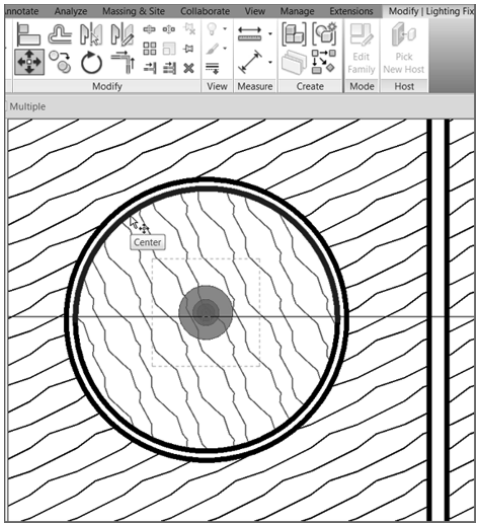


FIGURE 9.32: Moving the fixture to the correct location

14. Select the fixture.
15. Click the Copy button on the Modify Lighting Fixtures tab.
16. On the Options bar, be sure the Multiple button is selected.
17. Copy the fixture 3′–0″ (900 mm) to the right and 3′–0″ (900 mm) to the left (see Figure 9.33).

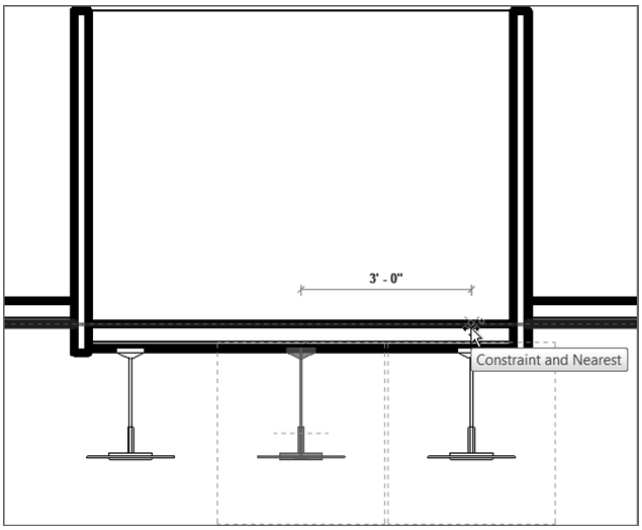
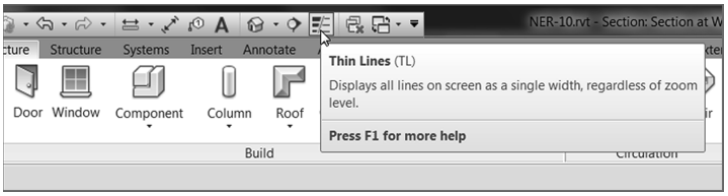


FIGURE 9.33: Copying the fixture in the section

The main point of having you open a section to copy the fixture is to illustrate that you're now in a full modeling environment. When you switch back to the plan, you'll see that the fixtures have been placed. In later chapters, you'll learn that the act of simply placing fixtures in the model will also add line items to schedules.

Yikes, This Isn't to Our Standards!

Yes, the default line thicknesses are hideous. For now, you can click the Thin Lines icon to scale back the thickness of the lines, as shown here:



Now let's make some more fixtures.

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 ceiling plan.
2. Zoom in on the radial soffit. You see the two new fixtures.
3. Select the right and left fixtures.
4. Click the Rotate command on the Modify | Lighting Fixtures tab.
5. On the Options bar, make sure Copy is selected.
6. Rotate the fixtures 90° to create a total of five fixtures, as shown in Figure 9.34.

NOTE Notice that the fixtures overlap the gypsum soffit. This is because you're actually standing on Level 1 looking up. Revit Architecture has finally taken the confusion out of the reflected ceiling-plan mystery.

Now that you have experience dealing with ceilings, let's start working on some interior design. Ceilings are a part of this, but what about wall treatments, trims, and architectural millwork? These items will be covered in the next section.

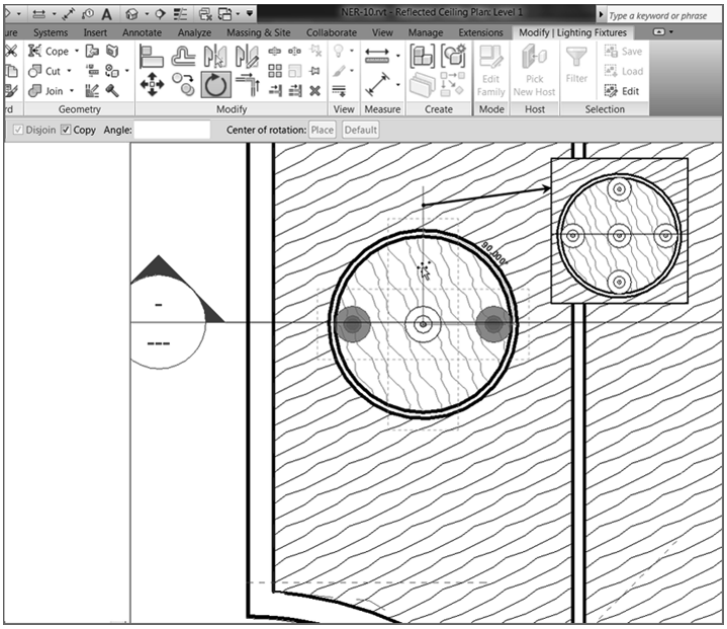


FIGURE 9.34: You're now copying and rotating as if you were in flat, 2D Autodesk® AutoCAD® software.

Adding Interior Design

Congratulations! You've arrived at possibly the most difficult subject when it comes to 3D modeling. Why is that? Well, for starters, this is the area where nothing is easy in terms of shape, configuration, and, for some projects, the sheer amount of millwork and detail. For example, suppose you want a crown molding at the ceiling where it intersects the walls. And suppose you need the same crown at the radial soffit. Of course, the floors and walls aren't the same material, and you need to add furniture as well.

I can go on and on listing the complications you'll face here, so let's just jump in. The first part of the process is adding plumbing fixtures and furniture.

Adding Plumbing Fixtures and Furniture

To begin, you'll have to knock out the less glamorous, but all too important, task of adding bathroom fixtures.

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan (floor plan, not ceiling plan).

2. Zoom in on the lavatory area, and turn off the thin lines mode, as shown in Figure 9.35.

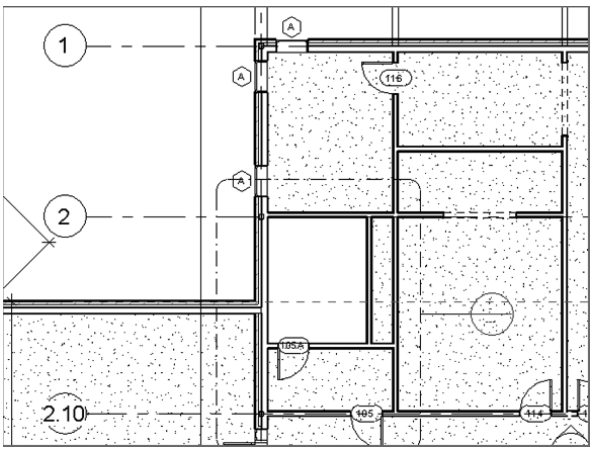


FIGURE 9.35: The lavatory area

3. As you can see, there is a callout of this area. Double-click the callout bubble to open the view called Typical Men's Lavatory.

NOTE Now that you're more experienced with Revit, you can see the benefit of having named this view something understandable at this stage in the game.

4. With the Typical Men's Lavatory view opened, you can start adding fixtures. On the Insert tab, click the Load Family button.
5. In the `Imperial Library` (or `Metric`) directory, browse to the `Plumbing/Architectural/Fixtures/Water Closets/` folder.
6. Select the file called `Toilet-Commercial-Wall-3D.rfa` (`M_Toilet-Commercial-Wall-3D.rfa`), and click Open.
7. Go to the Architecture tab, and click the Component button.
8. If you see a dialog box asking whether you want to load a plumbing fixture tag, click No.
9. In the Type Selector, make sure the 15″ Seat Height (380 mm Seat Height) toilet is selected.

10. Place it along the north wall approximately 6″ (150 mm) from the west wall, as shown in Figure 9.36.

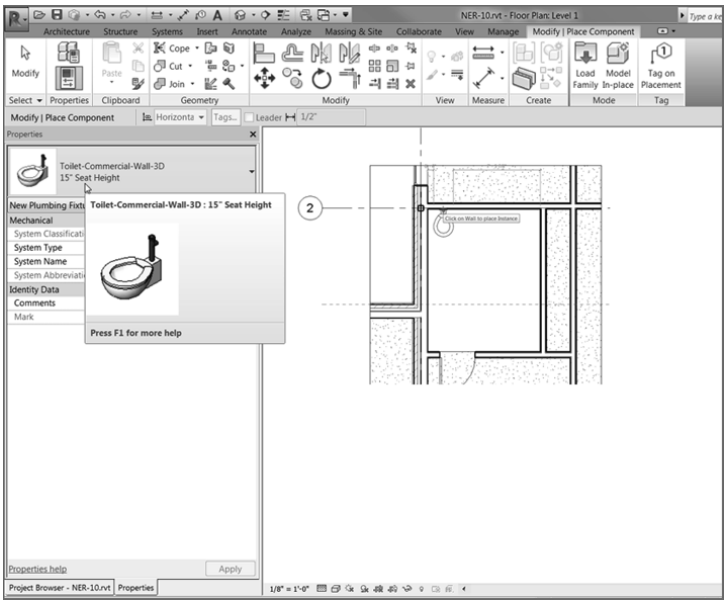


FIGURE 9.36: Placing the 15″ (380 mm) Seat Height toilet 6″ (150 mm) from the west wall, along the north wall

Because you're not designing a military barracks from the 1960s, you need some stalls. Unfortunately, Revit doesn't provide any stalls out of the box, but this book you bought does! To add toilet stalls to the model, go to the book's web page at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there, you can browse to the `Chapter 9` folder and find these files:

- `Toilet Stall-Accessible-Front-3D.rfa`
- `Toilet Stall-Accessible-Side-3D.rfa`
- `Toilet Stall-Braced-3D.rfa`
- `Grab Bar.rfa`
- `Double Sink - Round.rfa`

Download the files to the location where you keep all your Revit families. Then, follow along with the procedure:

1. On the Insert tab, click Load Family.

2. Browse to the location where the new families are kept and select the new files; then click Open. They're loaded into your project.
3. On the Architecture tab, click the Place A Component button.
4. Select Toilet-Stall-Accessible-Front-3D 60″ × 60″ Clear.
5. Pick the corner of the bathroom, as shown in Figure 9.37.

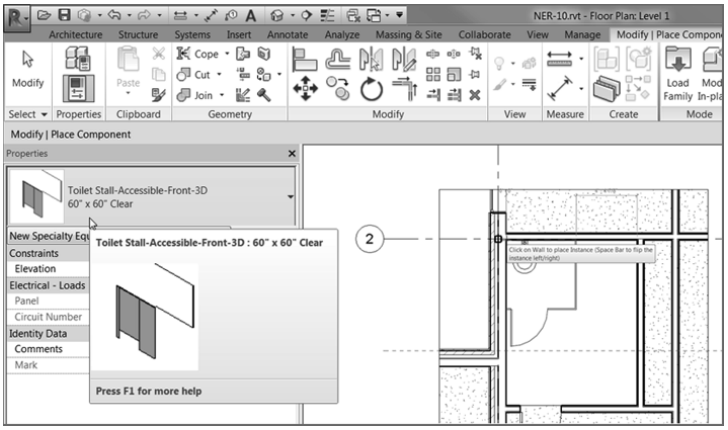


FIGURE 9.37: Placing the accessible stall

TIP If you're having difficulty placing the stall directly in the corner, place it at any location along the north wall and then move it to the corner so that it looks like the figure.

The next step is to copy the toilet and add another stall. It would be nice if the family just fit, but this isn't a perfect world!

1. Copy the toilet to the right 6′–2 1⁄2″ (1862 mm).
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Place A Component button.
3. Select Toilet Stall – Braced – 3D 59″ × 60″ Clear.
4. Click Edit Type.
5. Click Duplicate.
6. Name the new stall type **54″ × 60″ Clear (1350 × 1500 mm Clear)**. Set the width to **4′–6″ (1350** mm), and click OK.

7. Place the stall in the model (see Figure 9.38).

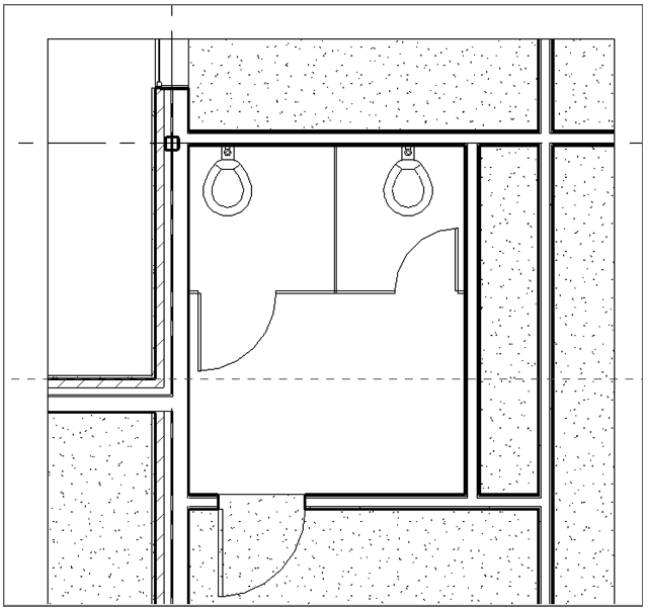


FIGURE 9.38: The two toilets and stalls in place

TIP You may have to press the spacebar as you place the stall to flip it into the correct position. Again, if you're having difficulty placing the stall directly in the corner, you can place it along the north wall at any location and then either align or move the stall into the correct position.

With the toilets and the stalls in place, you need to add a grab bar to the accessible stall. Again, Revit doesn't provide this content. You need to either make this component yourself (this is covered in Bonus Chapter 2, "Creating Families") or use the one from the book that you downloaded with the bathroom stalls.

To add a grab bar, follow these steps:

1. Zoom in on the accessible stall, as shown in Figure 9.39.
2. Click the Place A Component button.
3. Select Grab Bar 4′–0″ (1200 mm) Length.
4. Place the grab bar along the wall (see Figure 9.39).

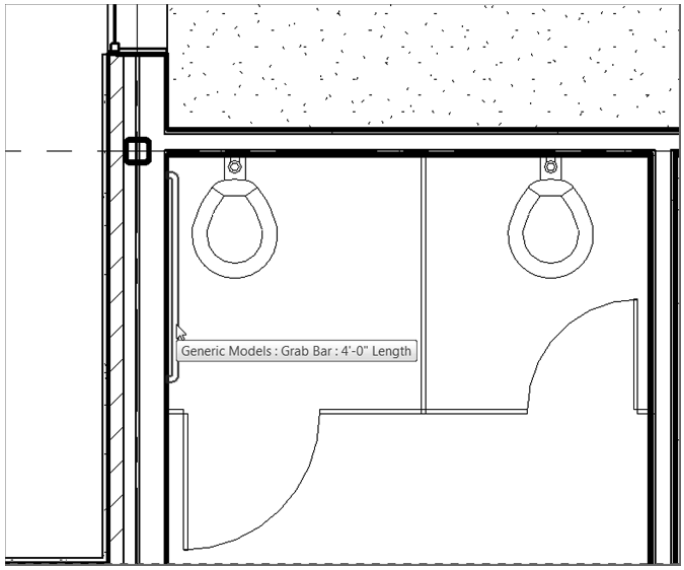


FIGURE 9.39: Adding the grab bar family to the wall

NOTE As you place the grab bar, it will look like it's going to be embedded into the studs of the wall. Don't worry. After you pick the point where you want the grab bar, it will move to the finished face of the wall.

NOTE Remember, although it kind of feels like you're just sticking blocks into your model, these are all 3D parametric parts. This grab bar, for all you know, is 6′–0″ above the ground or sitting on the floor. To adjust this, you don't have to cut a section or go to a 3D view. You can simply select the grab bar and, in the Properties dialog box, set Elevation to 2′–0″.

Because you're in the men's room, you need to add some urinals. You can fit two before you start getting too close to the sink area and the guy standing next to you.

1. On the Insert tab, click the Load Family button.
2. Browse to Plumbing Fixtures ➢ Architectural ➢ Urinals.
3. Select the file called `Urinal-Wall-3D.rfa` (`M_Urinal-Wall-3D.rfa`).
4. Click Open.

5. Click the Component button, and place two urinals about 6″ (150 mm) away from the front of the stall, with a 1′–0″ (300 mm) space between the two, as shown in Figure 9.40.

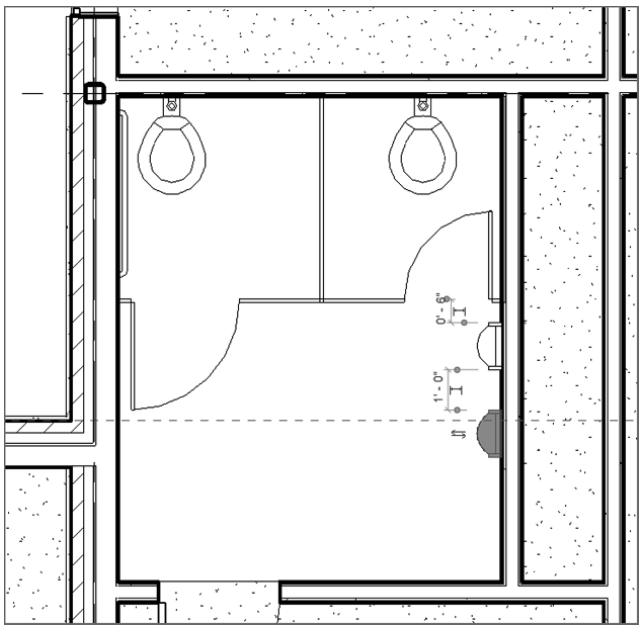


FIGURE 9.40: Adding the urinals to the men's room

What a relief to get those urinals in! The next step is to install a sink with two stations in the bathroom. To do this, you can use the double sink you loaded from the book's website.

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Place A Component button if it isn't still running.
2. In the Type Selector, find the family called Double Sink – Round 24″ Depth (Double Sink – Round 600 mm Depth).
3. Place it in the corner, as shown in Figure 9.41.
   If your door is 12″ (300 mm) from the left wall, then you have a problem, don't you? Luckily, you're using an application that allows you to stretch a component dynamically.
4. Select the sink.

◀

Of course, the sink comes in at the wrong rotation. By now you know that you can tap the spacebar three times to orient the sink in the correct direction.

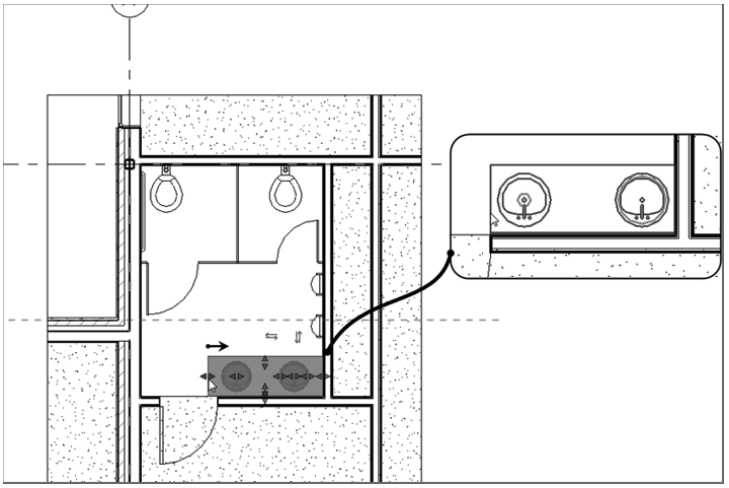


FIGURE 9.41: Placing the double sink

5. Click the leftmost stretch grip, and slide the sink to be flush with the door opening (see Figure 9.41).

The women's room is the same size, and it will have two stalls and a sink. Create the mirrored layout shown in Figure 9.42.

If you mirror the stalls, they will go haywire. You'll need to add them separately.

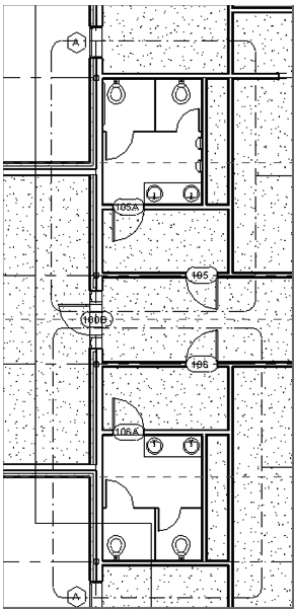


FIGURE 9.42: Completing the women's room

With the first-floor bathrooms done, let's move to some of the actual rooms and offices to furnish them. The first thing you need to do is add lighting to the ceilings.

Adding Parabolic Troffers

As you're starting to see, the procedure for adding a component doesn't change based on the component you're adding. This is great news. Adding a troffer, however, is slightly different. You do need to be in a ceiling plan, and you do need to specify the face of the ceiling.

At this point, you may be good enough at adding these fixtures to simply look at the following figures and add the lights yourself. Or, if you desire a little help, follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 ceiling plan. (Notice that you're going to a ceiling plan, not a floor plan.)
2. Zoom in on the northwest corner of the east wing, as shown in Figure 9.43.

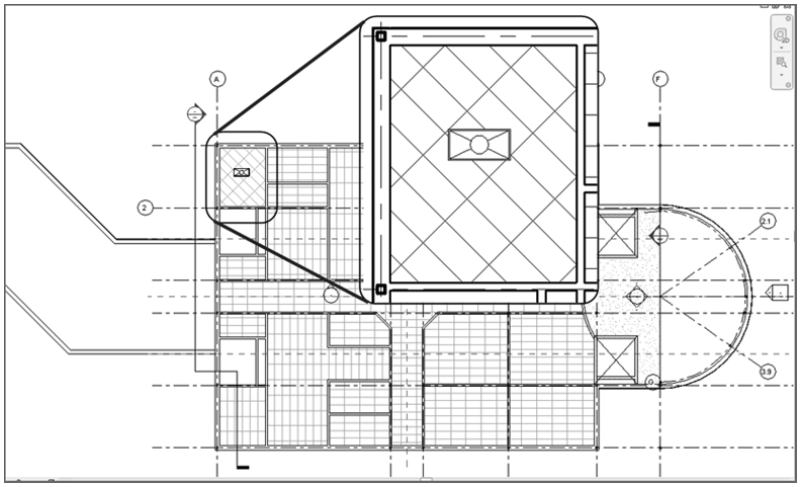


FIGURE 9.43: Placing a light in a ceiling. You'll align it to the grid in a moment.

3. On the Insert tab, click the Load Family button.
4. Browse to the `Lighting Fixtures` folder.
5. Select the file called `Troffer Light - 2 × 4 Parabolic.rfa` (`M_Troffer Light Parabolic Rectangular.rfa`).

6. Click Open.
7. Click the Place A Component button; then place the fixture in your ceiling (see Figure 9.43).
8. Click the Align button on the Modify tab, as shown in Figure 9.44.

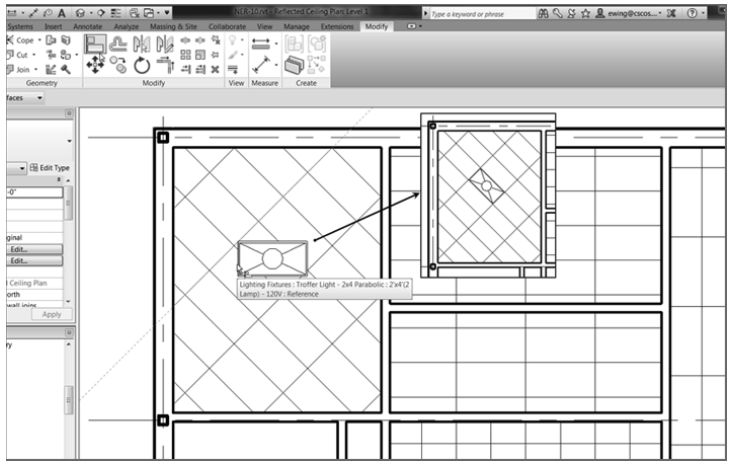


FIGURE 9.44: Aligning the fixture to the grid

9. Align the light fixture to the grid in both directions (see Figure 9.44).
10. Copy the light to the locations shown in Figure 9.45.

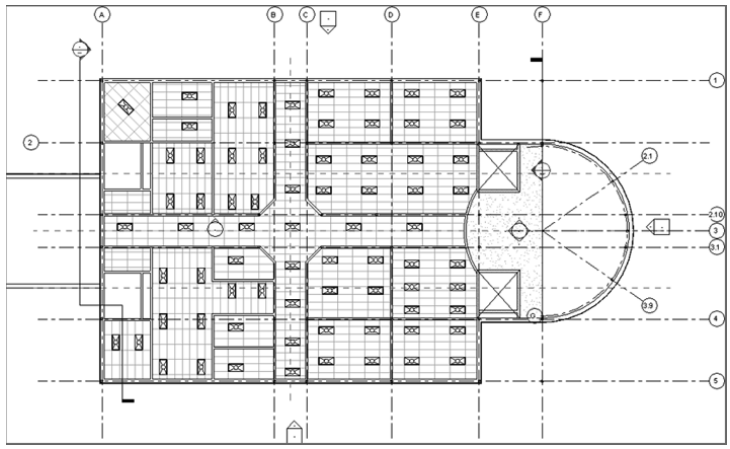


FIGURE 9.45: Adding lights to the rest of the ceilings

11. Add lights to the rest of the rooms in the east wing, as shown in Figure 9.45. It's quickest to place a single light horizontally and one vertically, align them to the grids, and then make multiple copies.
12. In the Properties dialog box, click the View Range button.
13. Set the cut plane to 4′–0″ (1200 mm).

Next, you need to illuminate the corridors. This can be done by adding a set of wall-mounted sconces, as follows:

1. Browse to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. On the Insert tab, click Load Family.
3. Browse to the `Lighting/Architectural/Internal` folder.
4. Select the file called `Sconce Light - Uplight.rfa`. (`M_Sconce Light – Uplight.rfa`).
5. Add the sconce to the corridor wall, as shown in Figure 9.46.

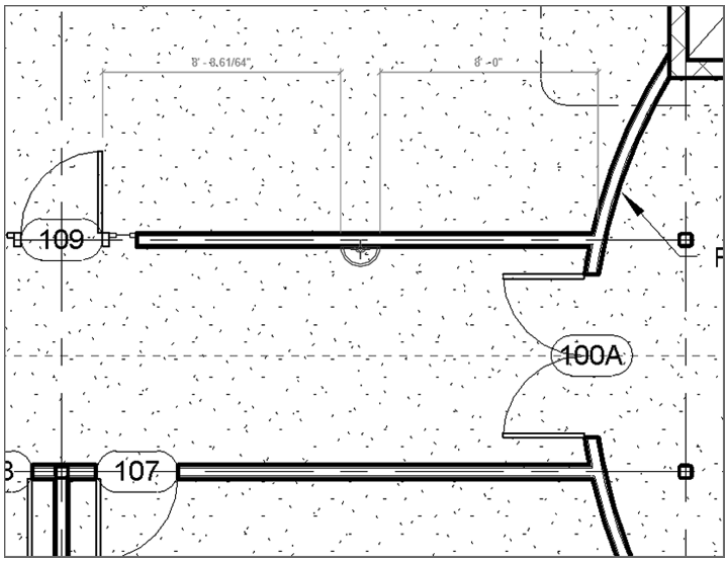


FIGURE 9.46: Adding a sconce

6. Add sconces to the walls of the hallways as appropriate, as shown in Figure 9.47.

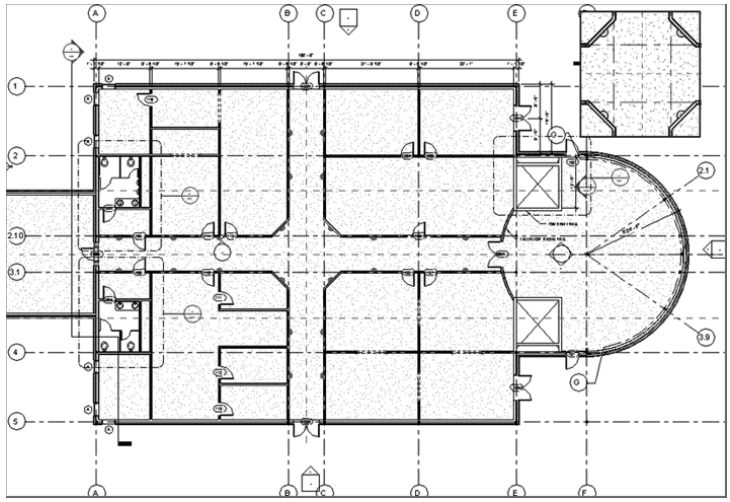


FIGURE 9.47: Copying the sconce to the other hallway walls

7. In the Project Browser, double-click the 3D view called East Wing Corridor Perspective. This gives you a good idea of how the up-lighting influences the corridor (see Figure 9.48).

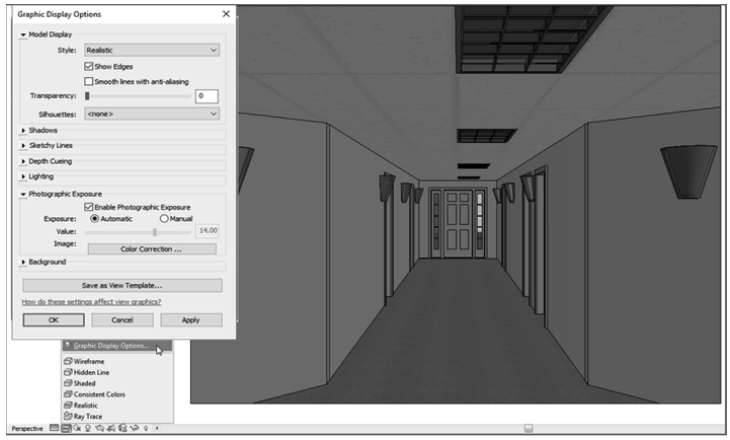


FIGURE 9.48: Looking at the hallway in a perspective view

8. On the View Control toolbar, click the Visual Style Icon, and choose the Graphic Display Options choice at the top of the dialog box, as shown in Figure 9.48.

9. For Photographic Exposure, check the Enabled box to turn on the exposure.

Well, that corridor is looking great! It's time now to begin looking into the offices and also to see whether you can complete a kitchen area.

Adding Casework and Furniture

Adding casework and furniture is the easiest part of this chapter—that is, if you like the casework and furniture that comes right out of the Revit box. Something tells me this isn't going to be adequate. For this chapter, you'll be using the out-of-the box items, but in Bonus Chapter 2, you'll make some custom millwork families.

To add some office furniture, follow these steps:

1. Select the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Zoom into the northeast corner office, as shown in Figure 9.49.

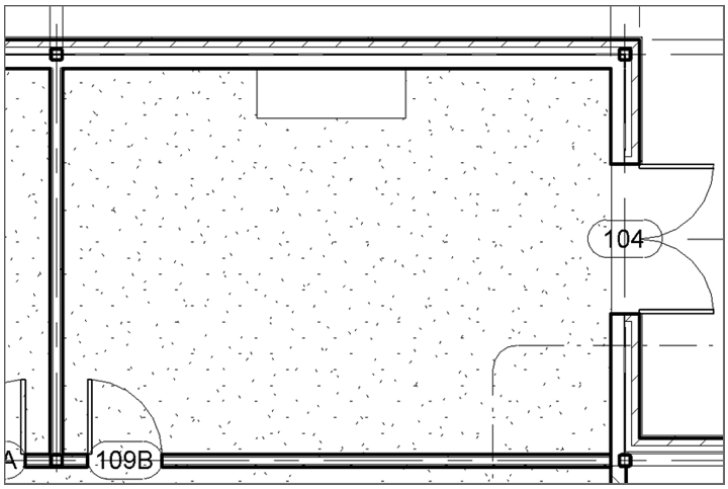


FIGURE 9.49: Placing the credenza desk into the first office

3. On the Insert tab, click the Load Family button.
4. Browse to the `Casework/Base Cabinets` folder, and select the following item: `Base Cabinet-4 Drawers.rfa` (`M_ Base Cabinet-4 Drawers.rfa`).

5. Browse to the `Furniture/Seating` folder, and open the following: `Chair-Executive.rfa` (`M_Chair-Executive.rfa`).
6. Browse to the `Furniture/Storage` folder, and open the following:
   - `Credenza.rfa` (`M_Credenza.rfa`)
   - `Entertainment Center.rfa` (`M_Entertainment Center.rfa`)
   - `Shelving.rfa` (`M_Shelving.rfa`)
7. Click the Place A Component button; then, in the Type Selector, select Credenza 72″ × 24″ (1830 × 610 mm).
8. Place the credenza desk into the room, as shown near the top of Figure 9.49.
9. On the Architecture tab, click the Place A Component button if the command isn't still running.
10. From the Type Selector, select Chair-Executive, and place it in front of the credenza, as shown in Figure 9.50.

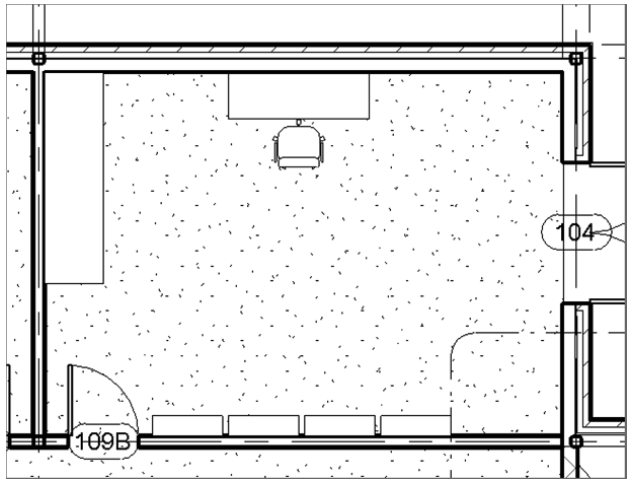


FIGURE 9.50: Adding furniture to the office

11. In the Type Selector, select Entertainment Center 96″ × 84″ × 30″ (2743 × 2134 × 762 mm) and place it in the corner (see Figure 9.50).

12. Place four 36″ (915 mm) shelving units across the south wall, as shown near the bottom of Figure 9.50.

At this point, it's a good idea to take a perspective shot of this office to see whether the space is developing the way you were envisioning. Although you may never put this perspective view onto a construction document, it's still a great idea to see what is going on.

1. On the View tab, select 3D View ➢ Camera.
2. Pick a point in the northeast corner.
3. Pick a second point beyond the southwest corner, as shown in Figure 9.51. The new view opens. You'll probably want to stretch the crop boundaries.

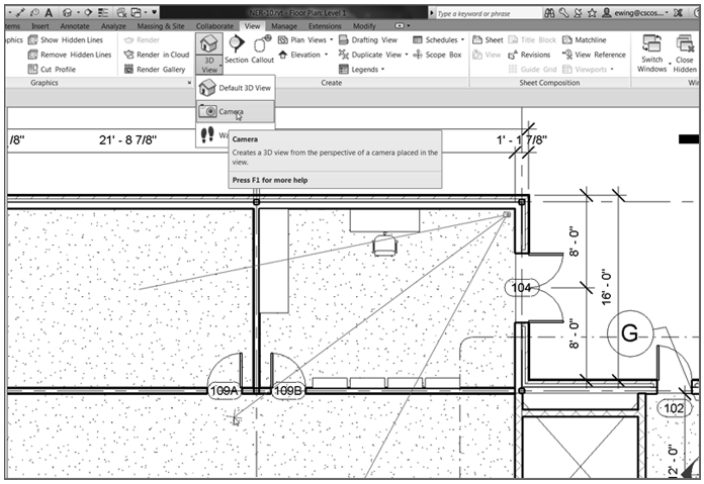


FIGURE 9.51: Adding a camera (perspective view) to the corner office

4. In the Project Browser, right-click the new 3D view, and call it **Perspective of Corner Office**.
5. See Figure 9.52 to get an idea of how to stretch the window to show more of the perspective.

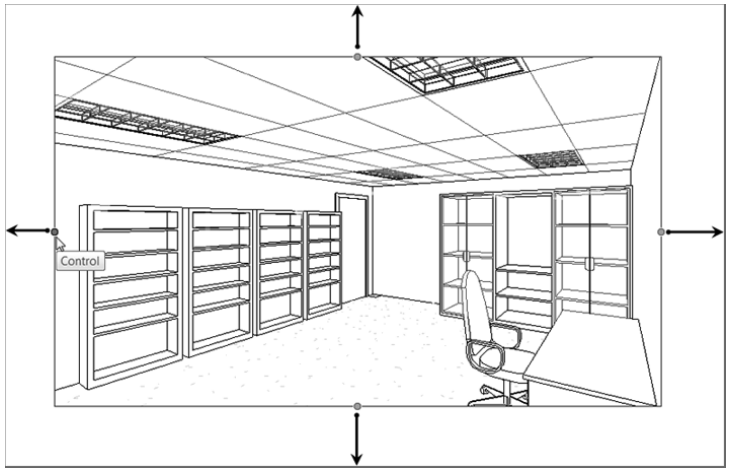


FIGURE 9.52: The perspective of the corner office. If your entertainment unit is backward, you'll have to go back to the plan to rotate it.

It's time for a kitchen! This is such a nice office that there seems to be a need for a break area right outside. You wouldn't want your esteemed executive to have to walk very far for a cup of coffee or a snack.

To get started, you'll load some countertops and cabinets.

1. On the Insert tab, click the Load Family button.
2. Browse to the `Casework` folder.
3. Load the following families. You'll have to choose from the appropriate folders in the `Casework` directory.
   - `Base Cabinet-2 Bin.rfa`
   - `Base Cabinet-Double Door & 2 Drawer.rfa`
   - `Base Cabinet-Double Door Sink Unit.rfa`
   - `Base Cabinet-Filler.rfa`
   - `Base Cabinet-Single Door & Drawer.rfa`
   - `Counter Top-L Shaped w Sink Hole 2.rfa`
   - `Upper Cabinet-Double Door-Wall.rfa`
4. Load the file `Corner Base Filler.rfa` from the `Chapter 9` directory on the book's website.
5. Open the Level 1 floor plan. Zoom in on the kitchen area, as shown in Figure 9.53.

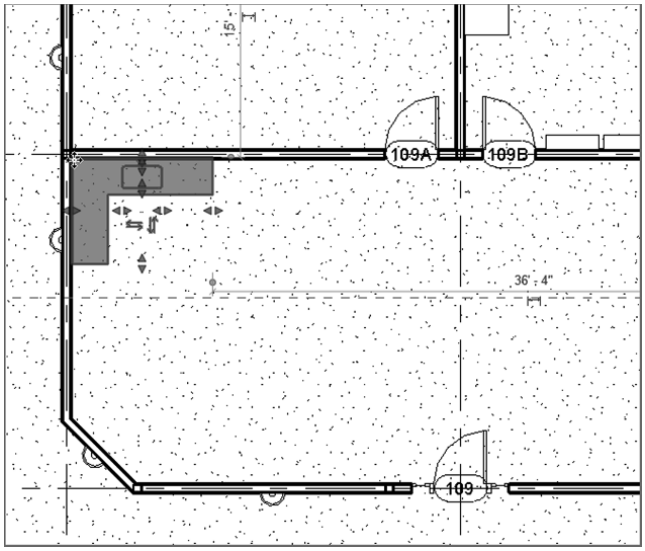


FIGURE 9.53: Adding the countertop

6. Add the countertop (see Figure 9.53).
7. Press Esc twice.
8. Select the countertop.
9. Select the stretch arrows, and stretch the leg of the counter to the end of the wall, as shown in Figure 9.54.

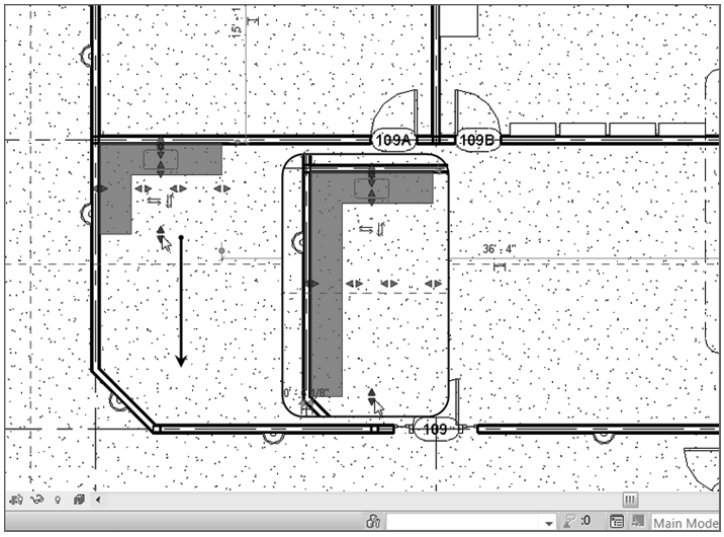


FIGURE 9.54: Lengthening the counter leg to meet the corner of the wall

10. Add the Base Cabinet-Double Door Sink Unit 30″ (900 mm) under the sink hole in the north leg of the counter.
11. Align the base unit under the sink.

You now have a counter and a sink base. The problem is that you have no idea how high these items are or what they really look like. That's OK—this is Revit. You just need to create two elevations for these items, as follows:

1. On the Create panel on the View tab, click the Elevation button.
2. Add an interior elevation looking north.
3. Select the elevation marker, and turn on the elevation looking west (see Figure 9.55).

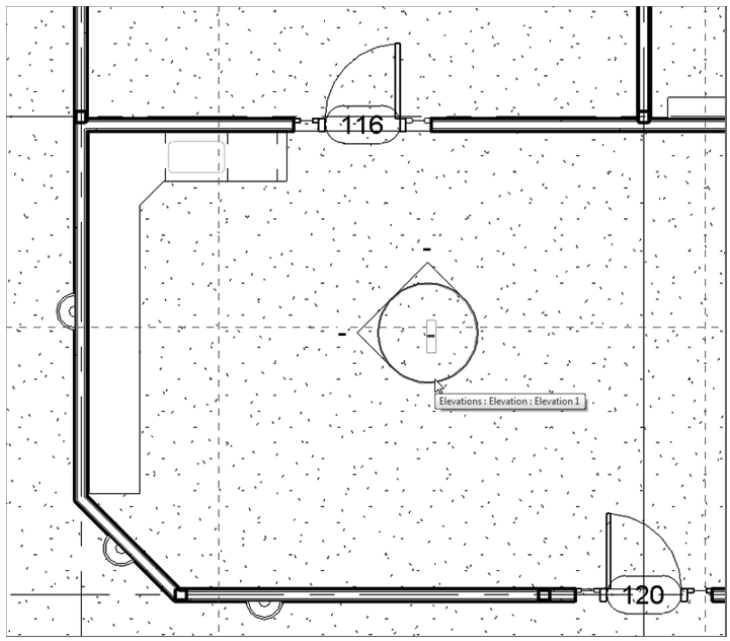


FIGURE 9.55: Adding elevations to aid in design

4. Rename the north elevation **Kitchen North**.
5. With the elevation marker still selected, click the check box to the west, and rename the west elevation **Kitchen West**.

With the elevations in, you can flip back and forth to make sure you're putting items in the right places and to get a good idea of how your cabinet run looks.

The remainder of the procedure involves adding the rest of the cabinets. Let's do it!

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Place A Component button.
2. From the Type Selector, select Base Cabinet – Single Door & Drawer 24″ (600 mm).
3. Place the base cabinet to the right of the sink cabinet.
4. Press Esc twice, or click Modify; then open the Kitchen North elevation. Does your elevation look like Figure 9.56?

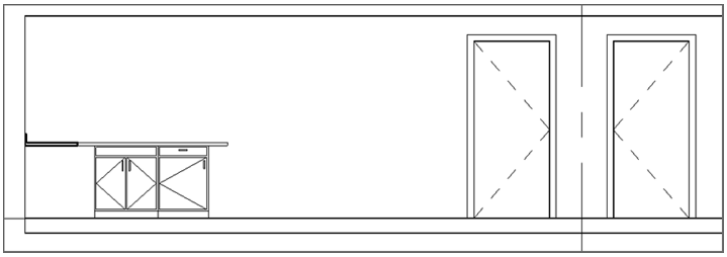


FIGURE 9.56: The elevation of the cabinet run

5. Go back to the Level 1 floor plan.
6. Place a Base Cabinet Double Door & 2 Drawer 36″ (900 mm) in the position shown in Figure 9.57.

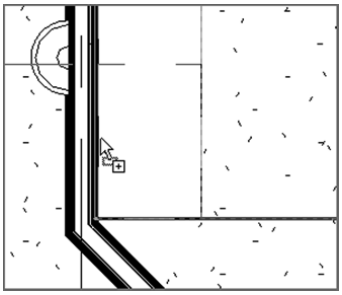


FIGURE 9.57: Placing the 36″ (900 mm) double-door, two-drawer base cabinet

7. Press Esc twice, or click Modify; then select the Kitchen West elevation.
8. Move the base cabinet so there is a 1″ (25 mm) counter overhang, as shown in Figure 9.58.

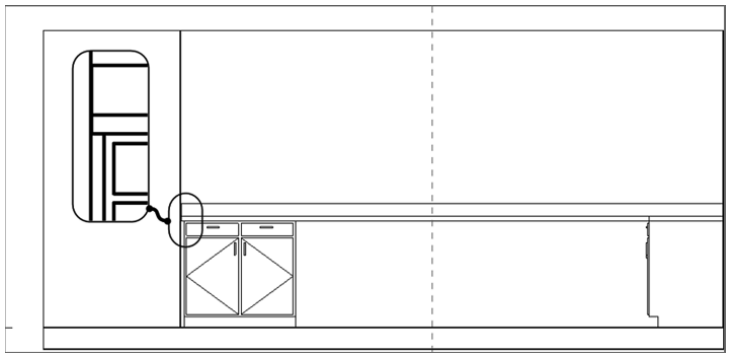


FIGURE 9.58: The 1″ (25 mm) overhang on the end

9. Copy the base cabinet to the right three times (four total cabinets), as shown in Figure 9.59.

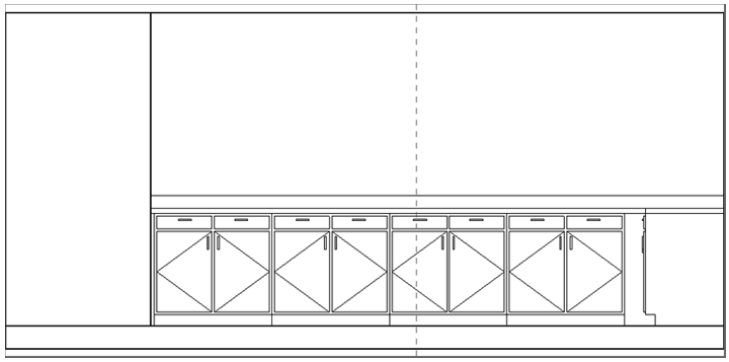


FIGURE 9.59: The base cabinet run

10. Go back to Level 1, and click the Place A Component button.
11. Find Corner Base Filler.
12. Place it in the model on the side of the base cabinet, as shown in Figure 9.60.

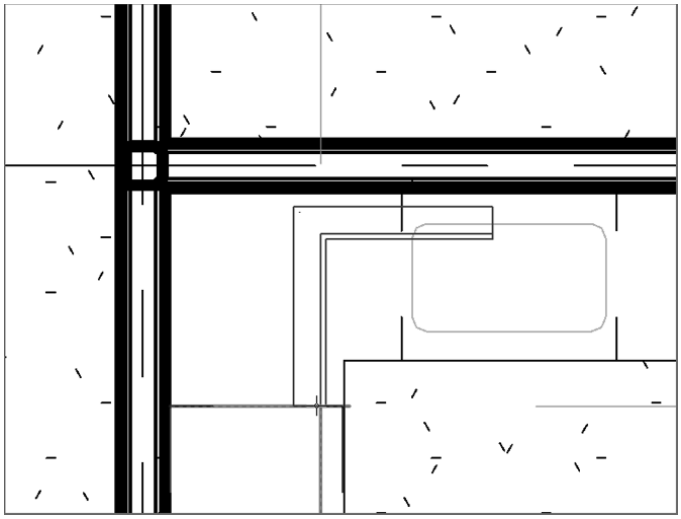


FIGURE 9.60: Adding the filler

13. Select the filler.
14. Stretch the grips until the filler resembles Figure 9.61.

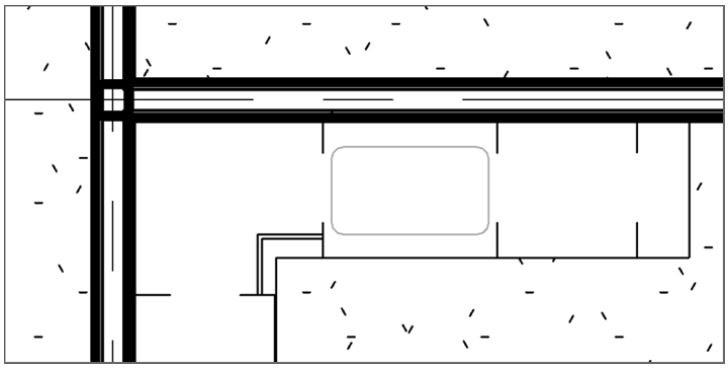


FIGURE 9.61: The completed corner

The bases are done! Let's add some wall cabinets to the kitchen.

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Place A Component button.
2. In the Type Selector, select Upper Cabinet-Double-Door-Wall 36″ (900 mm).

3. Place the wall cabinet in the model, as shown in Figure 9.62. (Don't worry too much about aligning it to the cabinet below. You'll align it in elevation.)

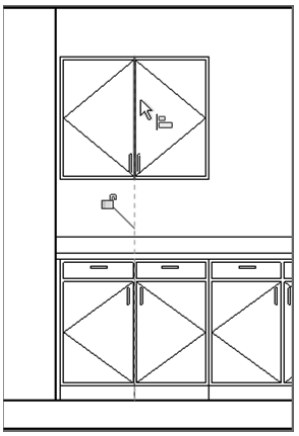


FIGURE 9.62: Adding the wall cabinet

4. Open the Kitchen West elevation.
5. Click the Align button on the Modify tab.
6. Align the wall cabinet to the base cabinet, as shown in Figure 9.63.

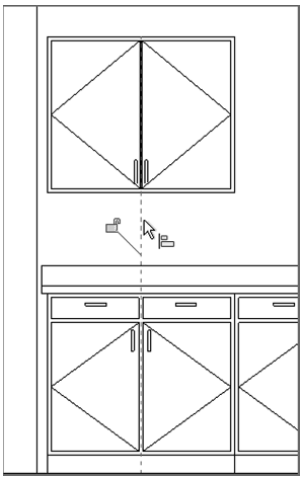


FIGURE 9.63: Aligning the wall to the base

7. Copy the wall cabinet to the right three times (for four total cabinets).
8. Save the model.

Your cabinets should look like Figure 9.64.

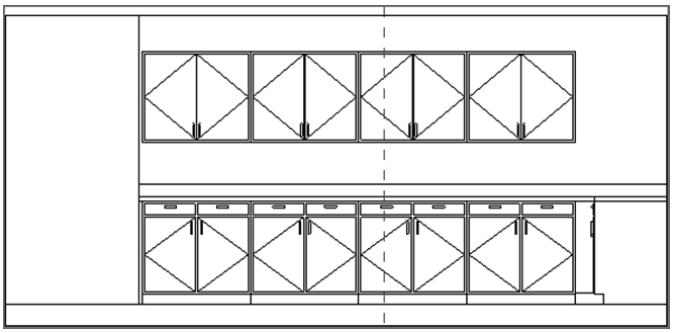


FIGURE 9.64: The finished west wall of the kitchen

Now that the kitchen is in place, it would be nice to add a tile floor only to that area. You can accomplish this without having to add extra floors to the model. You can simply split the face of the floor that is already there and add an additional material.

Adding Alternate Floor Materials

Carpeting doesn't perform well in kitchens. This is information you already know. What you don't know is how to add tile to a carpeted floor system without having to cut the existing floor and start piecing in sections of alternate materials. That's what you'll learn to do in this section.

Separating the Floor

You have a floor area targeted for a new material, and the following procedure guides you through the steps:

1. Open the Level 1 floor plan. Click the Split Face button on the Modify tab, as shown in Figure 9.65.

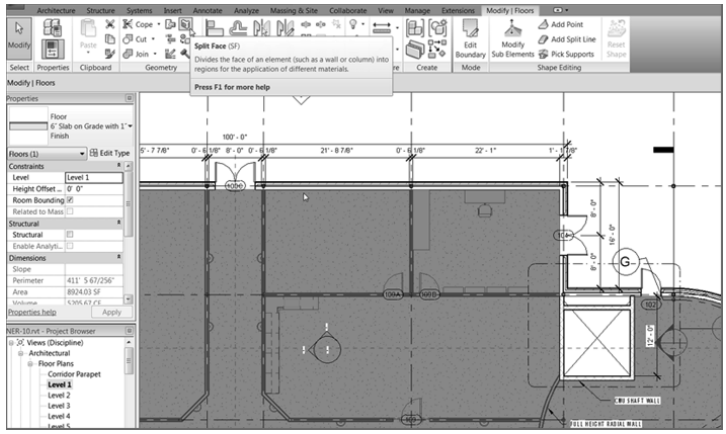


FIGURE 9.65: Clicking the Split Face button and selecting the slab edge

2. Select the entire floor. This may require finding the edge of the floor along an exterior wall (see Figure 9.65).
3. Click the Line button on the Draw panel. Draw a continuous line around the kitchen, as shown in Figure 9.66.

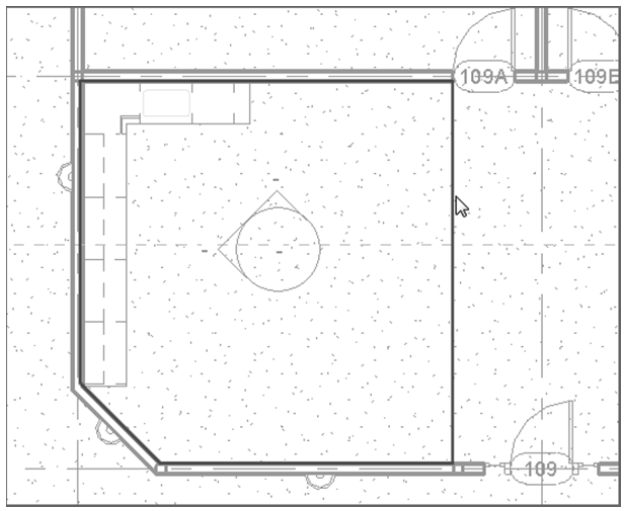


FIGURE 9.66: Drawing the perimeter of the alternate floor material

4. On the Modify | Split Face ➢ Create Boundary tab, click Finish Edit Mode.

NOTE **Remember, you can't have any overlapping lines or gaps while adding your magenta sketch lines.**

Although it doesn't seem like it, you have split the kitchen from the rest of the floor. Next, you'll apply a material to the kitchen. The first step will be to create a suitable material to use.

Creating a Tile Material

There is one tile material in this model, but it would be beneficial to create a new one with 12″ (300 mm) square tiles. This procedure takes the place of using hatching in a conventional drafting situation.

Follow these steps to create a new material:

1. On the Manage tab, click the Materials button, as shown in Figure 9.67.

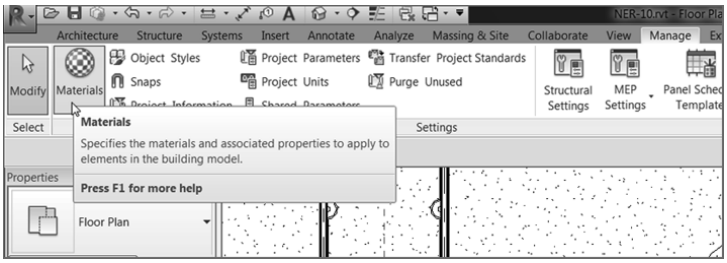


FIGURE 9.67: **Clicking the Materials button on the Manage tab**

2. In the Material Browser, type **tile** in the search field at the top of the dialog box, as shown in Figure 9.68; scroll down and select Tile, Porcelain, 4in (100 mm).
3. In the Material Editor, click Use Render Appearance under Shading, as shown in Figure 9.69. Click Done, and then click OK.

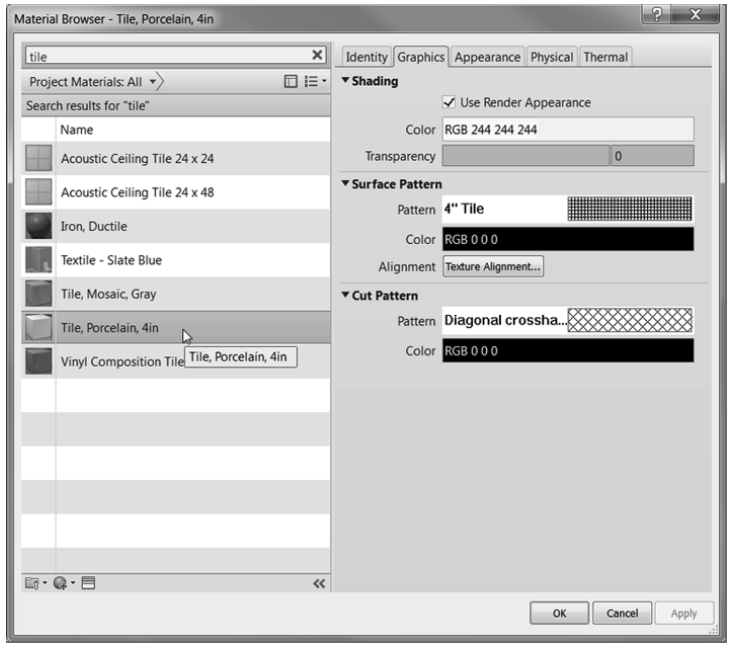


FIGURE 9.68: Grabbing some sweet tile

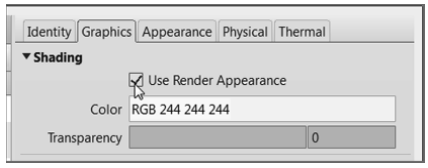


FIGURE 9.69: Mapping out the rendering and the shading appearance

The new material is locked, loaded, and ready to spill onto the floor! To do this, you'll paint to apply the new material to the kitchen. Follow these steps:

1. Click the Paint button on the Geometry panel of the Modify tab, as shown in Figure 9.70.

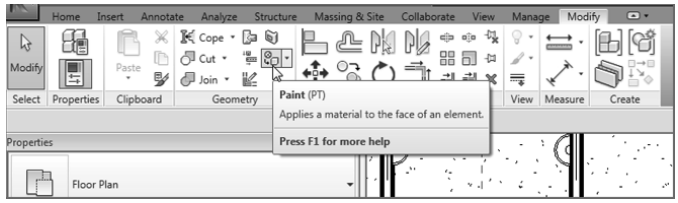


FIGURE 9.70: The Paint button

2. Select Tile, Porcelain, 4in from the Material Class drop-down list, as shown in Figure 9.71.

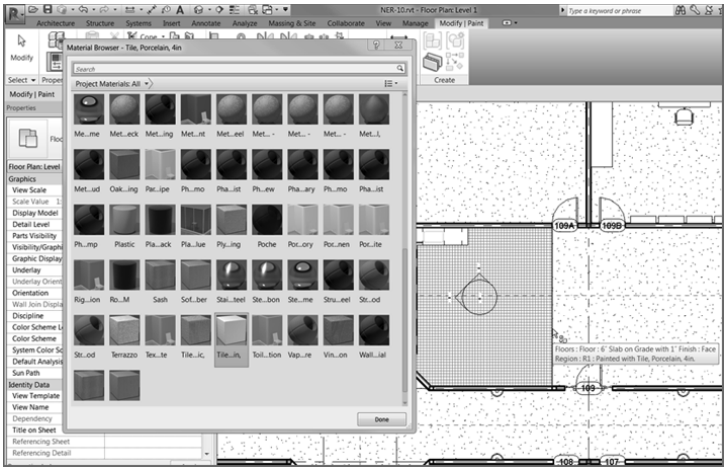


FIGURE 9.71: Selecting porcelain tile

3. Place your paint icon over the edge of the kitchen floor until the region becomes highlighted.
4. Pick the floor. Your new tile appears. Click OK in the Materials dialog box.

Phew! You're gaining a good amount of experience in terms of adding components and making the interior of the building conform to your design. If you think about it, you've done nothing here that is out of the ordinary. You're simply replacing everyday drafting routines with modeling routines. What a way to go!

Because there is quite a bit of building left, go ahead and load up this model with components. If you get stuck anywhere, go back and find the procedure that pertains to your problem.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ add ceilings to a room as well as create new ceilings and modify them to suit your needs
- ✔ transfer ceilings from other projects by using the Transfer Project Standards function
- ✔ add soffits to your model by using a typical wall and offsetting the base
- ✔ create a plan region so you can see elements at different elevations without disturbing the rest of the view
- ✔ add components such as bathroom fixtures, office furniture, and lighting to your model
- ✔ create subregions in which to specify alternate flooring, thus allowing you to avoid hatching

CHAPTER 10

Stairs, Ramps, and Railings

A whole chapter just for stairs, ramps, and railings? You bet! If you think about it, there could be hundreds of combinations of stair and railing systems. As a matter of fact, you seldom see two sets of stairs that are exactly the same. Kind of like snowflakes, aren't they? OK, they're nothing like snowflakes! But you get the point.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- **Creating stairs by using the Rise/Run function**
- **Creating a winding staircase**
- **Creating a custom railing system**
- **Creating custom stairs**
- **Adding ramps**

Creating Stairs by Using the Rise/Run Function

To begin, this chapter will address the makings of a staircase—from commercial stairs to those with a more residential feel with wood members, balusters, and spindles. During this procedure, you'll see how the Autodesk® Revit® Architecture software brings stairs together. After you create a common staircase, you'll move on to winding stairs, custom railings, and, of course, ramps.

Before you begin, I should mention that there are some stair-related features (or lack of features) in Revit you'll love and some you won't. As you create the stairs, keep in mind that Revit can't always provide enough functionality to re-create every type of stair you may encounter.

NOTE Throughout this book, you'll have the opportunity to download custom families from the book's website.

In this section, you'll focus on creating a staircase by using the traditional Rise/Run method. Then I'll discuss modifying the boundary of the stairs, which allows you to create a more unusual shape than that provided out of the box.

NOTE Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit will not accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.

To begin, open the file you've been using to follow along. If you didn't complete Chapter 9, "Ceilings and Interiors," go to the book's web page at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there you can browse to the `Chapter 10` folder and find the file called `NER-10.rvt`.

The objective of the following procedure is to create a staircase using the Rise/Run method:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 2 floor plan.
2. Zoom in on the radial entry in the east wing, as shown in Figure 10.1.

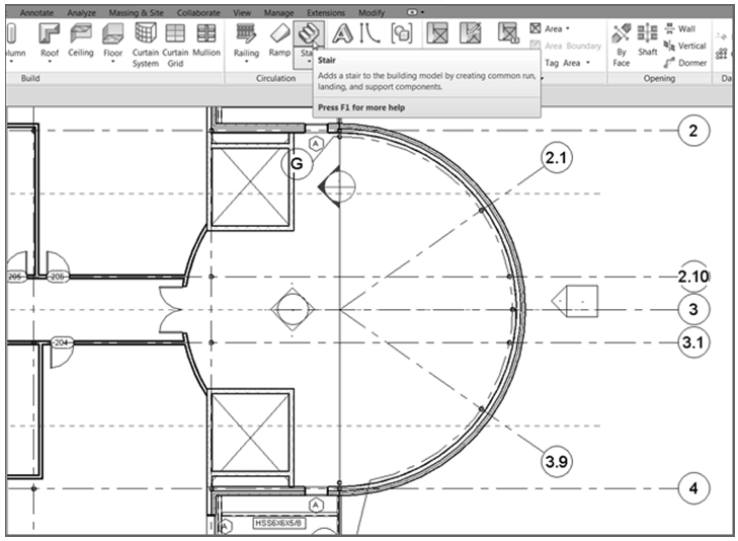


FIGURE 10.1: Click the Stair button on the Circulation panel of the Architecture tab.

3. On the View Control bar, change Visual Style to Hidden Line.
4. On the Circulation panel of the Architecture tab, click the Stair button (see Figure 10.1).

   You're put into Sketch Mode for the stairs you're about to design, as shown in Figure 10.2.

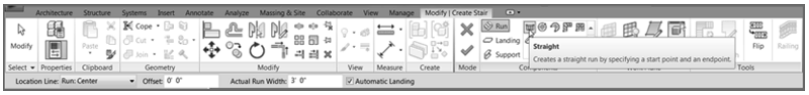


FIGURE 10.2: The Modify | Create Stair tab, Sketch Mode

5. On the Components panel of the Modify | Create Stair tab, make sure the Run button and the Straight button are checked (see Figure 10.2).
6. In the Properties dialog, change Base Level to Level 1.
7. Change Top Level to Level 2.
8. Change Multistory Top Level to Level 5 (see Figure 10.3).

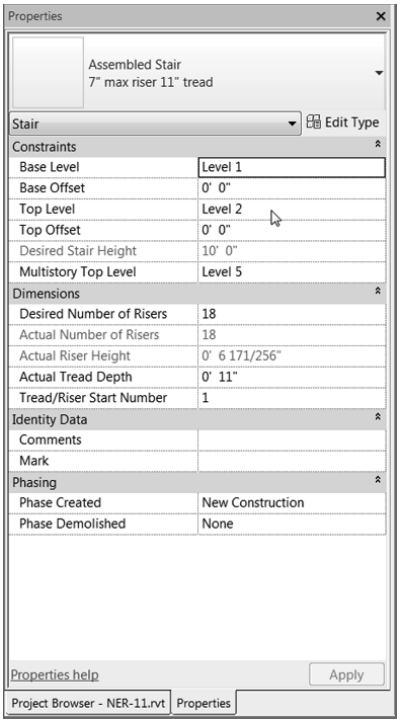


FIGURE 10.3: Changing the Element Properties of the stairs

NOTE By setting the base to Level 1 and the top to Level 2, you give Revit the dimensions it needs to calculate the rise of the stairs. When you add the multistory height, Revit takes the calculation from Levels 1 and 2 and applies that increment up to the additional floors. Be warned, however, that if the floor-to-floor dimension changes in one of these levels, you'll have a problem. You'll then have to create a new staircase starting at the offending level.

9. Pick the intersection of the floor edge and grid 3.1 for the first point of the stairs. This spot is labeled 1 in Figure 10.4.

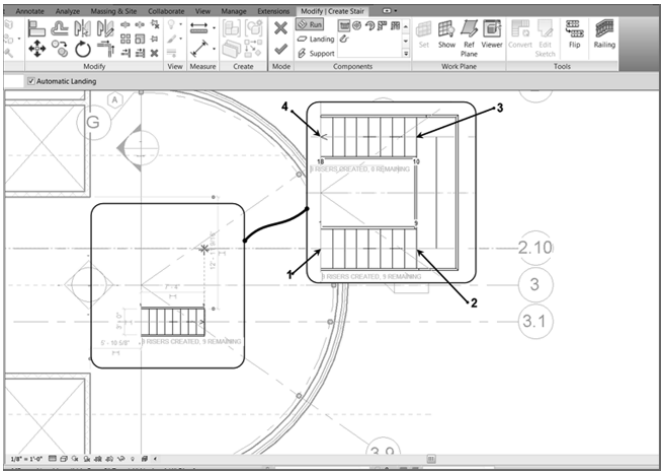


FIGURE 10.4: Laying out the stairs

10. Move your cursor to the right. A faint display indicates that you have a certain number of risers created and a certain number remaining.
11. When you see that nine risers have been created with nine risers remaining, pick the spot labeled 2 in Figure 10.4.
12. Move your cursor straight up (north) until you get to the grid intersection labeled 3 in Figure 10.4. When you see this, pick the third point.
13. Move your cursor to the left—all the way past the floor landing. Revit reports that you have 18 risers created and 0 remaining (see Figure 10.4).

14. When the second leg is completed, pick the last point. Revit draws both legs as well as the landing (see Figure 10.4).

With the basic layout completed, it's time to examine the perimeter of the stairs. If you're looking for any architectural design outside of the basic box that you get when you place a staircase, you'll want to edit the boundary.

Modifying Boundaries

With the main stairs in place and laid out, you can now start modifying the profile. Given that this is a five-tiered, multilevel staircase, the boundary will be somewhat limited—but not to the point that you can't make something pop out of your design.

To modify the boundary, follow these steps:

1. Select the landing, as shown in Figure 10.5.

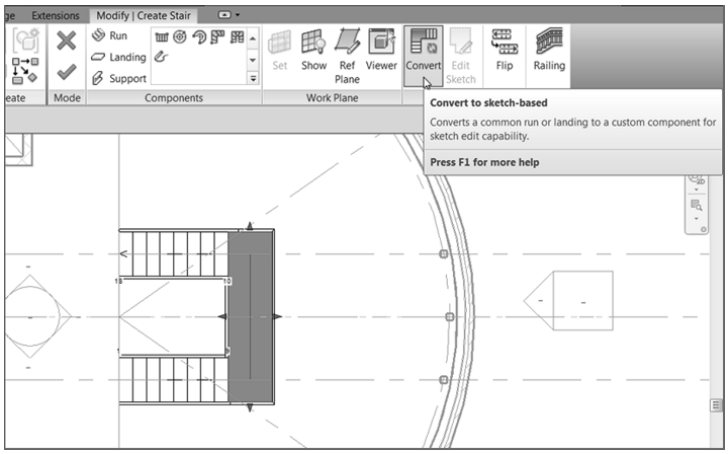


FIGURE 10.5: The Convert button

2. Click the Convert button (see Figure 10.5).
3. When you see the warning that you may be doing irreversible damage, click Close to dismiss it.
4. With the landing still selected, click the Edit Sketch button, as shown in Figure 10.6.

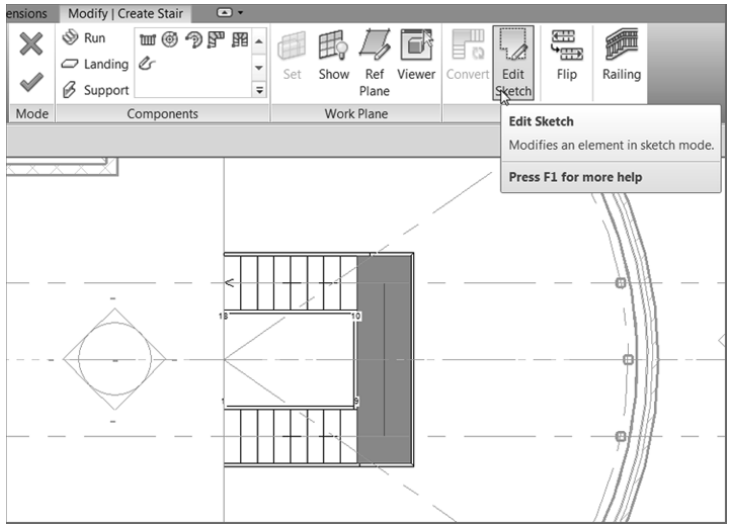


FIGURE 10.6: The Edit Sketch button

5. On the Draw panel, click the Start-End-Radius Arc button, as shown in Figure 10.7.

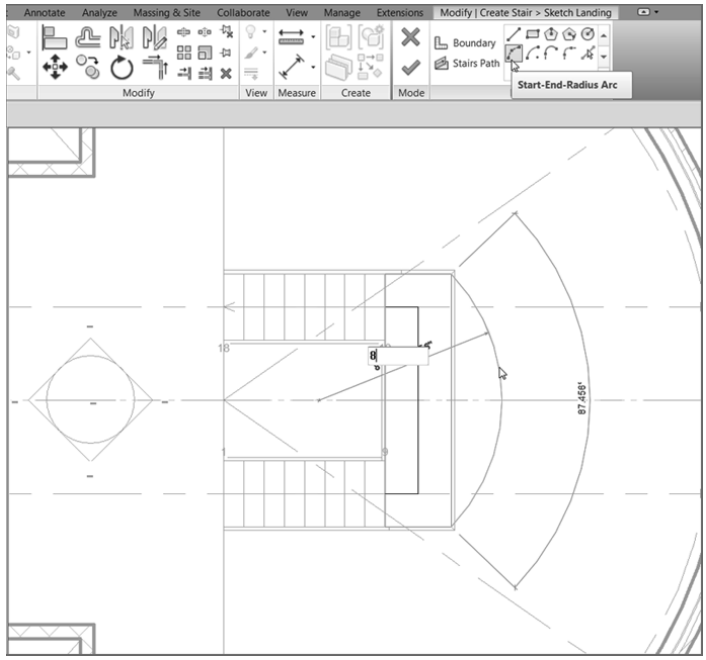


FIGURE 10.7: Add a radius to the outside of the landing.

6. Draw an arc on the outside of the landing at an 8′–0″ (2400 mm) radius (see Figure 10.7).

With the radius drawn in, it's important to pause at this point. What you have here is an extra line. Similar to when you're sketching a floor, if you have any overlapping line segments or gaps, Revit won't let you continue. Also, if you have any extra lines, Revit won't let you continue.

Let's clean up the stairs.

1. Click Modify or press the Esc key twice, and then select the straight green line at the outside of the landing.
2. Press the Delete key on your keyboard. The line is removed. Your stairs should look exactly like Figure 10.8.

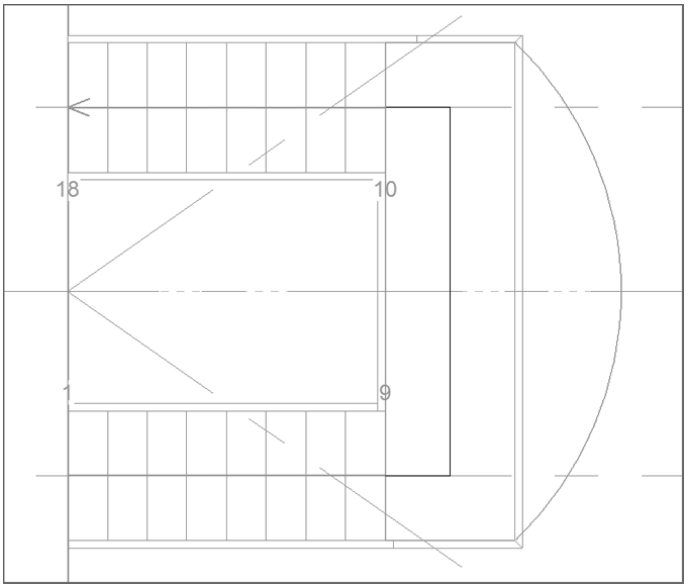


FIGURE 10.8: The completed boundary

3. Click the Finish Edit Mode button, as shown in Figure 10.9.

Now you can select the railing system to use. Out of the box, Revit provides only four choices. You'll select one of those choices for this staircase, but you'll add to the list later in this chapter.

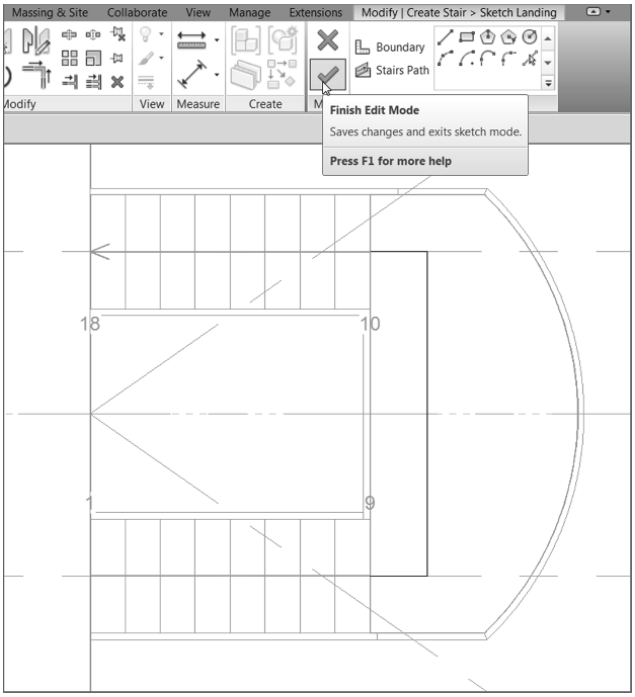


FIGURE 10.9: Finishing the sketch

Configuring Railings

Revit provides a small number of railing systems as a default. You can choose one of these five railings to apply to the staircase during the Sketch Mode of the stairs.

Follow this procedure to apply a railing to the stairs:

1. On the Modify | Create Stair tab in Sketch Mode, click the Railing button, as shown in Figure 10.10.

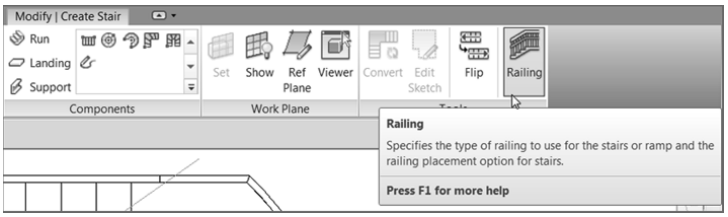


FIGURE 10.10: Click the Railing button.

2. In the Railing dialog box, from the drop-down, select Guardrail – Pipe, as shown in Figure 10.11.

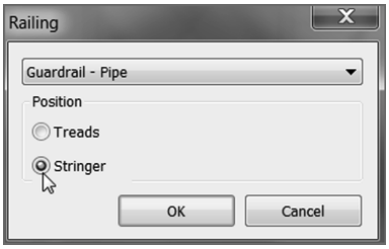


FIGURE 10.11: Select Guardrail – Pipe and the Stringer radio button.

3. Under Position, select the Stringer radio button (see Figure 10.11). Doing so hosts the railing to the stringer.
4. Click OK. With the railings in place, you're on your way to completing this staircase. As a matter of fact, round one is finished.
5. To complete the stairs, click Finish Edit Mode on the Modify | Create Stair tab.
6. Close the warning that states that the rail is noncontinuous.
7. Go to Level 1. Your stairs should look like Figure 10.12.

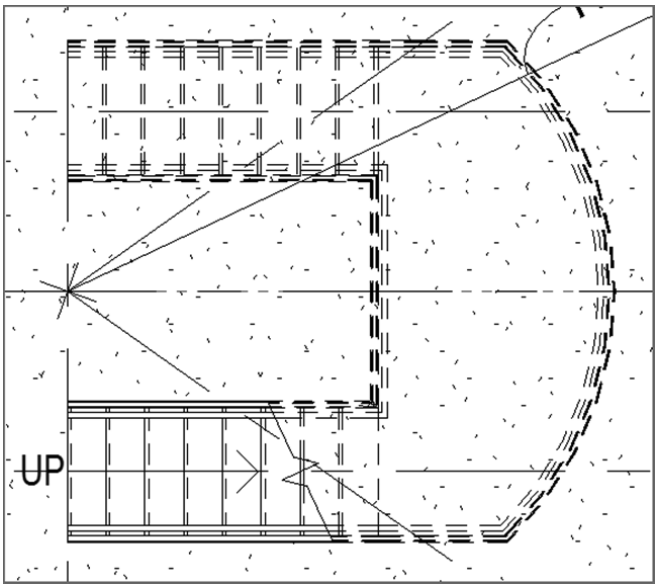


FIGURE 10.12: The stairs as displayed in the plan

Normally, when you're dealing with a large, multistory staircase, you should check it out in 3D to make sure all went as planned. This case is no exception! Here are the steps:

1. Click the Default 3D View button on the Quick Access toolbar.
2. In the 3D view, zoom in on the radial entry.
3. Select the radial wall. It becomes transparent.

Examine your stairs (see Figure 10.13).

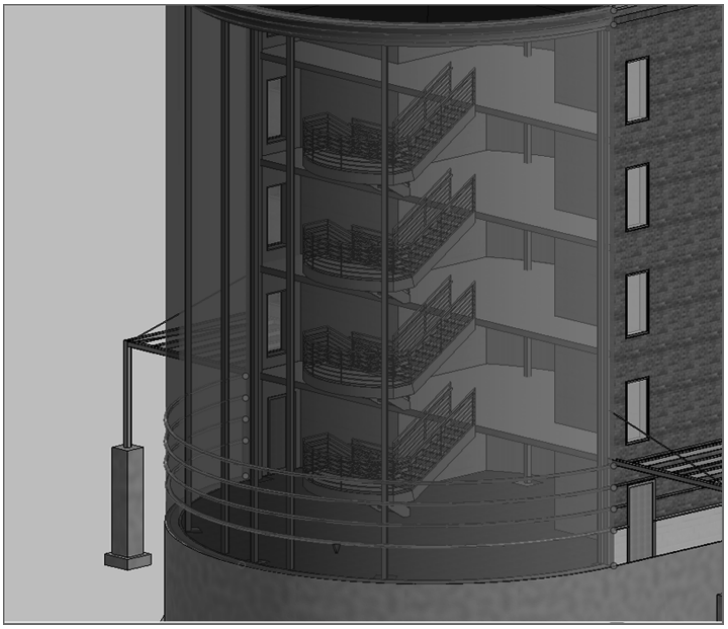


FIGURE 10.13: The stairs in 3D with the radial entry temporarily transparent

Here's a problem: the railing just stops dead at the bottom of the stringer. This may have been acceptable practice around the time, say, when the wheel was still on the drawing board. You need some kind of Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliance at the bottom of the stairs. To accomplish this, follow along with the next procedure.

To begin, go to the book's web page, browse to the `Chapter 10` folder, and find the file called `ADA-Pipe.rfa`. You can then download it to your computer. Now perform these steps:

1. On the Insert tab, click the Load Family button.

2. Browse to the directory where you stashed the family you just downloaded, and load `ADA-Pipe.rfa` into your model.
3. Go to the Level 1 floor plan.
4. Zoom in on the bottom of the stairs.
5. On the Work Plane panel of the Architecture tab, click the Ref Plane button.
6. Offset a reference plane 9 1/2″ (237 mm) to the left of the bottom riser (see Figure 10.14).

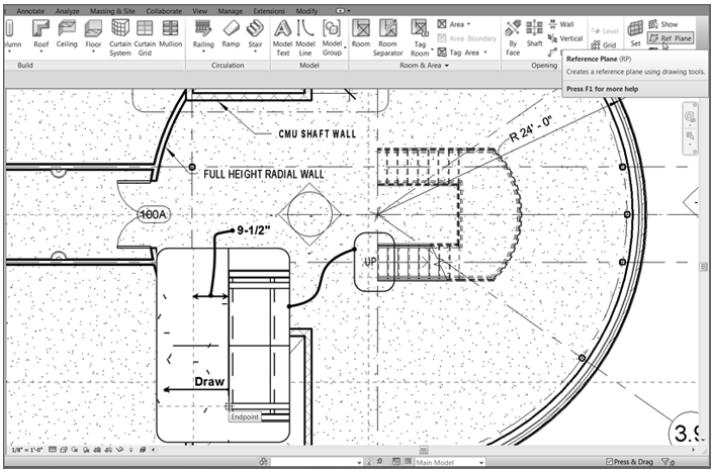


FIGURE 10.14: Add two reference planes as indicated here.

7. Type 0′ in the offset field and draw another reference plane from the center line of the bottom railing to the left about 2′–0″ (600 mm) (see Figure 10.14).
8. On the Architecture tab, click the Place A Component button.
9. In the Properties dialog box, select ADA – Pipe.
10. Press the spacebar once to rotate the family into place so that it's oriented as shown in Figure 10.15.
11. Place the family at the intersection of the two reference planes (see Figure 10.15), and then press Esc twice or click Modify.

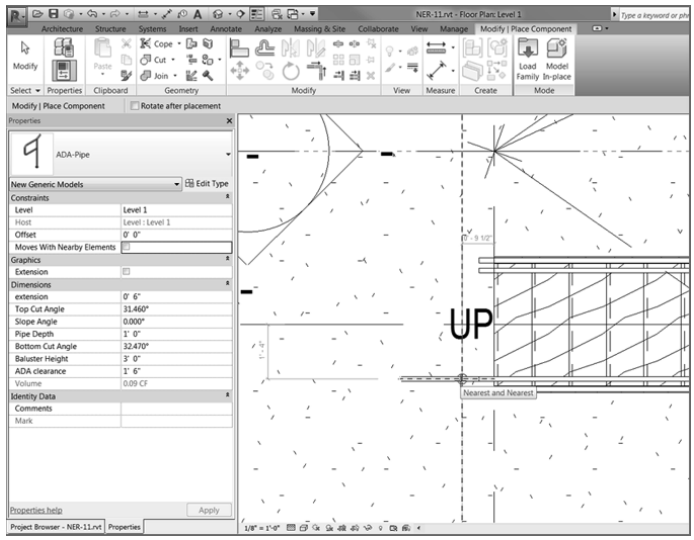


FIGURE 10.15: Placing the family in the intersection

Extending the Railings

You've added a family to finish the stairs at the bottom. The next step is to extend the railings on the stairs to meet the new family. There is one obstacle, though: the railing on the stairs already has an ending post. The trick is to remove the default ending post and replace it with the custom ADA post you just loaded into your model.

The objective of the next procedure is to extend the railings on the stairs to the ADA posts you just added to the model:

1. In the plan, select the bottom railing, as shown in Figure 10.16. Make sure you aren't selecting the stairs.

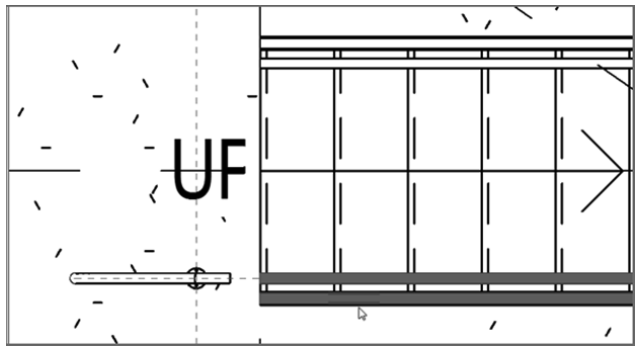


FIGURE 10.16: Selecting the railing, not the stairs

2. In the Properties dialog box, click the Edit Type button.
3. Click Duplicate.
4. Call the new railing **Entry Stair Railing**.
5. Click OK.
6. In the Baluster Placement row, click the Edit button, as shown in Figure 10.17.

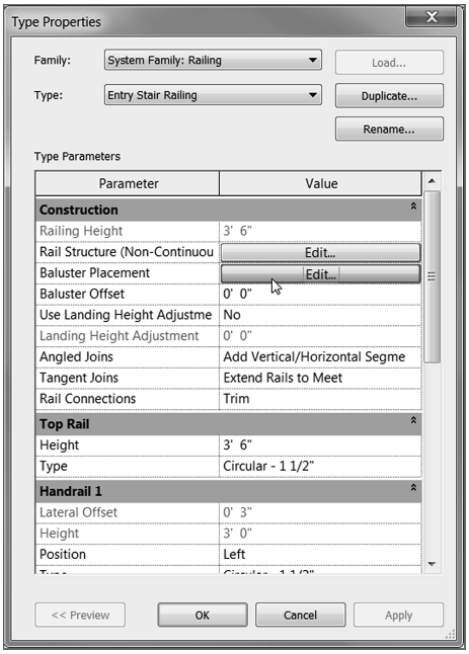


FIGURE 10.17: Click Edit next to Baluster Placement.

At the bottom of the Edit Baluster Placement dialog box is a Posts category. In the Posts category is an option to place a post at the start, end, or corner of the railing. Follow these steps:

1. For Start Post (1) and End Post (3), type **-6″** (**-150** mm) for the base offset, as shown in Figure 10.18.
2. Click OK twice.
3. Select the railing on the inside of the stairs.
4. Change its type to Entry Stair Railing.

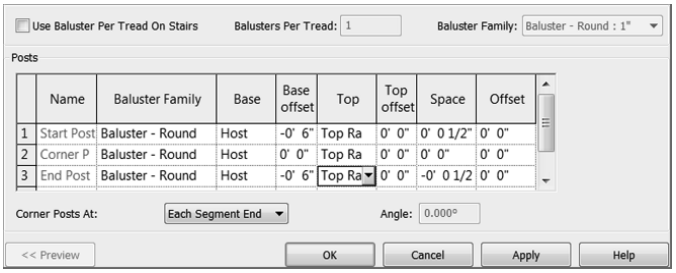


FIGURE 10.18: Setting the offset allows the post to extend to the floor where needed.

It's time to stretch the railing on the stairs to meet up with the family. This procedure is best done in a plan view, where you can see exactly how far you need to stretch the railing.

1. Select the bottom (south) railing.
2. On the Modify | Railings tab, click the Edit Path button.
3. Stretch the magenta line to the point shown in Figure 10.19.

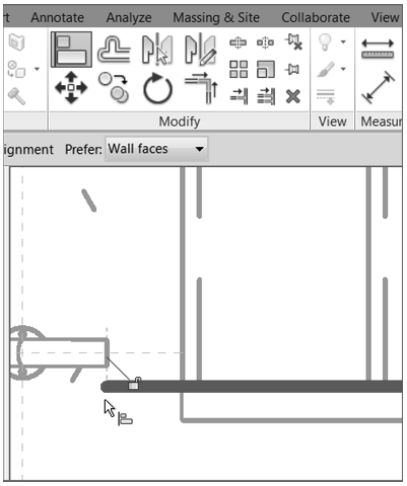


FIGURE 10.19: Aligning the end of the railing to the new family

4. For the first alignment, pick the back edge of the family you loaded, as shown in Figure 10.19.

5. Pick the magenta railing line. (When you hover over the magenta line, you'll see an endpoint icon. When you do, click it.) The magenta line extends to the family (see Figure 10.19).
6. Click Finish Edit Mode.
7. Go to the default 3D view to make sure the railings align (see Figure 10.20).

Notice that the line seems off center. Don't worry about this—it will line up when you finish the sketch.

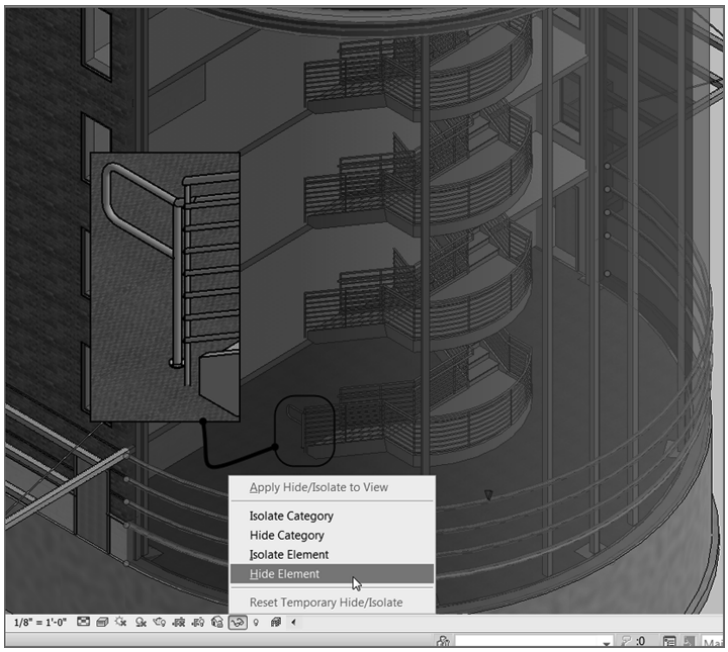


FIGURE 10.20: Check out the railing in 3D to ensure proper alignment.

8. Select the radial brick wall.
9. On the View Control bar, click the Temporary Hide/Isolate Element button, as shown in Figure 10.20.
10. Select Hide Element (see Figure 10.20).
11. When you've finished marveling at your fantastic landing, click the Temporary Hide/Isolate Element button again, and select Reset Temporary Hide/Isolate.

It would be nice if this were the only place that this railing extension needed to go. The rest of the procedure will step you through the process of adding this extension to the inside railing and then copying it up to the other levels.

1. Return to the Level 1 plan view. Select the ADA – Pipe family you added to the model.
2. Click the Mirror – Pick Axis button, as shown in Figure 10.21.

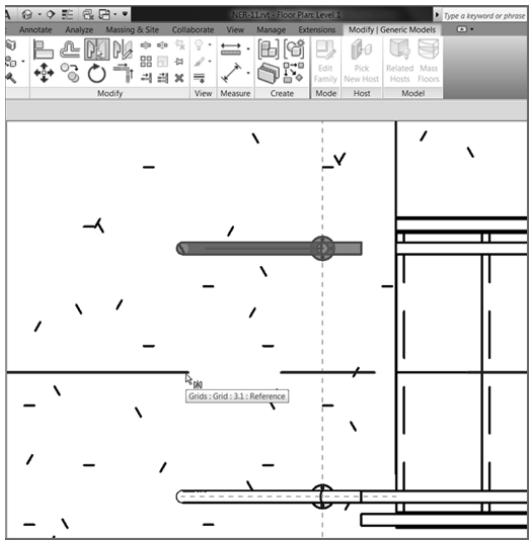


FIGURE 10.21: Mirroring the family

3. Pick grid 3.1, and your family is mirrored.
4. Select the inside railing.
5. On the Modify | Railings tab, click the Edit Path button.
6. Click the Align button.
7. Align the magenta line with the ADA – Pipe family, as shown in Figure 10.22.
8. Press Esc twice, and then select both families.
9. On the Modify | Generic Models tab, click the Copy To Clipboard button on the Clipboard panel (the third panel from the left).

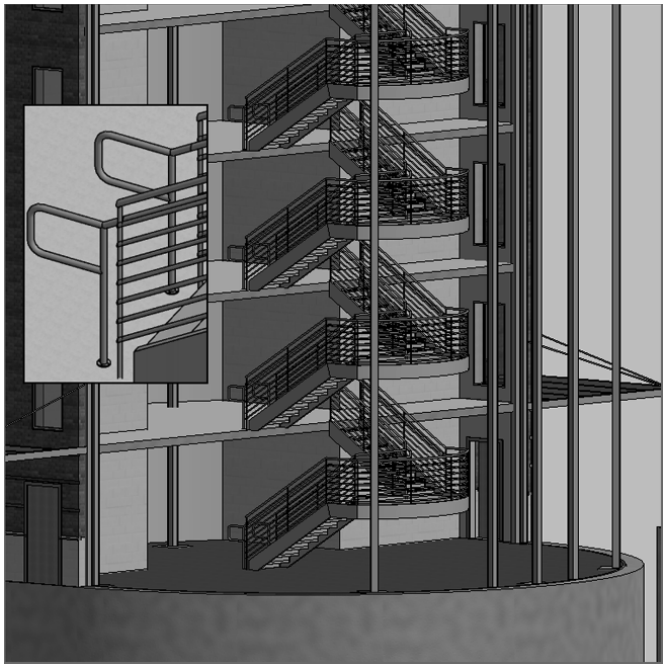


FIGURE 10.22: The copied families

10. Choose Paste ➢ Aligned To Selected Levels, at the upper left on your screen.
11. Pick Levels 2, 3, and 4, and then click OK. Does your staircase look like Figure 10.22?

It's getting close, but it seems as though there is nothing keeping people from falling off the second, third, fourth, and fifth levels! I don't know about you, but I think this is the perfect place to put a separate railing and tie it into the existing stair railing.

Landing Railings

Railings, of course, can be drawn independently from a stair. Tying the railing into the stair, however, requires a little more patience. That being said, it becomes obvious that Revit reflects the real world when it comes to railings. If you have a railing that is difficult to build, it will probably be difficult to model. Also, if you arrive at an intersection that can't be physically accomplished in the field, then guess what? You'll struggle trying to get it into Revit.

To add some railings at the landings and tie them into the stair railings, follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 2 floor plan.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Railing button.
3. Make sure Type is set to Handrail – Pipe.
4. In the Properties dialog box, click the Edit Type button.
5. Click the Duplicate button.
6. Call the new railing **Handrail – Pipe – Horizontal Railing**.
7. Click the Edit button next to the Baluster Placement choice.
8. Select None for the Start and End posts under the Posts category, as shown in Figure 10.23.

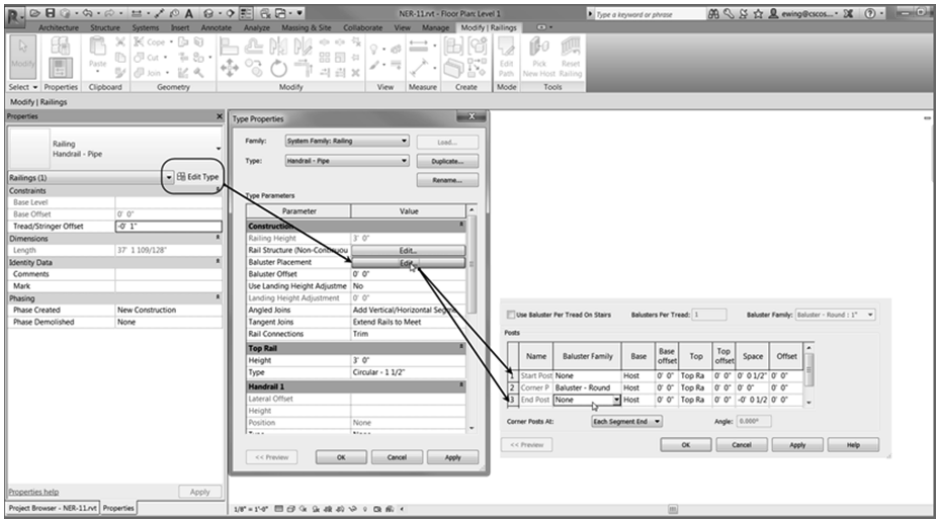


FIGURE 10.23: Configuring the default settings for the railing type Handrail – Pipe – Horizontal Railing

9. Click OK twice.
10. Pick a point at the intersection of the reference plane and the south wall, as shown in Figure 10.24.

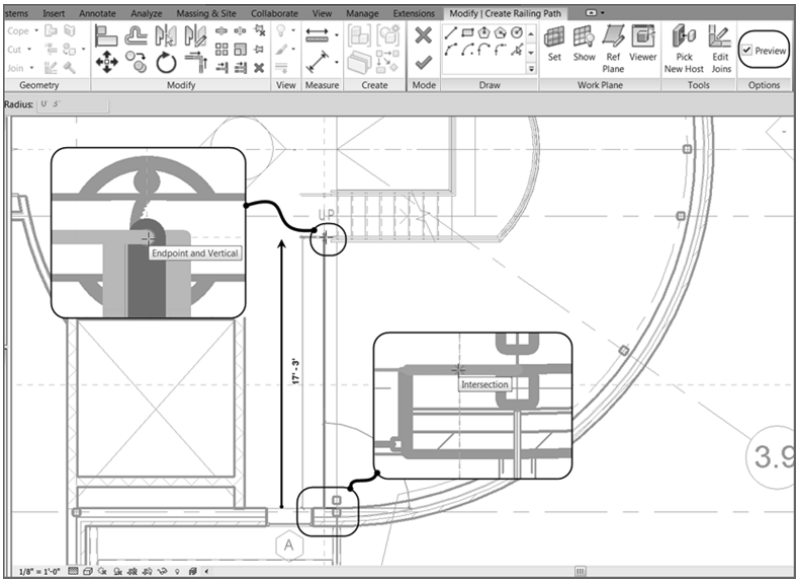


FIGURE 10.24: Sketching the path of the railing

11. Click the Preview button on the Options bar (see Figure 10.24).
12. Pick the intersection of the reference plane and the ADA – Handrail (see Figure 10.24).
13. Click Finish Sketch.

NOTE **You can have only one continuous railing at a time. If there are gaps in the railing, it won't work. For example, the second floor needs three separate railings.**

The next step is to add the ADA railing extensions to the north leg of the stairs and to create a railing between the two stair sections. This process can be a tad tricky, but once you get the progression, you'll see why it needs to be done in the following manner:

1. Still on the second floor, select the two ADA – Pipe families, and click the Mirror – Pick Axis button, as shown in Figure 10.25.
2. Mirror the two families about the building's center reference plane.
3. Select the inside railing on the staircase.
4. Click Edit Path on the Modify | Railings tab.

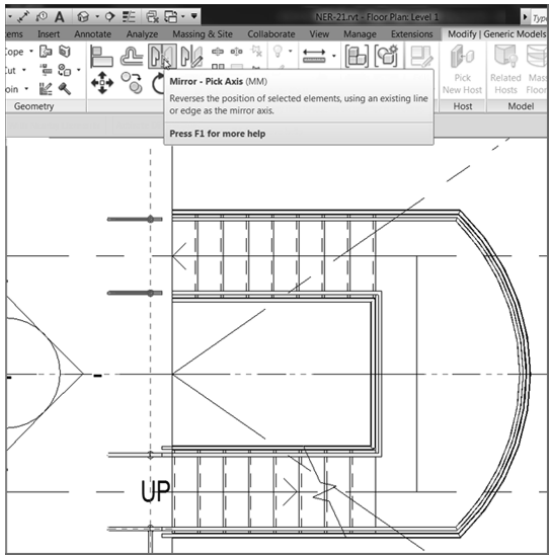


FIGURE 10.25: Mirroring and configuring the two railing extensions

5. Extend the railing to the front edge of the ADA family, exactly the same way you did for the south leg of the staircase (see Figure 10.26).

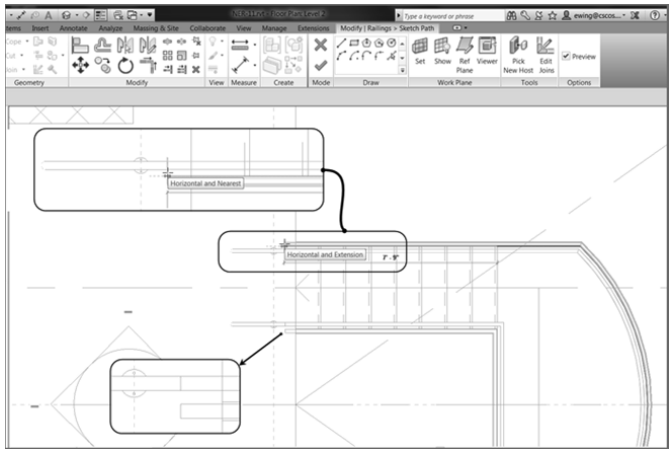


FIGURE 10.26: Creating a relationship between the stairs, the landing, and the handrail

6. Click Finish Edit Mode.

7. Repeat the procedure for the outside railing, as shown in Figure 10.26.

Let's add a railing to the center and the north side of the landing. This should be pretty easy.

1. Start the Railing command.
2. Make sure Handrail – Pipe – Horizontal Railing is the current railing.
3. Draw a line down 1′–0″ (300 mm) from the intersection of the upper-south ADA railing extension and the reference planes, as shown in Figure 10.27.

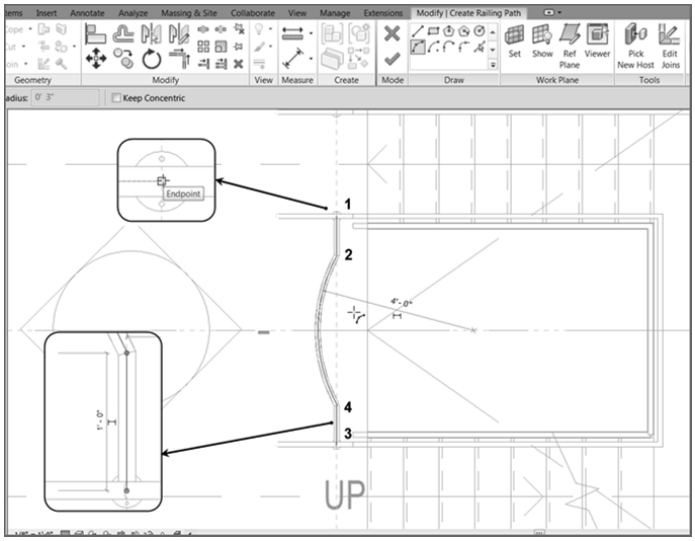


FIGURE 10.27: Creating the middle railing

4. Draw a line up 1′–0″ (300 mm) from the top ADA railing extension on the south leg of the stairs (see Figure 10.27).
5. On the Draw panel, click the Start-End-Radius Arc button (see Figure 10.27).
6. Draw a 4′–0″ (1200 mm) arc from the endpoints of the top and bottom lines (see Figure 10.27).
7. Click Finish Sketch.
8. Draw another railing, as shown in Figure 10.28.

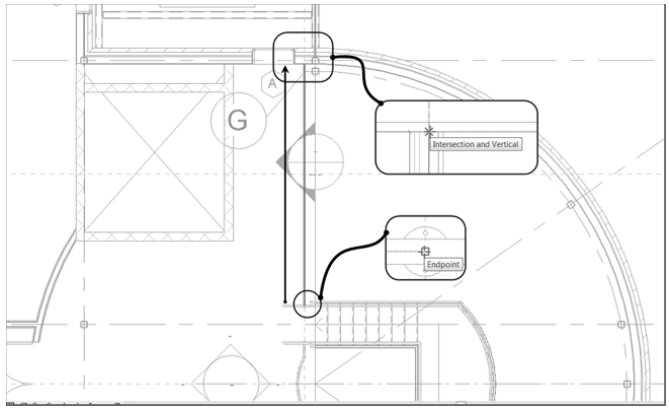


FIGURE 10.28: Creating the northern railing

What you need to do now is add this configuration to the third, fourth, and fifth floors. The fifth floor, however, will need to have a configuration change.

1. Select the middle railing, the two ADA railing extensions, and the northern railing, as shown in Figure 10.29.

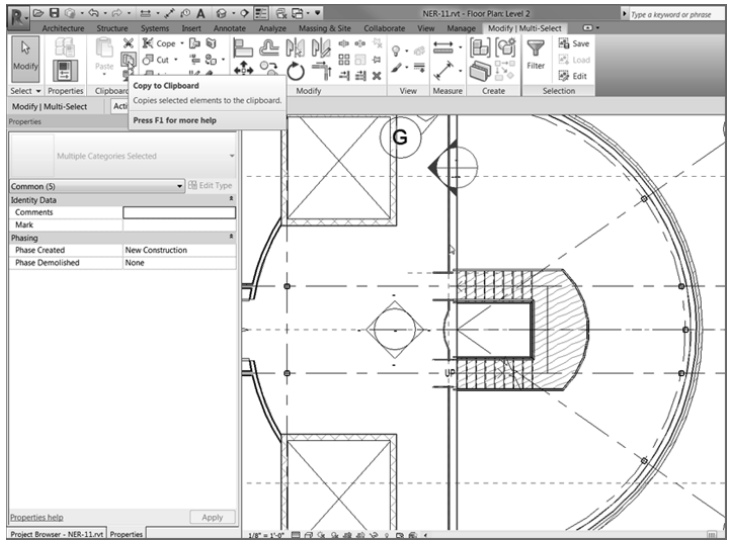


FIGURE 10.29: Copy the selected items to the clipboard.

2. On the Modify | Multi Select tab, click the Copy To Clipboard button (see Figure 10.29).

3. Click Paste ➢ Aligned To Selected Levels, as shown in Figure 10.30.

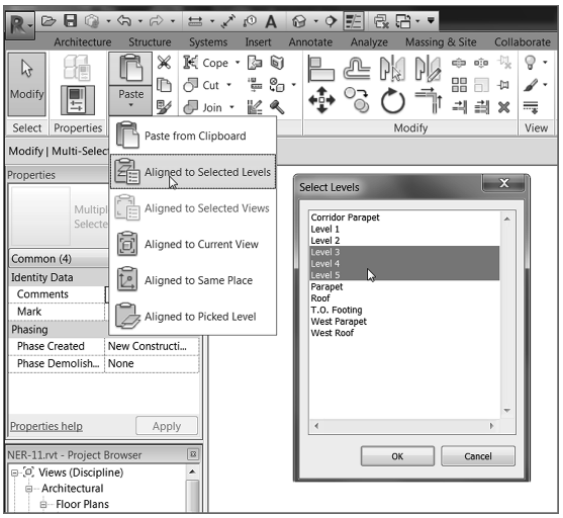


FIGURE 10.30: Paste ➢ Aligned To Selected Levels

4. Paste the items to Level 3 through Level 5.
5. Go to Level 5.
6. Change Detail Level to Fine.
7. Delete the middle railing, and make the south railing extend to the ADA post, as shown in Figure 10.31.

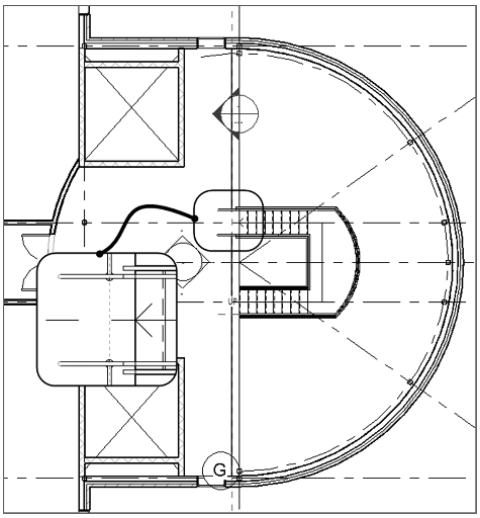


FIGURE 10.31: Reconfiguring the fifth floor

8. Go to a 3D view, and select the radial brick wall to make it transparent. Check out your stairs, as shown in Figure 10.32.

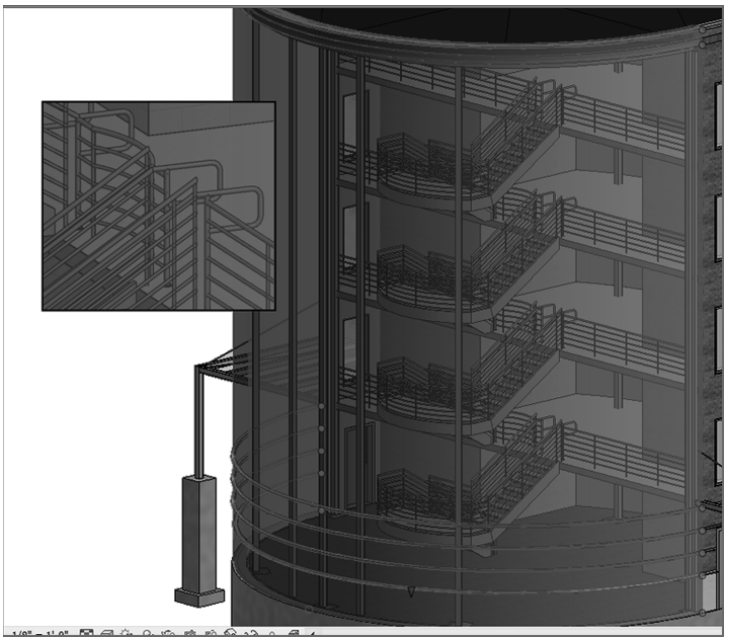


FIGURE 10.32: Check out your awesome stairs!

Phew! You've built a set of stairs. The good thing is that it's one sweet staircase. The bad thing is that you used all the default layouts and materials. Next, we'll get into some more complicated shapes and styles.

Creating a Winding Staircase

Before you get started, you should know that you'll create this staircase by using the separate stair components. You can try to make a winding staircase by using the Run function, similar to the one you used earlier. But in many cases (especially when you run into an existing staircase in either a renovation project or an addition), you may need to draft the stairs and then model over the top of the drafting lines. What? Drafting in Revit? Of course. How else can you expect to get anything done?

The first thing you'll need to do is make modifications to the floor in a specific area to create a landing. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 2 floor plan.

2. Zoom in on the area between the corridor and the east wing, as shown in Figure 10.33.

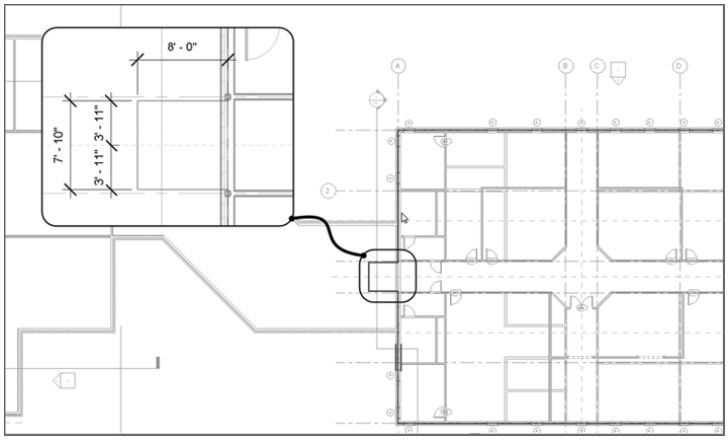


FIGURE 10.33: Creating a landing. You'll add a door in a moment.

3. Select the Level 2 floor in the east wing.
4. Click the Edit Boundary button on the Mode panel of the Modify | Floors tab.
5. Sketch a landing that is 8′–0″ (2400 mm) long × 7′–10″ (2350 mm) wide. Center it on the reference plane, as shown in Figure 10.34.

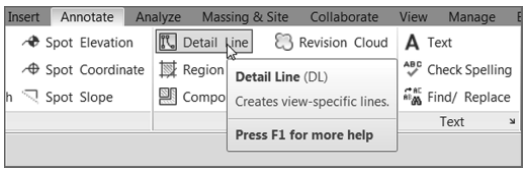


FIGURE 10.34: Click the Detail Line button on the Annotate tab.

6. Click Finish Edit Mode on the Mode panel. If you're asked if you want to attach the walls to the bottom of the floor, click Yes.

With the landing in place, you can now copy a door up to this level. To do this, you'll go to the first floor and copy the door that resides there. You can do this on your own, or you can follow along with these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan.

You may have to pick a window around the entire area, and then click the Filter button on the Ribbon. From there, you can select only Floors.

2. Select door 100B.
3. Copy the door to the clipboard (click Copy To Clipboard on the Clipboard panel).
4. Choose Paste ➢ Aligned To Selected Levels.
5. Select Level 2, and click OK.
6. In the Project Browser, go back to Level 2. The door and the landing are in place.

Next you'll create a winding set of stairs. The first task is to lay out the shape in the plan using simple drafting lines. The second task is to model over the lines you added, by using various stair tools as follows:

1. Select the Annotate tab.
2. Click the Detail Line button.
3. On the Draw panel, click the Start-End-Radius Arc button, as shown in Figure 10.35.

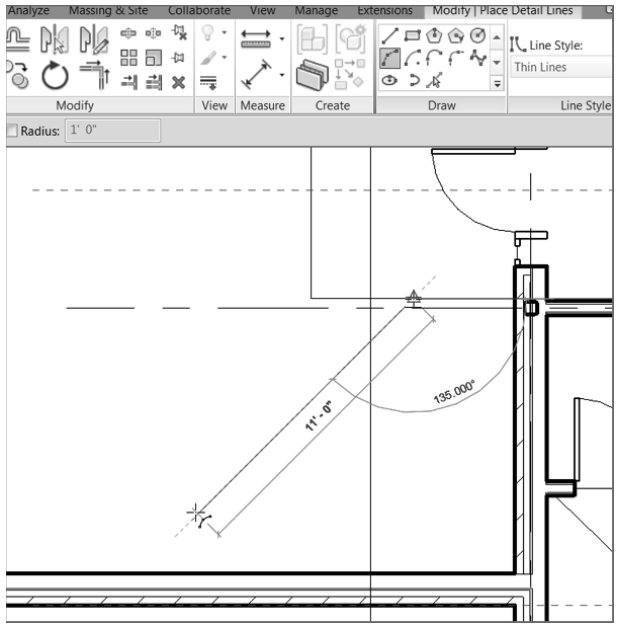


FIGURE 10.35: With the Start-End-Radius Arc button selected, start at the midpoint of the landing and then go southwest at an angle of 135° and a distance of 11′–0″ (3300 mm).

4. For the first point of the arc, pick the midpoint of the landing (see Figure 10.35).
5. Move your cursor down, at 135° from the first point you just picked.
6. Extend your cursor 11′–0″ (3300 mm), as shown in Figure 10.36, and then click to set the second point.

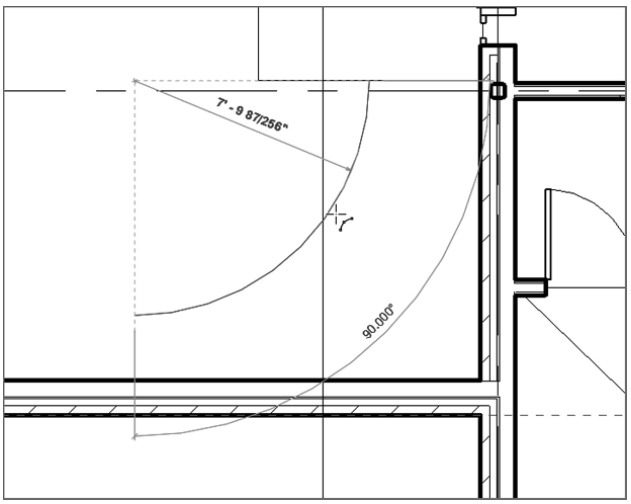


FIGURE 10.36: Picking the third point to form the arc. It will be tangent upon the first two points you picked.

7. To form the arc, move your cursor to the right until the radius snaps into place. When it does, pick the point as shown in Figure 10.36.
8. Press Esc.
9. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon.
10. On the Options bar, add an increment of 2′–0″ (600 mm) to the Offset field (see Figure 10.37).
11. Offset the center arc to the right and then to the left, forming a 4′–0″ (1200 mm) overall winder, as shown in Figure 10.37.
12. Press Esc.
13. Click the Line tool, make sure Offset is set to 0, and then draw a straight line at each end of the arcs, as shown in Figure 10.38.

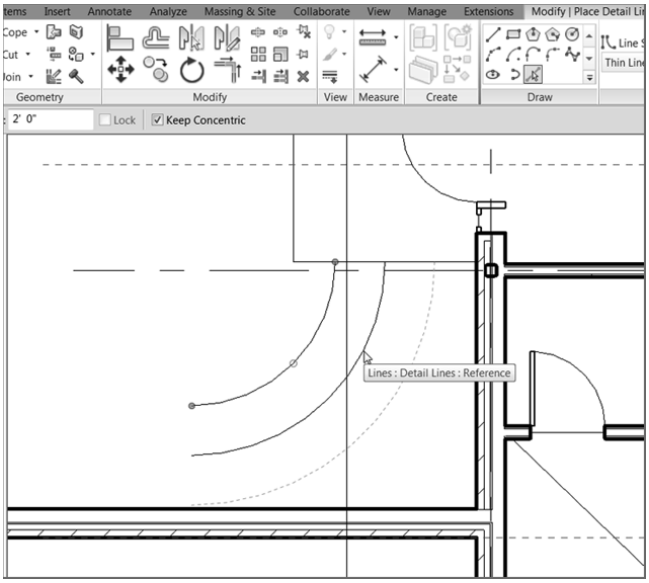


FIGURE 10.37: Adding two more arcs based on the centerline of the first

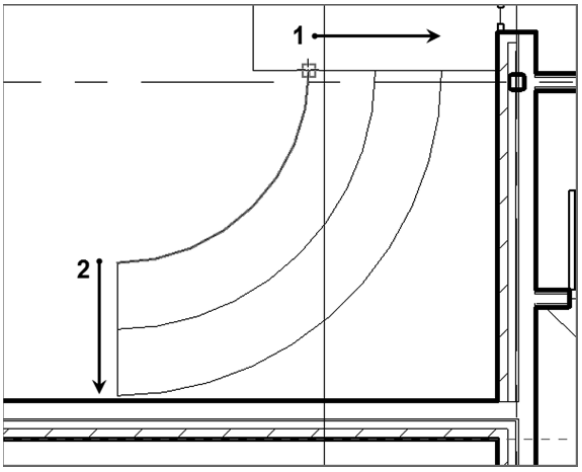


FIGURE 10.38: Adding a straight line at each end of the arcs

OK, take a breather. Compare the examples in the book to what you have. Are you close? If not, go back and investigate.

NOTE Get used to this drafting thing; it's still very much a part of BIM, regardless of whether people say you can't draft in Revit!

The next step is to make an array of the straight lines you just added. These lines will wind up being the guidelines for your risers.

1. Press Esc, and then select the smaller arc, as shown in Figure 10.39.

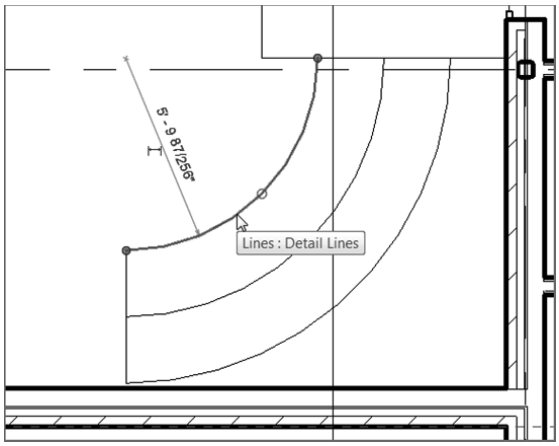


FIGURE 10.39: Selecting the smaller arc

2. In the Properties dialog box, select Center Mark Visible.
3. Select the line at the left end of the arcs, as shown in Figure 10.40.

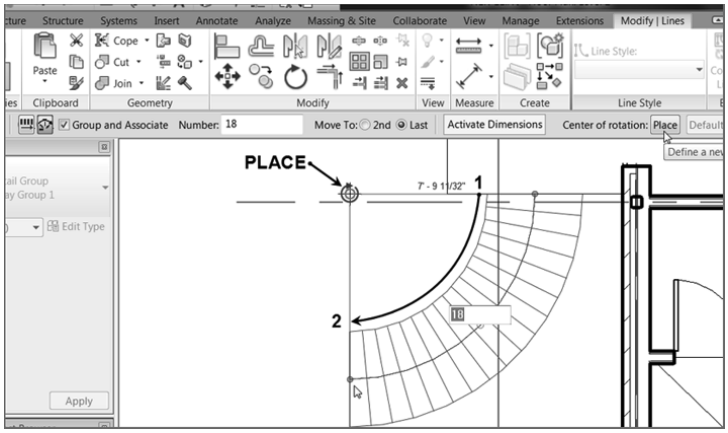


FIGURE 10.40: Arraying the line to create your own treads

4. Click the Array button on the Modify | Lines tab.

5. On the Options bar, be sure Radial is selected.
6. Make sure Group And Associate is selected.
7. Type 18 for the number.
8. Click Move To: Last on the Options bar. (Remember that you aren't actually moving this line; you're simply copying it to the last place in the array.)
9. Click the Place button next to the Center of Rotation category on the Options bar, and pick the center of the arc.
10. Pick a point along the first line (the one at the lower left).
11. Pick the second point along the upper-right line.

Your array is complete. Check out Figure 10.41 to see how the finished stairs will look.

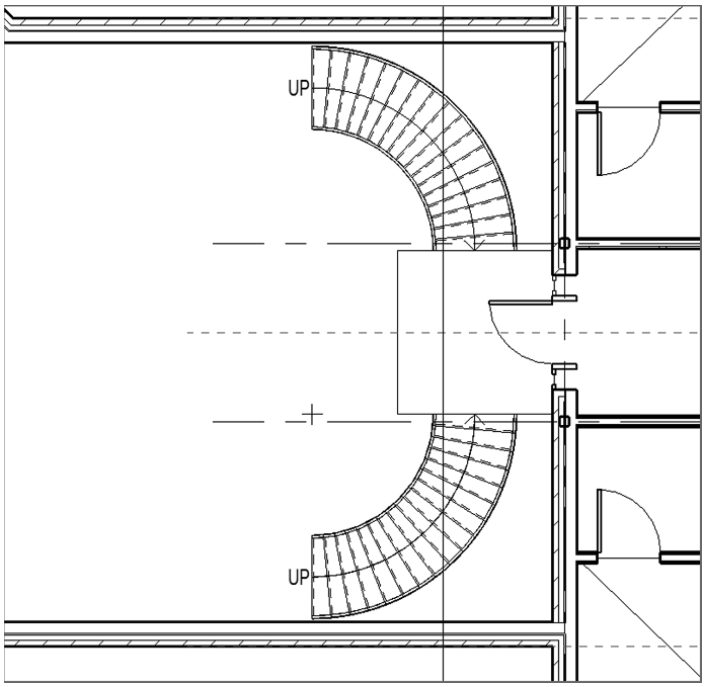


FIGURE 10.41: The stairs when complete

Now you can begin modeling the stairs. This procedure is nothing more than tracing the lines you've already added to the model. To do this, you'll use the available tools that you haven't touched in the previous staircase. Follow these steps:

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Stairs button.
2. In the Properties dialog box, change Base Level to Level 1.
3. Change Top Level to Level 2.
4. Click Edit Type.
5. Click Duplicate.
6. Call the stairs **Corridor Entry Stairs**.
7. Click OK.
8. In the Construction category, click the cell to the right of Run Type. It contains the text 2″ (50 mm) Tread 1″ (25 mm) Nosing 1⁄4″ (6 mm) Riser. When you click in the cell, you see a […] button. Click it.
9. Choose Cherry for Tread Material.
10. For Riser Material, do the same.
11. Under the Treads category, select Front, Left and Right for the Apply Nosing Profile row.
12. Click OK.
13. Scroll down to the Supports category, and change Right Support from Stringer (Closed) to Carriage (Open).
14. Click into Carriage – 2″ Width (50 mm) to the right of Right Support Type.
15. Click the small […] button to the right of the cell.
16. Change Material to Mahogany. Click OK.
17. Change Left Support to Carriage (Open).
18. Add Mahogany as the material to the Carriage – 2″ Width. Your Properties dialog box should look like the one shown in Figure 10.42.
19. Click OK to get back to the model.

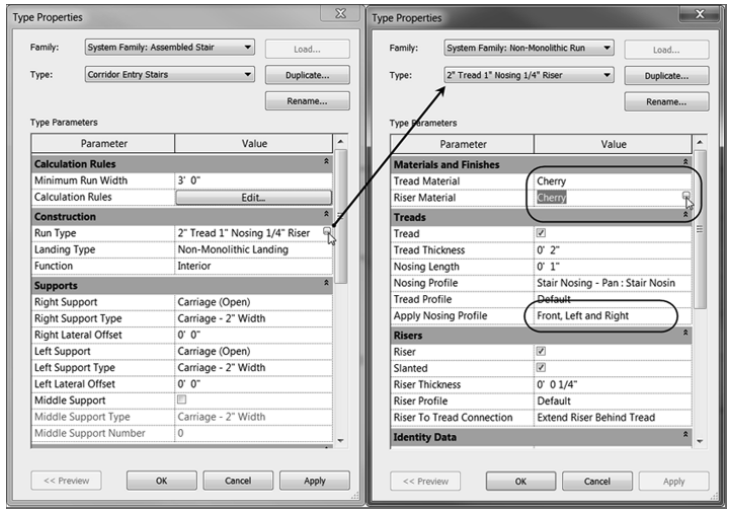


FIGURE 10.42: Customizing the stairs

It's time to add the stairs to the model. To do this, you'll first sketch the boundary.

1. On the Modify | Create Stairs tab in Sketch Mode, click the Create Sketch button, as shown in Figure 10.43.

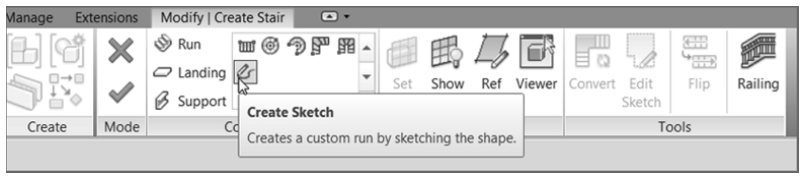


FIGURE 10.43: Click the Create Sketch button.

2. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon.
3. Pick the two arcs defining the outside of the stairs. Green arcs are copied directly on top of them.
4. On the Draw panel, click the Riser button.
5. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon.
6. Pick all of the lines you arrayed. This includes the bottom and the top lines (see Figure 10.44).

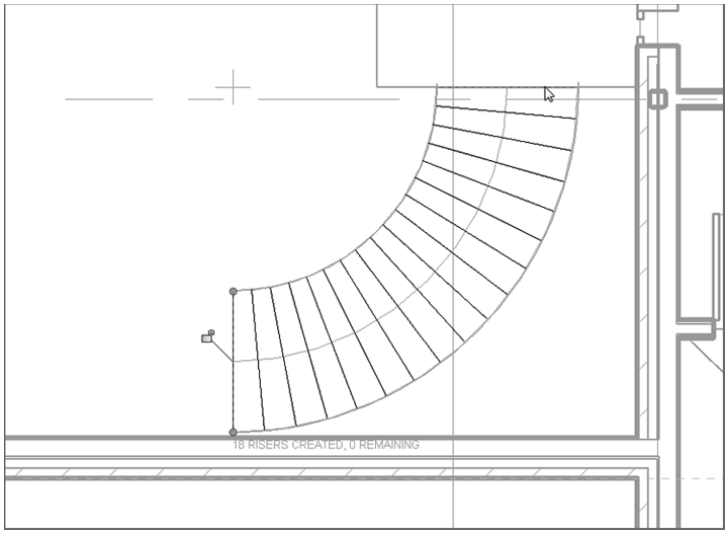


FIGURE 10.44: Picking the detail lines to lay over the stair components

7. Click the Stair Path button.
8. Click the Pick Lines button.
9. Pick the centerline of the staircase.
10. Click Finish Edit Mode on the Mode panel.
11. Click the Railing button.
12. Change the railing to Handrail – Pipe, make sure the position is set to Treads, and click OK.
13. Click the Finish Sketch button (the green check mark).

With the stairs roughed in, you need to get a better look at them. If you use the default 3D view, you need to turn off way too many items to see your stairs. Let's add a perspective view, just to see what's going on here!

If you're confident about adding your own perspective view, go ahead and put one in and name it **East Entry from Corridor**. If not, follow along with these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. On the View tab, click the 3D View ➢ Camera button.
3. Pick the first point shown in Figure 10.45.

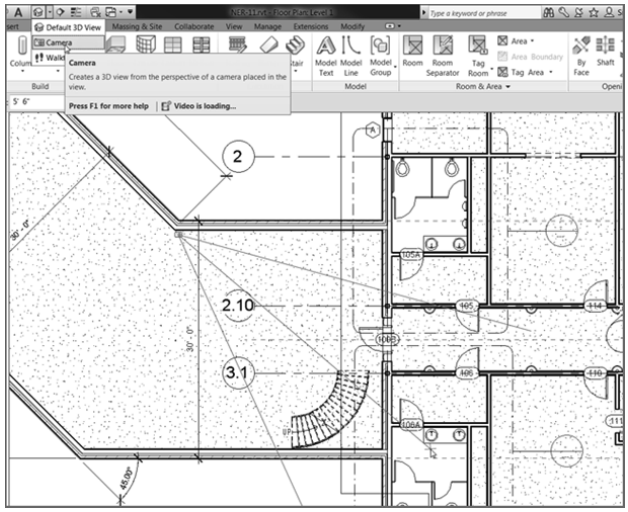


FIGURE 10.45: Adding the perspective view

4. Pick the second point shown in Figure 10.45.
5. In the Project Browser, find the new perspective view, and rename it **East Entry from Corridor**.
6. In the perspective view, turn on Realistic. (It's located on the View Control bar at the bottom of the view.)
7. Check out the view (see Figure 10.46)!

FIGURE 10.46: Looking nice

The next series of steps involves mirroring the stairs to the other side of the landing. Then, of course, you need to add a landing railing so people don't just walk out the door and off the ledge.

1. Go to the Level 2 floor plan in the Project Browser.
2. Select the stairs and the railings, as shown in Figure 10.47.

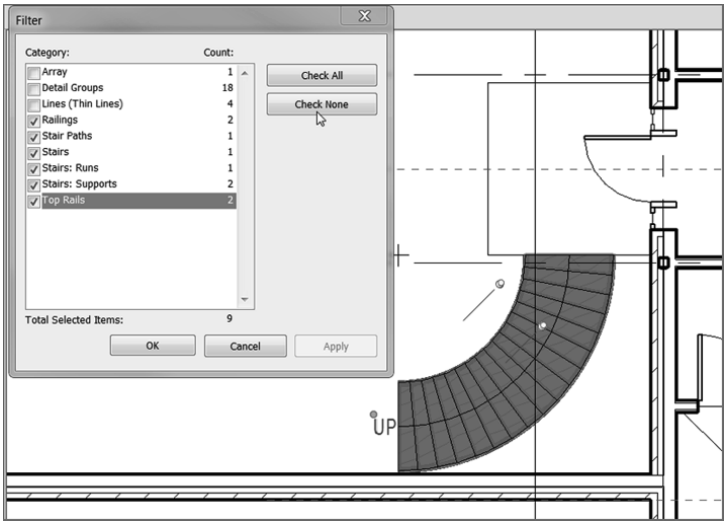


FIGURE 10.47: Selecting the items to be mirrored

NOTE To select only the stairs and the railings, you can pick a window around the entire set of lines, groups, railings, and stairs. From there, you can click the Filter button on the Ribbon, and select only Stairs And Railings.

3. On the Modify | Multi-Select tab, click the Mirror ➢ Pick Mirror Axis button, as shown in Figure 10.48.
4. Pick the center reference plane. (I told you this thing would come in handy.)

Your stairs are now mirrored to the other side of the landing (see Figure 10.48).

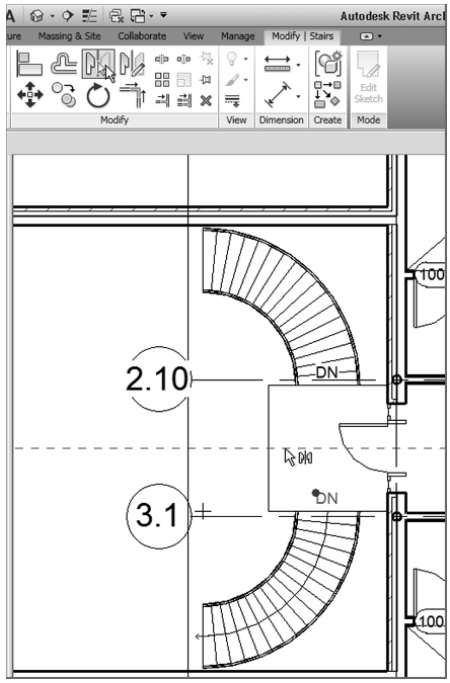


FIGURE 10.48: The mirrored stairs

Let's tie in the railings. If you're feeling up to the challenge, try it on your own by using the railing Handrail – Pipe. If not, just follow along with these steps:

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Railing button.
2. In the Type Selector, change the type to Handrail – Pipe, as shown in Figure 10.49.

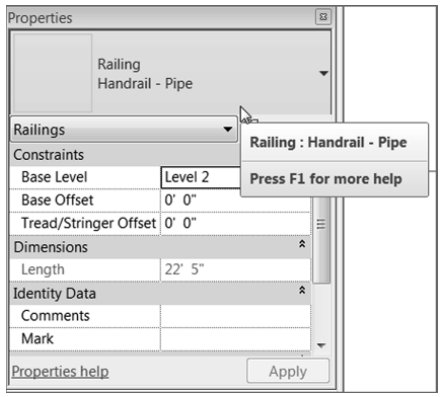


FIGURE 10.49: Setting the landing handrail type

3. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon.
4. Set Offset to 4″ (100 mm).
5. Pick the landing lines to offset in the railing (see Figure 10.50).

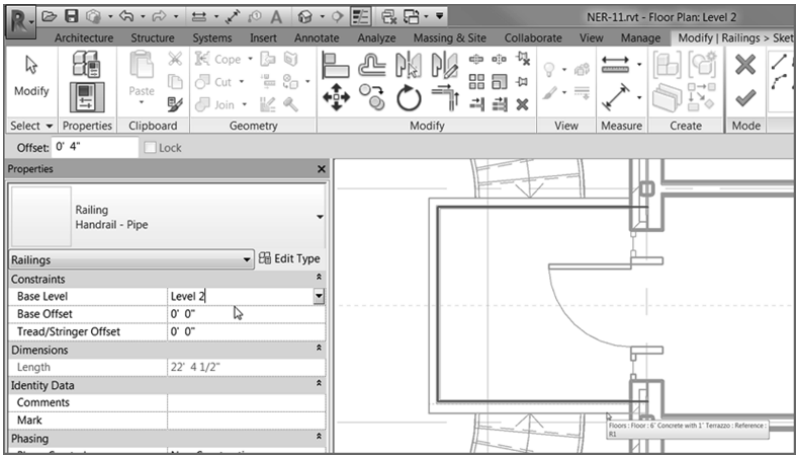


FIGURE 10.50: The railing on the landing

6. After the offsets are complete, click the Line icon on the Draw panel. Set Offset to 0.
7. Draw the lines extending from the midpoint snap of the stair railing to the landing railing (see Figure 10.51).
8. Trim the corners so your railings look like Figure 10.51.
9. On the Mode panel, click Finish Edit Mode.
10. You may have to flip the railing by selecting it and then clicking the Flip arrow.
11. Add two more railings between the stairs and the brick wall. Your stairs should look like Figure 10.52.

Remember, you must create only one railing at a time. If you try to do more than one continuous line, Revit won't let you proceed. Try creating one short railing and mirroring it.

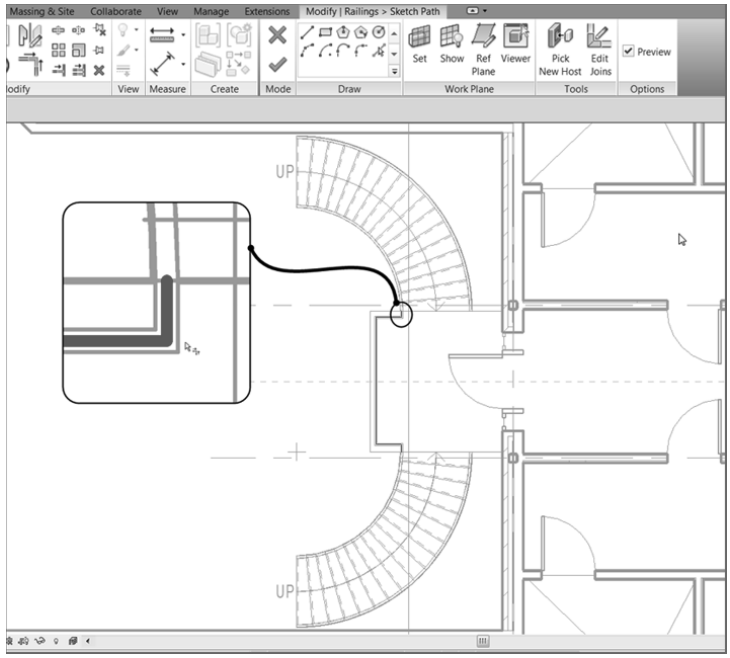


FIGURE 10.51: Connecting the landing railing to the stair railing

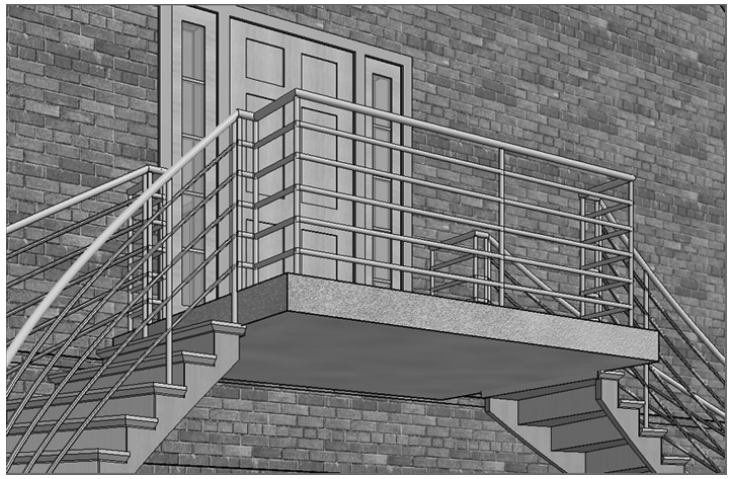


FIGURE 10.52: The completed landing

Great! You're getting there. Now you'll see how a staircase and the accompanying railings come together. For example, it sure would be nice to have a railing with spindles or, better yet, panels added to it. Also, a nice half-round bullnose would improve your staircase. The next section will focus on this concept.

Stair and Railing Families

Similar to the model as a whole, stairs and railings comprise separate families that come together to form the overall unit. Although stairs and railings are considered a system family (a family that resides only in the model), they still rely heavily on hosted families to create the entire element.

The next procedure will involve loading separate families into the model and then using them in a new set of stairs and railings that you'll create in the west wing.

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 3 floor plan, and change Detail Level to Fine.
2. Zoom in on the west wing.
3. On the Architecture tab, click the Floor button.
4. In the Properties dialog box, click the Edit Type button.
5. Select the 6″ (152 mm) Concrete With 1″ (25 mm) Terrazzo floor system from the Type drop-down list, as shown in Figure 10.53.

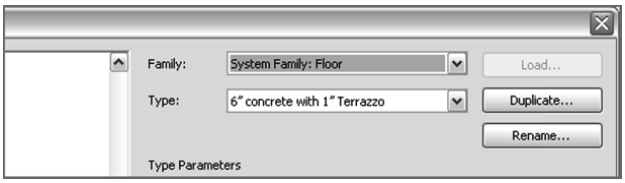


FIGURE 10.53: You must add a floor at the Level 3 floor plan for the stairs to have a landing.

6. Click OK.
7. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Walls button.
8. Pick the walls, and make sure the lines are set to the core centerline, as shown in Figure 10.54.

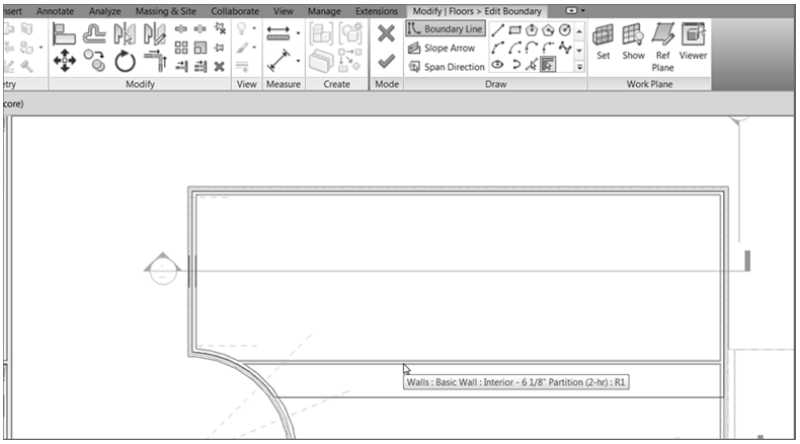


FIGURE 10.54: Adding the floor outline to the walls. Be sure to offset the line 5′–0″ (1500 mm) from the south wall. This will be the stair landing.

9. When picking the south wall, set Offset to 5′–0″ (1500 mm) in the Options bar.

TIP Again, make sure you have no gaps or overlapping lines. Use the Trim/Extend Single Element command to clean up the lines to look like the figure.

10. Once the sketch lines are in place, trim the corners, and click Finish Edit Mode on the Mode panel.
11. Revit asks if you want to attach the walls that go up to this floor's bottom. Click No.
12. Revit asks if you want to cut the overlapping volume out of the walls. Click Yes.

Your floor is now in place. The next item you'll tackle is creating a completely custom railing system.

Creating a Custom Railing System

Next, you'll load the components that make up your stairs. Although Revit makes an attempt to supply you with some families, in this case you'll download the families included with this book by going to the book's web page at

www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner. From there, browse to the Chapter 10 folder and find the following files:

- 6210 (2-5_8).rfa
- landing.rfa
- post.rfa
- raised panels.rfa
- spindle.rfa
- stair nosing.rfa

To get started, you need to load the families into your model so they're available when it comes time to assemble your new railing. If you remember how to do this, go ahead and load all the families that you just downloaded from the web page. If you need some assistance, follow these steps:

1. On the Insert tab, click Load Family.
2. Find the files that you downloaded from the web page.
3. Select all of them, and click Open to load them.
4. Save the model.

The next step is to create a new railing and add some of these items to it.

1. In the Project Browser, find the Families category, and expand it, as shown in Figure 10.55.

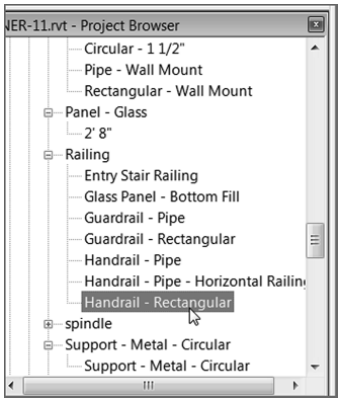


FIGURE 10.55: The railing family called Handrail – Rectangular

2. Find the Railing category and expand it.
3. Find Handrail – Rectangular, and double-click it (see Figure 10.54).
4. Click Duplicate.
5. Call the new railing **Wood Railing with Spindles**.
6. Click OK.
7. Click OK again.
8. In the Project Browser, under the Families category, scroll down until you see Top Rail Type, as shown in Figure 10.56.

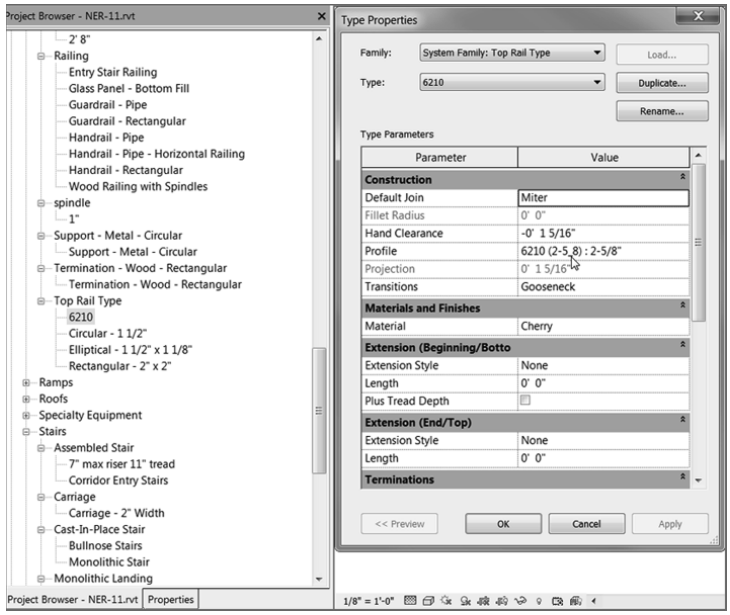


FIGURE 10.56: Changing the rail. Note that you can add as many rails as you want. Here, you're adding only one.

9. Double-click the Circular – 1 1/2″ (38 mm) Top Rail Type.
10. Click Duplicate.
11. Change the name to **6210**, and click OK.
12. Change Profile to **6210 (2-5_8) : 2 5/8″ (67 mm)**.
13. Change Transitions to Gooseneck.

14. Change Material to Cherry.
15. Click OK.
16. Under the Families category in the Project Browser, double-click Wood Railing With Spindles, located in the Railing category.
17. Scroll down, and change Top Rail Type to 6210.
18. Click OK.
19. Click the Edit button in the Baluster Placement row.
20. In the Main Pattern area, change Baluster Family to Spindle: 1″ (25 mm) (see Figure 10.57).

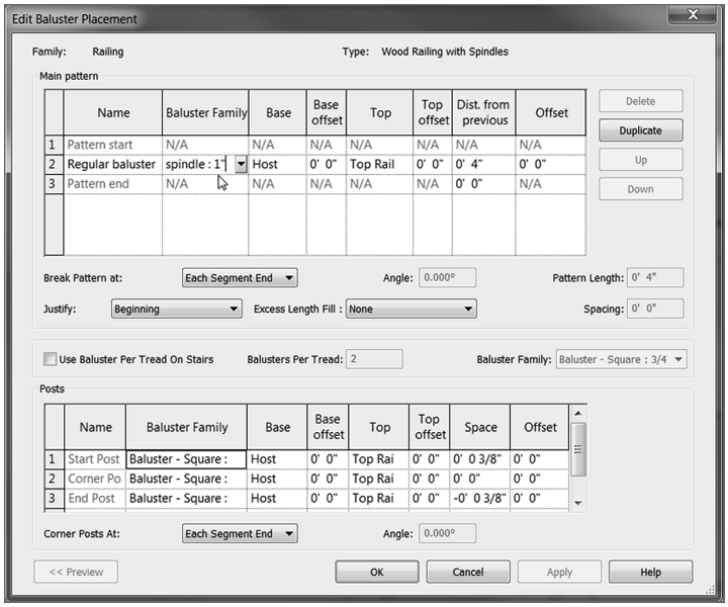


FIGURE 10.57: Adding the spindle to the Main Pattern area

21. Just below the Main Pattern area is the Use Baluster Per Tread On Stairs option. Select it, as shown in Figure 10.58.
22. To the right is the Balusters Per Tread field. Specify two balusters per tread (see Figure 10.58).
23. Change Baluster Family to Spindle: 1″ (25 mm), as shown in Figure 10.58.

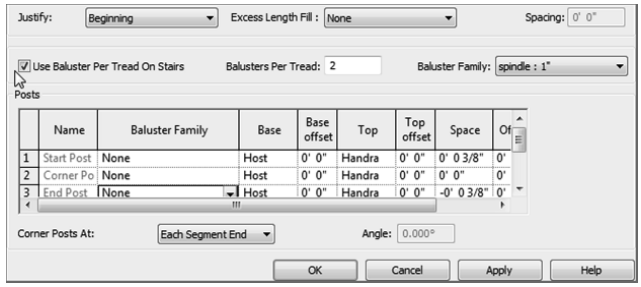


FIGURE 10.58: Specifying two balusters per tread and no actual posts

24. In the bottommost field is the Posts category. Change each of the three posts to None in the Baluster Family column. Your spindles are all you need (see Figure 10.58).

25. Click OK twice.

You may or may not have noticed that you didn't get the opportunity to change the baluster's material as you did with the railing. This action must be done in the family itself, as follows:

1. In the Project Browser, the Spindle category is just below Railing, as shown in Figure 10.59. Expand Spindle to expose the 1″ (25 mm) family.

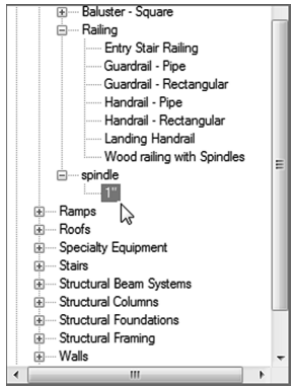


FIGURE 10.59: Finding the Spindle : 1″ family to access the material

2. Double-click the 1″ (25 mm) family to open its Type Properties dialog box.

3. Find the Material row, click into the <By Category> field, and click the […] button.

4. Change Material to Cherry.
5. Click OK twice.

This completes the railing setup. Once you add it to the stairs, however, some tweaking will certainly be required. The next step is to customize the stairs themselves.

Creating Custom Stairs

This is the third staircase you've created in the same chapter, so you've certainly gained some experience regarding the placement of stairs and railings into the Revit model. You're also becoming familiar with the stair and railings dialog boxes. This last procedure will tie all of that together.

Let's create that staircase.

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Stairs button.
2. In the Properties dialog box, make sure you choose Cast-In-Place Stair Monolithic Stair, as shown in Figure 10.60, and click the Edit Type button.

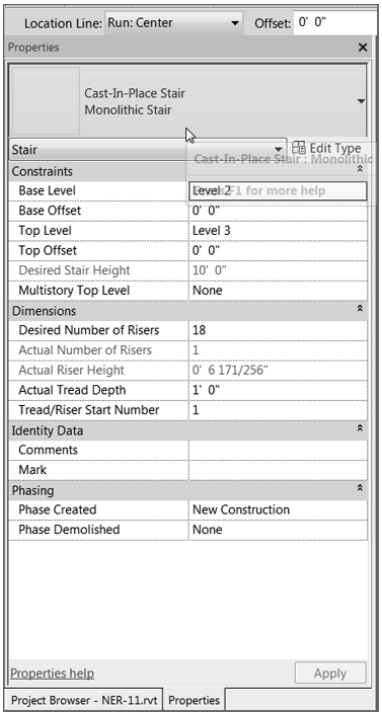


FIGURE 10.60: Configuring the stairs. As you can see, you have quite a few options.

3. Click Duplicate.
4. Call the new staircase **Custom Bullnose Stairs**.
5. Click OK.
6. Under Construction, next to Run Type, click into the 3⁄4″ Nosing cell, and then click the […] button.
7. Change the nosing profile to **stair nosing : stair nosing**.
8. Apply the nosing profile to Front, Left and Right.
9. Select the Riser check box.
10. Change the riser thickness to **3/4″** (**19** mm).
11. For Riser To Tread Connection, choose Extend Tread Under Riser.
12. Change Monolithic Material to Mahogany.
13. Under Treads, make sure Treads is turned on.
14. Change Tread Material to Mahogany.
15. Change Riser Material to Mahogany.
16. Click OK.
17. Click the 7″ (178 mm) Thickness cell next to Landing Type, and click the […] button to the right.
18. Click Duplicate.
19. Call the new landing **1′–0″** (**300 mm**) **Mahogany Landing**.
20. Change Monolithic Thickness to **1′–0″** (**300** mm).
21. Change Monolithic Material to Mahogany.
22. Click OK.
23. Click OK again.

It's time to configure some of the layout properties. These will allow you to calculate the rise/run count as well as some basic offsets you'll need.

1. In the Properties dialog box, set Base Level to Level 1.
2. Set Base Offset to **6 5/8″** (**152** mm), as shown in Figure 10.61.
3. Set Top Level to Level 3. (Yes, this is going to be one long staircase!)

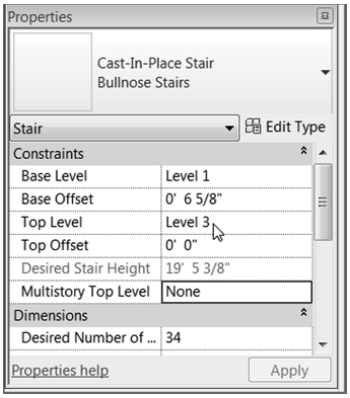


FIGURE 10.61: The Base Offset value is set to 6 5/8″ (152 mm).

The next step is to place this monster into the model. Although you didn't specify a multistory staircase, you'll need multiple landings to give your visitors a breather as they travel up the stairs. This layout will require a little more care in the initial planning stage.

1. On the Work Plane panel, click the Ref Plane button.
2. Click the Pick Lines button, and then offset a grid, as shown in Figure 10.62.

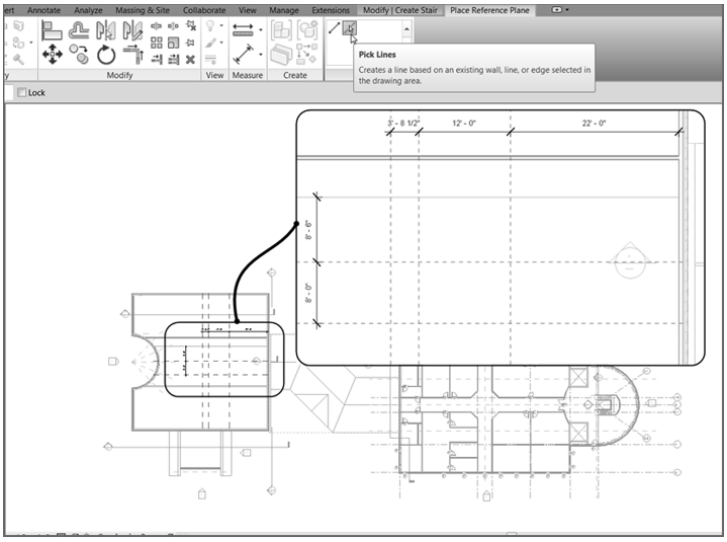


FIGURE 10.62: Using dimensions to lay out the centerlines of the stairs

The nice thing about using reference planes while in Sketch Mode is that they will disappear once you finish the sketch. If you need to go back and edit the stairs, the reference planes will appear again!

3. Click the Railing button.
4. Change the railing type to Wood Railing With Spindles, and make sure Position is set to Treads. Click OK.
5. On the Modify | Create Stairs tab in Sketch Mode, click the Run button.
6. Draw your stairs as shown in Figure 10.63. (Pick the points as the figure is sequenced.)

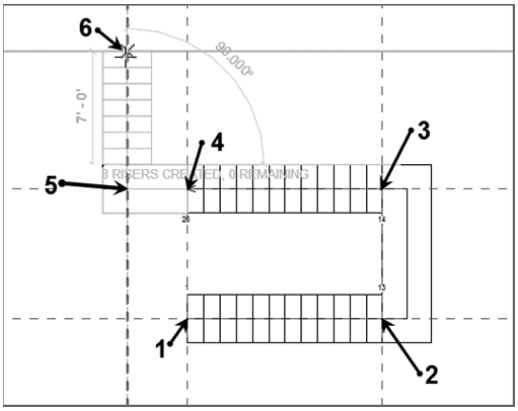


FIGURE 10.63: Picking the intersections of the reference planes to determine where the stairs will go

7. Verify that your plan looks like Figure 10.64.

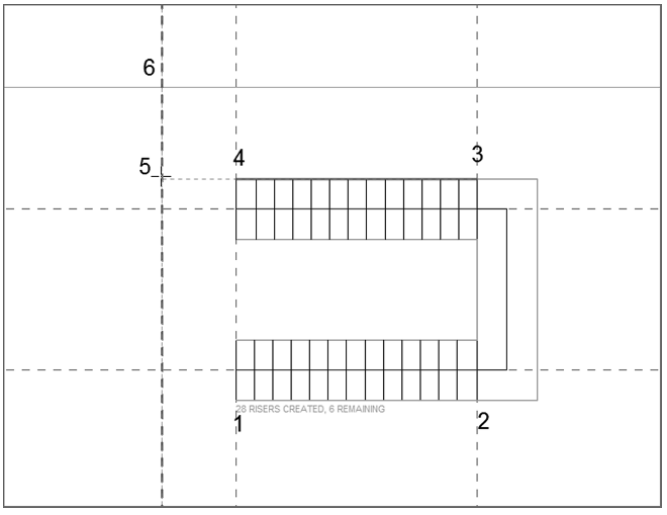


FIGURE 10.64: The stairs in place

8. Click Finish Sketch. Your stairs should look like Figure 10.65.

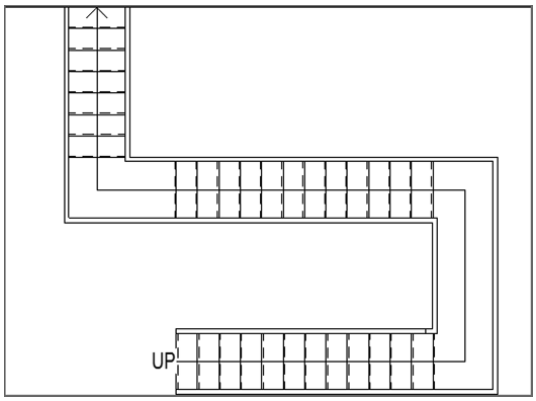


FIGURE 10.65: The stairs as shown in plan

9. Go to a 3D view to check out the stairs. They should resemble Figure 10.66.

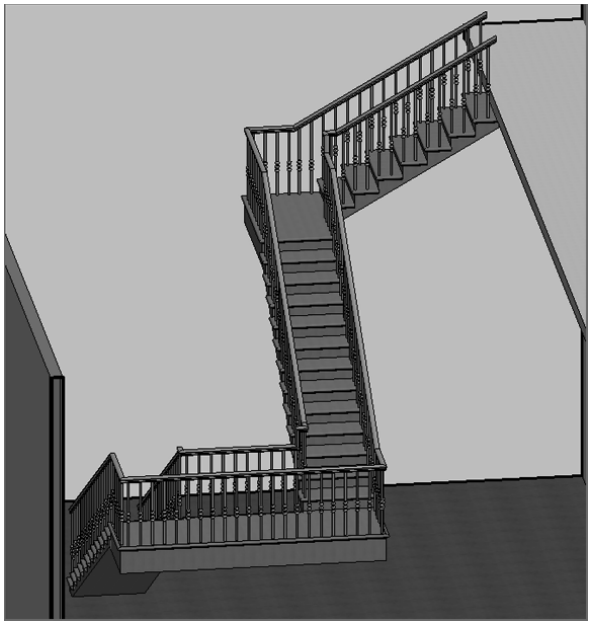


FIGURE 10.66: The stairs as shown in 3D. Notice the nice bullnose and the railings.

The next step (pun intended) is to add a landing to the bottom of the stairs. This requires creating a family. Although we will cover creating families in Bonus Chapter 2, "Creating Families," this one has been created, and you've downloaded the families needed to create this step in the stairs.

Adding a Custom Landing

You left the 6 5⁄8″ (152 mm) offset for the bottom tread because you need to introduce your own version of how that bottom tread should look. If you haven't already loaded the family, go to `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there, browse to the `Chapter 10` folder and find the `Landing.rfa` and `Post.rfa` files. After you've loaded the families, proceed with these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Place A Component button.
3. In the Type Selector, find and select the Landing family.
4. As you're inserting the family, press the spacebar to rotate the landing into the correct position.
5. Place the landing under the last tread at the point shown in Figure 10.67.

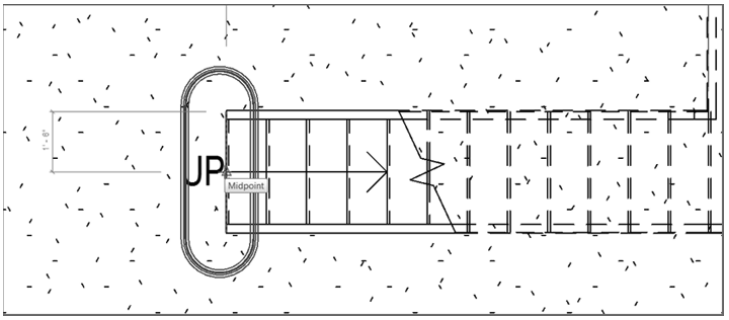


FIGURE 10.67: Placing the landing

6. Press Esc twice.
7. Select the landing.
8. In the Properties dialog box, change Tread Material to Cherry.
9. Change Base Material to Mahogany, and click OK (see Figure 10.68).

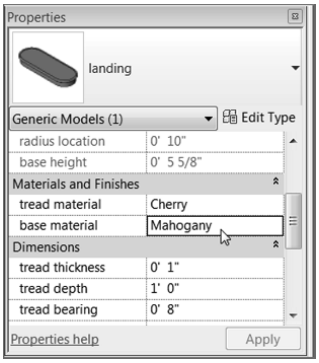


FIGURE 10.68: Changing the landing material to match the theme of the staircase

The next task is to add a post.

Adding a Gooseneck

In this style of railing system, it would be nice to have a gooseneck to catch the railing as it slopes downward and spiral it into the post. Of course, Revit doesn't have families for this built in, but this book does! If you didn't download the post family earlier in this chapter, go to the book's web page, browse to the `Chapter 10` folder, and find the `Post_up.rfa` file. After you download it and load it into the model, follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan, and zoom in on the landing area, as shown in Figure 10.69.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Place A Component button.
3. In the Properties dialog box, select Post_up With Gooseneck.
4. As you're placing the post, press the spacebar twice to flip it into the correct orientation.
5. Place it on the landing slightly away from the stair railing.
6. Select the post, and change Offset to 6 5/8″ (152 mm) in the Properties dialog box.

NOTE If the end of the post seems to be clipped in the plan, you need to adjust the view range in the Properties dialog box. Right now, the 4′–0″ (1200 mm) clip plane may be a tad too low. To fix this, find the View Range row in the Properties dialog box and click the Edit button. In the View Range dialog box, adjust Cut Plane Offset to 4′–6″ (1250 mm).

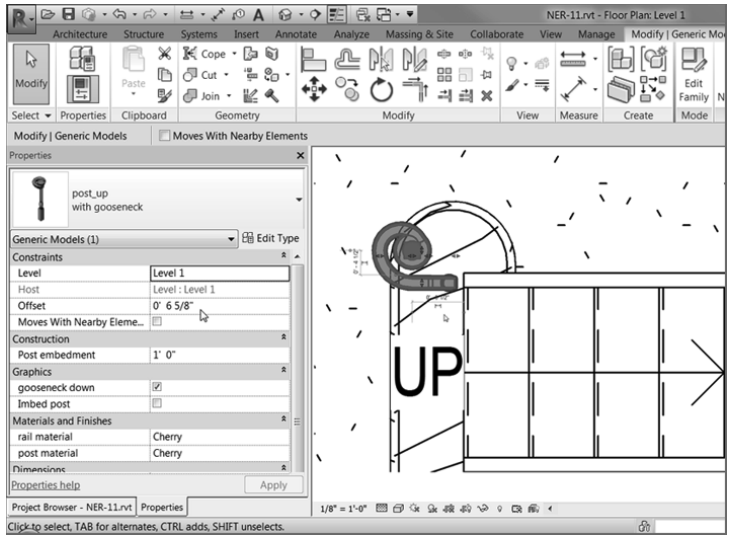


FIGURE 10.69: Placing the post with the gooseneck

7. Select the post again (if it's not still selected).
8. Click the Move button.
9. Move the post from the midpoint of the post's end to the midpoint of the stair railing's end, as shown in Figure 10.70.

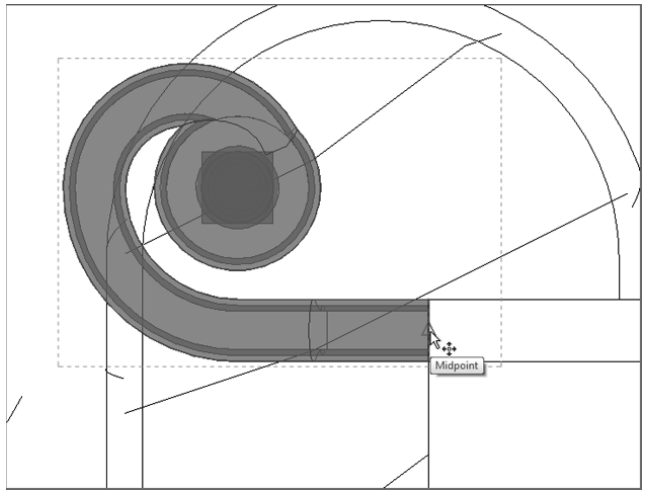


FIGURE 10.70: Moving the post to align with the stair railing

10. Select the post again (if it's not selected already).
11. In the Properties dialog box, go to the Materials And Finishes category, and change materials for both the rail and the post to Cherry.
12. Mirror the post to the other railing.

In 3D, your landing should now look like Figure 10.71.

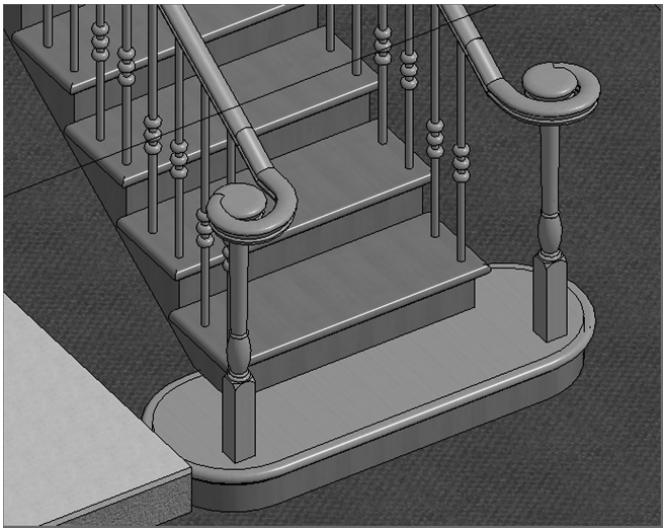


FIGURE 10.71: The completed landing

Adding a Railing to the Landing

Let's add the railing to the Level 3 balcony. Compared to that landing you just did, this is going to be a snap! If you feel as though you have the experience required to add your own landing railing, take a shot at it. If not, follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, go to Level 3.
2. Zoom in on the stairs.
3. Right-click one of the railings on the stairs, and click Create Similar.
4. Sketch a railing that is 4″ (100 mm) in from the face of the landing, as shown in Figure 10.72.

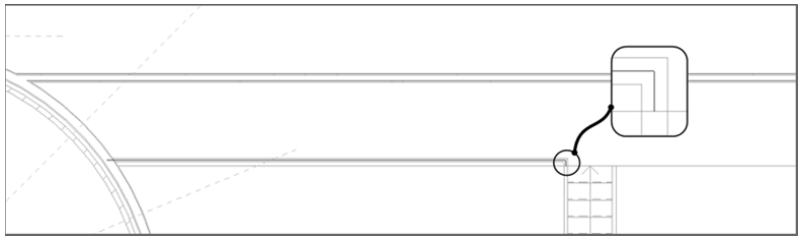


FIGURE 10.72: Adding the railing. This process is becoming old hat!

5. Make sure you have a "leg" tied into the stair railing.
6. On the Railing panel, click Finish Edit Mode.
7. Repeat the procedure on the other end (see Figure 10.73).

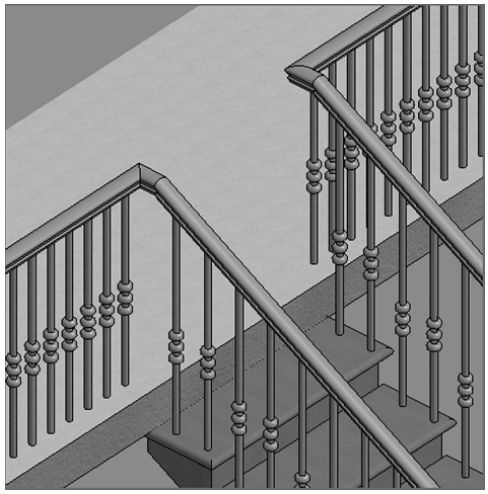


FIGURE 10.73: Both railings are in place.

NOTE To repeat the procedure on the other end, either you can mirror the railing you just put in and then edit it to reach the far end of the landing or you can start the Railing command and do it again. I recommend mirroring the railing, selecting the new railing, and then selecting Edit Path from the Modify | Railings tab. You can then grip-edit the right end to meet the wall. This assures you that the railing will be aligned with the railing on the stair.

The last step is to add a raised-panel stile and rail system along the third-floor wall.

Adding a Raised-Panel Stile and Rail System

The first thing you'll need to do is to add an entrance to the large Level 3 training room. The corridor will then receive a custom line-based, raised-panel family.

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 3 floor plan.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Door button.
3. In the Properties dialog box, select Single-Raised Panel With Sidelights : 36″ × 84″ (86 mm × 2134 mm).
4. Place it in the corridor wall aligned with the stairs, as shown in Figure 10.74.

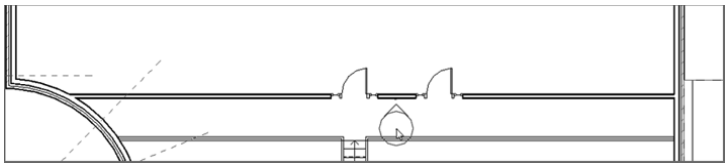


FIGURE 10.74: Pick the point as shown for the elevation.

5. Copy the door 10′–0″ (3000 mm) to the right (see Figure 10.73).
6. On the View tab, click the Elevation button.
7. In the Change Element Type menu in the Properties dialog box, select Interior Elevation.
8. Pick a point, as shown in Figure 10.75; then press Esc.
9. In the Project Browser, right-click the new elevation, and rename it **West Wing Balcony Elevation**.
10. Open the West Wing Balcony elevation.
11. Stretch the crop region so that you can see the entire west wing.
12. On the Architecture tab, click the Place A Component button.
13. Scroll down the Type Selector list until you find Raised Panels (see Figure 10.75).

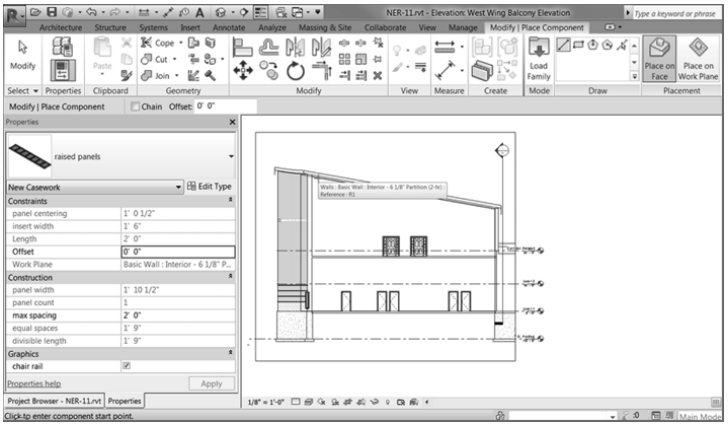


FIGURE 10.75: Picking the far wall to establish a work plane

14. In the Work Plane dialog box, make sure Pick A Plane is selected, and then click OK.

15. Pick the far wall (see Figure 10.75). If you don't have the raised panel family, you can download it at the book's web page; it's called `Raised Panel.rfa`. Once it's downloaded and loaded into the model, proceed with the next step.

16. On the Modify-Place Component tab, click the Place On Work Plane button, and pick the base point shown in Figure 10.76.

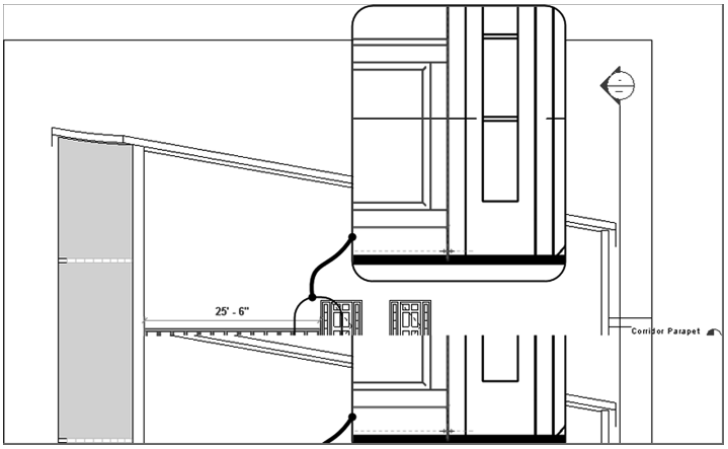


FIGURE 10.76: Adding the line-based, raised-panel family

17. Pick the second point.

NOTE If you can't seem to pick the points specified in Figure 10.75, go ahead and pick two points close to the area indicated in the figure. After you place the line-based family, you can select it and grip-edit the ends to extend to the wall's edges as shown in the figure. Also, if the panels are too high, simply move them down to the floor or align them after the panels are in place.

18. Start the Place A Component command again, if it's not already running, and add the raised-panel family between the two doors and to the right. This completes the raised panels for this level.
19. Select all the raised panel families on this floor (remember to hold the Ctrl key to add to the selection).
20. In the Materials And Finishes category of the Properties dialog box, change Frame Material to Cherry.
21. Change Panel Material to Mahogany. See Figure 10.77.

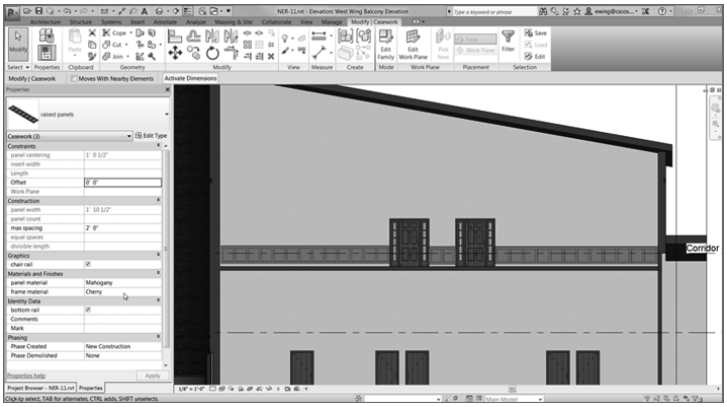


FIGURE 10.77: Changing the material

22. Change Visual Style to Realistic. Your elevation should look like Figure 10.78.

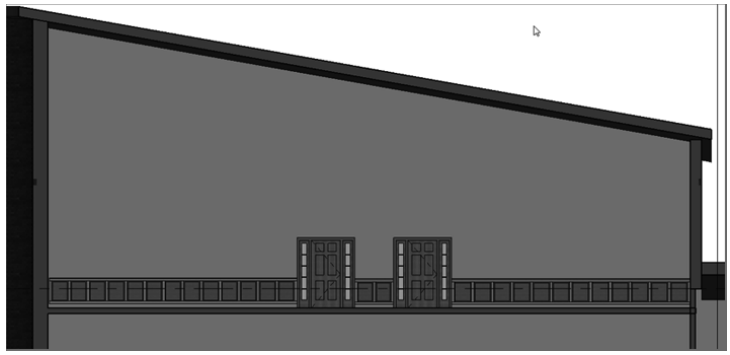


FIGURE 10.78: The finished raised-panel, line-based family

Wow! That was quite a bit about stairs. If you take anything away from this chapter, it should be the knowledge that stairs don't come easy, but you can create any staircase if you know you'll need to create families.

The last section of this chapter focuses on adding ramps to the model. As far as Revit procedures go, ramps are the kid sister to stairs.

Adding Ramps

When you think of a ramp in Revit, think of a one-tread, one-rise staircase at a 1/12 pitch. A ramp is placed in the model exactly the same way as a set of stairs. You still have the run method, and you can still sketch the ramp by using a boundary.

That being said, let's start placing a ramp in your model.

1. In the Project Browser, go to the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Zoom in on the radial entry of the east wing at grid intersection F-5 (see Figure 10.79).
3. You need to create a flat landing, so, on the Architecture tab, click the Floor button.
4. Click Edit Type in the Properties dialog box.
5. Select Generic – 12″ (305 mm) Filled.
6. Click Duplicate.
7. Call the new floor **Exterior Concrete Slab**.

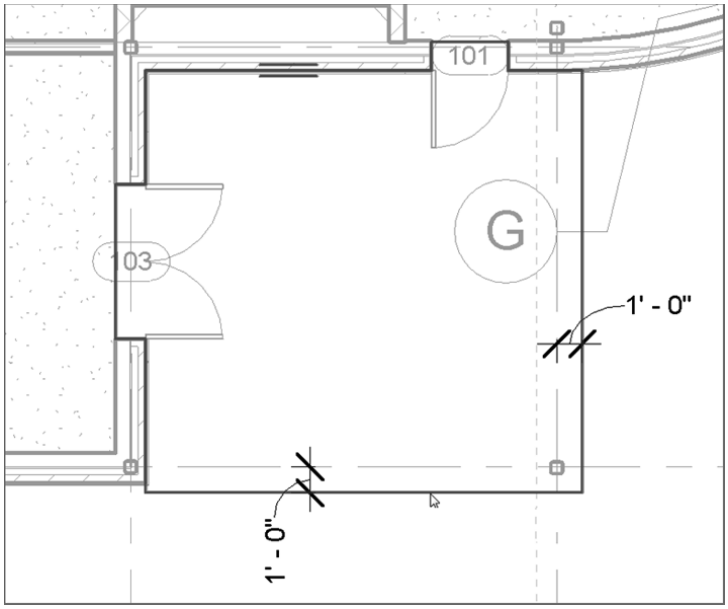


FIGURE 10.79: Sketching the slab perimeter

8. Click OK.
9. Click the Edit button in the Structure row.
10. Change Structure [1] Material to Concrete – Cast-In-Place Concrete.
11. Change Thickness to 6″ (150 mm).
12. Click OK twice to get back to the model.
13. Place the concrete at the points shown in Figure 10.78.

WARNING Make sure you're using Pick Lines Mode and are picking the outside face of brick. That extra line represents the water table above this floor's level.

14. When the slab is in place, click the Finish Edit Mode button.
15. Click No in the next dialog box.

Now you can add the ramp. You'll set the ramp's properties for the top to Level 1, and the bottom will also be at Level 1 but with an offset.

1. On the Architecture tab, click the Ramp button.

2. In the Properties dialog box, click Edit Type.
3. Click Duplicate.
4. Call the new ramp **Exterior Concrete Ramp**.
5. Click OK.
6. Give it a 6″ (150 mm) thickness.
7. Change Function to Exterior.
8. For the ramp material, click the […] button, and specify Concrete – Cast-In-Place Concrete, as shown in Figure 10.80.

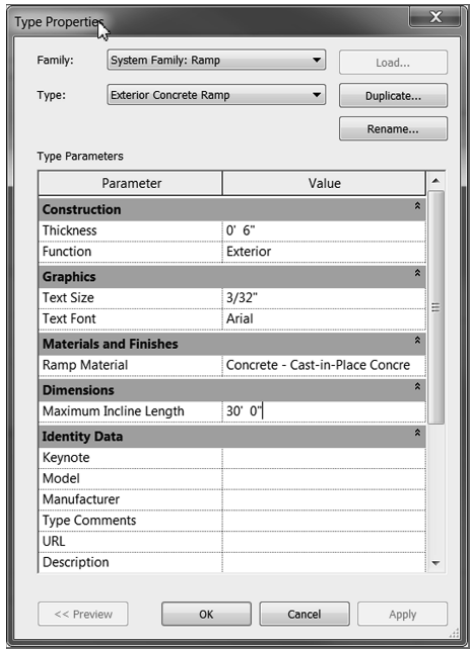


FIGURE 10.80: Modifying the Type Properties

9. Notice that Maximum Incline Length is set to the ADA standard of 30′–0″ (10000 mm).
10. In the Other category, notice that Ramp Max Slope is set to 1/12.
11. Click OK.

12. In the Properties dialog box, set Base Level to Level 1.
13. Set Base Offset to -2′–6″ (-750 mm), as shown in Figure 10.81.

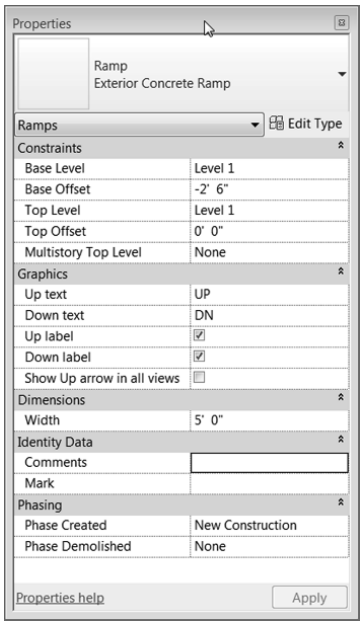


FIGURE 10.81: Setting the properties

14. Set Top Level to Level 1.
15. Set Width to 5′–0″ (1500 mm) (see Figure 10.81).
16. On the Draw panel, click the Run button.
17. In the model, click the first point for the ramp, similar to the point shown in Figure 10.82. (You have to place the point near the midpoint. Revit doesn't allow you to snap while in Sketch Mode.)
18. Move your cursor down the view (south) 15′–0″ (4500 mm), as shown in Figure 10.82. (You'll see the temporary dimension.)
19. Pick a point about 6′–0″ (1800 mm) below the end of the ramp, in alignment with the right boundary, as shown in Figure 10.83. After you pick the second point, the view should read "30′ (10000 mm) of inclined ramp created, 0 remaining."

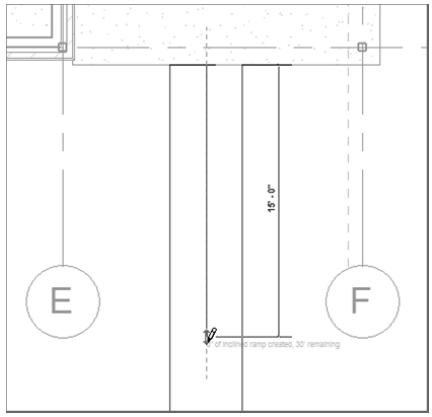


FIGURE 10.82: Pick the first point on the landing, and then move your cursor down 15′–0″ (4500 mm).

20. Move your cursor to the right until the ramp stops (see Figure 10.83).

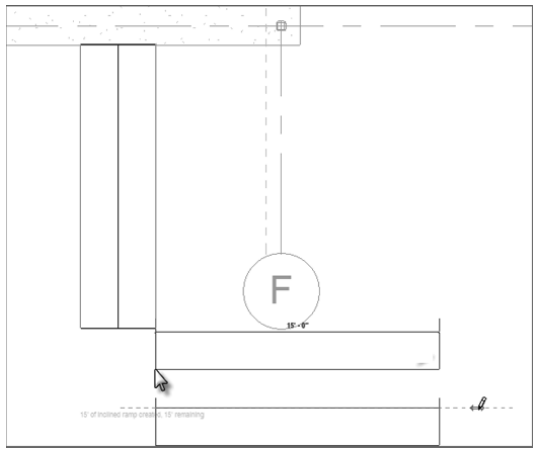


FIGURE 10.83: The second leg of the ramp

21. On the Modify | Create Ramp tab in Sketch Mode, click the Railing Type button.

22. Select Handrail – Pipe in the Railing Type dialog box that opens.

23. Click OK.

24. Click Finish Edit Mode.

25. Select the entire ramp (including the railing).
26. Move the ramp so that the midpoint of the top of the ramp meets the midpoint of the landing slab.

You may notice immediately that the ramp is sloping in the wrong direction. Also, you need to tie the railings into the slab. If you would like to pick around and see how to do these things on your own, go right ahead. Otherwise, follow these steps:

1. Select the ramp.
2. Pick the small blue arrow—this flips the direction of the ramp.
3. On the Architecture tab, click the Railing button.
4. In the Properties dialog box, click Edit Type, change the type to Handrail – Pipe, and click OK.
5. Draw a railing 8″ (200 mm) in from the slab edge, as shown in Figure 10.84.

It's best if you keep moving your cursor past the end of the ramp. This ensures that the entire ramp has been put in place.

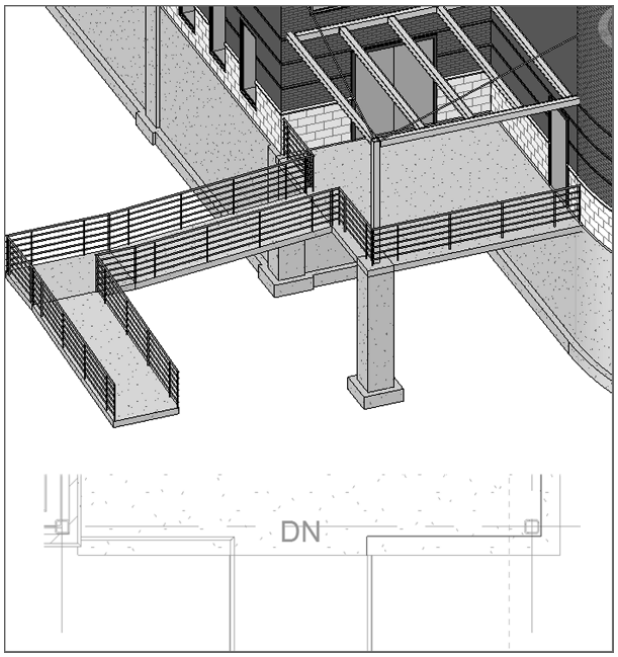


FIGURE 10.84: Adding the railing just as you've been doing this entire chapter

6. Mirror the slab, the ramp, and the railing to the other side of the building, as shown in Figure 10.85.

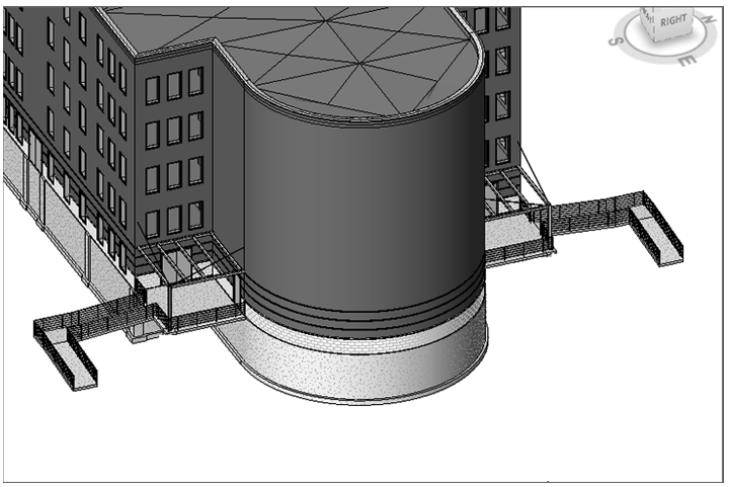


FIGURE 10.85: The two ramps

7. Save the model.

Creating ramps is necessary in almost every project. Some will be easier than others, and, at times, they may try your patience. Keep at it, and before long you'll have the experience you need to feel confident in creating ramps.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ **create stairs with the conventional method by using the Run command to generate the height and length you need**
- ✔ **create stairs by first laying out the geometry by placing line work in the model and then tracing over the lines with the stair components**
- ✔ **determine the difference between the boundary and the riser when you need to sketch the stair profile**

- ✔ load necessary components used to customize stairs and railings such as railing types, spindles, posts, and landings
- ✔ use separate components and access them in the Project Browser to place materials
- ✔ configure railings based on the baluster placement and the railing placement as used in the Element Properties of the railing
- ✔ determine how to tie a railing into a stair railing by using offsets and by aligning the railing sketch with the stairs
- ✔ add a line-based, raised-panel family to complete millwork items
- ✔ create ramp landings and create the actual ramp
- ✔ determine the length of the ramp based on the rise and run of the slope

CHAPTER 11

Detailing

Simply put, if detailing doesn't work, then you'll use the Autodesk® Revit® Architecture software only as a schematic design application. It's imperative that you can detail efficiently in Revit. When firms fail in their attempt to use Revit, it's because of detailing. In fact, many who have bought this book may jump straight to this chapter. Why is that? It's because many people (including me) buy into the concept of really cool 3D perspectives and one-button modeling.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- **Working with line weights**
- **Drafting on top of the detail**
- **Adding notes**
- **Creating blank drafting views**

Working with Line Weights

When you understand Revit, you find out immediately that the real hurdle in getting it to work lies in the detailing. Sure, you can cut sections and create callouts, but how do you add that fine level of detailing needed to produce a set of documents that you're willing to stamp and sign? This chapter addresses the issues surrounding detailing.

The first thing that comes to mind when dealing with CAD standards is line weights, right? In AutoCAD® it's layers, in MicroStation it's levels, but on paper, it's line weights that control 75 percent of a company's standards. As you'll learn in this chapter, Revit can be a good 2D drafting application as well. As you learn how to control line weights in the 3D elements, you can also control line weights, well, line by line.

NOTE **Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit will not accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.**

To begin, open the file you've been using to follow along. If you didn't complete Bonus Chapter 1, "Advanced Wall Topics," go to the book's web page at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there, you can browse to the `Chapter 11` folder and find the file called `NER-11.rvt`.

The objective of this procedure is to format the line weights and to see where and how they're read by Revit:

1. In the Project Browser, open the building section called Roof Taper Section. Zoom into the wall at the left.
2. Click off Thin Lines and notice that the perimeters of the walls and the roof are extremely heavy in contrast to the finer lines that divide the submaterials. This is what you'll change. On the Settings panel of the Manage tab, click the Object Styles button at the left on the Ribbon.
3. In the Object Styles dialog box is a list of every object category available in Revit. The first items you want to change are the roofs. In the Category column, scroll down until you see Roofs, as shown in Figure 11.1.

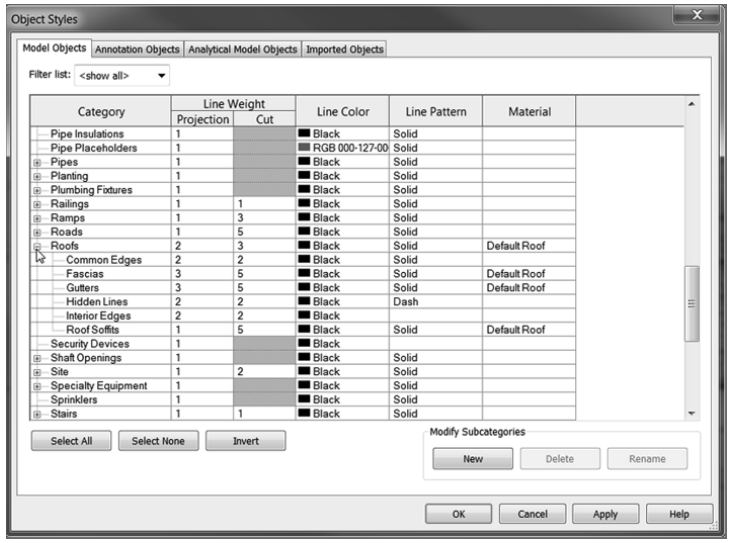


FIGURE 11.1: Changing the object line weights

Glancing up at the headers that describe the columns, you see the Line Weight column. This column is divided into two sections: Projection and Cut. The Projection column controls the line weights of

objects as they're viewed in plan or elevation. The Cut column controls the line weights as they're shown in section. So, to reiterate, *projection* means plan and elevation, and *cut* means section. Your objective is to modify the line weight for both the cut and the projection of the roof.

4. In the Roofs row, change the Cut value to 3 (see Figure 11.1).
5. Click the plus sign next to Roofs to expand the category.
6. All the subelements are shown, and you can control the line weights accordingly. Change the Cut value of Fascias to 5.
7. Change the Cut value for Gutters to 5.
8. Change the Cut value for Roof Soffits to 5 (again, see Figure 11.1).
9. Find Floors, and change Cut Line Weight to 3.
10. Find Walls, and change Cut Line Weight to 3.
11. Click OK, and you'll see the change to your outline (see Figure 11.2).

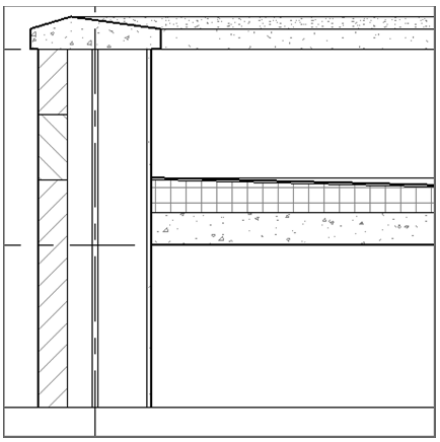


FIGURE 11.2: Your section's outline should begin looking a lot better.

It's Template Time!

Many of the procedures covered in the first section of this chapter lend themselves well to the topic of standards and templates. You need to change the line weights of objects in a Revit template.

Drafting on Top of the Detail

As mentioned, Revit provides a good number of 2D details that you can insert at any time. When Revit doesn't have the component you need, you can always create one. It isn't that hard to do.

In this section, you'll physically create a detail. The procedures you'll apply consist of adding detail components, linework, and filled regions and doing some good old-fashioned drafting!

Using Predefined Detail Components

The first procedure focuses on inserting predefined detail components. The great thing about this is that you'll do nothing you haven't done repeatedly throughout this book—it's just a matter of finding the right button to get started.

1. Make sure you're still in the detail called Roof Taper Section.
2. On the Detail panel of the Annotate tab, click Component ➢ Detail Component, and then click the Load Family.
3. Browse to the `Detail Items` directory. (It's located in the `US Imperial Library` directory.)
4. Open the `Div 01-General` folder.
5. Click the file called `Break Line.rfa`.
6. Click Open.
7. In the Type Selector of the Properties dialog box, be sure Break Line is selected, as shown in Figure 11.3.
8. Press the spacebar twice. (This flips the break line into the correct orientation.)
9. Pick a point similar to the one shown in Figure 11.3.

The next step is simply to start drafting. As mentioned earlier, you're only going to get so far with 3D modeling before you have to take matters into your own hands and draft. You can approach this in Revit by taking the parts of the detail you want to keep and hiding the rest. After you hide portions of the detail, it's time to begin adding your own ingredients, such as detail components and lines.

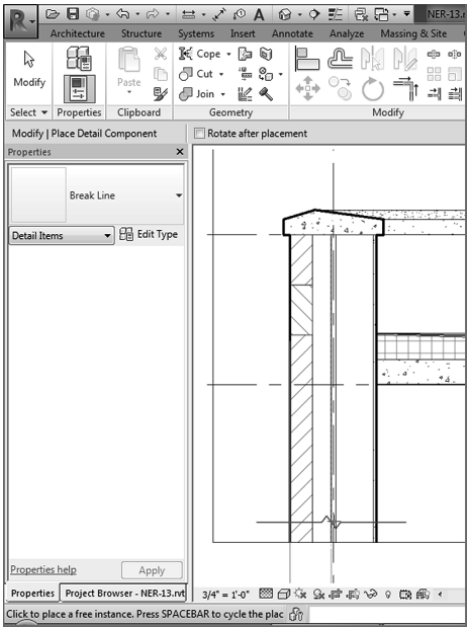
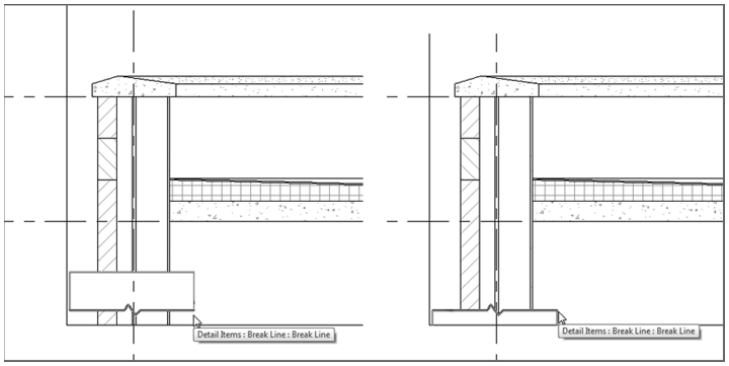


FIGURE 11.3: Placing the break line and flipping the component

This Flippin' Break Line Is Backward!

If you forgot to flip the break line as you were inserting it and it's masking the wrong region, that's OK. Press Esc, and then select the break line. Now you can press the spacebar twice to flip the break line, as shown here:



Masking Regions

To let you hide portions of the detail, Revit has added a nice feature called a *masking region*. Instead of wrestling with items over which you ultimately have little or no control, you can hide these items to make way for your detailing.

To learn how to apply a masking region, follow these steps:

1. Make sure you're still in the detail called Roof Taper Section.
2. On the Draw panel of the Annotate tab, click Region ➢ Masking Region, as shown in Figure 11.4.

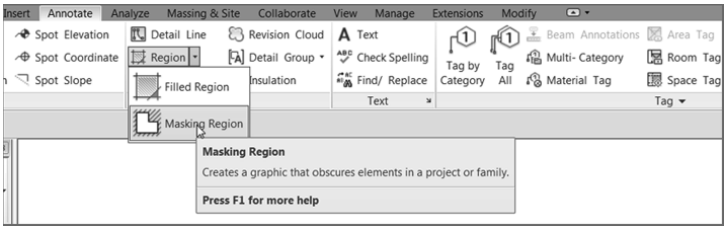


FIGURE 11.4: Creating a masking region

3. The Line Style panel offers some choices in the subcategory. Choose <Invisible Lines>, as shown in Figure 11.5.

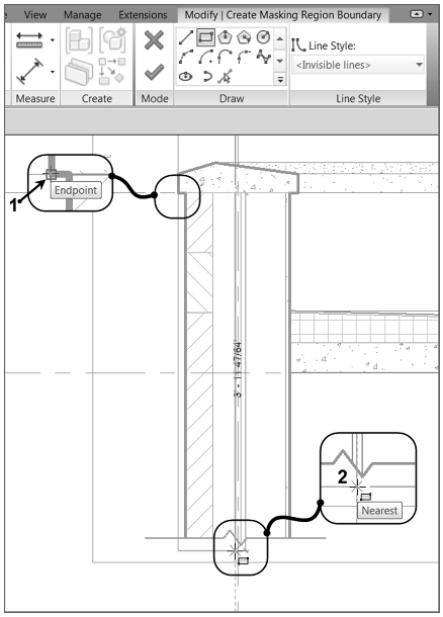


FIGURE 11.5: Click the Rectangle button on the Draw panel, and place a masking region as shown.

NOTE By selecting <Invisible Lines>, you ensure that the perimeter of the masking region won't be visible when you exit Sketch Mode.

4. Again on the Draw panel, click the Rectangle button.
5. Draw a rectangle at the approximate points shown in Figure 11.5.
6. Click the Finish Edit Mode button on the Mode panel.

The area is now masked. The problem is, though, that some areas, such as the break, may be a little *too* masked. The next procedure walks through changing the display order of a detail's objects:

1. If the break line is behind the masking region, select the break line, as shown in Figure 11.6.

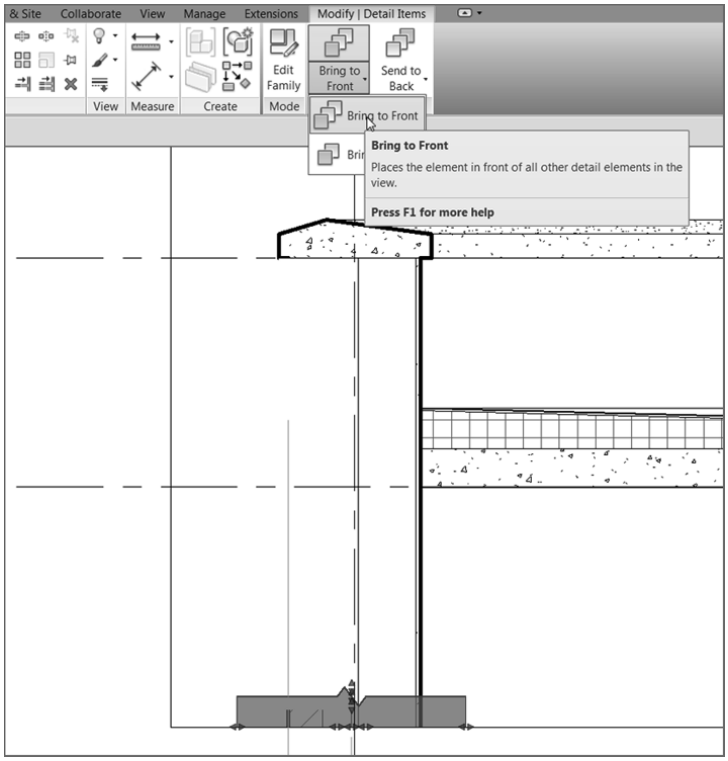


FIGURE 11.6: Click the Bring To Front button on the Modify | Detail Items tab after selecting the break line.

2. On the Modify | Detail Items tab, click the Bring To Front button (see Figure 11.6).

Your detail should now look like Figure 11.7.

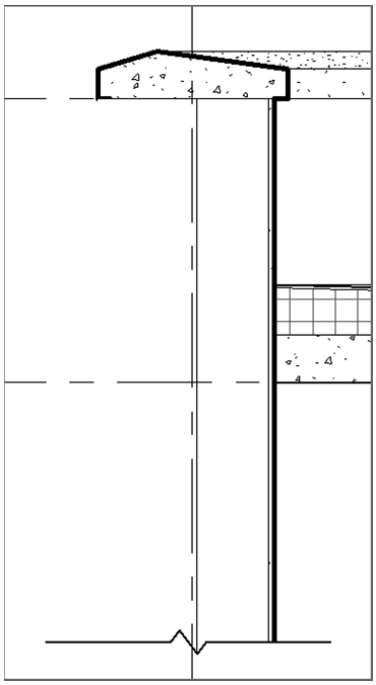


FIGURE 11.7: The detail with the completed masking region

The next step is to add a brick face. Yes, Revit showed the brick before you masked it, but you need to show coursing, as well as how the façade is tied back to the wall. To do this, you'll use a function called a *repeating detail*.

Repeating Details

Revit has a technique that allows you to add a detail component as a group. You do this by basically drawing a line; Revit then adds the detail in an array based on the points you pick.

To learn how to add a repeating detail, follow this procedure:

1. On the Detail panel of the Annotate tab, select Component ➢ Repeating Detail Component, as shown in Figure 11.8.

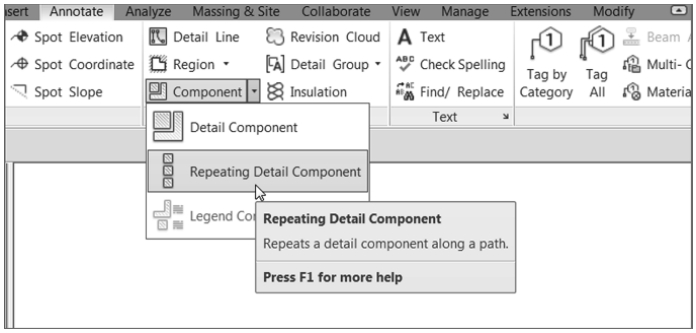


FIGURE 11.8: Select Component ➢ Repeating Detail Component.

2. In the Properties dialog box, choose Repeating Detail : Brick from the Type Selector.
3. Pick the point labeled 1 in Figure 11.9.

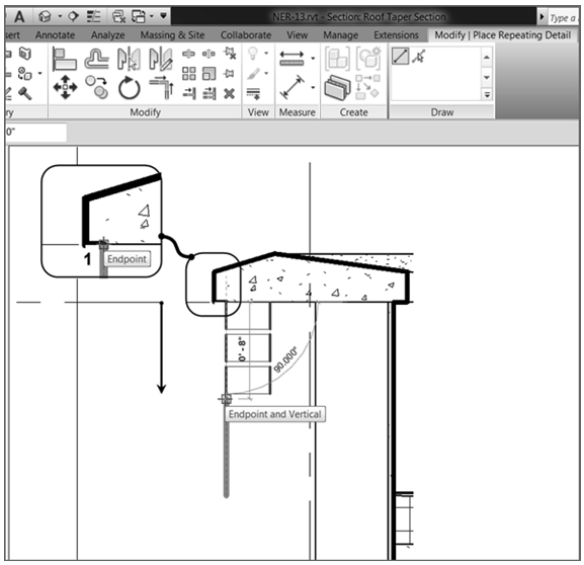


FIGURE 11.9: Adding the repeating detail based on the points shown

TIP Picking that point will be a little harder now that it's not there! The objective is to draw an actual façade based on the existing points where the Revit-generated brick once resided. When you hover your mouse over where the brick was previously, the masked detail appears. When it does, you'll see the point you need to pick.

4. After you pick the first point, move your cursor down the view.
5. The brick is facing the wrong side. Press the spacebar to flip the brick into the wall (see Figure 11.9).
6. Pick the endpoint 8″ (203 mm) down, as shown in Figure 11.9, so that three copies of the brick section are placed.

Your detail should look like Figure 11.10.

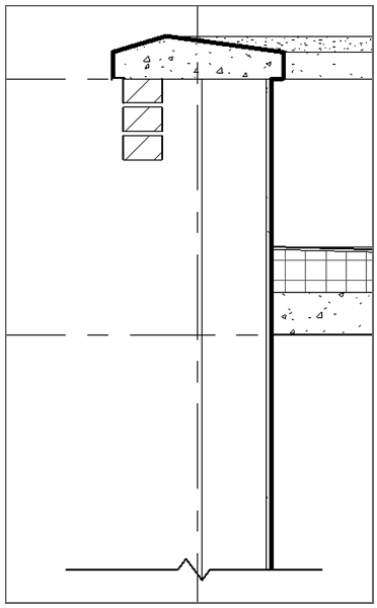


FIGURE 11.10: The first repeating detail

Let's keep going with the repeating detail. The problem you're facing is that you need to deal with the soldier course in the exterior wall. You can add that in a moment. Right now, complete the brick down past the break line.

If you feel as though you're getting the hang of adding the repeating brick detail, go ahead and add the second repeating detail. If you would like some instruction, follow these steps:

1. Click the Component ➢ Repeating Detail Component button on the Detail panel on the Annotate tab.
2. Pick point 1, as shown in Figure 11.11.

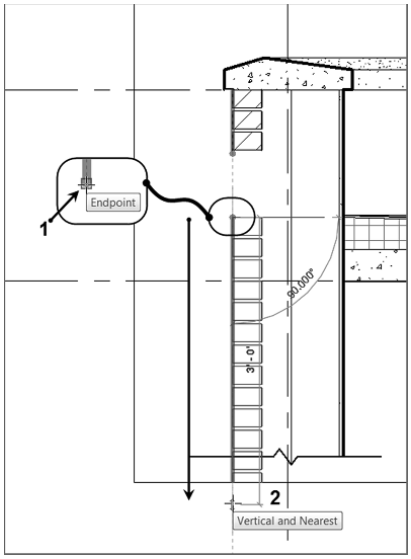


FIGURE 11.11: Picking two points

3. Press the spacebar.
4. Pull the cursor straight down, and pick point 2 (see Figure 11.11). Make sure you pick the second point well past the break line, or the brick will stop short.
5. Press Esc twice. Look at Figure 11.12. Does your detail look the same?

Remember, you can add a second repeating brick detail by right-clicking the first one you added and selecting Create Similar.

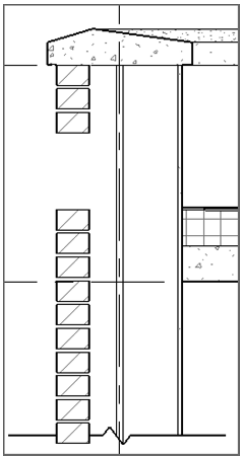


FIGURE 11.12: The bricks are being placed.

6. If the repeating detail is obscuring the break line, select the break line.
7. On the Arrange panel, click the Bring To Front button. The repeating detail is now behind the break line.

The next step is to add the soldier course. You'll do this the same way you added the break line. In this respect, Revit offers a good library broken down into the CSI format.

To add the soldier course, follow these steps:

1. On the Detail panel on the Annotate tab, click the Component ➢ Detail Component button.
2. In the Type Selector in the Properties dialog box, select Brick Standard : Soldier & Plan.
3. Press the spacebar until it's flipped as shown in Figure 11.13, and place the new detail component into the model as shown.

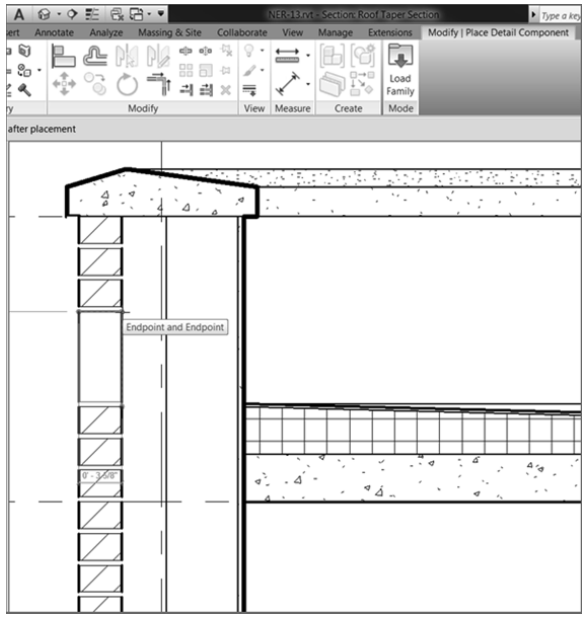


FIGURE 11.13: Placing the new detail component

TIP If you haven't noticed, when you click the Component ➢ Repeating Detail Component button, you always go to the `Families/Detail Items` directory in the Project Browser. This may go without saying, but it took a few months for me to understand this simple concept.

Well, the soldier course is in place, but that fat line weight is horrendous. It would be nice if everything that came out of the Revit box looked nice and met your specifications—but alas, that isn't the case. Let's modify this component to make it presentable.

Modifying a Detail Component

Right about now is when every CAD/BIM manager around the globe raises an eyebrow—for good reason. Revit allows you to modify a component by actually opening the file! But don't worry; you have to issue a Save As command to save the detail.

The objectives of the following procedure are to create a texture on the brick detail and to use a line weight that the user can control in the model:

1. If you still have a command running, click the Modify button to the left of the Ribbon, or press the Esc key.
2. Select the Bricks – Standard Soldier & Plan family that you just placed.
3. On the Modify | Detail Items tab, click the Edit Family button, as shown in Figure 11.14.

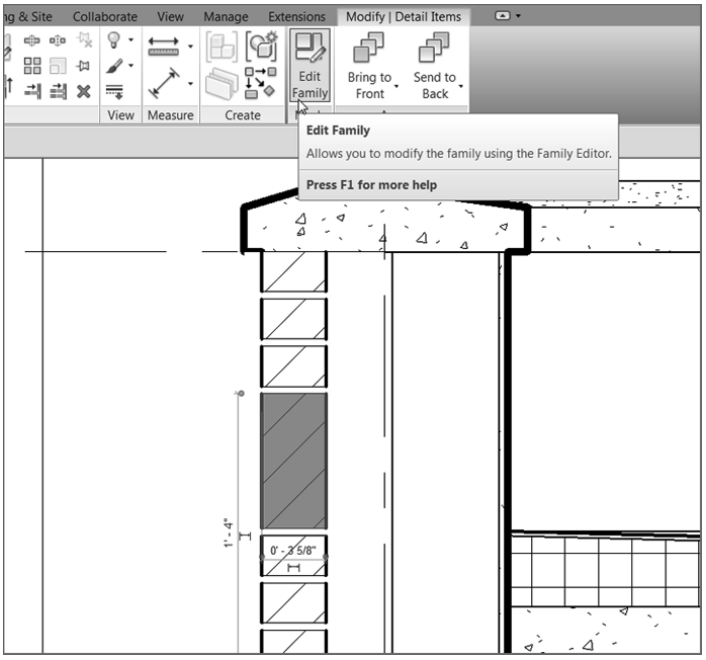


FIGURE 11.14: Open the family for editing after selecting the detail component.

4. The next dialog box may ask you if you want to open this file to edit it. Click Yes if you get that message.

The detail component family is now open. It's time to operate, Doctor. The next set of procedures will focus on modifying the linework of the brick and adding what is called a *filled region*.

Modifying Filled Regions

A *filled region* is similar to a masking region in that you apply both in the same manner. A filled region, however, contains a hatch pattern that is visible when the region is completed. This is how you hatch in Revit. It takes the place of the conventional hatch command found in AutoCAD and MicroStation.

The goal of the next procedure is to modify the filled region that makes up the brick. You'll also use the region's outline to define the perimeter and the texture of the brick.

1. Click the Revit Application button, and select Save As ➢ Family.
2. Call the new family **Brick – Soldier**.
3. Click the Family Types button, as shown in Figure 11.15.

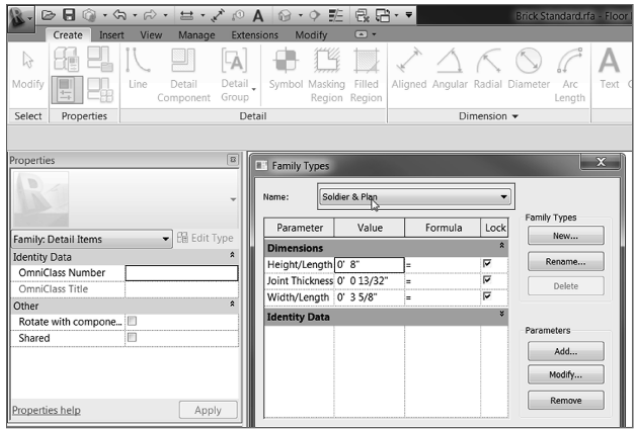


FIGURE 11.15: Cleaning out the extra types

4. In the Name menu, make sure Running Section is selected.
5. Click the Delete button at the right in the dialog box.

6. Select Rowlock from the list, and delete that type as well.
7. Click OK.
8. Select the line that is hovering over the top of the brick, and mirror it to the bottom so you have a line above and a line below the brick, as shown in Figure 11.16.

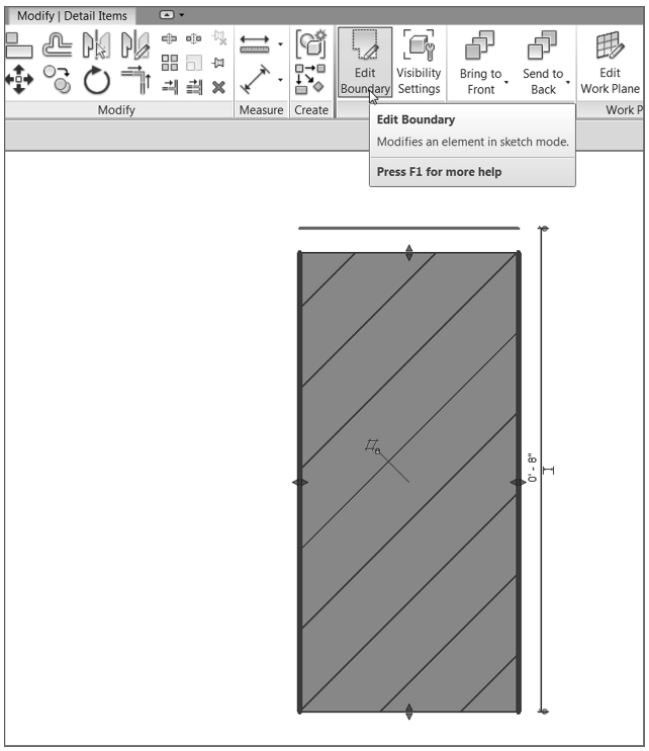


FIGURE 11.16: Editing the boundary of the filled region

9. Select one of the heavy lines that form the outline of the brick (see Figure 11.16). Revit indicates that this is a filled region, as revealed in the tooltip that appears when you hover your pointer over one of the boundaries.
10. On the Mode panel of the Modify | Detail Items tab, click the Edit Boundary button (see Figure 11.16).

11. Delete the two thick, vertical lines.

NOTE **As you may notice, changing a line's property is almost the same as in AutoCAD. You select the line and then change its line type in the Type Selector.**

12. On the Draw panel, select the Line button, as shown in Figure 11.17.

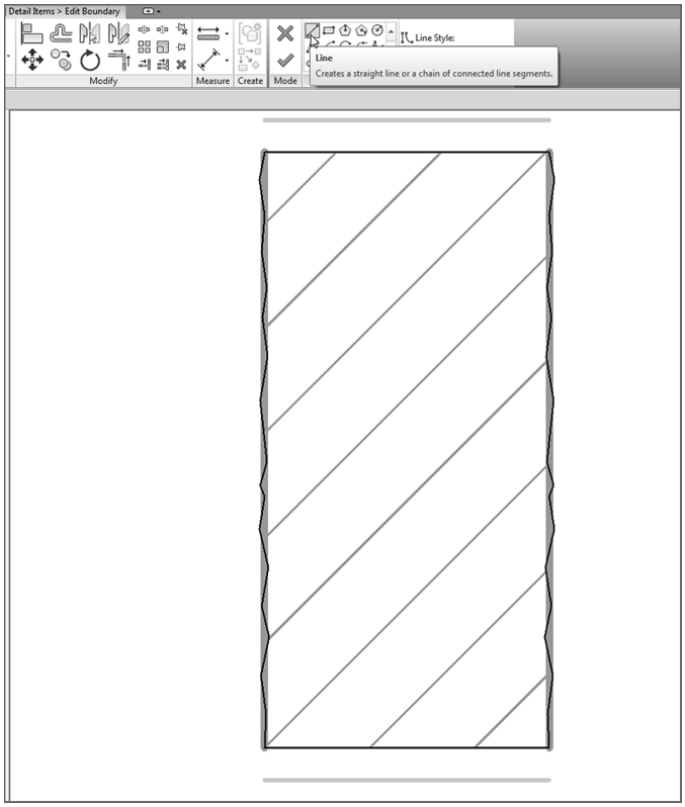


FIGURE 11.17: Adding a texture to the brick family

13. In the Line Style panel that appears, select Detail Items.

14. Draw a series of jagged lines on the right and left of the brick, as shown in Figure 11.17.

15. After you finish sketching the texture, click Edit Type.

Where Should You Save This?

When you click the Save icon, Revit doesn't save over the original file. You're forced to perform a Save As. You have three choices.

- If the file isn't write-protected and you have administrative access to the original folder, you can save over the original file. (Do I need to mention that you had better make sure this is what you want to do?)
- Save the file as a different file, either in the same directory or somewhere else.
- Don't save the file at all, and load it into your project. Revit will still update the project with the changes even if you don't save the family file.

You can even close out of the family file and not save any changes. Your model will still hold the changes. If you choose to edit the file at a later date, you can select the family in the model and click Edit Family. Revit will open a copy of the modified family.

16. Change the background from Opaque to Transparent, as shown in Figure 11.18.

FIGURE 11.18: Changing the background to Transparent

17. Click OK.
18. Click Finish Edit Mode. Your brick should resemble Figure 11.19.

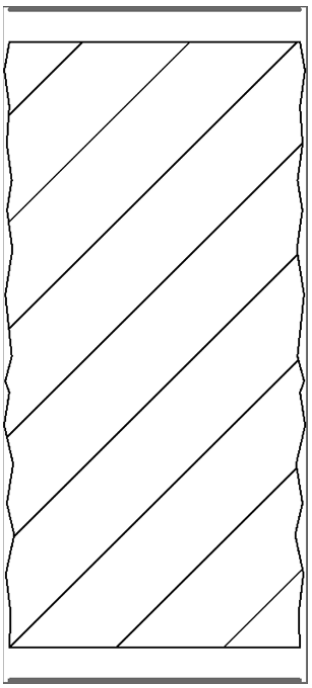


FIGURE 11.19: The finished soldier

Next, you'll add a mortar joint to the bottom of the brick. You simply add drafting lines.

1. On the Create tab, click the Line button.
2. On the Draw panel, click the Start-End-Radius Arc button.
3. Draw two arcs to the left and right of the top of the brick, as shown in Figure 11.20.

NOTE By putting all the lines on the Detail Items line type, you tell Revit that you don't want to specify a line weight here. Rather, Revit should let you specify the line weight by changing the Detail Items in the Object Properties dialog box after you load the detail back into the model.

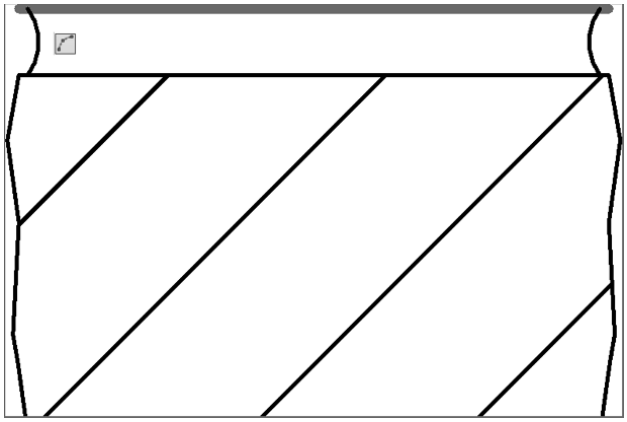


FIGURE 11.20: Adding the mortar joint

The next step is to add shading underneath the brick pattern. To do this, you'll create an entirely new filled region and add it to the brick by tracing over the existing filled region.

1. On the Detail panel of the Create tab, click the Filled Region button, as shown in Figure 11.21.

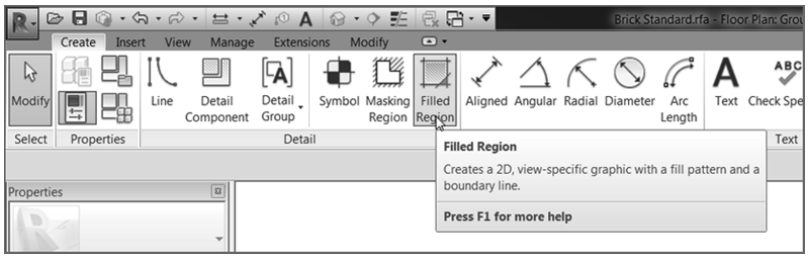


FIGURE 11.21: Click the Filled Region button on the Detail panel.

2. In the Properties dialog box, click the Edit Type button, and make sure Type is Solid Fill – Black, as shown in Figure 11.22.

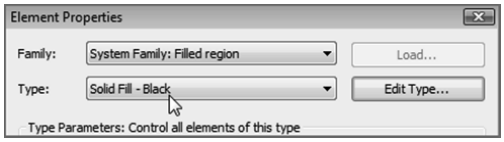


FIGURE 11.22: Changing the region to Solid Fill – Black

3. Click Duplicate.
4. Call the new region **Light Shade**.
5. Click OK.
6. In the Fill Pattern row, click into the Solid Fill [Drafting] field. Click the […] button in the right corner.
7. You can select any hatch pattern you want. Make sure Solid Fill is selected, as shown in Figure 11.23, and click OK.

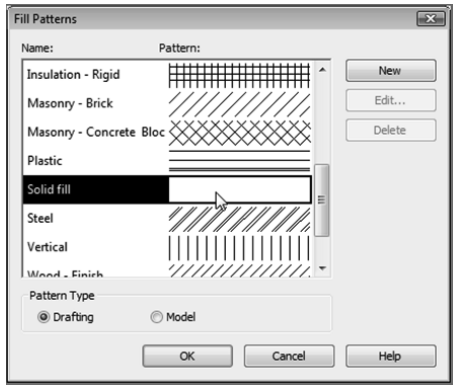


FIGURE 11.23: Select the Solid Fill pattern, and click OK.

8. In the Color row is a button labeled Black. It includes a little black box icon. Pick the black box.
9. In the Color dialog box, click the gray tile, as shown in Figure 11.24. (The color is actually RGB 192-192-192.)

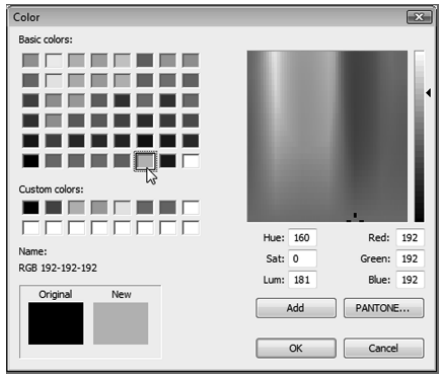


FIGURE 11.24: Selecting the gray color (RGB 192-192-192)

10. Click OK twice.
11. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines button, as shown in Figure 11.25.

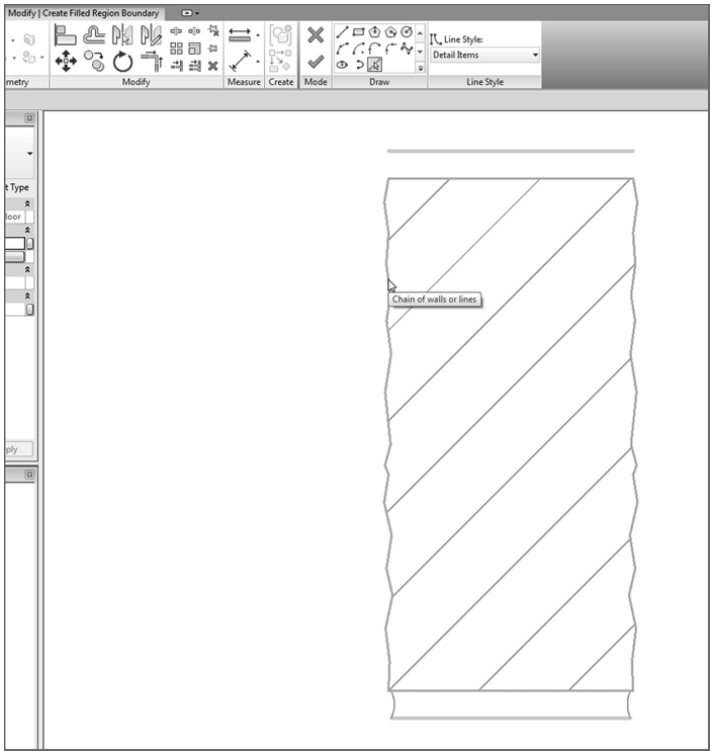


FIGURE 11.25: Press Tab to select the chain of lines, as shown here.

12. Hover your cursor over one of the jagged lines of the brick face, and press the Tab key. All the lines you're trying to trace are highlighted.
13. Pick any one of the lines (see Figure 11.25). Revit draws the region based on these points.

You may find that nothing happens when you press Tab. If this is the case, click any location in the view. Revit needs to focus on the view. You can also hold down the wheel button on your mouse to pan a little. This will also switch the focus from the Options bar to the view window.

14. On the Mode panel, click Finish Edit Mode, and then press Esc. Your brick should look like Figure 11.26.

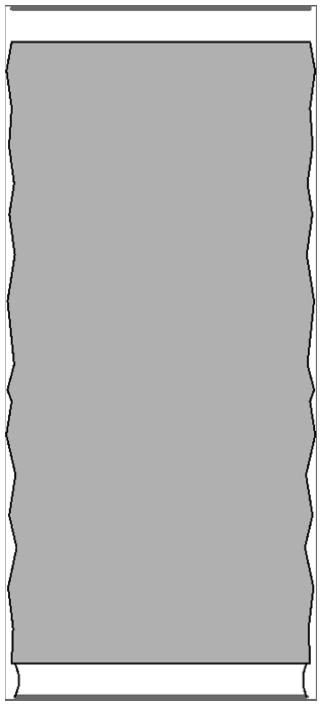


FIGURE 11.26: The solid pattern covers the previous pattern. You'll fix this in a moment.

15. When the filled region is in place, select it by clicking the boundary.
16. On the Arrange panel, click the Send To Back button, as shown in Figure 11.27.
17. Press Esc. Your brick should now look like Figure 11.28.
18. Click the Save icon.

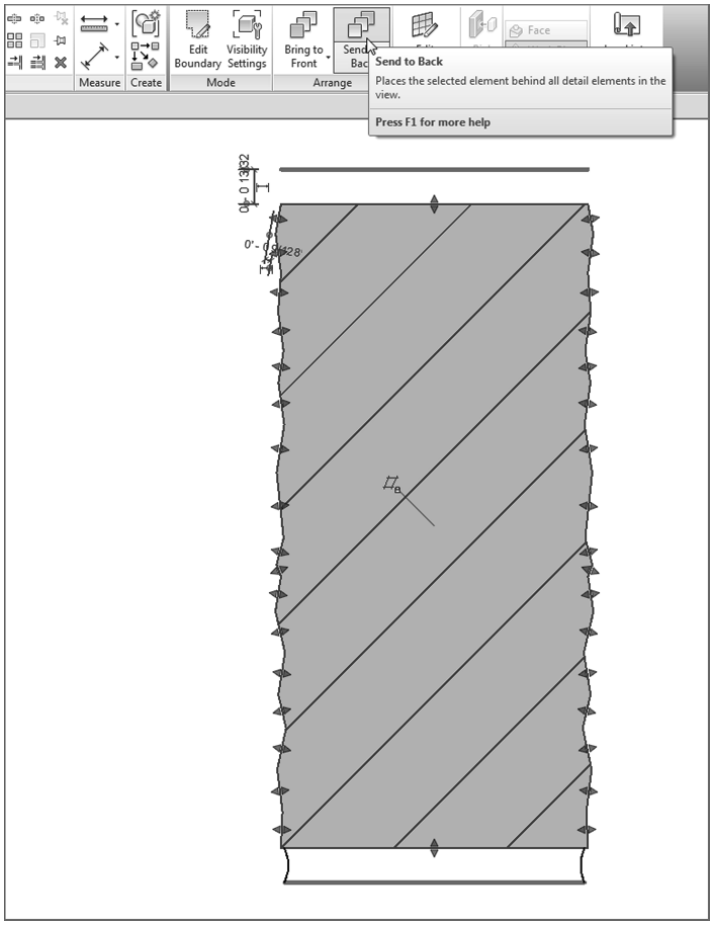


FIGURE 11.27: Sending the light shade to the back

19. On the Family Editor panel on the Create tab, click the Load Into Project button.

20. Place the new soldier to the left of the wall.

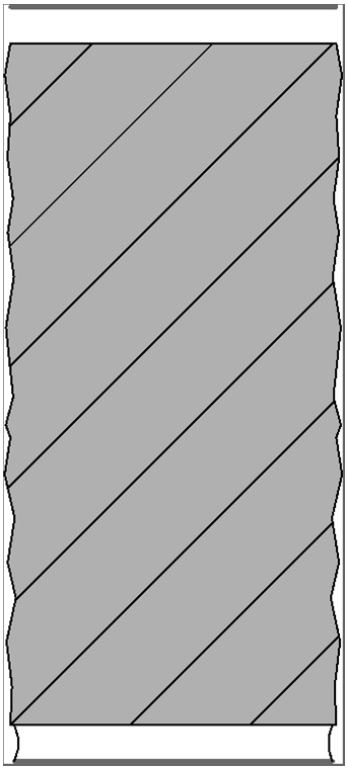


FIGURE 11.28: The finished brick

21. Select the smooth, boring, existing soldier.
22. In the Type Selector, change it to Brick – Soldier: Soldier & Plan.
23. Delete the extra brick. Your wall should look like Figure 11.29.
24. Save the model.

The next group of procedures focuses on editing the bricks used in the repeating detail. You certainly want the same face texture, and it would be nice if there was a mortar joint between them.

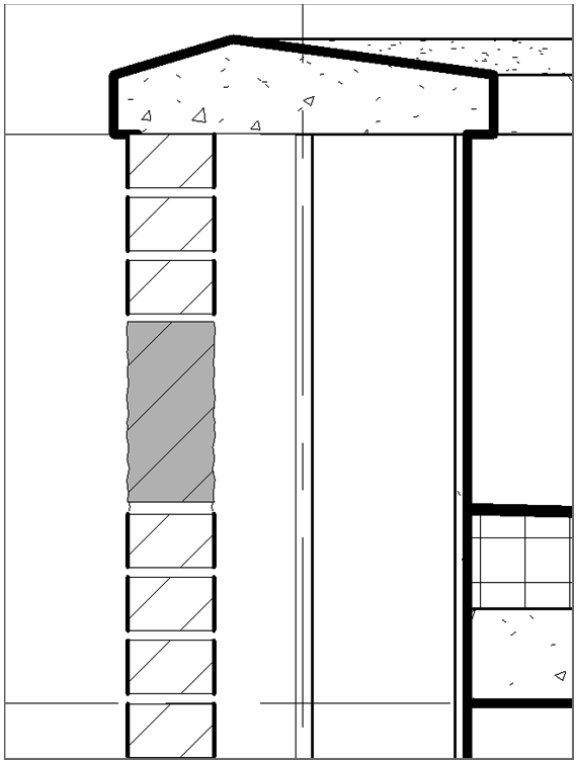


FIGURE 11.29: The new soldier brick in the model

Before you modify the bricks, let's explore how a repeating detail is created. The objective of the next procedure is to discover how a repeating detail works and how you can create a new one.

1. Make sure you're in the detail called Roof Taper Section.
2. Select one of the repeating details, as shown in Figure 11.30.
3. In the Properties dialog box, click Edit Type, as shown at the upper left in Figure 11.30.
4. Click into the detail Value list. Every detail component listed in your model is available. The detail component being used here is Brick Standard : Running Section.

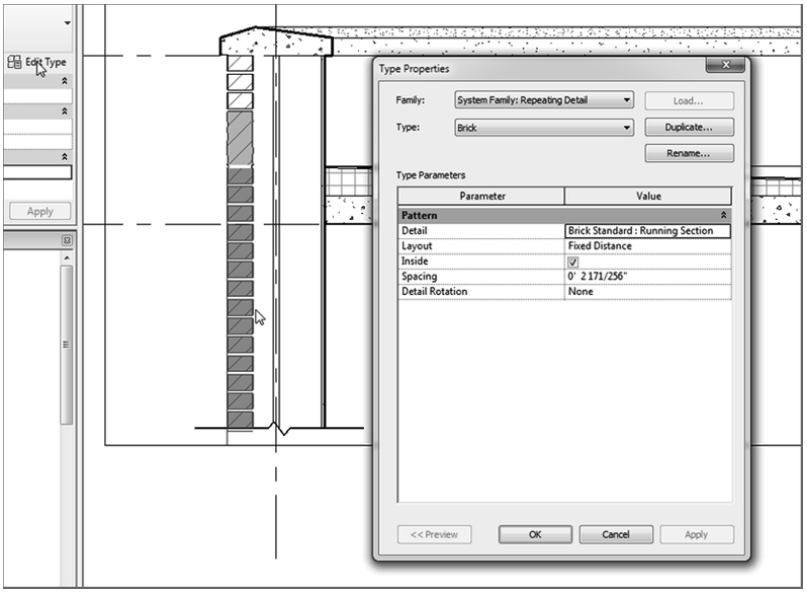


FIGURE 11.30: Click the Edit Type button after selecting one of the brick repeating details.

You can change the spacing and the patterns of how the repeating detail will perform.

5. Click Cancel.

The next objective is to modify the specific detail component that the repeating detail is using. To do so, you must add an instance of the detail component (in this case, Brick Standard : Running Section) and then edit the family. After you load it back into the model, the repeating detail will be up to date.

If you would like to give it a shot and do it on your own, go ahead. If you would rather have some guidance, follow these steps:

1. On the Detail panel of the Annotate tab, click the Component ➢ Detail Component button.
2. In the Type Selector in the Properties dialog box, pick the Brick Standard : Running Section detail component. (Remember, this was the component you discovered the repeating detail was using.)

3. Place the detail component off to the side of the wall, as shown in Figure 11.31.

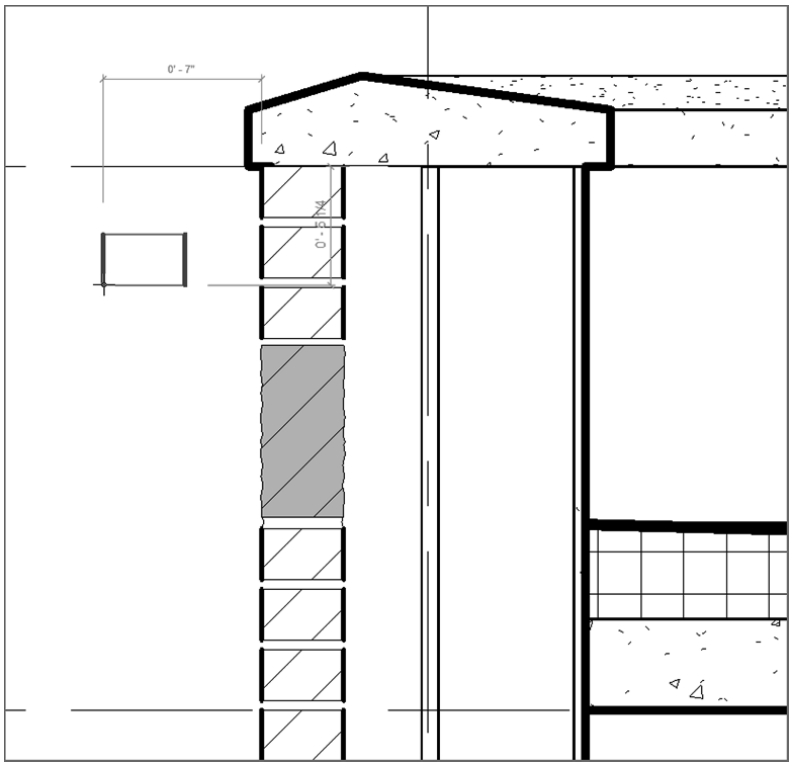


FIGURE 11.31: Place the Brick Standard : Running Section detail component off to the side. You'll delete this occurrence of the component later.

4. Press Esc twice, or click Modify.
5. Select the Brick Standard : Running Section that you just inserted.
6. On the Mode panel, click the Edit Family button.
7. Select the filled region.
8. On the Mode panel, click Edit Boundary.
9. Delete the right and left thick lines.

10. On the Draw panel, click the Line button.
11. In the Type Selector in the Properties dialog box, click Detail Items.
12. Draw the jagged lines on both sides, as shown in Figure 11.32.

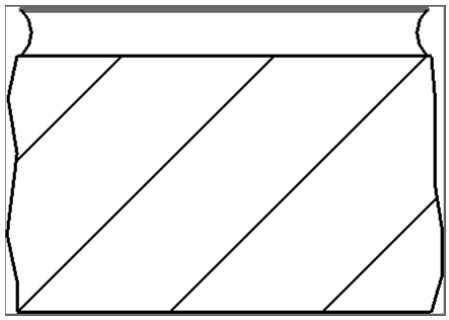


FIGURE 11.32: Draw the textured face while you're in Edit Mode for the filled region. Draw the arcs for the mortar joint using lines.

13. Click Finish Edit Mode on the Mode panel.
14. On the Create tab, click the Line button.
15. On the Draw panel, click the Start-End-Radius Arc button.
16. On the Subcategory panel, be sure Detail Items is chosen from the Type Selector list.
17. Draw an arc on both sides of the brick (see Figure 11.32).
18. When you're finished, save the new brick as **Brick Standard**. You can also find this brick on the book's web page in Chapter 11. It's called `Brick Standard.rfa`.
19. On the Family Editor panel, click Load Into Project.
20. In the project, click to overwrite the family.
21. Delete the stray detail component you placed. (You were using it only for access to the family.)

Compare your detail to the detail in Figure 11.33.

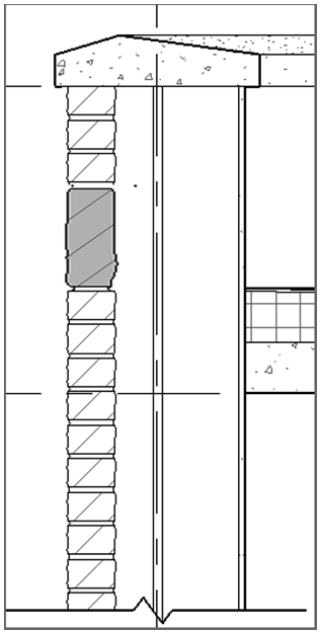


FIGURE 11.33: The brick actually looks like brick!

Next, you'll anchor this façade back to the wall. You need to add two things: a structural relief angle above the soldier course and a brick tieback to a lower course. Follow these steps:

1. On the Annotate tab, click the Component ➢ Detail Component button.
2. On the Mode panel, click the Load Family button.
3. Open the `Detail items` folder.
4. Select `Div 05-Metals`.
5. Select `051200-Structural Steel Framing`.
6. Double-click the file `AISC Angle Shapes-Section.rfa`.
7. In the Type list, select L6×4×5/16 (152×102×8).
8. Click OK. You'll have to use the spacebar and flip controls to rotate and flip the instance.
9. Place it into the model, as shown in Figure 11.34.

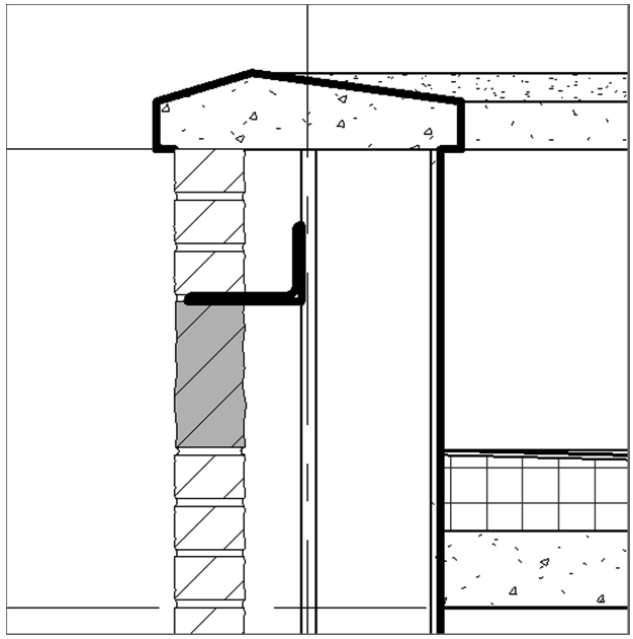


FIGURE 11.34: Placing the L6×4×5/16 (152×102×8) angle

10. Press Esc twice, or click Modify.

Of course, the line weight is basically a blob, so you must modify the family in order for it to look accurate. The next procedure is almost a review of what you had to do to the bricks:

1. Select the angle.
2. On the Mode panel, click Edit Family.
3. In the Family Editor, select the filled region (the entire angle), and click Edit Boundary on the Mode panel.
4. Select all the lines that form the perimeter of the angle.
5. In the Type Selector in the Properties dialog box, select Detail Items. (You're switching from Heavy Lines to Detail Items.)
6. On the Mode panel, click Finish Edit Mode.
7. On the Family Editor panel, click Load Into Project.
8. Click Overwrite The Existing Version.

9. Adjust the angle so it looks like Figure 11.35.

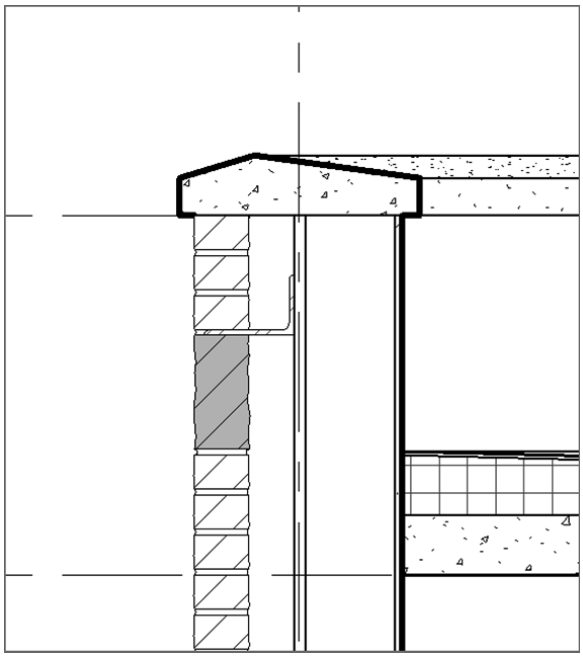


FIGURE 11.35: The angle in place and looking like an angle

The next step is to find a fastener to anchor the angle back to the wall's substrate. There is a problem, however. The type of bolt you need is a lag bolt that is power-driven from the exterior into the wall. Revit doesn't provide one out of the box. Luckily, the book you bought does! To find the lag bolt provided with the book, go to the book's web page, browse to the `Chapter 11` folder, and find the file `A307 Lag_Bolt-Side.rfa`. Then follow these steps:

1. To load the lag bolt into your model, select the Insert tab, and click the Load Family button. Browse to the directory where you put the `A307 Lag_Bolt-Side.rfa` file. Find the file, and click Open.
2. With the lag bolt loaded, click the Component ➢ Detail Component button on the Annotate tab.
3. Select A307 Lag_Bolt-Side : 3⁄4″ from the Type Selector.
4. Insert the lag bolt into the angle, as shown in Figure 11.36.

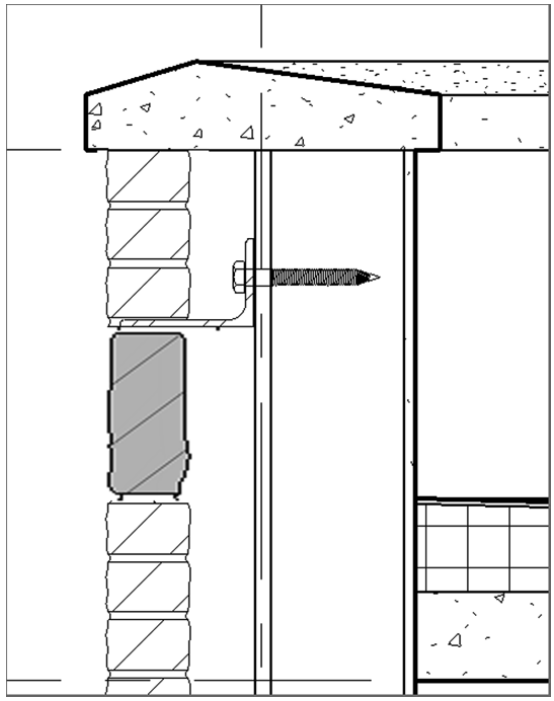


FIGURE 11.36: Inserting the lag bolt

5. Press Esc twice.

Now you'll add a corrugated wall tie to the brick below the soldier course. Because the brick is a pretty good distance away from the wall, you first need to add some wood blocking to the model.

1. On the Insert tab, click the Load Family button.
2. Go to the `Detail Items` folder.
3. Select `Div 06-Wood And Plastic`.
4. Select `061100-Wood Framing`.
5. Click the file `Nominal Cut Lumber-Section.rfa`.
6. Select the 2×6 (51×152) type, and click OK.
7. Select the Annotate tab, click the Component ➢ Detail Component button, and place the 2×6 (51×152) into the wall, as shown in Figure 11.37.

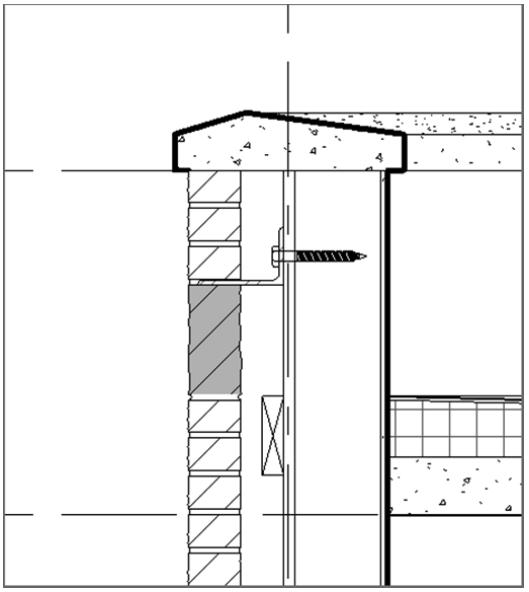


FIGURE 11.37: Adding the wood blocking

8. Press Esc twice.
9. Select the blocking you just added, and right-click it.
10. Select Override Graphics In View ➢ By Element.
11. In the Projection Lines category, change the weight to 2.
12. Click OK. Your blocking should look like Figure 11.37.

The next step is to add the corrugated wall tie. You'll do this in the same manner, except that it's located in a different directory.

1. On the Insert tab, click the Load Family button.
2. Go to the `Detail Items` folder.
3. Select `Div 04-Masonry`.
4. Select `040500-Common Work Results For Masonry`.
5. Select `040519-Masonry Anchorage And Reinforcing`.
6. Select the file called `Corrugated Wall Tie-Section.rfa`.

7. Use the Detail Component button to place the wall tie into your model, as shown in Figure 11.38.

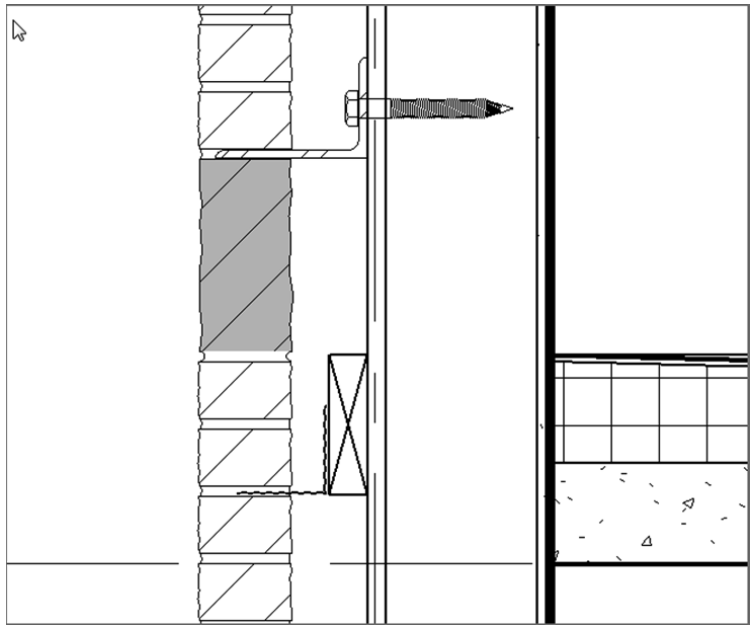


FIGURE 11.38: Placing the corrugated wall tie

8. Press Esc twice, or click Modify.

Now you'll add some blocking along the concrete parapet cap. You also need additional blocking along the lag bolts. If you would like, go ahead and copy the 2×6 (51×152) blocking around the model to mimic the figure at the end of this series of steps. Or you can follow these steps:

1. Select the 2×6 (51×152) blocking.
2. On the Modify | Detail Items tab, click the Copy command.
3. Pick the base point of the upper-right corner.
4. Copy the blocking.
5. Select the new blocking and rotate it into position, as shown in Figure 11.39. (You'll also have to nudge the blocking, using the arrow keys to center it into the wall.)
6. Copy the blocking down to double it.

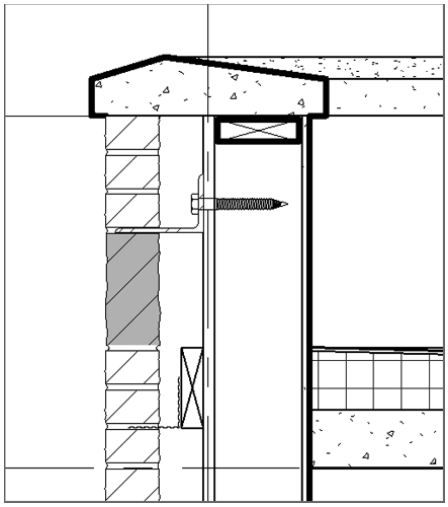


FIGURE 11.39: Rotating the blocking after copying it

7. Copy and rotate the blocking to the positions shown in Figure 11.40 to allow for support of the lag bolt.

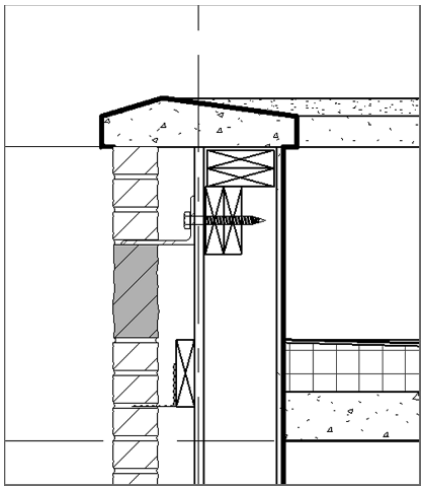


FIGURE 11.40: Copy the blocking as shown.

8. Select all the blocking that has the heavy line weight, right-click, and choose Override Graphics In View ➢ By Element. Change the Projection Line Weight value to 2.
9. Compare your detail to Figure 11.40.

When you're drafting over a true section of your model, it's always good to try to use as much of the graphical information from the actual model as possible. For example, the 3⁄4″ (16 mm) void you see the bolt going through is actually 3/4″ (16 mm) plywood sheathing. For some reason, the default plywood material has its cut pattern set to None. Let's fix this:

1. Select the wall.
2. Click Edit Type.
3. Click the Edit button in the Structure row.
4. Click into the Material column in row 5. It's the substrate row, and the material is –Plywood, Sheathing.
5. When you click –Plywood, Sheathing, you see a tiny […] button. Click it.
6. On the Graphics tab, click into the Pattern field in the Cut Pattern category, and change the pattern to Plywood, as shown in Figure 11.41.

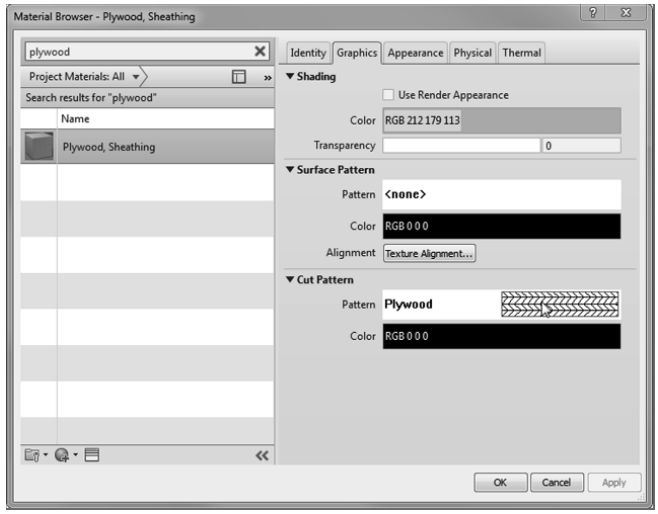


FIGURE 11.41: Show us your plywood!

7. Double-click the plywood pattern (see Figure 11.41 for the location of the cursor).
8. Click the Edit button.
9. Select the Align With Element drop-down for the Orientation In Host Layers field.
10. Click OK three times to get back to the model.

Now that you have a good grasp of adding detail components, you need to learn how to control the line weight so that the outlines of the bricks look a little bolder.

If you remember, some of the detail components were modified based on the line weight of the filled region perimeter. This thickness was changed from Heavy Lines to Detail Items. You need to set Detail Items to a thickness you can live with.

1. On the Manage tab, click the Object Styles button.
2. Scroll down the list until you see Detail Items.
3. Change the Projection Line Weight to 2, as shown in Figure 11.42.

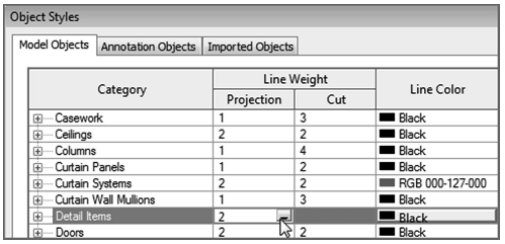


FIGURE 11.42: Changing the Detail Items Projection Line Weight to 2

4. Click OK. Your detail now has a bolder perimeter.

NOTE **It's a great idea to plot this detail right now. Although Revit does a nice job of letting you see the contrasting line weights on the screen, it may be a different story at the plotter. Do yourself a favor, and make sure this is the line weight you want.**

Another item left to explore in terms of adding detail to a view is the simple concept of drawing lines.

Drawing Detail Lines

As I mentioned, in Revit you can simply draw lines. You can get only so far with detail components, and then you need to pick up the pencil and add your lines.

The next set of procedures will focus on adding lines to your view. Then we'll look deeper into how these lines are created and modified.

1. In the Project Browser, make sure you're in Sections (Building Sections : Roof Taper Section).
2. On the Detail panel of the Annotate tab, click the Detail Line button.
3. In the Line Style menu, select Medium Lines, as shown in Figure 11.43.

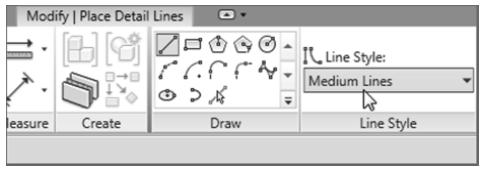


FIGURE 11.43: Select the Medium Lines choice in the Line Style menu.

4. On the Options bar, deselect the Chain option.

NOTE Does this seem familiar? If you're used to the AutoCAD method of drafting, this is the same as starting the Line command and choosing the correct layer.

5. Draw a line, as shown in Figure 11.44. Be sure to use your endpoint and perpendicular snaps.
6. With the Line command still running, click the Pick Lines icon on the Draw panel.
7. Change Offset to 1 1/2″ (38 mm), as shown in Figure 11.45.
8. Offset the line you just drew down 1 1/2″ (38 mm) (see Figure 11.45).
9. With the Line command still running, change to Thin Lines in the Line Style panel.

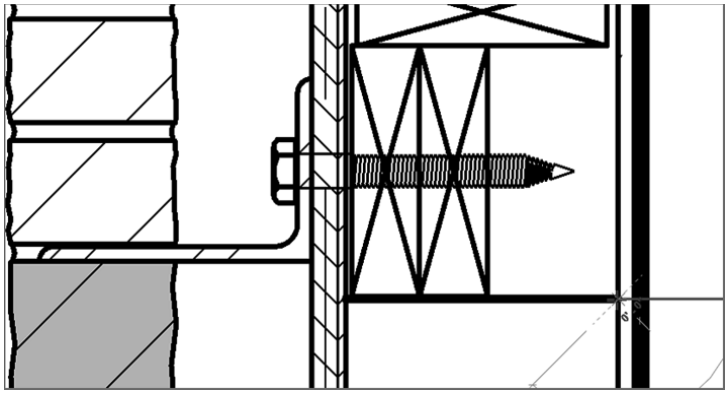


FIGURE 11.44: Drawing a medium line

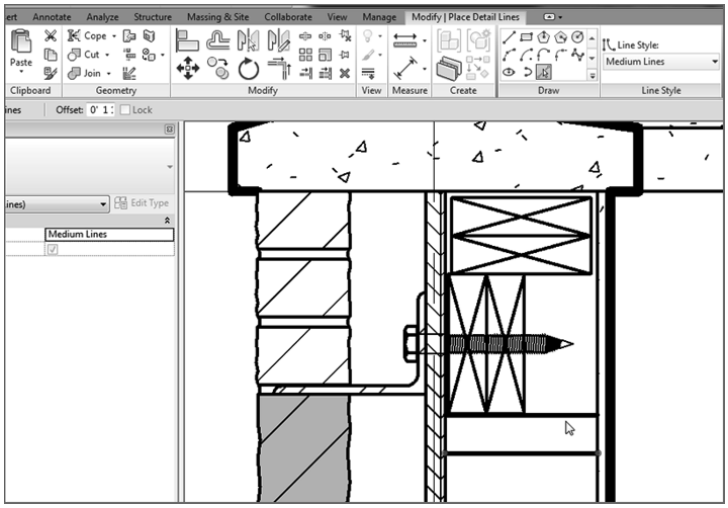


FIGURE 11.45: Offsetting the line down 1 1/2″ (38 mm) to create a second line

10. In the Draw panel, click the Line button.
11. Change the offset to **0**.
12. Draw the *X* for the blocking, as shown in Figure 11.46.

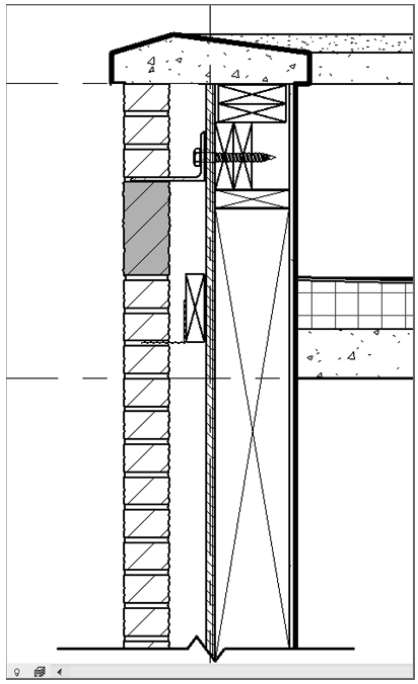


FIGURE 11.46: Adding the detail to indicate studs and plates by using detail lines

13. Copy the blocking down to form a double plate (see Figure 11.46).
14. Draw another *X* below the plates to indicate a stud (again, see Figure 11.46).

So, what makes a Medium Line medium and a Thin Line thin? This is a part of Revit over which you need to have full control. After all, your biggest challenge will be getting your plotted sheets to match your old CAD-plotted sheets. Specifying line weights is crucial.

Specifying Drafting Line Weights

In CAD, you wouldn't dare to draw even a single line if you didn't know the proper layer on which it was being drafted, right? Why should Revit be any different?

The objective of the next procedure is to investigate where the line weights are stored and how they relate to the lines you're drawing.

1. On the Manage tab, choose Additional Settings ➢ Line Styles.
2. In the Line Styles dialog box, expand the Lines category by clicking the plus sign next to Lines. Some of the line styles were generated in AutoCAD.
3. Click into the Wide Lines category, and change the value from 5 to 4, as shown in Figure 11.47.

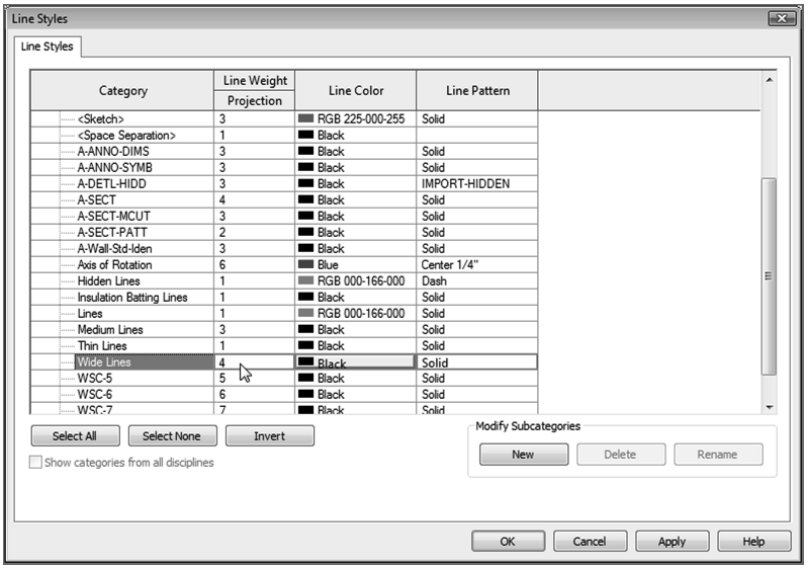


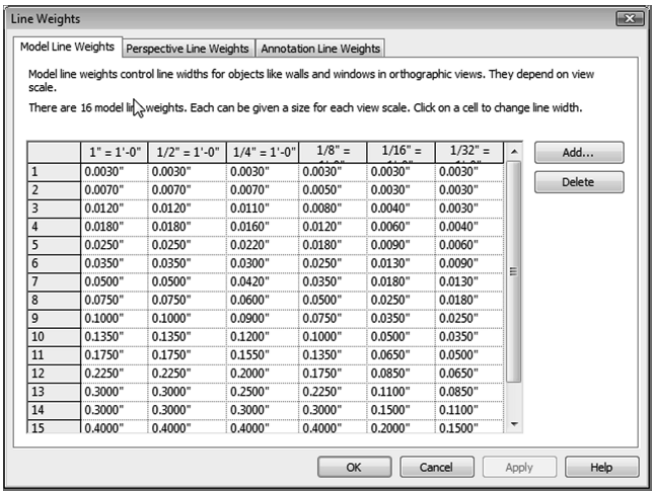
FIGURE 11.47: Changing Wide Lines from 5 to 4

4. Click OK. Wide Lines in all project views will now show the new line weight.

The next item to tackle is the fact that this detail looks naked without any text or dimensions added to it. Although you've applied both of these items in past chapters, you need to use them because they're relevant to detailing.

What Do 5 and 4 Represent?

In Revit, line weights are sorted from thinnest to heaviest. You can add additional line weights, but I recommend you stick to the 16 available. To see where these settings are stored, choose Additional Settings ➢ Line Weights. In the Line Weights dialog box, the numbers 1 through 16 are listed. These numbers represent what you see in the Line Styles dialog box. Also notice that the thicker line weights degrade in thickness as the scale is reduced (shown here):



	1" = 1'-0"	1/2" = 1'-0"	1/4" = 1'-0"	1/8" =	1/16" =	1/32" =
1	0.0030"	0.0030"	0.0030"	0.0030"	0.0030"	0.0030"
2	0.0070"	0.0070"	0.0070"	0.0050"	0.0030"	0.0030"
3	0.0120"	0.0120"	0.0110"	0.0080"	0.0040"	0.0030"
4	0.0180"	0.0180"	0.0160"	0.0120"	0.0060"	0.0040"
5	0.0250"	0.0250"	0.0220"	0.0180"	0.0090"	0.0060"
6	0.0350"	0.0350"	0.0300"	0.0250"	0.0130"	0.0090"
7	0.0500"	0.0500"	0.0420"	0.0350"	0.0180"	0.0130"
8	0.0750"	0.0750"	0.0600"	0.0500"	0.0250"	0.0180"
9	0.1000"	0.1000"	0.0900"	0.0750"	0.0350"	0.0250"
10	0.1350"	0.1350"	0.1200"	0.1000"	0.0500"	0.0350"
11	0.1750"	0.1750"	0.1550"	0.1350"	0.0650"	0.0500"
12	0.2250"	0.2250"	0.2000"	0.1750"	0.0850"	0.0650"
13	0.3000"	0.3000"	0.2500"	0.2250"	0.1100"	0.0850"
14	0.3000"	0.3000"	0.3000"	0.3000"	0.1500"	0.1100"
15	0.4000"	0.4000"	0.4000"	0.4000"	0.2000"	0.1500"

Adding Notes

In Revit, adding notes to a section can take on a whole different meaning than in CAD.

Or, if you want, adding notes to a detail can be exactly as it was back in CAD. Sometimes, sticking to the tried-and-true method isn't such a bad thing.

The goal of the next set of procedures is to add notes by simply leadering in some text.

Adding Textual Notations

We're duplicating efforts with text to drive home the fact that Revit lets you add text regardless of the view and also regardless of the scale. Text in a plan is the same as text in a detail, and you'll prove it in the next procedure:

1. On the Annotate tab, click the Text button.

2. The next three steps use the Format panel of the Modify | Place Text tab (see Figure 11.48). Click the Align Right button.

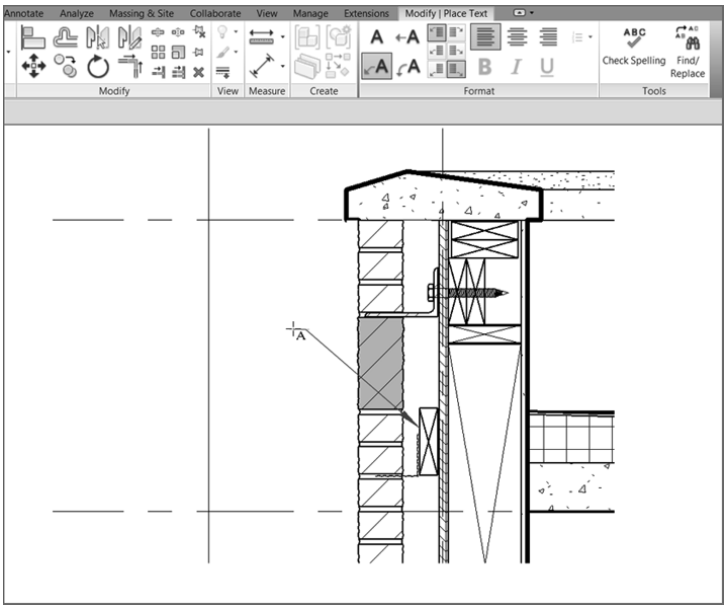


FIGURE 11.48: Adding the leadered text

3. Again, on the Modify | Place Text tab, click the Two Segments leader (the uppercase *A* in the lower-left corner of the Format panel; see Figure 11.48).
4. Also on the Format panel, click the Leader At Top Right button.
5. In the section, pick the first point of the leader at the top of the brick tie detail (shown in Figure 11.48).
6. Pick the second point above and to the left of the first point (shown in Figure 11.48).
7. Pick the third point for the second segment (as shown in Figure 11.48).
8. Type the note **CORRUGATED BRICK TIE ON 2X6 BLOCKING**.
9. Click off the text into another part of the model, and your text justifies to the leader.

10. Press Esc twice.
11. Select the text.
12. Pick the grip to the left, and drag the box to resemble Figure 11.49. The text wraps.

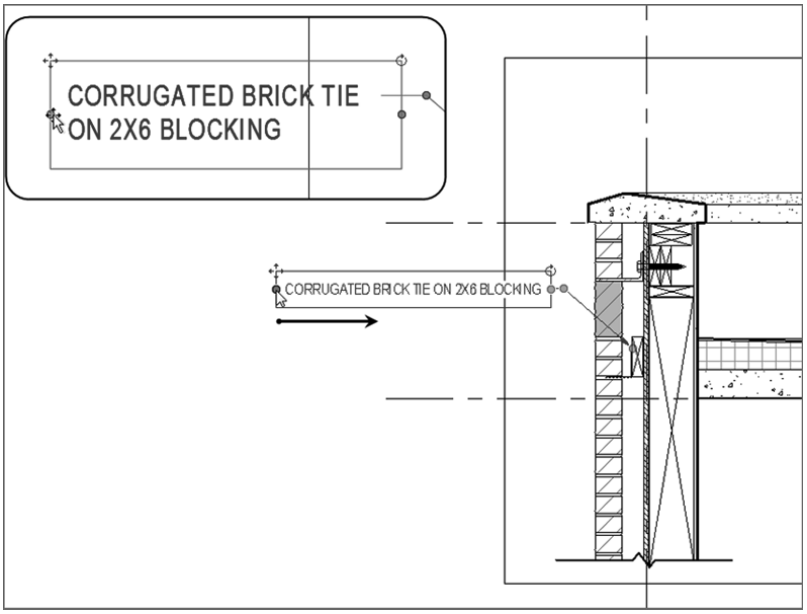


FIGURE 11.49: Wrapping the text

13. Save the model.

These steps are the most common procedure for adding detail to a model. In other words, take what you can from the model, and then add linework and detail components to the view. However, eventually you'll find yourself in a situation where you would rather draft your detail from scratch. You can do this as well, as you'll see in the next section.

Creating Blank Drafting Views

Over the years, Revit has been labeled as a "poor drafting application." This is unfortunate because it can be a good drafting application when given the chance. The only challenge is to figure out where to start!

The objective of the next procedure is to create a blank view and then simply learn how to draw lines.

1. On the View tab, click the Drafting View button, as shown in Figure 11.50.

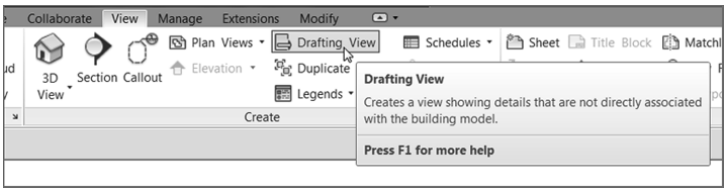


FIGURE 11.50: Click the Drafting View button on the View tab.

2. In the New Drafting View dialog box, name the new view **TYPICAL WALL TERMINATION**.
3. Change the scale to 3/4″ = 1′–0″ (1:20 for the metric users). (See Figure 11.51.)

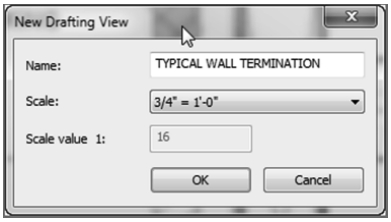


FIGURE 11.51: Changing the view name and scale

4. Click OK.

You're now in a completely blank canvas. Anything you draw here is truly drafting, and it isn't tied back to the model at all.

The objective of the next procedure is to start adding lines and more detail components. The item you'll draft is a detail showing a flexible top track of a metal-stud partition.

1. On the Annotate tab, click the Detail Line button.
2. In the Properties dialog box, click Medium Lines.

3. Draw a horizontal line about 4′–7″ (1375 mm) long, as shown in Figure 11.52.

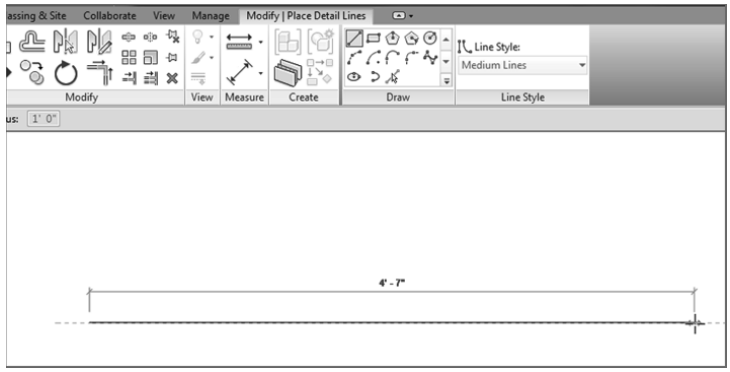
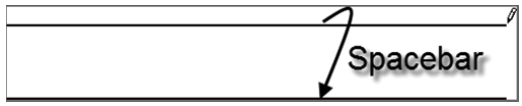


FIGURE 11.52: Drawing a detail line approximately 4′–7″ (1375 mm)

4. With the Detail Line command still running, change the Offset setting in the Options bar to 8″ (200 mm).
5. Using the two endpoints of the first line, draw another line below.

Get Down There

Remember, if your line is above the first line you drew, press the spacebar to flip the line down below the first, as shown here:



6. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon.
7. Again, on the Options bar, change Offset to 1 1/2″ (38 mm).
8. Offset the bottom line down 1 1/2″ (38 mm). Your detail should look like Figure 11.53.
9. With the Detail Line command still running, click the Line button, and set the Offset value to 3″ (75 mm).

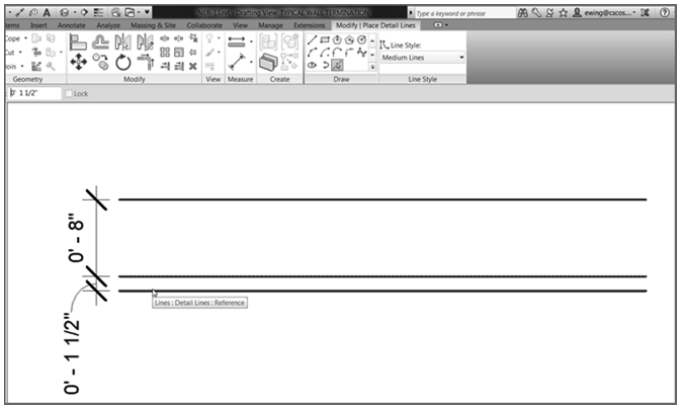


FIGURE 11.53: Using Pick Lines and adding an offset of 1 1/2″ (38 mm)

10. On the Options bar, make sure the Chain option is deselected.
11. For the first point of the line, pick the midpoint of the bottom line, as shown in Figure 11.54.

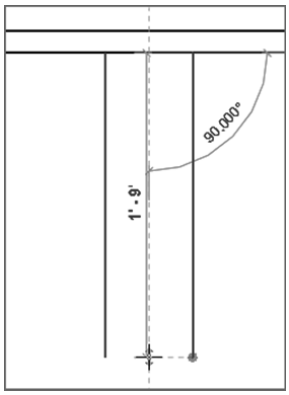


FIGURE 11.54: By setting an offset of 3″ (75 mm), you can draw two lines using a common centerline.

12. For the second point of the line, pick a point about 1′–9″ (525 mm), straight down, as shown in Figure 11.54. (This draws a line offset 3″ [75 mm] to the right from the center of the line above.)
13. To draw the other line, pick the same midpoint you picked to draw the first line.

14. Move your cursor down the view, but this time tap the spacebar to flip the line to the other direction (see Figure 11.55).

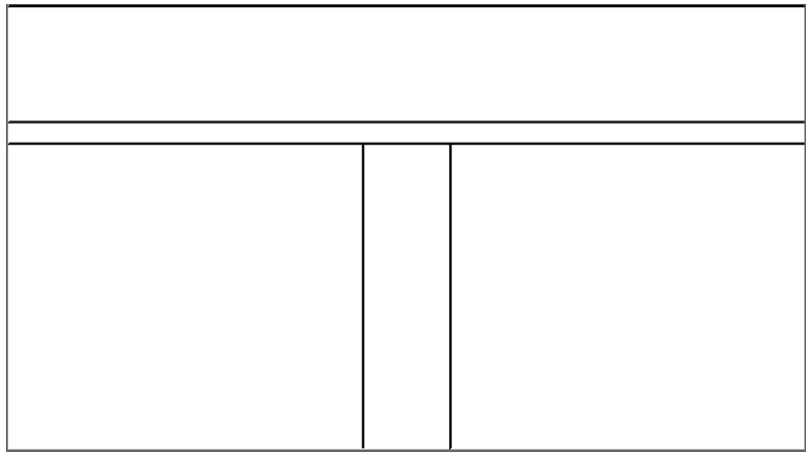


FIGURE 11.55: The detail up to this point

15. Draw another line of the same length (again, see Figure 11.55).
16. Click Modify.
17. Compare your lines with the lines in Figure 11.55.
18. Click the Trim/Extend To Corner button on the Modify tab, as shown in Figure 11.56.

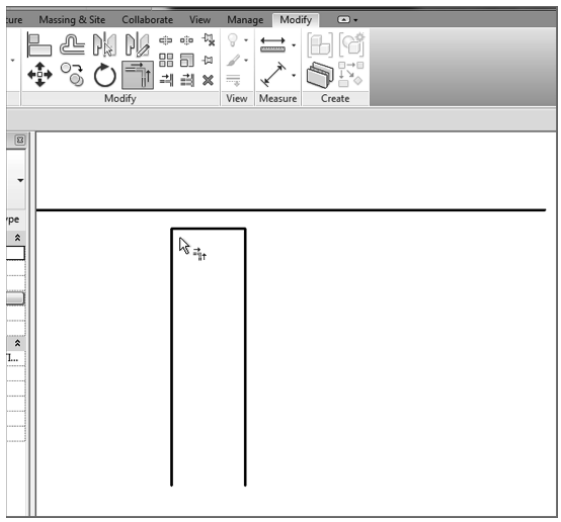


FIGURE 11.56: Trimming the corners

19. Trim the edges of the top of the wall (see Figure 11.56).

The next step is to add the track to the bottom of the floor. You'll do this by creating three wide lines. The trick is to do a good amount of offsetting. If you want to explore and try the procedure on your own, look ahead to Figure 11.57 and try to match it dimensionally. Remember, you're using wide lines for the track.

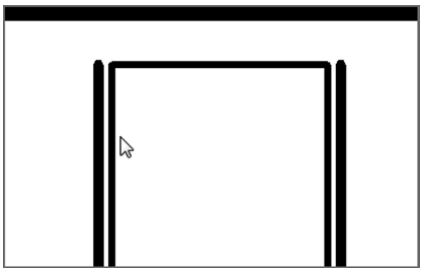


FIGURE 11.57: Offsetting the heavy lines 3/8″ (9 mm) to the right and the left

If you would rather have guidelines, follow these steps:

1. On the Annotate tab, click the Detail Line button.
2. In the Properties dialog box, click Wide Lines.
3. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines button.
4. On the Options bar, set Offset to 1/8″ (3 mm).
5. Offset the bottom of the floor down 1/8″ (3 mm). (It will look like the bottom line simply got thicker, but when you trim it up, it will look right.)
6. With the Detail Line command still running, set Offset to 3/8″ (9 mm).
7. Offset the left and the right lines, as shown in Figure 11.57.
8. Offset the bottom of the "floor" down 3″ (75 mm).
9. Extend the tops of the left and right thick vertical lines to the thick horizontal line.
10. Trim the bottoms of the thick vertical lines to the 3″ (75 mm) horizontal line, as shown in Figure 11.58.

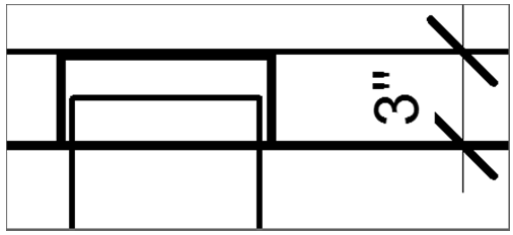


FIGURE 11.58: Offsetting the thick lines

11. Trim the top horizontal line to the new vertical lines.
12. Delete the 3″ (75 mm) horizontal line. Your detail should now look like Figure 11.59.

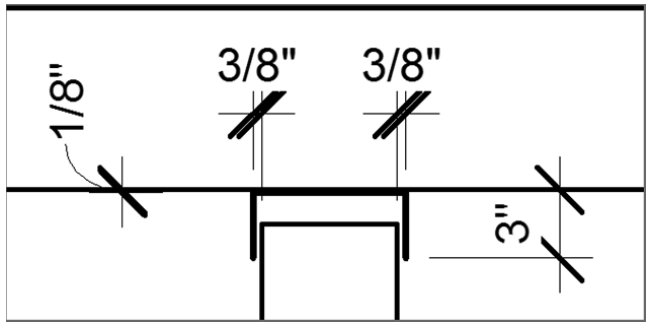


FIGURE 11.59: The top track is now in place.

It's time to add the gypsum to both sides of the wall. By using the same method as you did before, you'll use thin lines to denote two layers of 5⁄8″ (15 mm) gypsum on both sides of the stud. If you're ready to complete this task on your own, go ahead. (Remember, you're adding two layers of 5⁄8″ [15 mm] gypsum to both sides of the wall, and you're using thin lines to denote this.)

If you would rather have some guidelines with which to practice, let's step through the procedure:

1. On the Annotate tab, click the Detail Line button.
2. Select Thin Lines in the Properties dialog box.
3. On the Draw panel, click the Pick Lines icon, as shown in Figure 11.60.

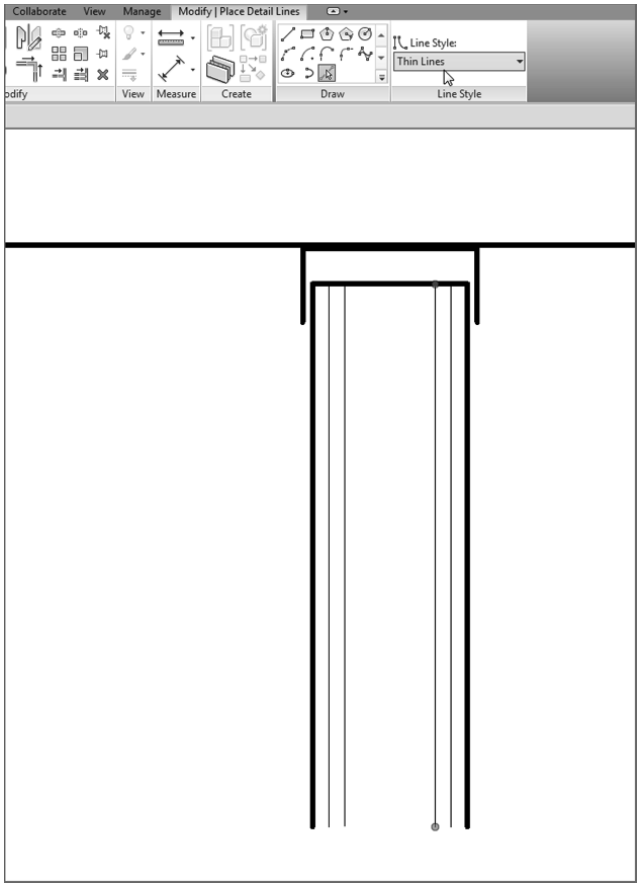


FIGURE 11.60: Adding the lines for the gypsum

4. Type 5/8″ (15 mm) in the Offset field.
5. Offset two lines in from the right and the left (see Figure 11.60).

Look at this: the steps are getting shorter. You used only the Detail Line command but have successfully offset every line you needed without leaving the command that you were running at the time. Who says you can't draft in Revit?

The next procedure involves adding a filled region to the "floor." Although you don't want to be too specific about what you're calling out, you still need some contrasting hatch.

1. On the Annotate tab, click the Region ➢ Filled Region button.

2. In the Line Style panel, select <Invisible Lines>, as shown in Figure 11.61. On the Options bar, pick Chain.

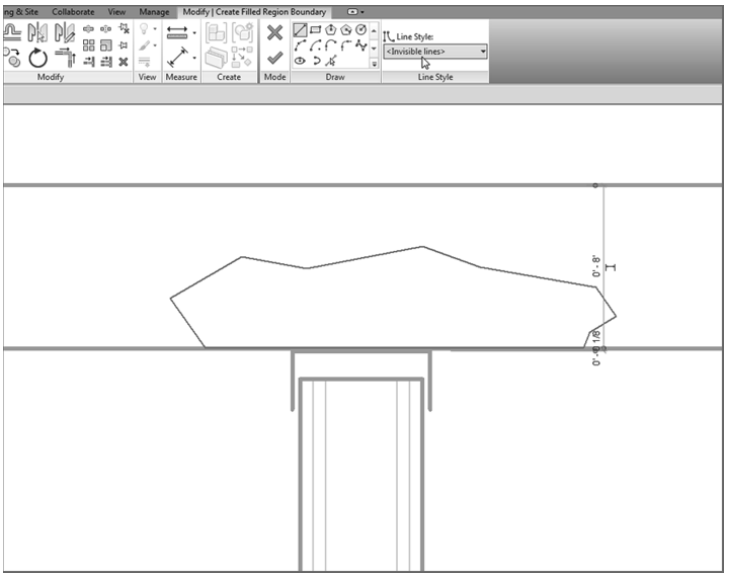


FIGURE 11.61: Draw the filled region with invisible lines.

Or, if you would like to venture out on your own, try to duplicate Figure 11.62. You'll need to add a filled region using diagonal lines. If you would rather follow the procedure, let's get started.

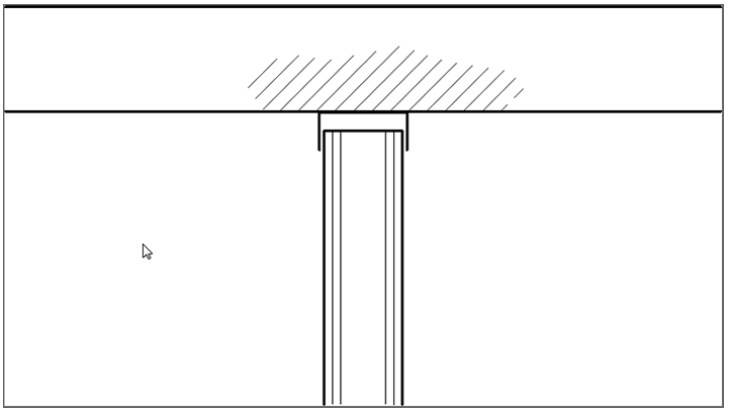


FIGURE 11.62: The detail with the hatching included

3. Draw a boundary (see Figure 11.61), and press Esc.
4. In the Properties dialog box, click the Edit Type button.
5. Click Duplicate.
6. Call the new region **ROOF**.
7. Change Fill Pattern to Diagonal Up-Small [Drafting].

NOTE Remember to change the Fill pattern by clicking the [...] button after you click in the Value cell. You can then browse to find the pattern that you're looking for in the menu.

8. Click OK.
9. Click Finish Edit Mode on the Mode panel. Your pattern should look like Figure 11.62. (Remember, the loop must be completely closed, with no gaps or overlaps.)

This detail is looking good—so good that it would be nice to never have to draw it again. Let's proceed with creating a special group that you can drag onto another view.

Creating a Detail Group

Groups can be extremely advantageous to the drafting process. Although I mentioned earlier that details and drafting views aren't linked to the model, you can still provide some global control within the details themselves by creating a group. This will give you further control over every instance of this specific detail in the entire model.

The objective of the following procedure is to create a new group and add it to another view:

1. Select everything in the view by picking a window.
2. On the Modify | Multi-Select tab in the Create panel, click the Create Group button, as shown in Figure 11.63.
3. In the Create Detail Group dialog box, call the new group **Typical Slip Track**. Click OK.
4. The group has been created. You see an icon similar to the UCS icon in AutoCAD; this is your origin. Pick the middle grip, and drag it to the left corner of the track (where it meets the floor), as shown in Figure 11.64.

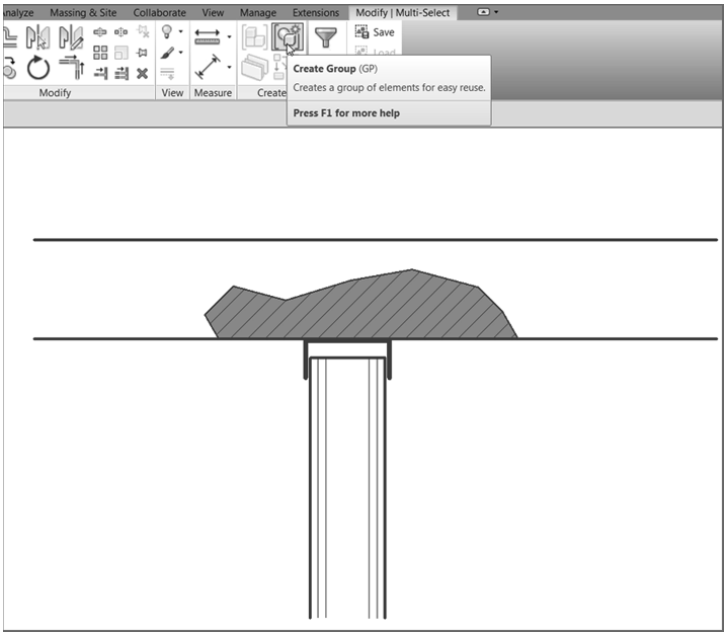


FIGURE 11.63: The Create Group button on the Create tab

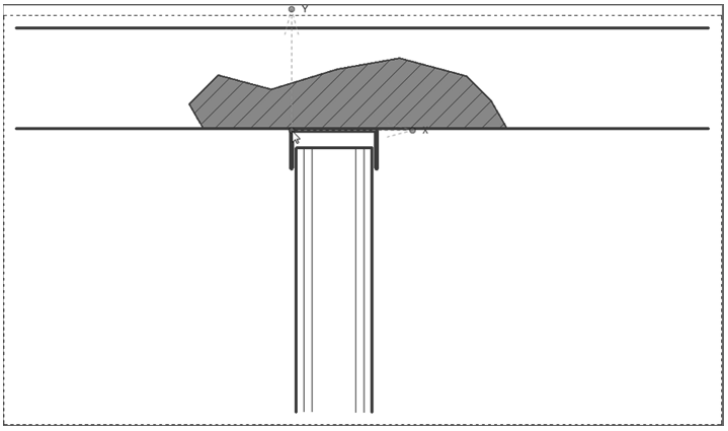


FIGURE 11.64: Move the origin to the location shown here.

5. Save the model.

With the group created, let's add it to another view. Because not every view shows the same thing, you can alter the group's instance to conform to the detail into which it's being placed.

The objective of this next procedure is to add the new detail group physically to the Roof Taper Section:

1. In the Project Browser, find the Sections (Building Section) called Roof Taper Section, and open it.
2. On the Annotate tab, click Detail Group ➢ Place Detail Group, as shown in Figure 11.65.

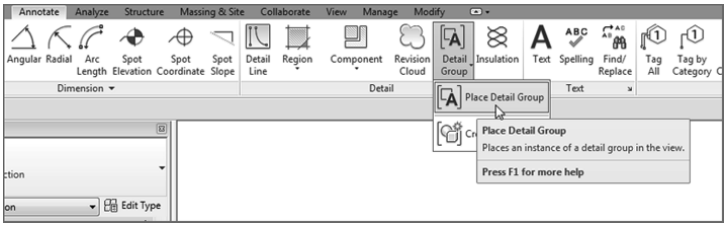


FIGURE 11.65: Choose Place Detail Group.

3. Move your cursor over the underside of the roof. You get a snap; this is the origin point of the detail.
4. Pick a point along the bottom of the roof, similar to what is shown in Figure 11.66.

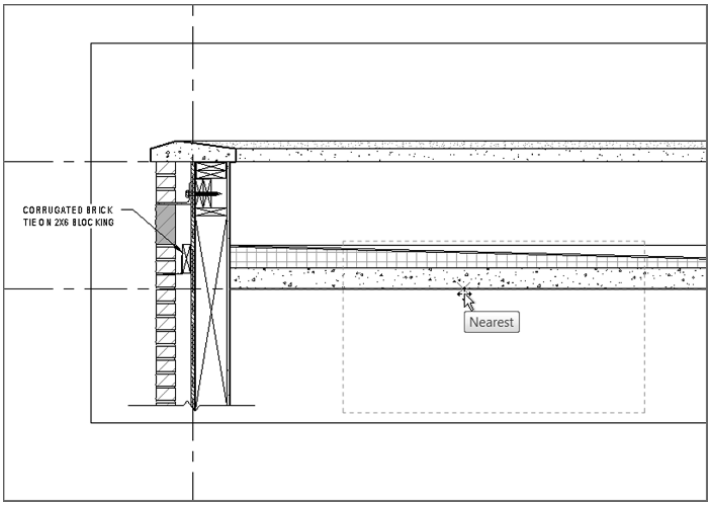


FIGURE 11.66: Picking a point along the bottom of the roof to place the group

5. When the group is placed, press Esc.

The next step is to remove some of the extraneous hatch and lines. You can do this within a group, but you must be careful not to edit the group in a way that affects all other instances:

1. Hover your cursor over the bottom line of the filled region, as shown in Figure 11.67.

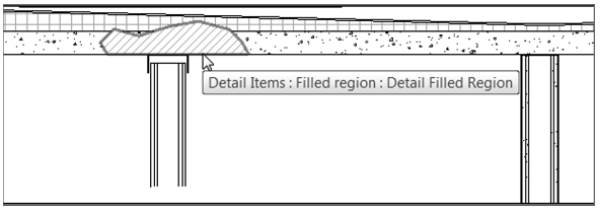


FIGURE 11.67: Excluding an element from the group

2. Press the Tab key. This allows you to select the filled region.
3. Pick the region (see Figure 11.67).
4. A small, blue group icon appears. When you hover your cursor over it, it says that you can exclude this member from the group. This is what you want to do, so click the button.
5. Repeat the process for the top floor line.
6. Repeat the process for the hatch.
7. Save the model. Your detail should now look like Figure 11.68.

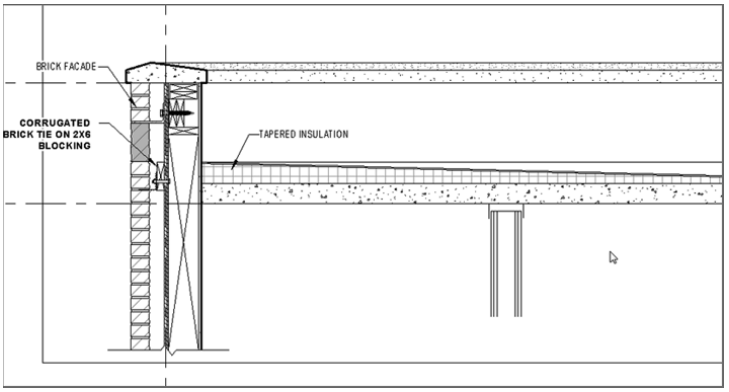


FIGURE 11.68: The slip track without the filled region

Now you'll open the original group and make modifications to it to see how each insertion of a group is influenced. This is where the advantage of using groups in a model comes into play. When the modifications are completed, the other groups will be updated.

1. In the Project Browser, find the TYPICAL WALL TERMINATION view under Drafting Views (Detail), and open it.
2. Select the group.
3. On the Modify | Detail Groups tab, click Edit Group.
4. On the Detail panel of the Annotate tab, click the Insulation button, as shown in Figure 11.69.

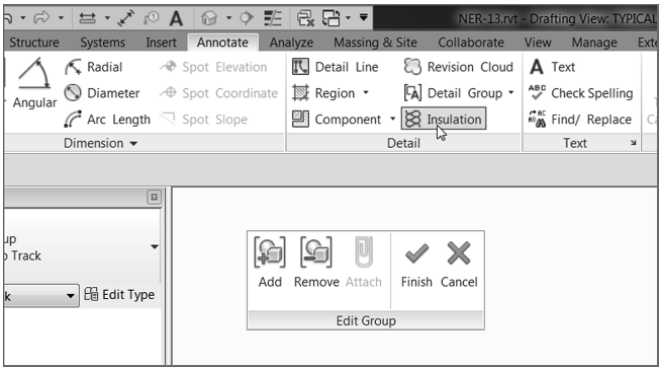


FIGURE 11.69: The Insulation button on the Detail panel of the Annotate tab

5. Place the insulation starting at the midpoint of the top of the stud, and terminate the insulation at the bottom of the stud, as shown in Figure 11.70. You're lucky the width fits perfectly. If it didn't, you could change the width on the Options bar.

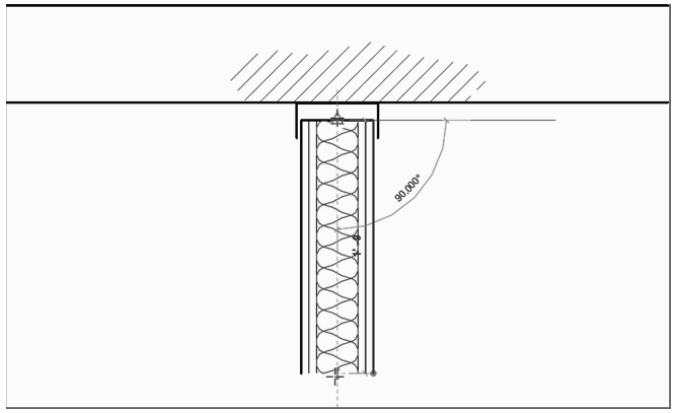


FIGURE 11.70: Drawing the insulation

6. Click the Finish button on the Edit Group toolbar, as shown in Figure 11.71.

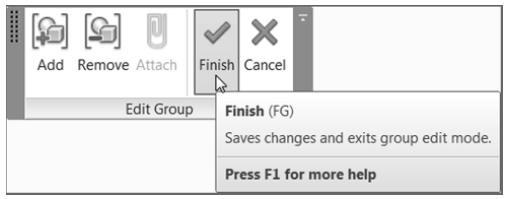


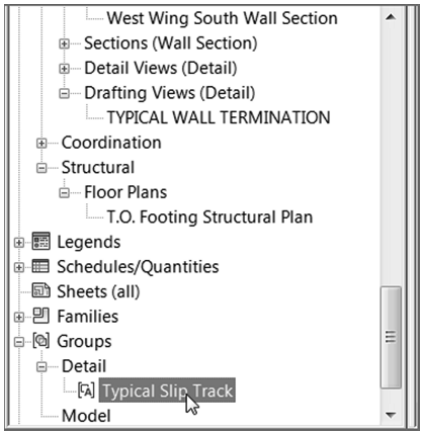
FIGURE 11.71: The Finish button on the Edit Group toolbar

7. Open the Roof Taper Section, and observe that the insulation has been added.

You're starting to understand detailing pretty well. There are two issues left to discuss. First, it would be nice to reference these details from the plan, even knowing that they aren't physically tied into the model. Second, you need to know how to import CAD into a detail.

Always Be Aware of the Project Browser

You can add a group from the Project Browser as well. If you scroll down in the Project Browser, you'll see a category called Groups. Expand the Groups category, and locate the Detail category. Expand this, and find the Typical Slip Track group, as shown here. All you need to do is click this group and drag it into the model.



Adding a Section to Another View

You already know how to add a section marker in plan. What you may not know is how to tell Revit that you would rather specify the reference.

In this procedure, you'll go to the Level 1 ceiling plan and add a section pointing to your drafting view:

1. In the Project Browser, open the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Zoom in on the area of the east wing shown in Figure 11.72.
3. On the View tab, click the Section button. Pick Detail in the Type Selector.
4. Before you place the section, click the Reference Other View button on the Options bar.

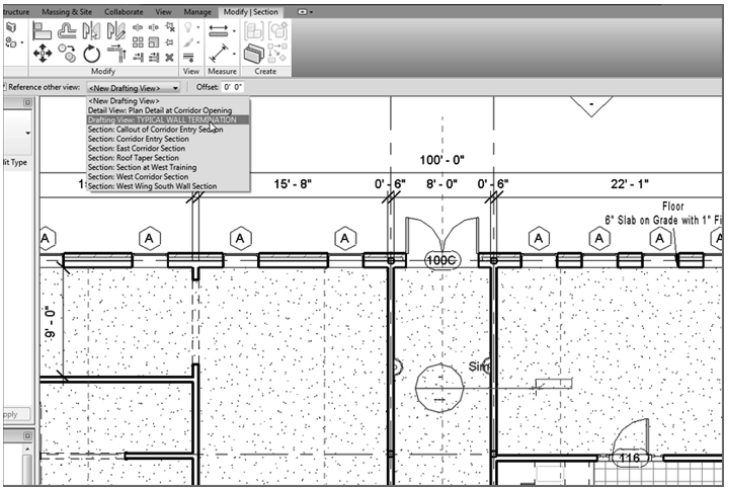


FIGURE 11.72: Choosing the correct options while placing the section

5. In the menu to the right of the Reference Other View label, expand the drop-down and select Drafting View: TYPICAL WALL TERMINATION.
6. Place the section into the model (see Figure 11.72).
7. Press Esc.
8. Double-click the section marker that you placed in the model. Doing so opens your drafting view.
9. Save the model.

WARNING Be careful! In AutoCAD and MicroStation, you got used to doing this type of referencing daily. In Revit, your co-workers may not be accustomed to this inaccurate style. Be deliberate when you add sections referring to other views, and try not to do it too often.

Creating a drafting view is behind you. Now it's time to look at our old friend CAD. (Some may say that the new meaning of the acronym is Ctrl+Alt+Delete.) Regardless of the existing sentiment toward CAD, it did get us this far. And we still need it—more so in the drafting capacity. Yes, you can import CAD files into a detail.

Importing AutoCAD Files into a Drafting View

I'll go out on a limb and venture to guess that you have a handful of CAD details that you use on a daily basis. The question always is, "What do I do with this pile of details I spent years and thousands of dollars to create?" Well, you can still use them.

The objective of the next procedure is to create a new drafting view and import an AutoCAD detail. If you would like, you can attempt to import your own detail, or you can use the file provided. Just go to the book's web page at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. Browse to the `Chapter 11` folder, and find the `base cabinet.dwg` file. You can then place it on your system for later retrieval.

Follow these steps:

1. In the View tab, click the Drafting View button.
2. In the next dialog box, name the new view **TYPICAL BASE CABINET**.
3. Set Scale to 1 1/2″ = 1′–0″, and then click OK.
4. On the Insert tab, click the Import CAD button.
5. Browse to the location where you placed your CAD file.
6. Select the file, but don't click Open yet.
7. At the bottom of the Import dialog box, set Colors to Black And White.
8. Set Layers to All.
9. Set Import Units to Auto-Detect.
10. Set Positioning to Auto – Center To Center.
11. Click Open.
12. Type **ZA**. The detail should now be in full view.
13. Select the detail.
14. On the Modify | Base cabinet.dwg tab, click Explode ➢ Full Explode.
15. Select one of the filled regions.
16. In the Properties dialog box, click Edit Type.
17. Change Fill Pattern to Sand – Dense, and select the Drafting radio button.

18. Click OK.
19. Click OK one more time to get back to the model.
20. Make sure your cabinet is hatched properly.
21. Save the model.

Use the Builder Button!

To change the pattern to Sand, make sure you click the [. . .] button next to the area that says Fill Pattern, as shown here. From there, you can choose the hatch pattern.

Up to this point, you've been using detail lines for your drafting. The one issue is that detail lines are visible only in the specific view in which you're working. Suppose you wanted linework to show up both in plan/elevation and in a 3D view. In this situation, you should use the Model Lines tool.

Adding 2D and 3D Lines to the Model

Just because you're drafting, that doesn't mean you can't create lines in all views, such as in a 3D view in a 3D function. Revit has a tool that is simply called *Model Lines*, and you use it to project lines into multiple views. You apply the Lines tool just like a detail line—only it behaves the same as a Revit 3D family in that you can see it in every view (unless you turn it off).

In this procedure, you'll add detail lines to the west sloping roof. They're nothing fancy, but you'll quickly get the idea of how to use this feature.

1. In the Project Browser, find the West Roof floor plan, and open it.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Set button in the Work Plane panel, as shown in Figure 11.73.

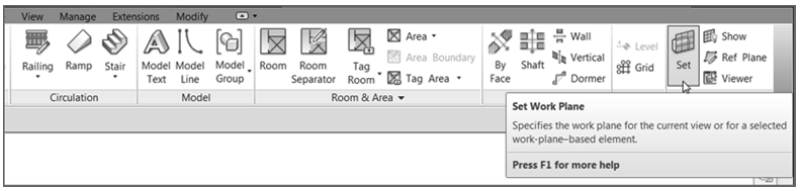


FIGURE 11.73: The Set button on the Work Plane panel of the Architecture tab

3. In the Work Plane dialog box, select the Pick A Plane radio button.
4. Click OK.
5. Pick the roof, as shown in Figure 11.74.

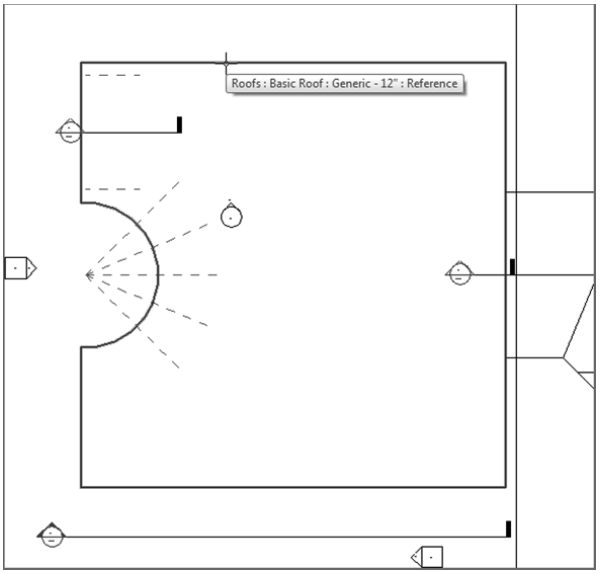


FIGURE 11.74: Picking the roof. Your work plane is now set to slope with the roof. Anything you draw will be on this sloping plane.

6. On the Model panel of the Architecture tab, click the Model Line button.

7. In the Line Style menu, select Medium Lines, as shown in Figure 11.75.

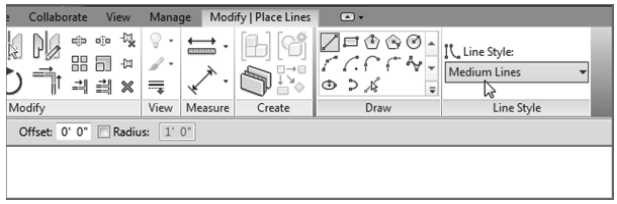


FIGURE 11.75: Select Medium Lines under Line Style.

8. On the Draw panel, click the Start-End-Radius Arc button, as shown in Figure 11.76.

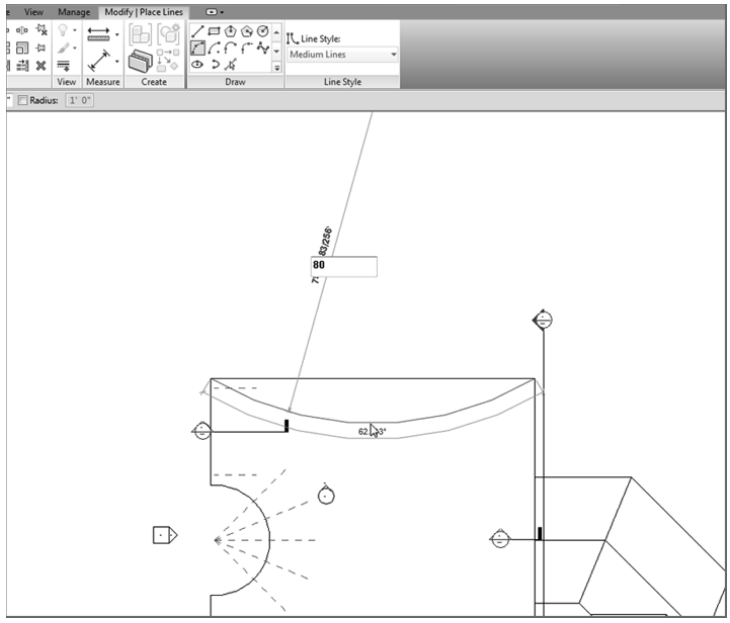


FIGURE 11.76: Drawing an 80′–0″ (24 m) radius arc

9. Draw an arc from the two endpoints shown in Figure 11.76. Make the radius 80′–0″ (24000 mm). Simply enter the numbers on the keyboard and press Enter, and they will fill in the radius field. Click Modify.
10. Go to an exterior 3D view. You can still see the arc.
11. Save the model.

It's a good idea to keep this feature in mind. This drafting tool will become useful when it comes to sketching in 3D. There will be many situations in which you'll use this little nugget.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ **modify and add line weights to be used in both the 3D and 2D environments**
- ✔ **add linework in a drafting view as well as a 2D and 3D view**
- ✔ **create both masking regions and filled regions to provide hatching to a model**
- ✔ **mask an area so that you can draft over it**
- ✔ **add detail components to the model and create repeating details**
- ✔ **modify detail families to suit your needs**
- ✔ **create a group to be used in multiple drafting views, change the group, and update each copy in each view**
- ✔ **create a new drafting view to draft from scratch and import a CAD file into a drafting view**

CHAPTER 12

Creating Specific Views and Match Lines

As you can see, the Autodesk® Revit® Architecture platform is all about the views. In fact, by using Revit, not only are you replacing the application you use for drafting, but you're also replacing your existing file storage system. This is largely because you're now using one model, and you're using views of that model for your project navigation.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- **Duplicating views**
- **Creating dependent views**
- **Adding match lines**
- **Using view templates**

Duplicating Views

I wanted to dedicate an entire chapter to project navigation. Although you've steadily gained experience in this area, you can expand on it much more to round out your Revit expertise.

The first item you'll tackle in this chapter is the process of duplicating a view to create another. Although it's a straightforward procedure, a lot is riding on the hope that you proceed with this function correctly. As you're about to find out, this command isn't a simple copy-and-paste operation.

Revit will change how you organize a project. You'll no longer open a file and save it as another file so that you can make changes without affecting the original. As you know, Revit is all-inclusive in terms of files. There is only one. From that one file, there are views that reside in the Project Browser.

Of course, I'm not telling you anything you haven't learned already. If you've gone through the book from page 1, you've gained experience in

creating views (especially in Chapter 3, "Creating Views"). If you're jumping to this chapter, you most certainly have had some exposure to view creation. This topic is broken into two chapters to help you gain a more in-depth understanding of how you can manipulate and organize views.

NOTE Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit won't accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.

Now let's duplicate some views! To begin, open the file you've been using to follow along. If you didn't complete the previous chapter, go to the book's web page at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there, you can browse to the `Chapter 12` folder and find the file called `NER-12.rvt`.

The objective of the following procedure is to create a furniture plan of Level 1 and then turn off the furniture on the original Level 1. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, find the Level 1 floor plan, and right-click.
2. Select Duplicate View ➢ Duplicate With Detailing, as shown in Figure 12.1.

The difference between choosing Duplicate With Detailing and Duplicate is that Duplicate With Detailing also copies all the tags and annotations you have in the original view. Duplicate copies only the geometry.

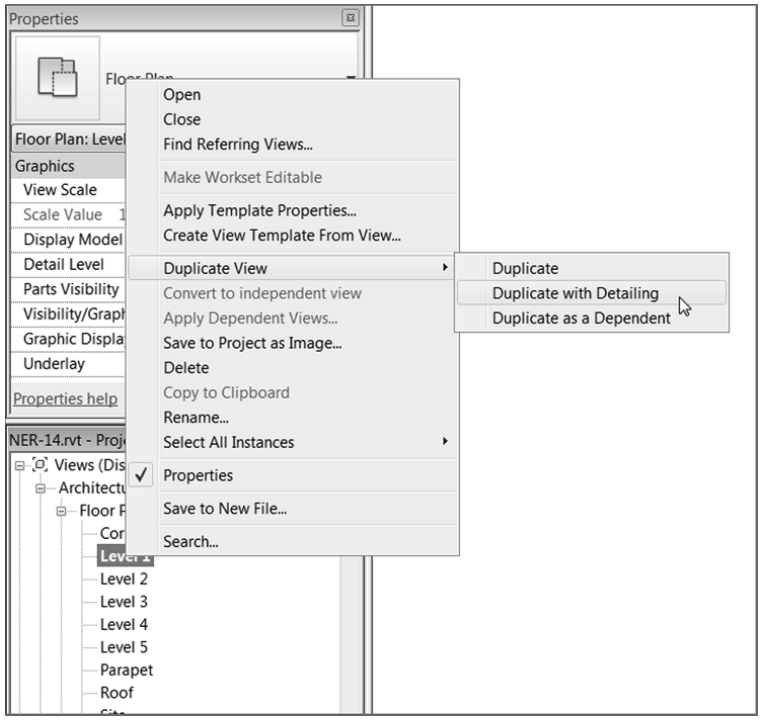


FIGURE 12.1: Right-clicking the Level 1 floor plan in the Project Browser

3. You now have a view called Copy of Level 1. Right-click it in the Project Browser.
4. Rename it **Level 1 Furniture Plan**.
5. Make sure you're in the Level 1 floor plan, not the new furniture plan. In the Level 1 view window, type **VG**. Doing so brings up the Visibility/Graphics Overrides window.
6. In the Visibility column, deselect Casework, Furniture, and Furniture Systems.
7. Click OK.

Now, any time you add furniture or casework, it will appear only in the furniture plan. You don't need to deal with layer or display configuration.

The ability to create a copy of a view and then modify its visibility graphics to display certain items is a critical function in Revit. Another similar task is also available: creating coordinated match-line divisions in a model by creating dependent views.

Creating Dependent Views

You create a dependent view in much the same way you duplicate a view. In fact, you *are* duplicating a view. The function of a dependent view is to nest a duplicate of a view within the host view (or the view of which you're making the duplicate). This nested view is dependent on the host view in terms of visibility graphics and View Properties. You can have multiple dependent views categorized under the host view.

You create dependent views in order to add match lines. Yes, you could simply duplicate a view and move its crop region, but when you have dependent views, as you'll see in Chapter 13, "Creating Sheets and Printing," you can tag those views in a specific way for Revit to track the sheets they're on. Dependent views also give the advantage of making your Project Browser much less cluttered, without unnecessary floor plans.

In the next procedure, you'll make a dependent view of the Level 1 floor plan:

1. In the Project Browser, right-click the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Select Duplicate View ➢ Duplicate As A Dependent. You now have a view that is nested under Level 1. As you can see, Level 1 is expanded to show its dependencies.

3. Right-click Level 1 again.
4. Select Duplicate View ➢ Duplicate As A Dependent. You now have two views nested under Level 1 (see Figure 12.2).

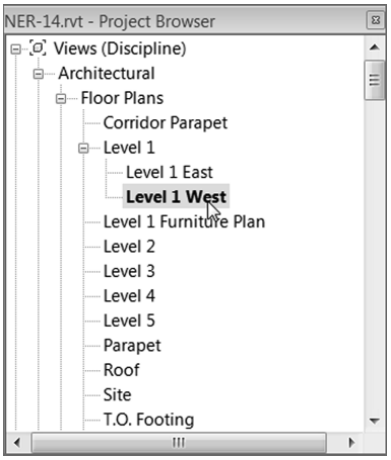


FIGURE 12.2: Creating the two views dependent on Level 1

5. Right-click Dependent (2) on the Level 1 dependent view.
6. Rename it **Level 1 East**.
7. Rename the other dependent view **Level 1 West** (see Figure 12.2).

Now that the views are duplicated and nested in the host view, it's time to divide the Level 1 floor plan. You'll do this by adjusting the crop region.

Adjusting the Crop Regions

Every view in Revit has a crop region. Crop regions play an important role when your plan is too large to fit on a sheet. All you need to do at this point is to slide the east and west crop regions to display the appropriate parts of the plan based on the name of the views.

1. Open the Level 1 West dependent view.
2. Select the crop region, as shown in Figure 12.3.
3. Drag the right side of the crop region to the position shown in Figure 12.3.

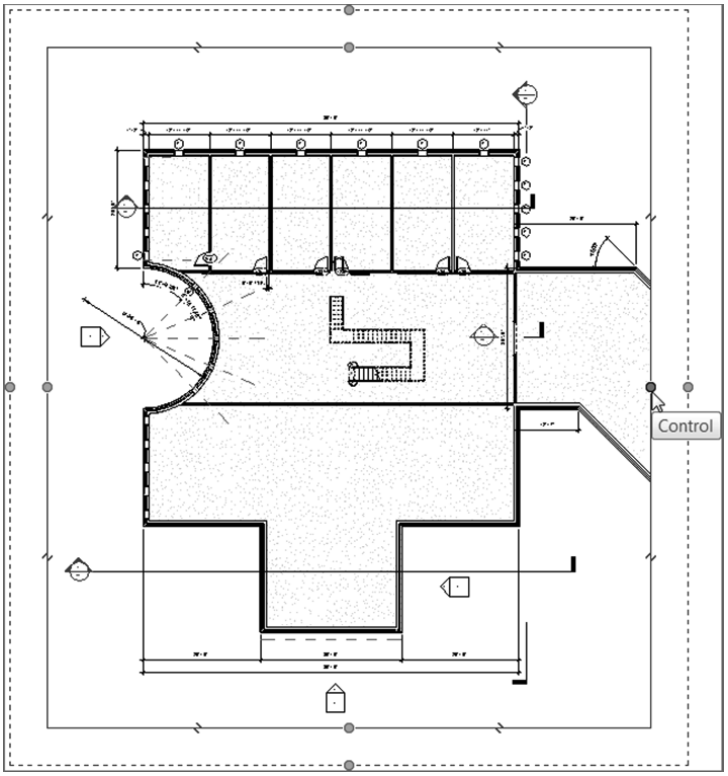


FIGURE 12.3: Dragging the crop region in the Level 1 West view

4. Open the Level 1 East view.
5. Select the crop region.
6. Drag the left side of the region to the right, as shown in Figure 12.4.
7. Select the crop region again, if it isn't selected already, and right-click.
8. Choose Go To Primary View to open the Level 1 floor plan.
9. In the Level 1 floor plan, turn on the crop region by clicking the Show Crop Region button on the View Control toolbar, as shown in Figure 12.5.

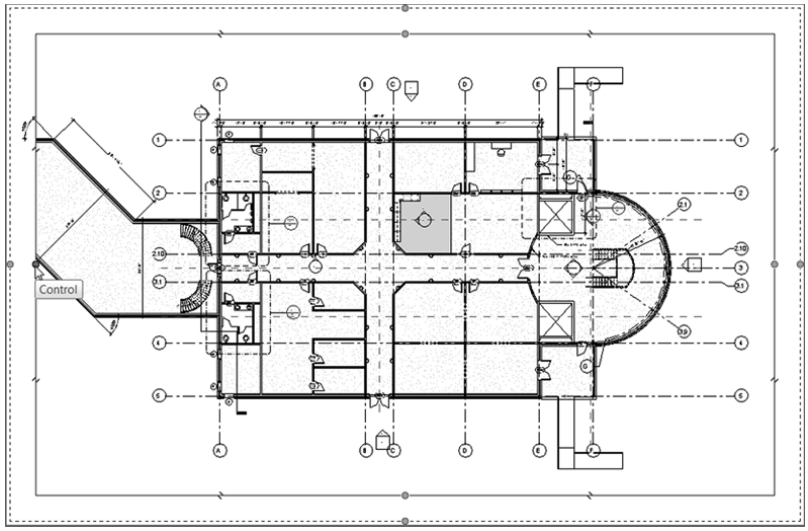


FIGURE 12.4: Dragging the crop region to the right in the Level 1 East view

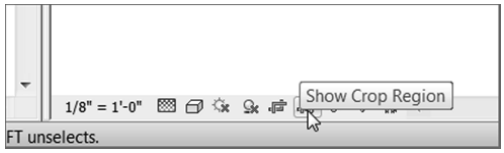


FIGURE 12.5: Turning on the crop region from the View Control toolbar

You can see the area where you need to draw the match line. The crop region should overlap in the corridor. If not, drag the crop regions so they match Figure 12.6.

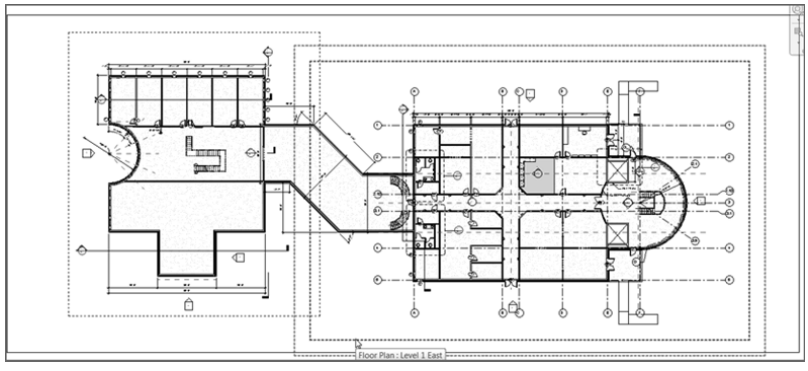
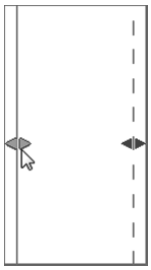


FIGURE 12.6: Adjusting the crop regions to overlap in the corridor

Stretch That View

You'll notice that there are two stretch grips. One is for the actual crop region, and the other is for the annotation crop region. We'll cover what the annotation crop region means in a moment. For now, pick the stretch grip to the inside, as shown here:



NOTE If you want to turn a dependent view back into an independent view, you can right-click the dependent view and select Convert To Independent View. Doing so breaks the link to the host view.

Unfortunately, if you have a match-line situation in your project, you must follow this procedure with each floor plan separately. For multifloor projects, doing so can become time-consuming. Alternatively, you can right-click a view that has dependencies and select Apply Dependent Views. From there, you can select the views to which the dependent views will be added.

As you can see, adjusting the crop region is how you specify which part of the plan will appear on your sheet. This poses one issue: if you have text that you would like to lie outside the crop region—that is, if a leadered note is pointing to an item within the cropped boundary—you may not see the note. To fix this, you can adjust the annotation crop region.

Adjusting the Annotation Crop Region

Because the crop region cuts off the model at a specified perimeter, what is to become of text that needs to lie outside this boundary? This is where the annotation crop region comes in handy. You'll always have the situation where leadered text must be outside the geometry it's labeling. You can make adjustments to ensure that this can happen.

Let's adjust an annotation crop region to clean up a plan. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, open the Level 1 West dependent view.
2. Select the crop region, as shown in Figure 12.7. Notice the two perimeters: one is a solid-line type, and the other is a dashed-line type.

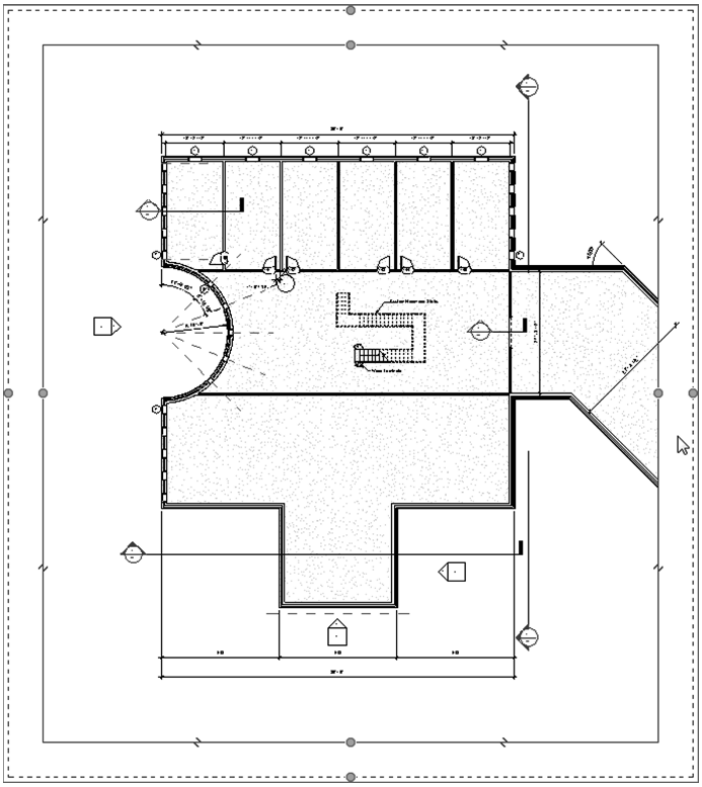


FIGURE 12.7: Selecting the plan's crop region. Notice the additional region on a dashed line type—this is the annotation crop region.

3. In the corridor is a dimension that seems to be floating. This is because the crop region allows this dimension to show. With the crop region still selected, pick the outside stretch grip, as shown in Figure 12.8, and stretch the annotation crop region in until the dimension disappears.

NOTE The Annotation Crop feature is available in any view. This example uses a plan, but you can use the same procedure in a section or an elevation as well.

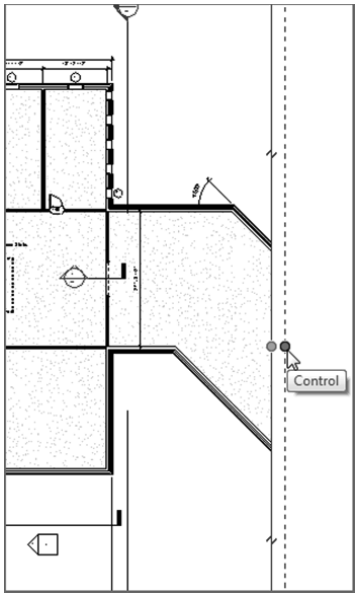


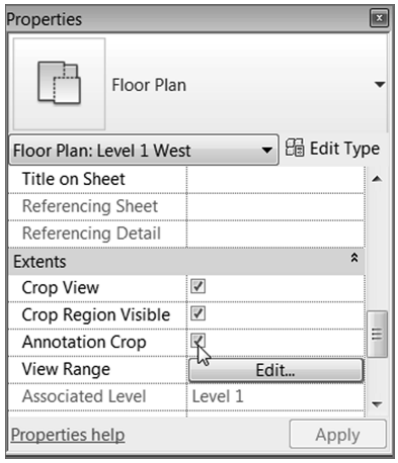
FIGURE 12.8: Stretching the annotation crop region to the left

Now that you understand how to add crop regions and display them appropriately, let's add the match line.

The Second Line

If you don't see the second line, follow these steps:

1. **In the Properties dialog box, scroll down to the Extents area.**
2. **Make sure the Annotation Crop option is selected, as shown here:**



Adding Match Lines

In CAD, adding a match line is nothing more than the simple practice of drawing a line. The same is true in Revit, except that in Revit, you draw that line in Sketch Mode, and you can propagate it to other views. Also in Revit, after you place the line, it registers as having two sides of a model. In Chapter 13, when you drag your views onto sheets, Revit will know where each side of the model is located in terms of being placed on a sheet.

The objective of the next procedure is to place a match line into the model. Follow these steps:

1. Open the Level 1 floor plan.
2. On the Sheet Composition panel of the View tab, click the Matchline button, as shown in Figure 12.9.

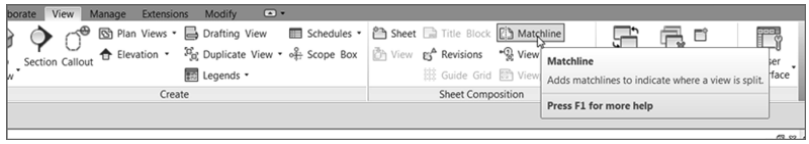


FIGURE 12.9: The Matchline button on the View tab

3. In the Properties dialog box, make sure the Top and Bottom constraints are set to Unlimited.
4. On the Draw panel, click the Line button.
5. Draw the match line as shown in Figure 12.10.
6. Click Finish Edit Mode on the Mode panel.

Your match line appears as a bold, dashed line. Because the physical appearance of a match line never seems to be the same from firm to firm, you can adjust the line's appearance.

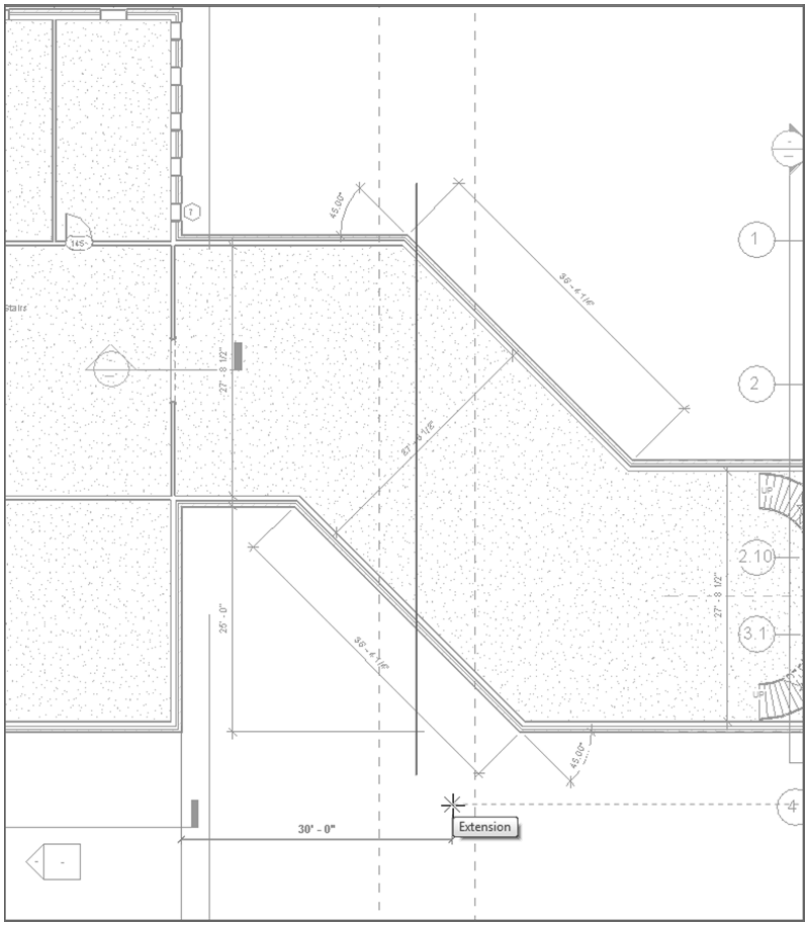


FIGURE 12.10: Placing the match line

Match-Line Appearance

A match line isn't an actual line by definition; it's an object. Therefore, you can control its appearance by using the Object Styles dialog box.

The next procedure focuses on changing the appearance of the match line:

1. On the Manage tab, click the Object Styles button.

2. Click the Annotation Objects tab, as shown in Figure 12.11.

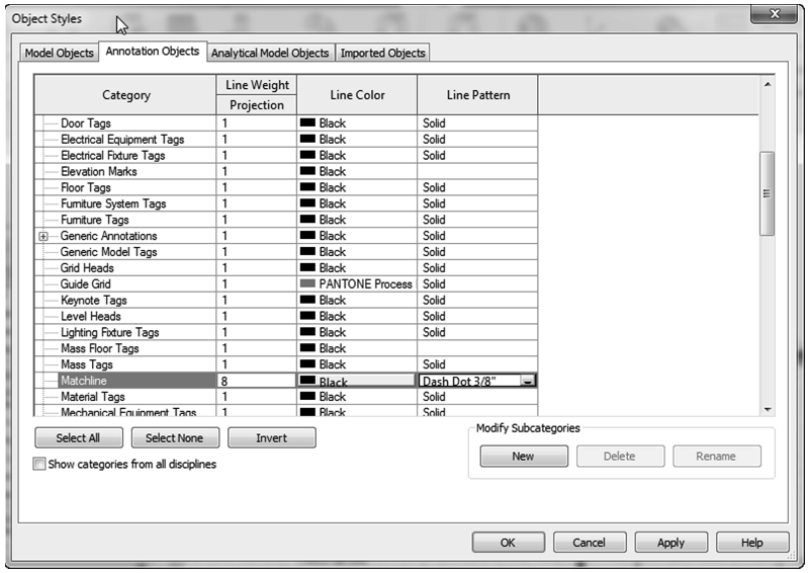


FIGURE 12.11 Changing the Matchline line pattern to Dash Dot 3/8″

3. Scroll down to the Matchline category.
4. Click into Line Pattern (the Dash cell).
5. You see a menu arrow. Click it, and select Dash Dot 3/8″ (10 mm) (see Figure 12.11).
6. Click OK. Your match line is now a different line type.

With the match line in place and the plan split into two halves, let's add an annotation to label the match line. For the match-line annotation, you'll place a piece of text that says MATCHLINE. But when you're referencing each side of the plan, you'll need to add view references.

Adding View References to a Match Line

After the plan is split and the match line is in place, you can tag each side of the match line. When you drag the view onto a drawing sheet, the tag will be filled out with the correct page name. It's important to note, however, that although this process is automatic, it isn't *fully* automatic. You do need to specify the correct view name as you're placing the tag.

In this procedure, you'll place a piece of text that says MATCHLINE along the match line and add a view reference to each side of the match line. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, open the Level 1 floor plan view.
2. On the Annotate tab, click the Text button.

NOTE **Unfortunately, when you're placing text, you can't rotate the text until after you've added it. In this procedure, place the note, rotate it, and then move it into position.**

3. On the Modify | Place Text tab are leader options. Click the No Leader button (the letter A), as shown in Figure 12.12.

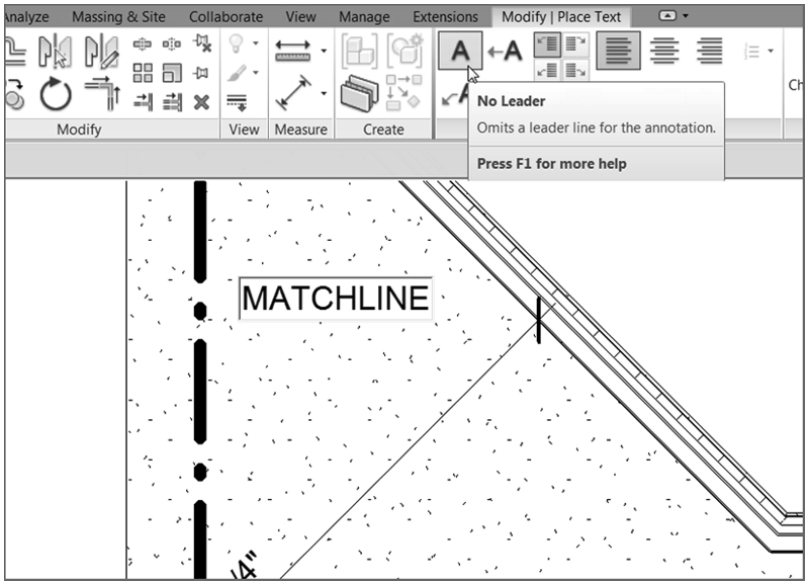


FIGURE 12.12: **Typing the text MATCHLINE**

4. Pick a window near the match line for the text.
5. Type the word **MATCHLINE**, click off the text, and press Esc twice (see Figure 12.12).
6. Select the text (if it isn't selected already).
7. Click the rotate grip, and rotate the text 90°.

8. Click the move grip, and drag the text over to the match line so it's positioned as shown in Figure 12.13.

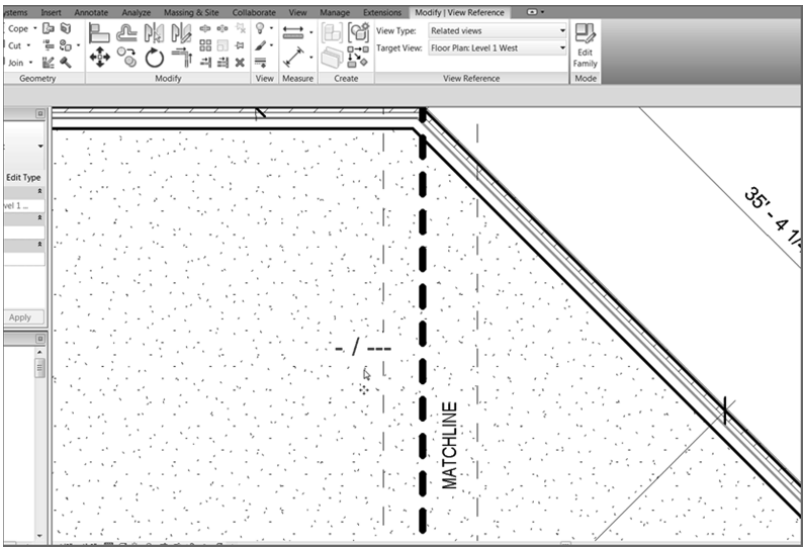


FIGURE 12.13: Adding a view reference includes choosing the correct target view.

9. On the Sheet Composition panel of the View tab, click the View Reference button.
10. In the View Reference panel is a Target View list. Make sure Floor Plan: Level 1 West is current (see Figure 12.13).
11. Pick a point to the left of the match line (again, see Figure 12.13).
12. With the View Reference command still running, change Target View to Floor Plan: Level 1 East.
13. Place a view reference to the right of the match line.
14. Press Esc. You have two view references, and you're ready to add these views to a drawing sheet in the next chapter. Once you do this, the tags will become populated with the sheets on which you placed the views.

One last item to discuss before we close this chapter is how to create and use settings from a single view, after you determine that you want to repeat the view settings.

Using View Templates

When you created the furniture plan in the beginning of the chapter, you manipulated the data in the Visibility/Graphics Overrides options to hide furniture in a specific plan. It would be nice to build settings like these into a template so you could simply apply that template to a view the next time the situation arose.

Let's create a view template and apply it to another view. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, right-click the Level 1 floor plan.
2. Select Create View Template From View.
3. In the Name dialog box, call the template **Without Furniture or Casework**, and then click OK.
4. In the View Templates dialog box, Revit allows you to further control the View Properties and visibility graphics. Because you don't need to make any other adjustments, click OK.
5. Right-click the Level 2 floor plan.
6. Select Apply Template Properties.
7. In the Apply View Template dialog box, select the Without Furniture Or Casework template, as shown in Figure 12.14.

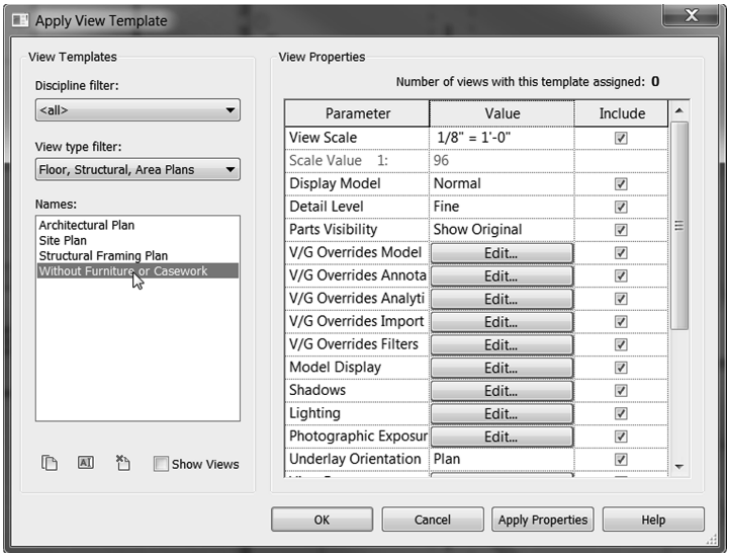


FIGURE 12.14: Selecting the Without Furniture Or Casework template

8. Click OK.

You can also select multiple items and apply the same template to many plans, if you desire.

As you can see, using view templates will help you immensely with maintaining company-wide standards. Use templates as often as possible.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ **create duplicates of views and tell the difference between duplicating with detailing and simply duplicating a view**
- ✔ **create dependent views, allowing separate views to be nested under one host view**
- ✔ **add match lines and view reference tags**
- ✔ **create and use view templates**

CHAPTER 13

Creating Sheets and Printing

Your deliverable product is a set of construction documents and specifications, so it stands to reason that the application you use to produce these construction documents is at its strongest in this area. Unfortunately, when you see marketing campaigns related to Autodesk® Revit® Architecture software, all they show are huge skyscrapers and realistic renderings. And, of course, you see the slide of the architect handing a model to the contractor and then the contractor handing it to the owner. Don't get me wrong—all that stuff is good, but the most powerful feature of Revit Architecture is its ability to create sheets. You wouldn't think this is the standout feature, but when it's 4:30 p.m. and the job is going out the door at 5 p.m., you'll never go back to a drafting application after you've used Revit at the 11th hour.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- **Creating and populating sheets**
- **Modifying a viewport**
- **Adding revisions to a sheet**
- **Addressing project parameters**
- **Generating a cover sheet**
- **Printing from Revit Architecture**

Creating and Populating Sheets

The first part of this chapter will focus on creating a sheet and demonstrating how to populate it with views. Although you may have completed this task if you have read Bonus Chapter 5, "Schedules and Tags," it's time to drill into the ins and outs of sheet creation.

NOTE **Metric users should not type in *mm* or other metric abbreviations when entering amounts suggested in the exercises. Revit won't accept such abbreviations. Simply enter the number provided within the parentheses.**

The objective of the following procedure is to create a new sheet. To get started, open the file you've been using to follow along. If you missed the previous chapter, go to the book's web page at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there, you can browse to `Chapter 13` and find the file called `NER-13.rvt`. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, scroll down until you see the Sheets category, as shown in Figure 13.1.

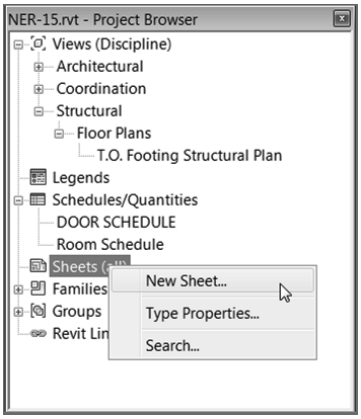


FIGURE 13.1: **Selecting a new sheet**

2. Right-click Sheets, and select New Sheet (see Figure 13.1).
3. In the Select Titleblocks area of the New Sheet dialog box, select the E1 30 × 42 Horizontal title block. (It's probably the only one available.)
4. Click OK.

NOTE **You're using a standard Autodesk-supplied title block. Later in this chapter, you'll learn how to make custom title blocks. Also, your new sheet may be numbered differently from the example in the book. This is OK; you'll change the numbering in a moment.**

Congratulations! You now have a blank sheet. Next, you'll add views to it by using the click-and-drag method.

1. On the View tab, click Guide Grid, as shown in Figure 13.2.

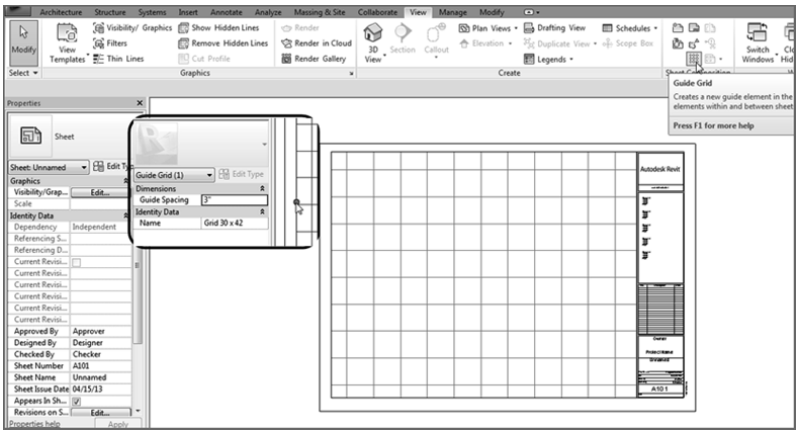


FIGURE 13.2: Adding a guide grid to a sheet

2. In the Guide Grid Name dialog box, call the guide **Grid 30 × 42 (750 × 1050)**, and click OK.
3. Select the guide grid, and drag it into place by using the blue grips (see Figure 13.2).
4. With the guide grid still selected, change Guide Spacing to 3″ (75 mm) in the Properties dialog box (see Figure 13.2).

NOTE You don't have to add a guide grid. The guide grid keeps your plans in the same spot from sheet to sheet, however, which can be a good idea.

5. In the Project Browser, find the dependent view called Level 1 West, as shown in Figure 13.3.
6. Pick the view, and hold down the pick button.
7. Drag the view onto the sheet (see Figure 13.3).

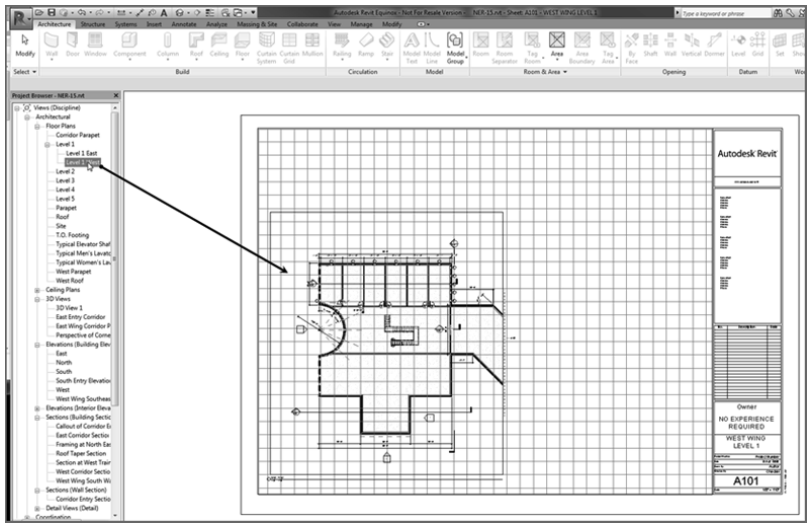


FIGURE 13.3: Dragging the view onto the sheet

8. When the view is centered in the sheet, let go of the pick button. The view follows your cursor. Try to align the lower-left corner of the viewport with a guide grid, and then click. Doing so places the view onto the sheet.

This is how you populate a sheet using Revit—quite the departure from CAD. One nice detail is that the title is filled out, and the scale will never be incorrect. The next step is to begin renumbering sheets so that you can create a logical order.

Sheet Organization

If you've been following along with the book, you already have a sheet numbered A101. It would be nice if you could give this sheet a new number and start your sequence over. Revit lets you do just that.

The goals of the next procedure are to change the sheet numbering and to add more sheets, allowing Revit to number the sheets sequentially as they're created. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, find the sheet A101 – Unnamed, and right-click.
2. Select Rename, as shown in Figure 13.4.

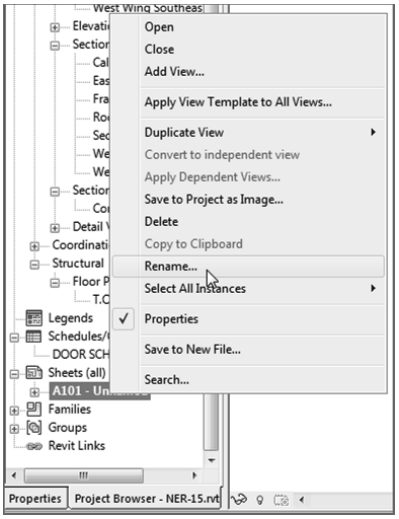


FIGURE 13.4: Renaming the sheet

3. Change the sheet name to **WEST WING LEVEL 1**.
4. Click OK.
5. Right-click Sheets (All), and create a new sheet.
6. Make sure the number is **A102**.

Your Project Browser should now resemble Figure 13.5.

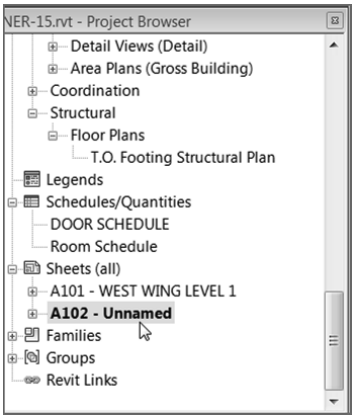


FIGURE 13.5: The reorganized Project Browser

You may notice a plus sign (+) next to A101. If you expand the tree by clicking the +, you can see the views that are included on this view. This can prove to be immensely useful, because you can't add a view to another sheet (or the same sheet, for that matter) if it's already included in a sheet.

With the sheets organized, you can now proceed to create more. As you do, you'll see that not only do the sheets number themselves, but all the sections, elevations, and callouts begin reading the appropriate sheet designations.

1. In the Project Browser, drag the Level 1 East dependent view onto the new sheet.
2. In the Project Browser, double-click the A101 sheet, opening the view. Notice that the view reference next to the match line is filled out with the appropriate designation.
3. Double-click A102 to open the view again.

In the Project Browser, sheet A102 is still unnamed. The next procedure describes a different way to rename and renumber a sheet.

1. With sheet A102 open, zoom into the right side of the view, as shown in Figure 13.6.

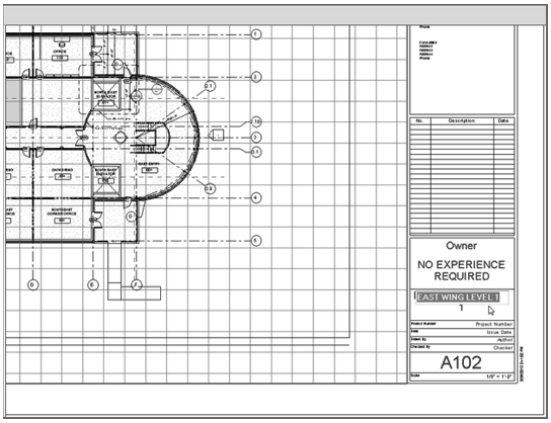


FIGURE 13.6: Changing the title-block information

2. Select the title block. A few items turn blue. If you remember, any item that turns blue can be modified.
3. Click into the text that says *Project Name*, and type **NO EXPERIENCE REQUIRED**.
4. Click into the text that says *Unnamed*, and type **EAST WING LEVEL 1** (see Figure 13.6).

5. Create another sheet using the 30 × 42 Horizontal title block.
6. Number it **A201**.
7. Name it **ENLARGED PLANS**.
8. Add the 30 × 42 grid guide.
9. Drag the following views onto the sheet:
   - Typical Elevator Shaft
   - Typical Men's Lavatory
   - Typical Women's Lavatory
10. Arrange them so that they're in a row, as shown in Figure 13.7.

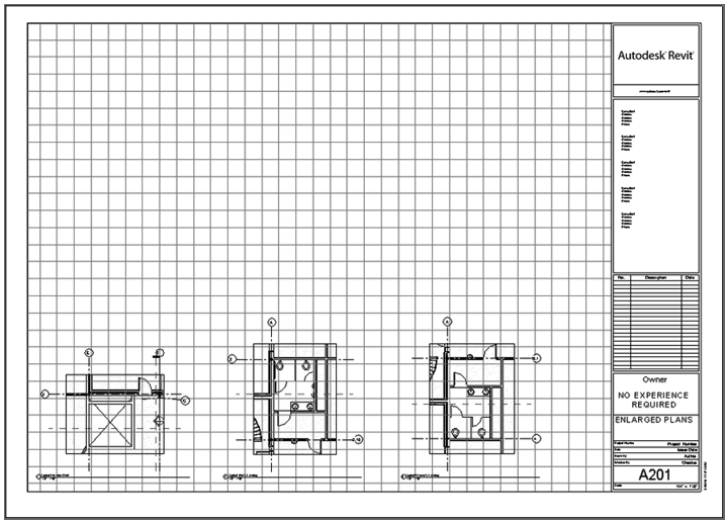


FIGURE 13.7: Creating a sheet and adding views in a row across the bottom of the page

NOTE The title block is filled out. The page number and the sheet name are filled out because you edited those names when you made the sheet, but the project name will appear on every new sheet that you create.

Now that the first floor plans and typical enlarged plans are placed on a sheet, let's move on to adding the details you've created.

If you feel as though you have enough experience creating a sheet and adding views, go ahead and proceed on your own. Your new sheet will be numbered A301 and will be called Building Sections, and you'll add the views East Corridor Section, West Corridor Section, Section at West Training, and West Wing South Wall Section. Your sheet should look like Figure 13.8.

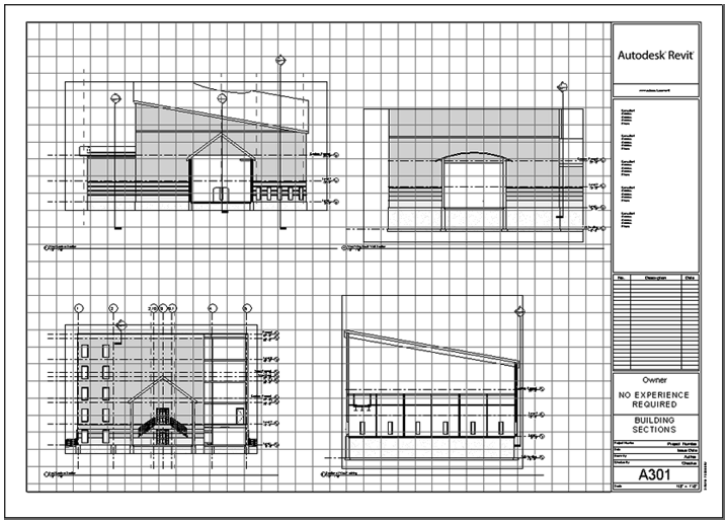


FIGURE 13.8: The completed sheet A301

If you'd like some assistance in putting the section sheet together, follow along with this procedure:

1. In the Project Browser, right-click the Sheets category.
2. Select New Sheet.
3. Select the E1 30 × 42 Horizontal title block, and click OK.
4. In the Project Browser, right-click the new sheet and select Rename.
5. Give the new sheet the number **A301** and the name **BUILDING SECTIONS**.
6. In the Properties dialog box, add the 30 × 42 grid guide.
7. In the Project Browser, find the Sections (Building Sections) category.
8. Drag the section called East Corridor Section onto the lower-left corner of the sheet.
9. Drag the section called Section At West Training onto the sheet to the right of East Corridor Section.

10. Drag the section called West Corridor Section onto the sheet, and place it in the upper-left corner. Be sure you align it directly above East Corridor Section.

11. Drag the section called West Wing South Wall Section to the right of West Corridor Section and directly above Section At West Training. The alignment lines allow you to place the section accurately. After you have these four sections in place, your sheet A301 should look like Figure 13.8.

You've created a few sheets, and you may want to make some adjustments to the view without leaving the sheet. The next section of this chapter will focus on the properties of a viewport and how to make it *live* on the sheet so you can make modifications.

Modifying a Viewport

Wait a second, isn't a viewport AutoCAD® vernacular? Yes, it is. But a viewport in AutoCAD and a viewport in Revit are two completely different things.

In Revit, when you drag a view onto a sheet, a linked copy of that view becomes a viewport. This is what you see on the sheet. Any modification you make to the original view is immediately reflected in the viewport, and vice versa. See Figure 13.9 for a graphical representation.

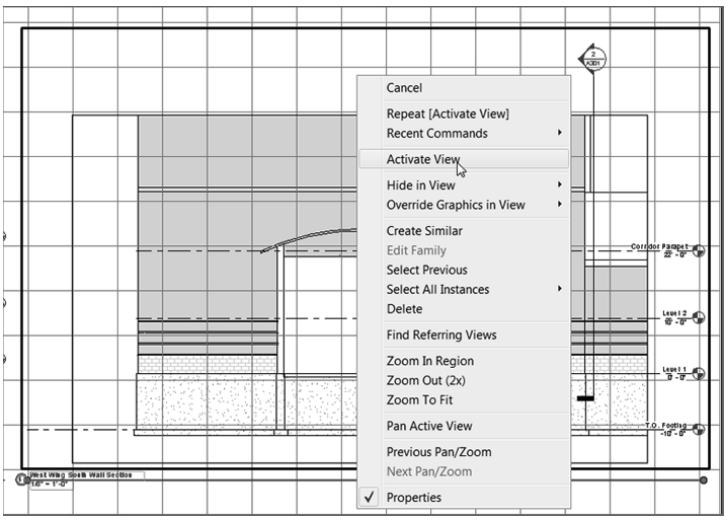


FIGURE 13.9: The relationship between the original view and the viewport

In the next procedure, you'll activate a viewport to make modifications on the sheet, and you'll also explore the Element Properties of the viewport. Follow these steps:

1. Open sheet A301 (if it isn't open already).
2. Zoom in on the viewport West Wing South Wall Section, as shown in Figure 13.10.

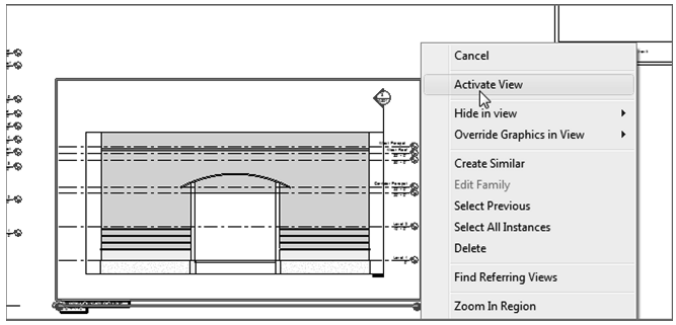


FIGURE 13.10: Activating a view

3. Select the view.
4. Right-click, and select Activate View (see Figure 13.10).
5. With the view activated, you can work on it just as if you had opened it from the Project Browser. Select the crop region, as shown in Figure 13.11.

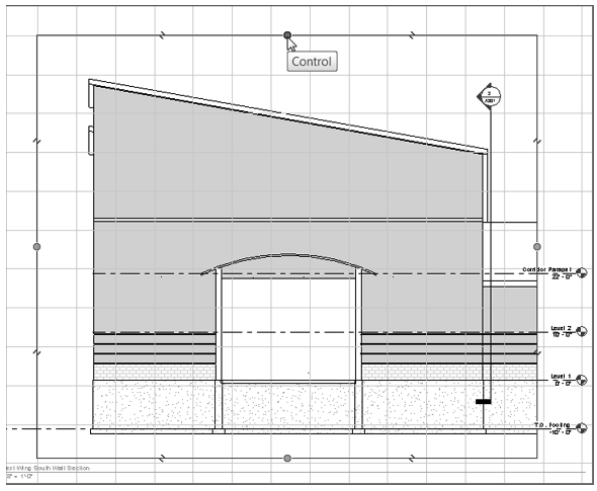


FIGURE 13.11: Stretching the crop region so you can see the entire view

6. Stretch the top of the crop region upward so you can see the entire view.

NOTE By activating the view in this manner, you're essentially opening the view. The only difference between physically opening the view in the Project Browser and activating the view on the sheet is that by activating the view, you can see the title block, which helps in terms of layout.

Unsightly Crop Regions Begone!

By selecting Hide Crop Region, as shown here, you're simply cleaning up the view. As you'll explore in this chapter, you can also keep the crop region on and tell Revit not to print it.

7. On the View Control toolbar, select Hide Crop Region.
8. Right-click, and select Deactivate View.
9. Right-click the view to the left of West Wing South Wall Section (it's the view called West Corridor Section), and select Activate View.
10. Stretch the crop region downward so you can see the entire foundation.
11. Hide the crop region.
12. Right-click, and deactivate the view.

With the view widened, it's coming close to the actual title. You can move the viewport and the title independently of one another. The following procedure involves moving the viewport up and then moving the view title down to provide some more room:

1. Select the West Wing South Wall Section viewport.
2. Hold down the pick button, and move the entire viewport up. As you do so, an alignment line appears. This means the views are physically aligned. When you see the alignment line, release the pick button.
3. Press Esc.

4. Select the view title, as shown in Figure 13.12.

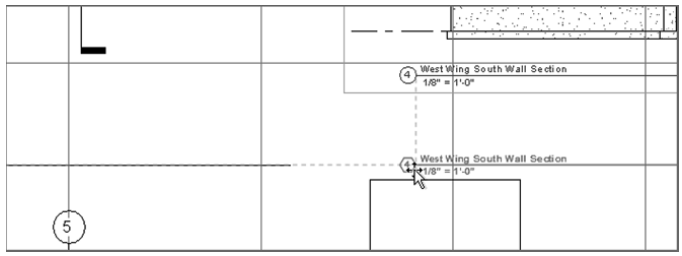


FIGURE 13.12: You can select the view title independently of the actual viewport.

5. Move it down. As you move the view title, it snaps in alignment to the view title to the left (see Figure 13.12).

Now that you have some experience creating sheets and making adjustments to the views and viewports, you can easily create one more sheet that contains sections.

The following procedure focuses on creating a detail sheet. If you feel as though you can create this sheet on your own, go ahead. The sheet will be number A401, it will be named DETAILS, and the views to be added are Corridor Entry Section, Callout of Corridor Entry Section, Roof Taper Section, and TYPICAL WALL TERMINATION. Your finished sheet should look like Figure 13.13.

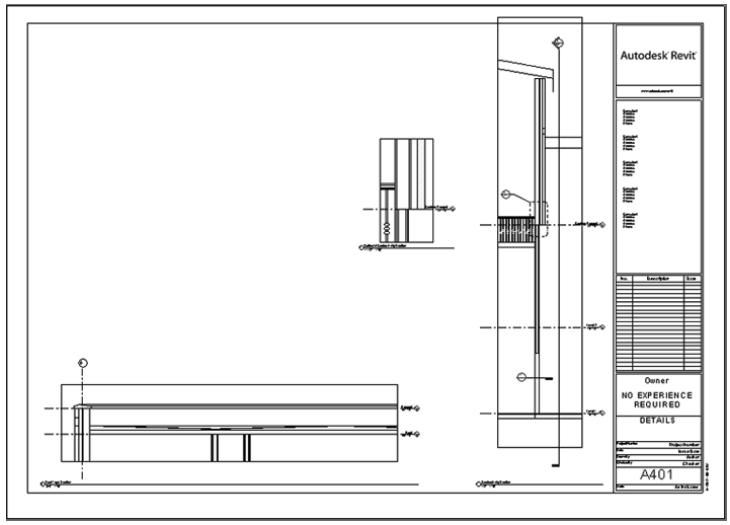


FIGURE 13.13: Building the A401 DETAILS sheet

If you'd rather have some assistance, follow these steps:

1. In the Sheets category in the Project Browser, right-click the Sheets title.
2. Select New Sheet.
3. Number it **A401**, and name it **DETAILS**.
4. In the Project Browser, drag the Sections (Wall Section) item Corridor Entry Section, and place it in the sheet all the way to the right.
5. Right-click the new viewport, and select Activate View.
6. Stretch the section bubble down so that it fits into the sheet.
7. Right-click again, and select Deactivate View.
8. In the Project Browser, drag the Sections (Building Section) item Callout Of Corridor Entry Section onto the sheet to the top left of the previous section.
9. Drag the section called Roof Taper Section to the bottom left of the first view you added.
10. Zoom in on the view title for the Corridor Entry Section, as shown in Figure 13.14.

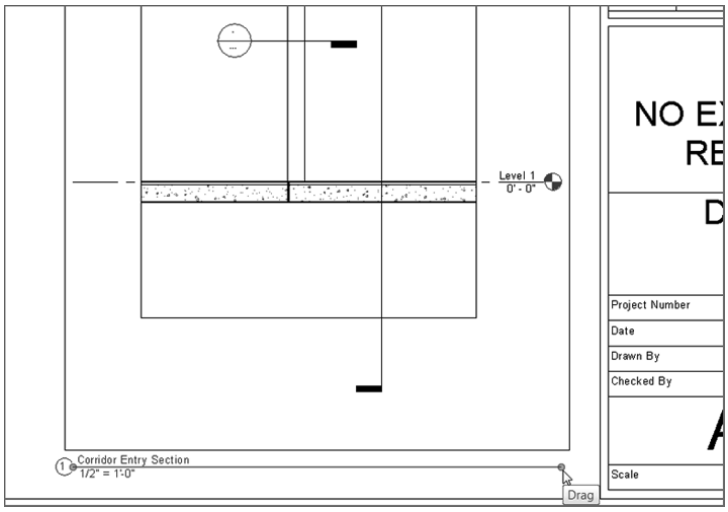


FIGURE 13.14: Stretching the view title line to the right using the blue grip

11. Select the Corridor Entry Section viewport. Notice the blue grips on the view title.
12. Extend the line by stretching the grip on the right to the right (see Figure 13.14).
13. Save the model.

Pan and zoom around to investigate all the reference markers. They're starting to fill themselves out based on the sheets where you placed the referring views.

NOTE **You can place only one instance of a view on a sheet. You also can't place a view on multiple sheets. This is how Revit keeps track of what view is on a page and which page the view is on. The only types of view that you can place on more than one sheet are legends and schedules. If you would like to place a model view on a sheet more than once, you'll need to duplicate the view in the Project Browser.**

Now that you know how to manipulate a viewport, it's time to look at the viewport's properties. I think you'll be glad to see how familiar these properties are.

Viewport Properties

Just like anything else in Revit, viewports have associated properties. You can select the viewport and click the Properties button on the Ribbon if the Properties dialog box isn't already open.

The objective of the following procedure is to look through the viewport's properties and make some minor modifications. Follow these steps:

1. Open the view A401 – DETAILS (if it isn't already open).
2. Select the Corridor Entry Section view (the tall section to the right of the sheet).

NOTE **Notice that the properties for the viewport are the same as those for a typical view. When you change the properties of a viewport, you're changing the properties of the corresponding view.**

3. In the Properties dialog box, scroll down the list until you arrive at Title On Sheet, as shown in Figure 13.15.
4. Change Title On Sheet to **SECTION AT ENTRY CORRIDOR**.

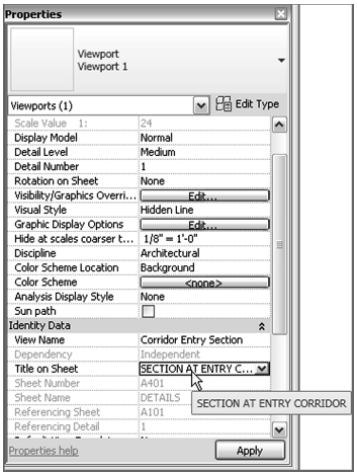


FIGURE 13.15: **You can make the title on the sheet different from the view name.**

5. Click Edit Type.
6. In the Type Parameters, you can choose which view title you'll be using or whether you want any view title at all. For now, click OK.
7. Zoom in on the detail, and notice that the name has changed.

You've pretty much exhausted creating and manipulating sheets. It's time to explore another sheet function: adding revisions.

When you select the viewport, the name and detail number turn blue. This means you can change the values right on the sheet.

Adding Revisions to a Sheet

An unfortunate reality in producing construction documents is that you must eventually make revisions. In CAD, you normally create a duplicate of the file, save that file into your project directory, and then create the revisions. The only way to keep track of them is to add a revision cloud and change the attribute information in the title block. In Revit, however, you're given a revision schedule and the means to keep track of your revisions.

In the next procedure, you'll add a revision cloud and populate a schedule that is already built into the sheet. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, open Sheet A101.

2. On the Annotate tab, click the Revision Cloud button. You're now in Sketch Mode.
3. Place a revision cloud around the plan, as shown in Figure 13.16.

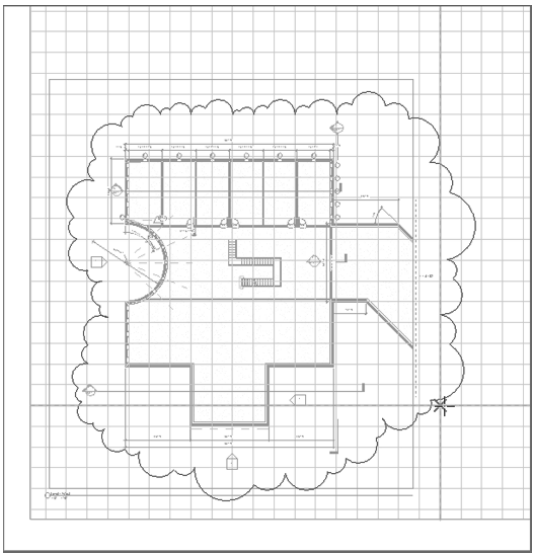


FIGURE 13.16: Placing a revision cloud

4. On the Modify | Create Revision Cloud Sketch tab, click Finish Edit Mode.

TIP To draw the revision cloud accurately, you must work in a clockwise manner. The shorter the distance you move your cursor between clicks, the smaller the arcs that Revit draws, so you have some control over the appearance of the cloud. Unfortunately, if you err in getting the cloud on the sheet, you should probably undo it and start over.

5. On the Annotate tab, click Tag By Category.
6. Pick the revision cloud.
7. You may get a dialog box stating that you don't have a tag loaded for this category. If you see this dialog box, click Yes to load one.
8. Select Annotations ➢ Revision Tag.rfa.
9. Pick the revision cloud. It's now tagged (see Figure 13.17).

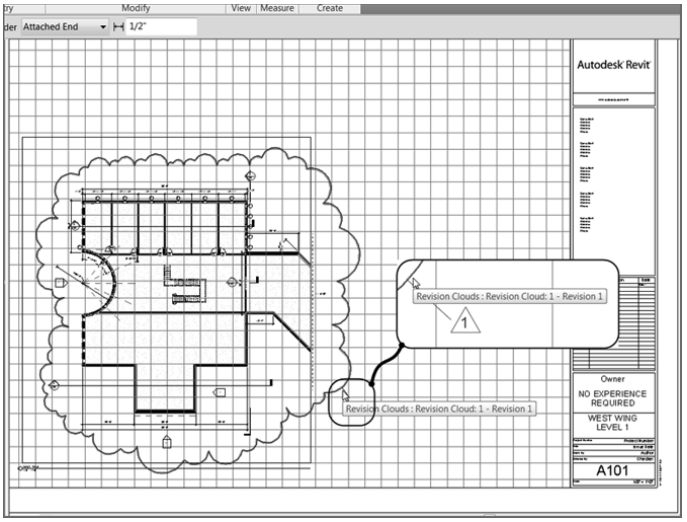


FIGURE 13.17: The revision tag has been added to the cloud. Also, notice that the title block has Revision 1 added to it.

Zoom closer to the title block. The revision schedule has the first revision added to it. Revit is keeping track of your revisions.

Next, you'll modify the revision scheme so that you can better keep track of the revision schedule. Follow these steps:

1. On the View tab, click the Sheet Issues/Revisions button on the Sheet Composition panel. The dialog box shown in Figure 13.18 opens.
2. In the Sheet Issues/Revisions dialog box, change the date to today's date.

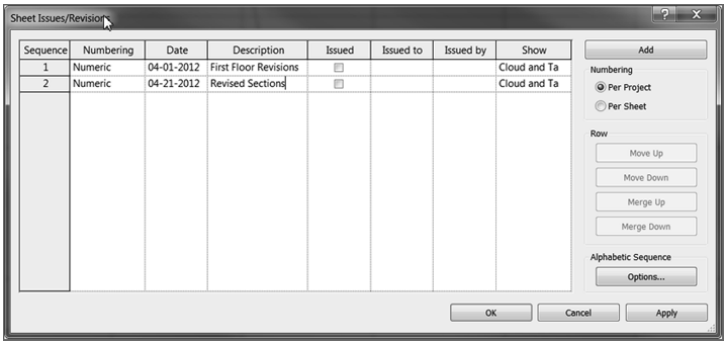


FIGURE 13.18: The Sheet Issues/Revisions dialog box

3. For the description, type **First Floor Revisions**.
4. Click the Add button (see Figure 13.18).
5. Give the new revision a date in the future.
6. For the description, enter **Revised Sections** (again, see Figure 13.18).
7. For Numbering, click the Per Project radio button.
8. Click OK.
9. In the Project Browser, open the sheet A301 – BUILDING SECTIONS.
10. On the Annotate tab, click the Revision Cloud button.
11. Place a cloud around the upper-right detail.
12. On the Mode panel, click Finish Edit Mode.
13. Select the cloud you just added.
14. On the Options bar, make sure Seq. 2 – Revised Sections is selected, as shown in Figure 13.19.

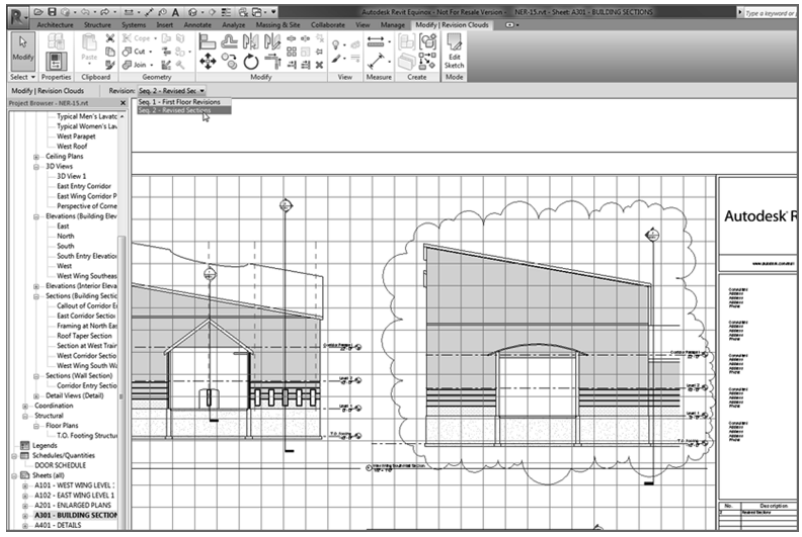


FIGURE 13.19: By selecting the revision cloud, you can specify the sequence from the Options bar.

15. On the Annotate tab, select Tag By Category.
16. Place the revision tag on the cloud. The schedule in the title block is filled with only the appropriate revision relevant to this sheet.

Now that you have experience with the concept of how sheets and revisions come together, we need to explore one more avenue of populating sheet information. You may have noticed that the title blocks aren't yet complete. The empty fields relate to project information that needs to be included on each sheet. This is where project parameters come in.

Addressing Project Parameters

Because Revit is built on a database, it makes sense that items like Project Name and Project Number are added to the design in a different manner than in CAD. In CAD, you fill out attributes sheet by sheet, or you externally reference a title block with the sheet information. In Revit, you fill out the project information in one place. The information you add to the database propagates down to the sheets. When (or if) this information changes, it's done quickly and accurately.

The objective of the next procedure is to locate the project parameters and populate the model with the job information:

1. On the Manage tab, click Project Information, as shown in Figure 13.20.

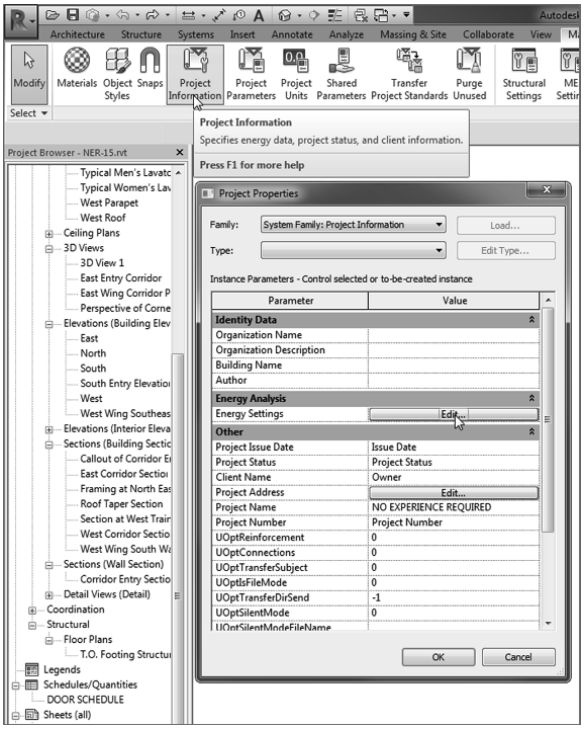
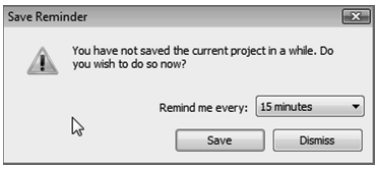


FIGURE 13.20: Filling out the project data

2. In the Project Properties dialog box, click the Edit button next to Energy Settings, as shown to the right in Figure 13.20. The resulting dialog box allows you to add the project's geographical information as well as energy data. This lets you export the information to gbXML as well as provide information so that your architectural model can be imported into Revit MEP.
3. Click OK.

Save That Model!

You may have noticed that a save reminder keeps popping up (as shown here). Revit likes to ask you if you want to save the model *before* you execute a command. This process has greatly reduced the number of crashes when compared to the number in AutoCAD.



4. You can fill out the rest of the information as follows (see Figure 13.20):
   - Project Issue Date: 5/10/15
   - Project Status: 100%
   - Project Name: NO EXPERIENCE REQUIRED
   - Project Number: 20090342
   - Owner: Your name

NOTE **The NO EXPERIENCE REQUIRED text has already been entered. This is because you added it to the appropriate field in the title block. Remember, when you're dealing with Revit, and databases in general, it's a two-way flow of information.**

5. Click OK.
6. Open any sheet, and examine the title block. All the information should be filled out.

You can now populate the information in a sheet. Before getting into printing, you need to learn about one more item quickly: adding a drawing list.

Generating a Cover Sheet

It goes without saying that this ingenious method of creating and managing sheets wouldn't be quite perfect unless you could generate a sheet list and put it on a cover sheet. Well, this is Revit. Of course you can do this! The best part is that you already have the experience necessary to carry out this procedure.

The objective here is to create a sheet list and add it to a cover sheet. Follow these steps:

1. On the View tab, click Schedules ➢ Sheet List, as shown in Figure 13.21.

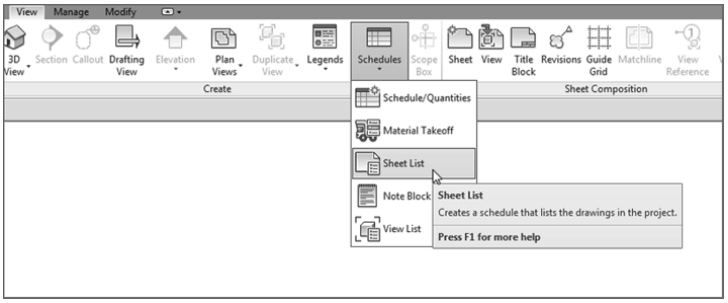


FIGURE 13.21: Selecting Schedules ➢ Sheet List on the View tab

2. In the Sheet List Properties dialog box, add Sheet Number and Sheet Name, as shown in Figure 13.22.
3. Click the Sorting/Grouping tab.
4. Sort by Sheet Number.

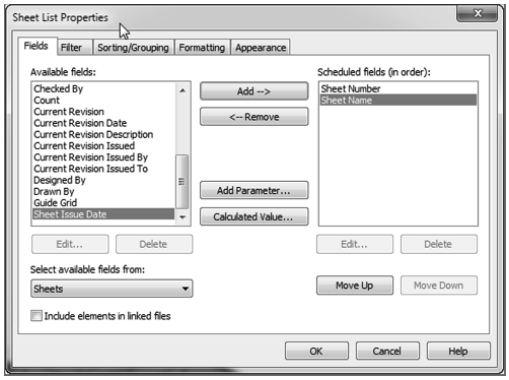


FIGURE 13.22: Adding Sheet Number and Sheet Name (in that order)

5. Select Ascending.
6. Click OK.

Wow! Creating a schedule is so easy, you'll probably be doing this on your lunch break instead of playing Internet games!

While you're still in the schedule, you can add a new row. This row will constitute a filler sheet that you can add to the Project Browser at a later date.

1. Make sure you're in the Sheet List schedule.
2. On the Rows panel, click the New button, as shown in Figure 13.23.

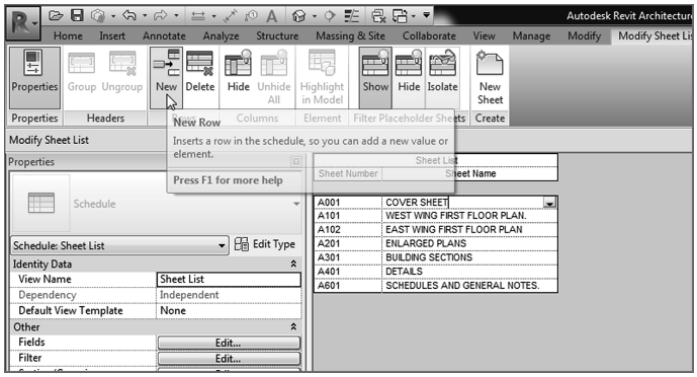


FIGURE 13.23: You can add a placeholder row.

3. Call the new row **A001 – COVER SHEET** (see Figure 13.23).

For now, let's keep this schedule in the Project Browser and create a cover sheet onto which you can drag it. You'll create a new title-block family, add it to the project, and then drag the drawing list onto the cover. Follow these steps:

1. Click the Application button, and choose New ➢ Title Block, as shown in Figure 13.24.

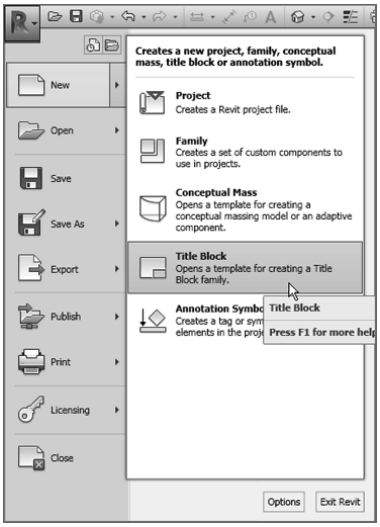


FIGURE 13.24: Creating a new title block

2. Select `E1 - 42 x 30.rft` (1050 × 750).
3. Click Open.
4. On the Text panel of the Create tab, click Label, as shown in Figure 13.25.

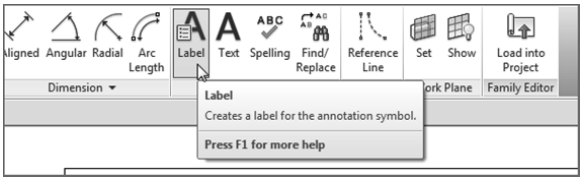


FIGURE 13.25: Clicking Label on the Create tab

5. In the Properties dialog box, click Edit Type.

6. Click Duplicate.
7. Call the new tag **TITLE**, and click OK.
8. Make sure Text Font is set to Arial.
9. Change Text Size to 1″ (25 mm).
10. Click Bold.
11. Click OK.
12. On the Format panel, click the Center Middle button.
13. Pick a point in the upper center of the sheet.

After you place the tag, you immediately see the Edit Label dialog box. This dialog box lets you add the label you want. When you load this cover sheet into the project and add it to a new sheet, the project information will populate automatically.

Next, you'll add the correct tags to the sheet. Follow these steps:

1. Select Project Name, and click the Add Parameter(s) To Label button, as shown in Figure 13.26.

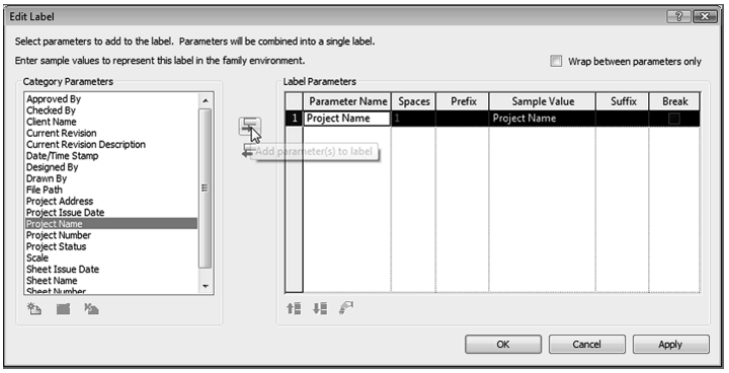


FIGURE 13.26: Adding the project name to the label

2. Click OK.
3. Click the label, and widen the grips. You may have to adjust the label so that it's centered in the sheet, as shown in Figure 13.27.
4. Click the Application button, and then click Save As ➢ Family.

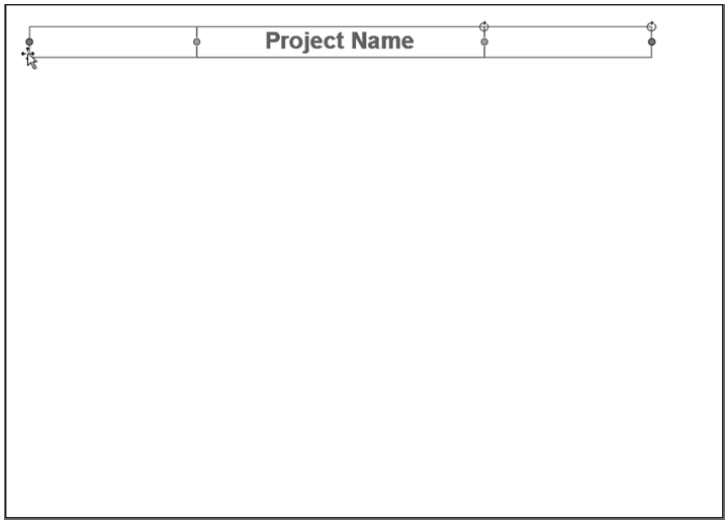


FIGURE 13.27: Adjusting the label so that it's centered in the sheet

5. Save the file somewhere that makes sense to you. Call it **Title Sheet**.
6. Click Load Into Project.

   If you have more than one project open, a dialog box opens in which you can choose a project to load the sheet into. If this is the case, choose the No Experience Required project on which you're working. If the sheet appears under your cursor in a sheet view, press Esc.
7. In the Project Browser, right-click Sheets, and select New Sheet.
8. In the New Sheet dialog box, select Title Sheet.
9. Also in the New Sheet dialog box, select the placeholder sheet that you added to the schedule, as shown in Figure 13.28.
10. Click OK. Your tag is populated with the project information.
11. In the Project Browser, find Sheet List (it's in the Schedules/Quantities category), and drag it onto the sheet.
12. Select the schedule, and adjust it so that the text is readable. Your title sheet, although not very glorious, should look like Figure 13.29.

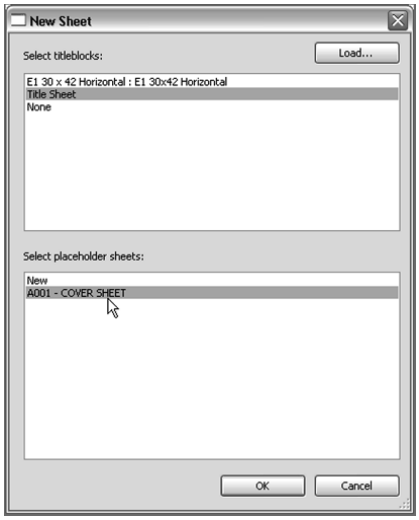


FIGURE 13.28: Adding the new sheet

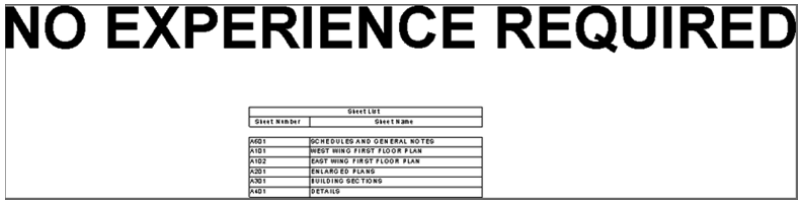


FIGURE 13.29: The completed title sheet

In most cases, you don't want the actual cover sheet to be an item in the schedule. You can fix this. While still in the cover sheet, deselect Appears In Sheet List in the Properties dialog box, as shown in Figure 13.30.

Perfect! You have a handful of sheets. The beauty is that you don't have to leave the model to see how these sheets are shaping up. In Revit, they're always just a click away.

You have these sheets, so let's explore how you send them to the plotter. After all, you're producing paper construction documents.

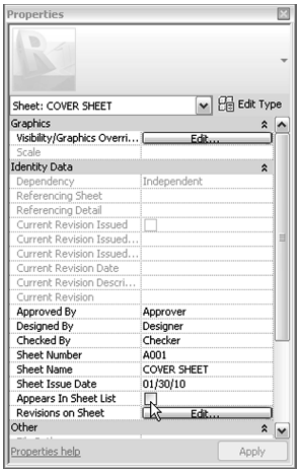


FIGURE 13.30: Deselect the Appears In Sheet List option.

Printing from Revit Architecture

Luckily, printing is one of the easiest things you'll confront in Revit. However, you must consider some dangerous defaults when printing. I will go out on a limb and say that printing from Revit is too easy in some cases.

In this procedure, you'll print a set of drawings. Pay special attention to the warnings—they will steer you clear of danger. Follow these steps:

1. Click the Application button, and select Print.
2. For the printer name, select the printer to which you want to print.
3. If you're printing to a file, you can choose to combine all files into one or create separate files. Choose to combine into one file. If you aren't printing to a file, ignore this choice.
4. For Print Range, you can print the current window, print the visible portion of the current window, or choose Selected Views/Sheets. In this case, choose Selected Views/Sheets.

TIP When you choose to print the current window, you're printing the current view. When you choose to print the visible portion of the current window, you're printing the area into which you're currently zoomed. In Revit, you don't pick a window as you do in CAD.

5. Click the Select button, as shown at the lower left of Figure 13.31.

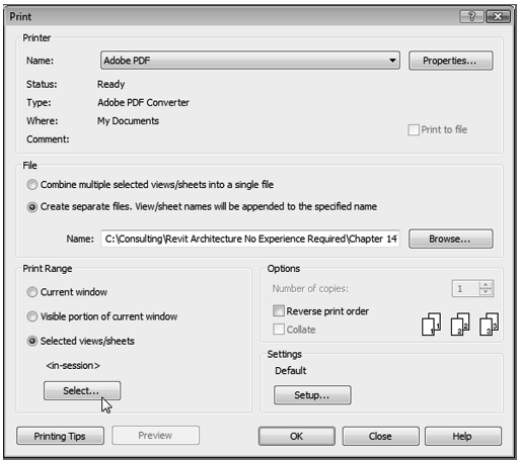


FIGURE 13.31: Choosing the options to print the drawings

6. At the bottom of the View/Sheet Set dialog box, deselect Views.
7. Only the sheets are listed. Click all the sheets.
8. Click OK.
9. Revit asks if you want to save the settings for a future print. Click No.
10. In the lower-left corner in the Settings area, click the Setup button, as shown in Figure 13.32.

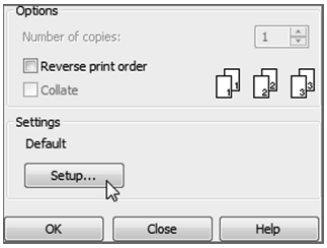


FIGURE 13.32 Clicking the Setup button

TIP **Printing from Revit is similar to an AutoCAD paperspace or modelspace environment where you can print a specific view or print an entire sheet. The only difference is that you aren't bothered by scale. The sheets and views are printed at the scale specified in Revit.**

WARNING **Make a habit of clicking the Setup button before you print. You need to verify some crucial settings in the resulting dialog box.**

11. For Paper, choose the correct paper size to which you want to print.
12. For Paper Placement, choose Center.
13. For Zoom, select Zoom: 100% Of Size.

WARNING **The Fit To Page radio button should never be selected unless you know you aren't plotting to scale. If you want a reduced set of drawings, you can specify Zoom and then change to a smaller percentage (50 percent is a half-size set).**

14. For the options, select Hide Ref/Work Planes.
15. Select Hide Unreferenced View Tags.
16. Hide Scope Boxes.
17. Hide Crop Boundaries.
18. Click OK.
19. Click OK again, and your plot is off.
20. Save the file.

There you have it.

The book doesn't create a sheet for every single view. If you feel as though you're still lacking experience in creating sheets and printing, go ahead and create more sheets and keep printing away until you're confident about moving on to Chapter 14, "Creating Rooms and Area Plans."

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ create sheets by dragging views and creating viewports
- ✔ configure project parameters to populate the sheets
- ✔ create a drawing list for a cover sheet

CHAPTER 14

Creating Rooms and Area Plans

Rooms are another example of why Revit is considered the BIM application. When we add a room, we not only add a simple descriptive piece of text, we add an element that knows the square footage, the volume, and even the occupancy of an area. Also, if you think about it, as an architect adding a room, you are adding critical information for the MEP HVAC consultants when they link your model!

- **Creating rooms**
- **Adding a room schedule**
- **Adding a color-fill plan**
- **Adding room separators**
- **Creating an area plan**

Creating Rooms

The first topic we'll tackle is the task of creating a room and adding it to the model. The procedures that follow will focus on finding where to launch the room and areas and the parameters the Autodesk® Revit® Architecture software looks for while placing a room into the floor plan.

Because Revit draws from a database to gather information, the process of creating a room boils down to your adding some notes to an already-built form. When you place the room in the model, Revit automatically tags it. Unlike other drafting applications, however, Revit doesn't rely on the tag for its information. When a room is in the model, it can either contain or not contain a tag. This is a great way to organize the flow of room information.

To get started, open the model on which you've been working. If you skipped the previous chapter, go to the book's web page at `www.sybex.com/go/revit2017ner`. From there, you can browse to `Chapter 14` and find the file called `NER-14.rvt`.

The objective of the following procedure is to find the Room & Area panel on the Architecture tab and to configure and add some rooms to the model. Follow these steps:

1. In the Project Browser, find the dependent view called Level 1 East, and open it.
2. On the Architecture tab, click the Room button.
3. Hover your cursor over the southeast room, as shown in Figure 14.1. An X appears, along with the outline of a room tag.

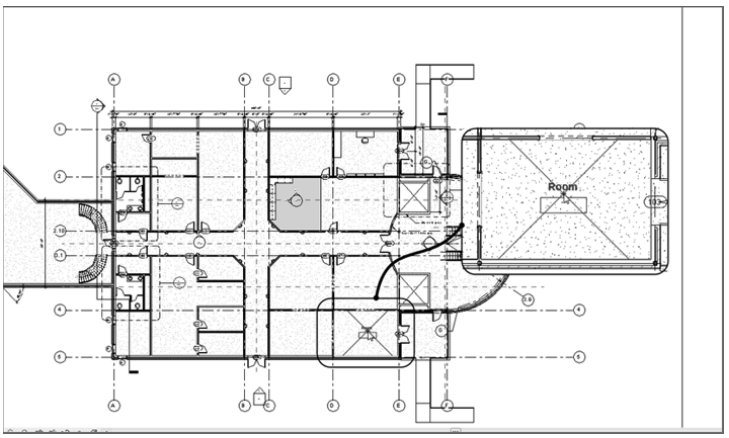


FIGURE 14.1: When you hover your mouse over the intended area of the room, you see an indication that Revit has found the bounding edges.

4. Pick a spot in the middle of the four walls.
5. Press Esc.

You've now added a room to the model. Of course, it's a nondescript room name with a nondescript room number. Let's correct that by changing the room name and number on the screen.

1. Select the room tag that you just added to the model.

NOTE You may be sick of hearing this by now, but I'll say it again: when you select a component in Revit, the items that turn blue are always editable.

2. Click the Room text.
3. Change the name to **SOUTHEAST CORNER OFFICE**.
4. Click room number 1.
5. Change the number to **101** (see Figure 14.2).

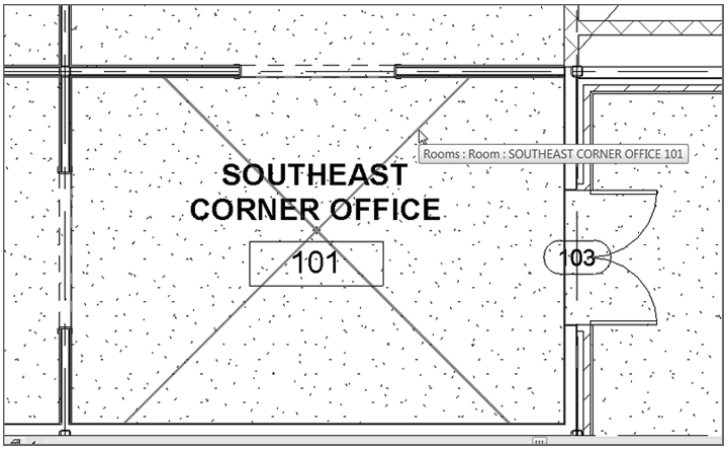


FIGURE 14.2: Changing the room name and number to SOUTHEAST CORNER OFFICE and 101, respectively

Now that you have a room in place and it's named properly, you can start cooking in terms of adding more rooms. This is because Revit will begin to number the rooms sequentially as you place them into the model.

Next you'll populate the rest of the east wing with rooms. Follow these steps:

1. On the Room & Area panel of the Architecture tab, click the Room button.

TIP If you get the Save reminder, be sure to save the model. In no situation is this ever a bad idea!

2. Place a room in the adjacent area, as shown at the lower left in Figure 14.3.

When you modify the fields in a tag in Revit, the best method to finalize the data is to click an area away from the tag. Doing so ensures that you don't inadvertently create an additional line in the tag's value.

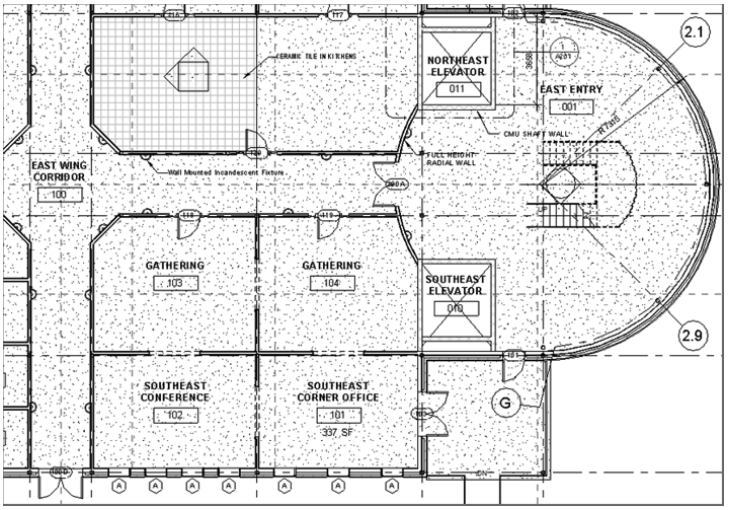


FIGURE 14.3: The first floor layout up to this point

3. Call the room **SOUTHEAST CONFERENCE** (see Figure 14.3).

NOTE Did you notice that the room tag tries to align itself with the adjacent tag? This is a fantastic feature in Revit Architecture.

4. On the Room & Area panel of the Architecture tab, click the Room button again.
5. Place a room in the radial entry area.
6. Rename the room **EAST ENTRY**.
7. Renumber the room **001**.
8. Place a room in the south elevator shaft.
9. Rename and renumber it **SOUTHEAST ELEVATOR** and **010**.
10. Place a room in the north elevator shaft.
11. Rename and renumber it **NORTHEAST ELEVATOR** and **011**.
12. Place a room in the corridor.
13. Call it **EAST WING CORRIDOR**, and number it **100**.

14. Just north of SOUTHEAST CONFERENCE and SOUTHEAST CORNER OFFICE, place two rooms, each called **GATHERING**. Number them **103** and **104**.
15. Zoom over to the west portion of the east wing, where the lavatories are located.
16. In the north lavatory, add a room named **MEN'S**, numbered **105**.
17. In the south lavatory, add a room named **WOMEN'S**, numbered **106**.

I think you're getting the concept of adding rooms. Although you've added a number of rooms to the east wing, you need to begin adding some plain-old offices. The next procedure will involve adding offices to the rest of the spaces in the east wing of Level 1. From there, you can look at a room's properties and figure out how to alter the room information. Follow these steps:

1. Make sure you're in the east wing area of the model, on Level 1.
2. On the Room & Area panel of the Architecture tab, click the Room button.
3. Pick the large area to the right of the women's lavatory, as shown in Figure 14.4.

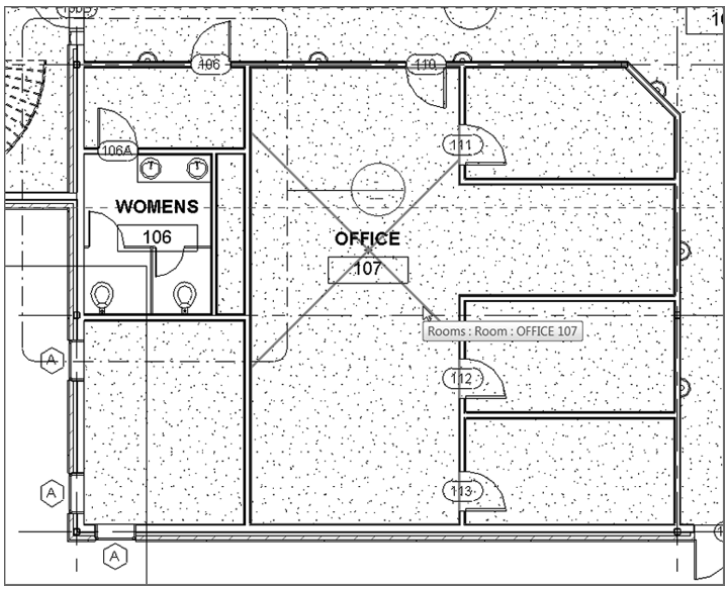


FIGURE 14.4: Renaming the office

4. Rename the room **OFFICE**, and change the number to **107** (see Figure 14.4).

NOTE If the numbering starts to become inconsistent with the examples in the book, that's OK. This will happen from time to time in Revit. You can accept the differences between the book and your model, or you can renumber the rooms to match. Either way, the numbering won't affect the outcome of the procedures.

5. Click the Room button.
6. Add rooms to the rest of the vacant areas, renaming them all **OFFICE**. (Skip the kitchen area and the room to the right of it, as shown in Figure 14.5.)

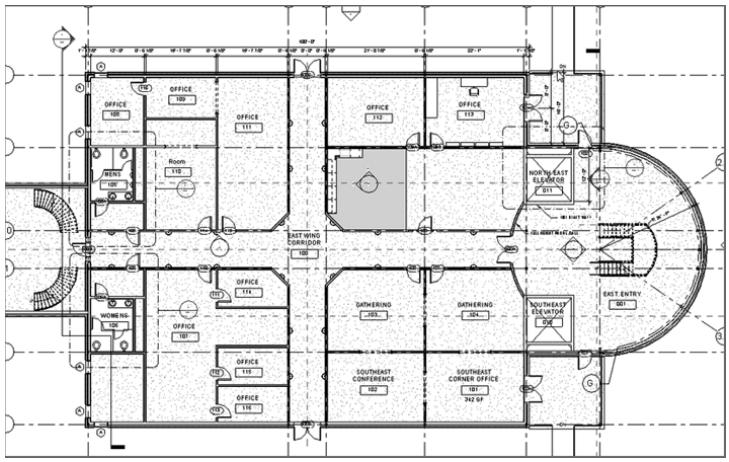


FIGURE 14.5: Adding rooms to the remainder of the spaces

With all the rooms in (at least in this section of the building), you can begin examining specific properties to see how you can add functionality and further populate the database information pertaining to each room.

Configuring Properties

Each room has specific properties associated with it. There are floor finishes and wall finishes as well as ceiling types and finishes. It would be nice if Revit picked up this information by "reading" the ceilings, walls, and floors, but it doesn't.

And for good reason—imagine having to create a different wall type for each paint color and then splitting each partition as it passed through each room. In Revit, you specify individual room finishes in the properties of the room itself.

In the next procedure, you'll generate additional room information in the properties of the room. Follow these steps:

1. Zoom in on the SOUTHEAST CORNER OFFICE 101 room.
2. Hover your cursor over the room until you see the X, as shown in Figure 14.6.

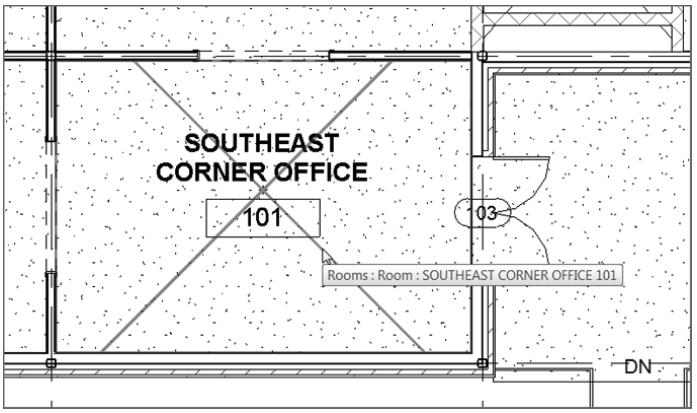


FIGURE 14.6: Hover the cursor over the room until the X appears.

TIP Any time you want to view the properties of a room, you need to click the actual room, not the room tag. Sometimes selecting a room can be difficult because the room is invisible until you hover over it. With some practice, this process will soon become second nature.

3. Pick the room, as shown in Figure 14.7.
4. In the Properties dialog box, scroll down to the Identity Data group.
5. Add **WD-1** to Base Finish.
6. Add **ACT** to Ceiling Finish.
7. Add **PT** to Wall Finish.
8. Add **VCT** to Floor Finish (see Figure 14.8).

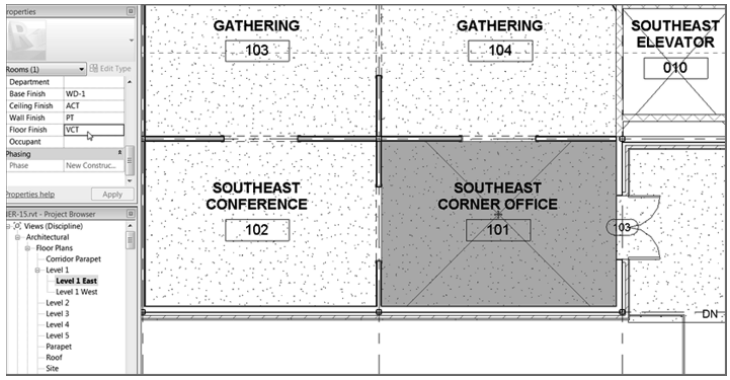


FIGURE 14.7: Adding values to the identity data

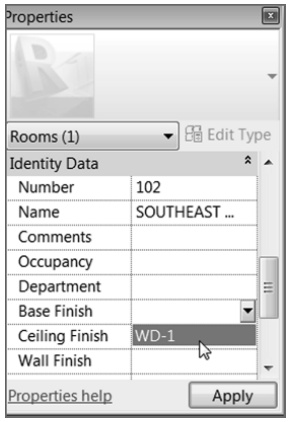


FIGURE 14.8: When a field has been added to the database, it's available for the rest of the rooms.

9. Select the SOUTHEAST CONFERENCE room.
10. In the Properties dialog box, click into the Base Finish field. Click the arrow for the pull-down menu, and select WD-1, as shown in Figure 14.8.
11. Change the rest of the fields using the previous entries.
12. Save the model.

Changing a room's properties is a simple task. There is, however, one more item to discuss. It pertains to a room that spans multiple floors, such as the east entry.

The objective of the next procedure is to change the height of the east entry room's properties.

1. Zoom in on the east entry area, and select the room, as shown in Figure 14.9.

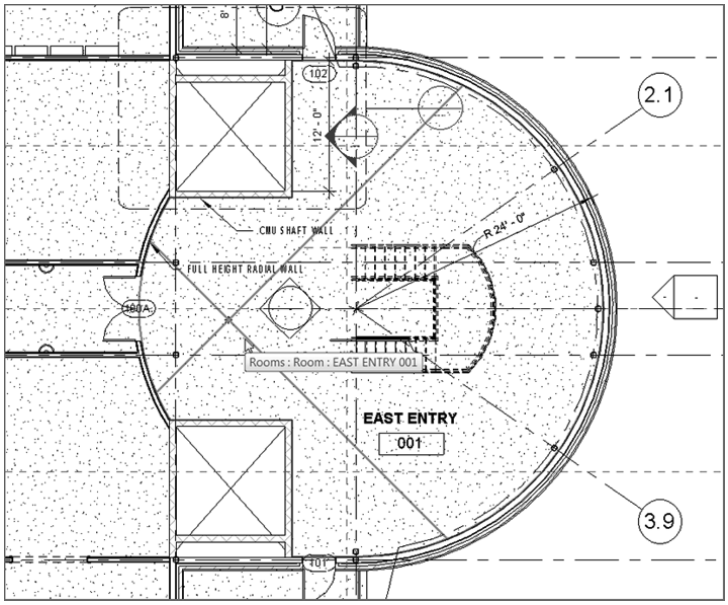


FIGURE 14.9: Selecting the east entry room

2. In the Properties dialog box, change Upper Limit to Roof.
3. Change Limit Offset to 0. Doing so sets the east entry room to extend from Level 1 to the roof.

If you're having trouble selecting the room, remember that you can pick an entire window around the area and use the Filter button on the Filter panel.

Now that you have experience changing the properties of the rooms, it's time to look at the properties of the walls that divide the rooms. You certainly noticed that when you placed the rooms in the lavatories, the rooms didn't fill the small entry areas. You can correct this by changing the walls' room-bounding properties.

Room-Bounding Properties

By default, each wall you add to the Revit model automatically defines a room boundary, and this is what you want 95 percent of the time. In some situations, however, you don't want a wall to separate the room. In such cases, you can modify the instance parameters of the wall to disallow the division of the room.

In this procedure, you'll turn off the room bounding in certain walls. Follow these steps:

1. In the East Wing floor plan, zoom in on the lavatory area.
2. Select the wall that divides the men's toilet area from the men's lavatory entry area, as shown in Figure 14.10.

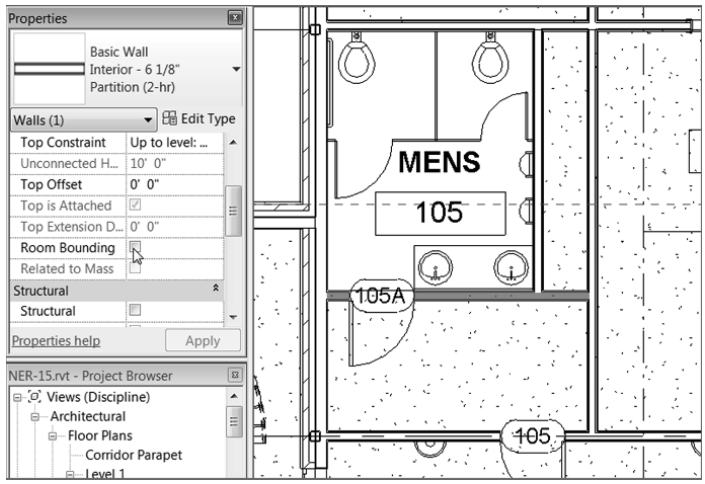


FIGURE 14.10: Selecting the partition within the men's lavatory

3. In the Properties dialog box, scroll down to the Room Bounding row.
4. Deselect Room Bounding (see Figure 14.10).
5. Repeat the procedure in the women's lavatory.
6. Save the model.

Having the ability to add rooms and manipulate the information easily in the Revit database gives you a tremendous advantage as you move forward with the rest of the model. Also, that information is relayed into the room's tag, which is automatically added as you place rooms into the model.

This concept brings us to the next topic: how to change the tag to display the information you desire on the drawings.

Placing and Manipulating Room Tags

As mentioned earlier, the room tag is merely a vehicle to relay the room's data to the construction documents. As a default, a room tag is added automatically as you place the room into the model. A default room tag is included, but you aren't stuck with it.

Let's add an alternate room tag to the room and open the tag's Family Editor to investigate the composition of the tag:

1. Zoom in to SOUTHEAST CORNER OFFICE.
2. Select the room tag.
3. In the Type Selector, select Room Tag With Area. The tag displays the area, as shown in Figure 14.11.

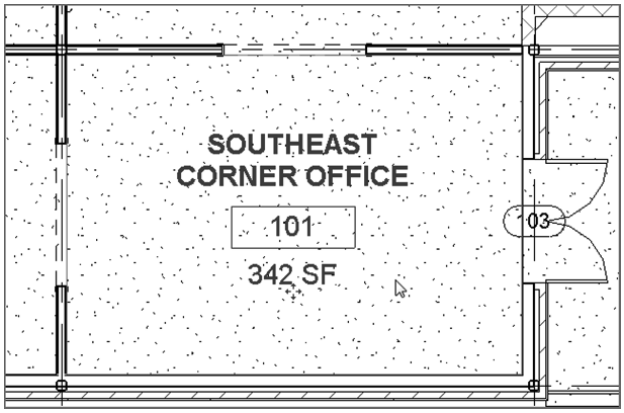


FIGURE 14.11: Change the type to Room Tag With Area.

That was way too easy! Let's take a closer look at what you just did. A room tag is nothing more than the cover sheet label you created in Chapter 13, "Creating Sheets and Printing." All you need to do is open the file and place a tag into the family.

To open the tag's Family Editor, follow this procedure:

1. Select the room tag for SOUTHWEST CORNER OFFICE.
2. On the Modify | Room Tags tab, click the Edit Family button.

3. With the family file open, click the Room Name piece of text that is visible. (These pieces of text are actually labels.)
4. On the Modify | Label tab, click the Edit Label button.
5. In the Edit Label dialog box, the list to the left displays all the parameters that you can add to the room tag (see Figure 14.12). Don't change anything; click OK.

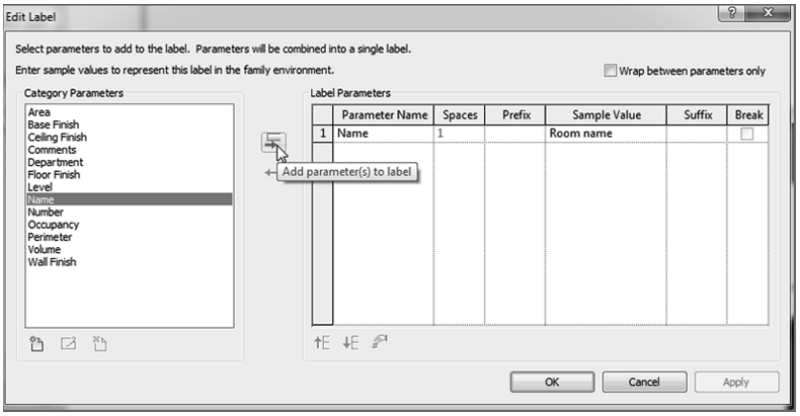


FIGURE 14.12: A list of available parameters that you can add to the room tag

WARNING If you're modifying the room tag, do yourself and the rest of your design team a huge favor and inform everyone that you're changing your company's standards! If you're the BIM manager, set the permissions to this network directory accordingly.

6. Close this file without saving any changes.

Now that you know what tag Revit uses when it places a room and how to manipulate that tag, let's tie the tag into something more robust. A tag is just a reflection of the room data. You can add another Revit object that does the same thing: a room schedule.

Adding a Room Schedule

Up to this point in your career, you've been adding room information twice, or sometimes three times. Why? Because you had to fill out the tag in the plan and then fill out the same information in the room schedule. If you were in the

unfortunate situation of having an enlarged plan, then you added the information a third time. When you needed to change that information, you had to do so in several places. I'm not saying that Revit will end all your problems, but it sure will make life easier.

The objective of the next procedure is to create a room schedule. You'll then finish filling out the room information from the schedule, thus saving time and increasing accuracy. Follow these steps:

1. On the View tab, click Schedules, and then click the Schedule/Quantities button.
2. In the New Schedule dialog box, select Rooms from the list at the left.
3. Click OK.
4. On the Fields tab of the Schedule Properties dialog box that opens, add the following fields in the specified order (see Figure 14.13):

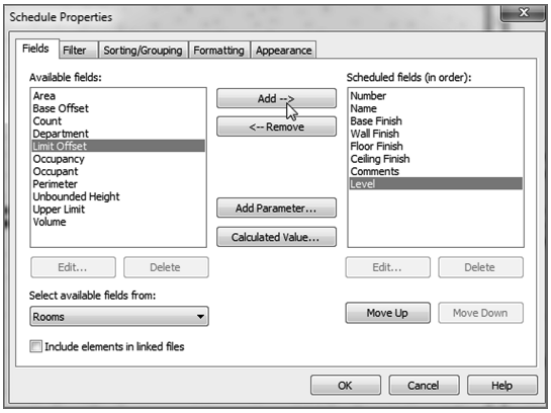
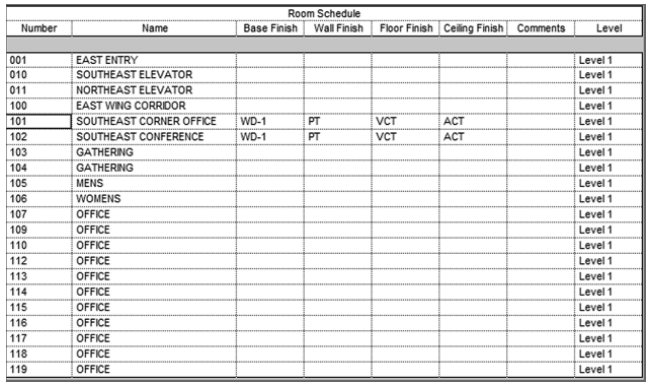


FIGURE 14.13: Adding fields to the schedule

- Number
- Name
- Base Finish
- Wall Finish
- Floor Finish
- Ceiling Finish
- Comments
- Level

5. Click the Sorting/Grouping tab.
6. Sort by number.
7. Click OK. Your schedule should look similar to Figure 14.14.

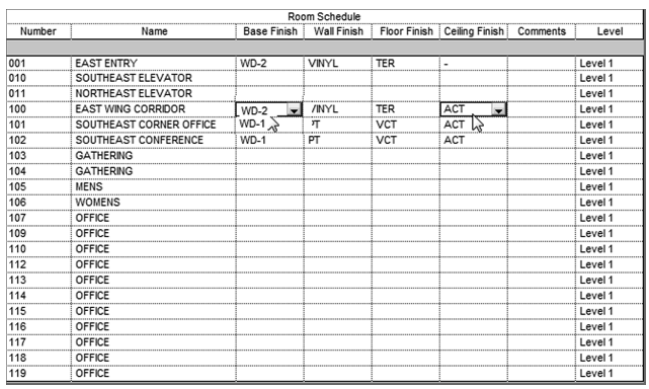


Room Schedule

Number	Name	Base Finish	Wall Finish	Floor Finish	Ceiling Finish	Comments	Level
001	EAST ENTRY						Level 1
010	SOUTHEAST ELEVATOR						Level 1
011	NORTHEAST ELEVATOR						Level 1
100	EAST WING CORRIDOR						Level 1
101	SOUTHEAST CORNER OFFICE	WD-1	PT	VCT	ACT		Level 1
102	SOUTHEAST CONFERENCE	WD-1	PT	VCT	ACT		Level 1
103	GATHERING						Level 1
104	GATHERING						Level 1
105	MENS						Level 1
106	WOMENS						Level 1
107	OFFICE						Level 1
109	OFFICE						Level 1
110	OFFICE						Level 1
112	OFFICE						Level 1
113	OFFICE						Level 1
114	OFFICE						Level 1
115	OFFICE						Level 1
116	OFFICE						Level 1
117	OFFICE						Level 1
118	OFFICE						Level 1
119	OFFICE						Level 1

FIGURE 14.14: The room schedule

8. With the schedule still open, click into the EAST ENTRY Base Finish cell, and type **WD-2**.
9. Click into the Floor Finish cell, and type **TER** (for Terrazzo).
10. Click into the Wall Finish cell, and type **VINYL**.
11. Click into the Ceiling Finish cell, and type a hyphen (-).
12. Click into the EAST WING CORRIDOR Base Finish cell. Click the menu arrow, as shown in Figure 14.15. You have a choice between two base finishes; choose WD-2.



Room Schedule

Number	Name	Base Finish	Wall Finish	Floor Finish	Ceiling Finish	Comments	Level
001	EAST ENTRY	WD-2	VINYL	TER	-		Level 1
010	SOUTHEAST ELEVATOR						Level 1
011	NORTHEAST ELEVATOR						Level 1
100	EAST WING CORRIDOR	WD-2	/INYL	TER	ACT		Level 1
101	SOUTHEAST CORNER OFFICE	WD-1	'T	VCT	ACT		Level 1
102	SOUTHEAST CONFERENCE	WD-1	PT	VCT	ACT		Level 1
103	GATHERING						Level 1
104	GATHERING						Level 1
105	MENS						Level 1
106	WOMENS						Level 1
107	OFFICE						Level 1
109	OFFICE						Level 1
110	OFFICE						Level 1
112	OFFICE						Level 1
113	OFFICE						Level 1
114	OFFICE						Level 1
115	OFFICE						Level 1
116	OFFICE						Level 1
117	OFFICE						Level 1
118	OFFICE						Level 1
119	OFFICE						Level 1

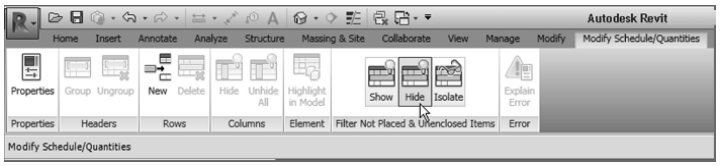
FIGURE 14.15: Filling out the room schedule

13. Change the other values to VINYL, TER, and ACT (see Figure 14.15).

With the rooms in place and a schedule filled out, let's move to a more colorful aspect of placing rooms in the model: adding a color-fill plan.

Turning Off Unwanted Rooms

Your model may have an errant room that doesn't belong in the schedule. Because going step-by-step through a book doesn't give you a true feel for a real-world scenario, I can tell you that you'll wind up with some misplaced rooms. This is OK, because you can turn them off in the schedule. If you click the Not Placed/Not Enclosed menu, you'll see that you can show, hide, or isolate unwanted data. For this example, choose Hide to remove the row, as shown here:



Adding a Color-Fill Plan

Another benefit of using the room feature in Revit is that you can add a color-fill plan at any time, and you can create virtually any type of color or pattern scheme you desire. Here's the best part: adding one is so easy, it's almost fun.

In this procedure you'll make a duplicate of the East Wing floor plan and create a color scheme based on room names. Follow these steps:

1. Right-click the Level 1 floor-plan view, and select Duplicate View ➢ Duplicate With Detailing, as shown in Figure 14.16. If you get an error pertaining to the view references, click the Delete button.
2. Right-click the new view, and select Rename.
3. Rename the view **Level 1 Color Plan**.
4. Click OK.
5. Open the new plan if it isn't open already.
6. On the Analyze tab, click the Color Fill Legend button, as shown in Figure 14.17.

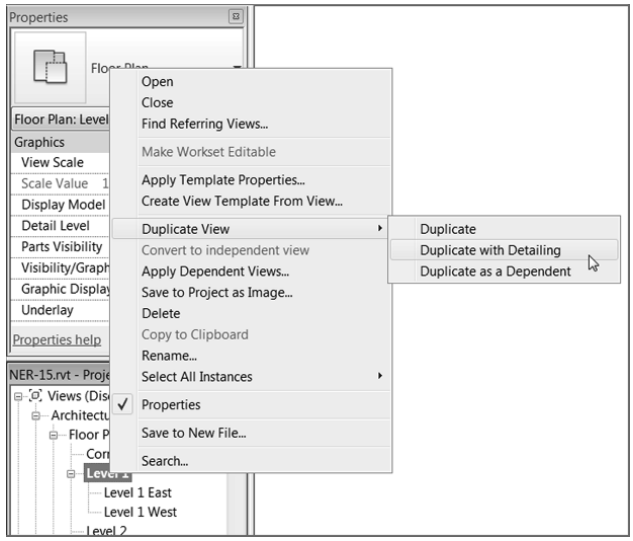


FIGURE 14.16: Duplicating the view

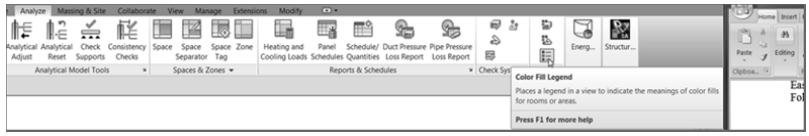


FIGURE 14.17: Clicking the Color Fill Legend button

7. Change Space Type to Rooms and Color Scheme to Name (see Figure 14.18).
8. Place the color scheme into the model in the upper-right corner of the view (inside the crop region).

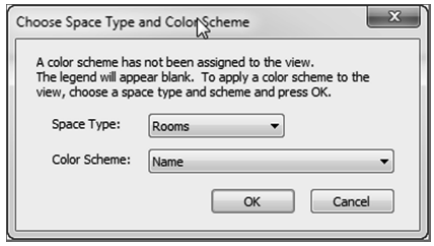


FIGURE 14.18: Specifying the color scheme

9. Click OK. You have a nice color plan.
10. Select the color scheme legend.
11. Click the Edit Scheme button on the Modify | Color Fill Legends tab, as shown in Figure 14.19.

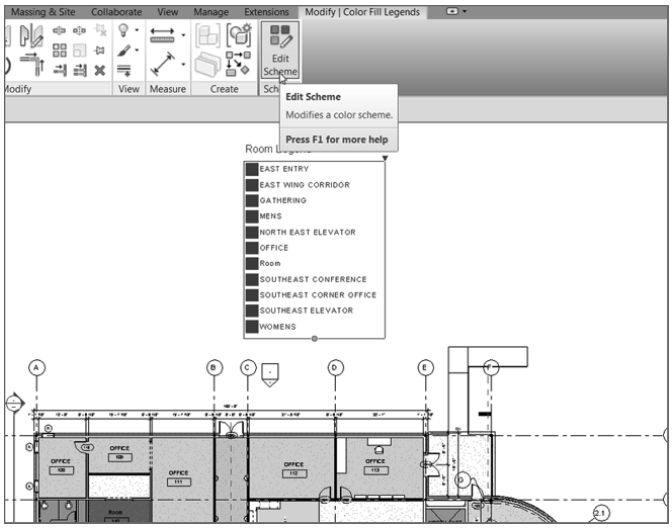


FIGURE 14.19: Proceeding to edit the scheme

12. In the Edit Color Scheme dialog box that opens, you can alter the color and the fill pattern for each room. After you investigate this area, click OK.

Pretty cool concept! You may notice that the two rooms you skipped are still white. It's time to look at this situation. The problem is, there are no walls dividing the two rooms, but it would be nice to have two separate rooms anyway. To do this, you can add a room separator.

Adding Room Separators

Although it seems like a small issue, adding room separators has been known to confuse people. In Revit, you can physically draw a room without any walls. Or you can draw a line in the sand between two rooms that aren't separated by an actual wall. This is known as adding a *room separator*.

Let's separate the kitchen from the break room by adding a room separator.

1. In the Level 1 floor plan, zoom in on the area shown in Figure 14.20.

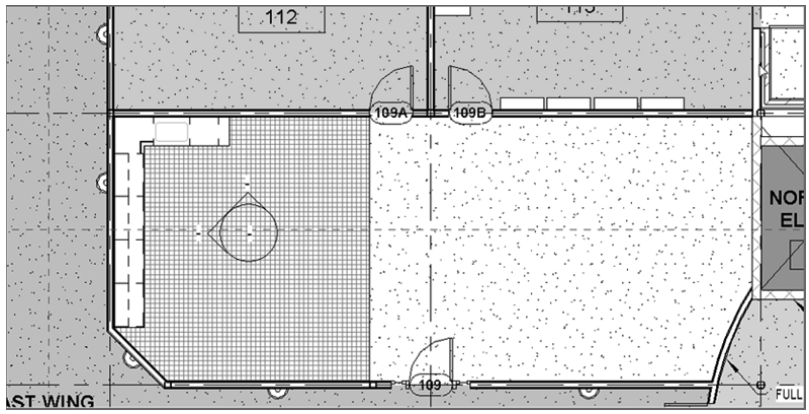


FIGURE 14.20: Place a room over the tiles (it will spill into the adjacent room).

2. On the Room & Area panel of the Architecture tab, click the Room button.
3. Place a room over the top of the tile flooring (see Figure 14.20).
4. On the Room & Area panel of the Architecture tab, choose Room Separator, as shown in Figure 14.21.

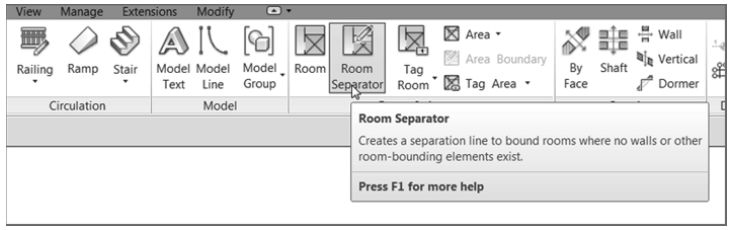


FIGURE 14.21: Click the Room Separator button on the Room & Area panel of the Architecture tab.

5. On the Draw tab, click the Pick Lines icon.
6. Pick the edge of the flooring, as shown in Figure 14.22.
7. Click the Room button.
8. Place a room to the right of the kitchen area.

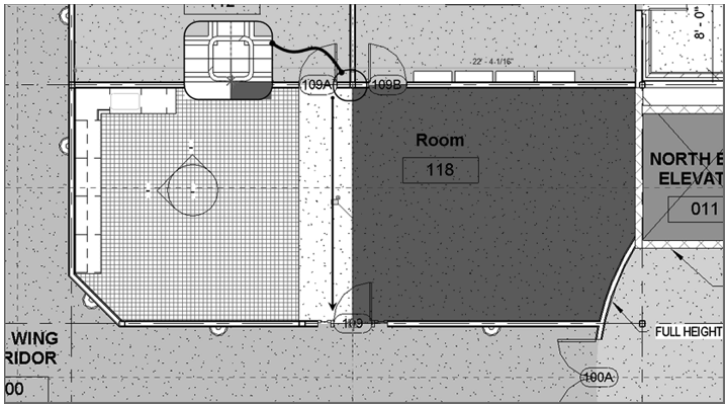


FIGURE 14.22: Adding the room-separation line

9. Change the room to the left to **KITCHEN**.
10. Change the room to the right to **BREAK**.

You're really moving along. You now have a fully coordinated room schedule tied into a room color-fill plan that can be modified by simply changing a room tag. How did you ever live without Revit?

The next item we'll discuss is how to create a gross area plan. The process is similar to, but slightly more involved than, creating a room color plan.

Creating an Area Plan

Almost any job of considerable size will require an area plan at some point in the project's early development. This normally occurs in the programming phase, but the need for this type of plan can persist well into the later stages of the project.

The goal of the next procedure is to create a separate floor plan and then divide it into areas. Follow these steps:

1. On the Room & Area panel of the Architecture tab, select Area, and click the Area Plan button, as shown in Figure 14.23.

FIGURE 14.23: Clicking the Area Plan button

2. In the New Area Plan dialog box, choose Gross Building from the Type list, and choose Level 1 for the Area Plan Views.
3. Click OK.
4. Click Yes to create area boundaries automatically. You now have a new floor plan with a blue boundary around the perimeter of the entire building.
5. On the Room & Area panel, click the Area Boundary button, as shown in Figure 14.24.

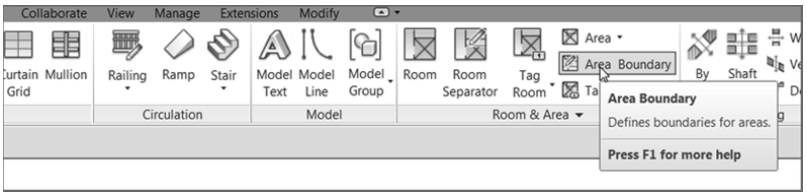


FIGURE 14.24: Clicking Area Boundary

6. Draw a line, as shown in Figure 14.25, separating the corridor from the east wing.

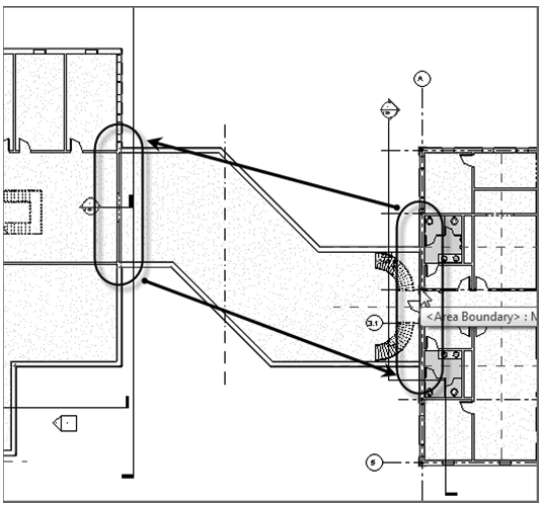


FIGURE 14.25: Separating the areas

7. Draw another similar separator between the west wing and the corridor.

NOTE If your lines aren't exactly snapping to the endpoints, it isn't a big deal. Unlike Sketch Mode, Revit is much more forgiving when it comes to creating area separations.

8. On the Room & Area panel, click the Area button, as shown in Figure 14.26.

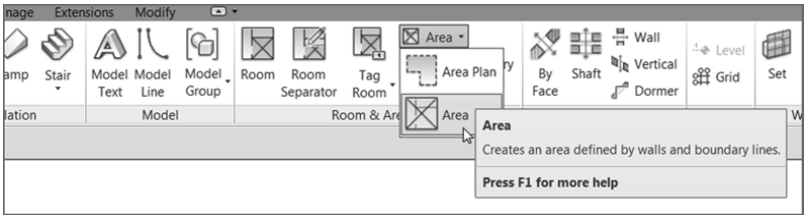


FIGURE 14.26: The Area button

9. If Revit says a tag isn't loaded, click Yes to load the family. Browse to Annotation ➢ Area Tag.rfa.
10. Place an area in the west wing, then in the corridor, and then in the east wing, as shown in Figure 14.27.

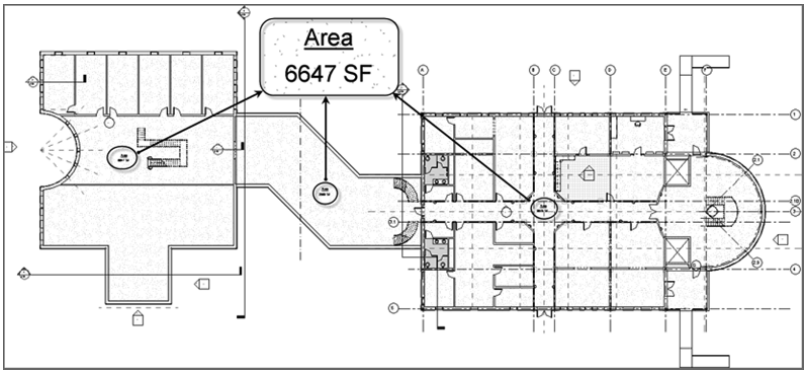


FIGURE 14.27: The plan is divided into three areas.

11. Select the tag in the west wing.
12. Rename it **WEST WING**.
13. Click the Corridor tag.
14. Rename it **LINK**.
15. Click the East Wing tag.
16. Rename it **EAST WING**.
17. On the Color Fill panel of the Annotate tab, click the Color Fill Legend button.
18. Place the legend in the upper-right corner of the view.
19. In the Choose Space Type And Color Scheme dialog box, choose Areas (Gross Building) for Space Type and Gross Building Area for Color Scheme.
20. Click OK.
21. Select the color scheme legend.
22. Click the Edit Scheme button on the Modify | Color Fill Legends tab.
23. For Color, change Area Type to Name.
24. Click OK in the warning dialog box.
25. Click OK to return to the model (see Figure 14.28).

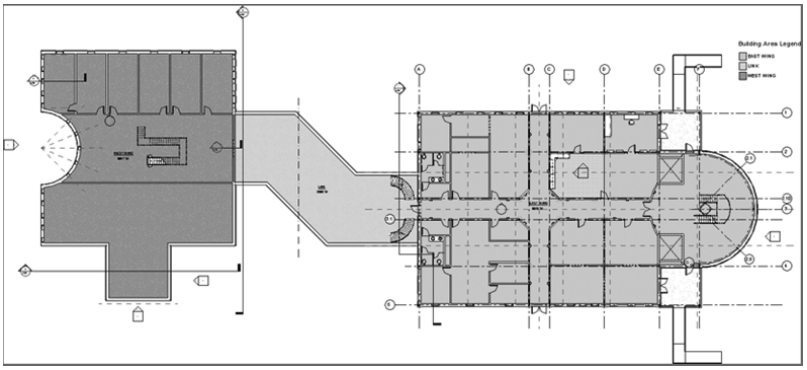


FIGURE 14.28: Adding an area legend

26. Save the model.

Great job! You now have experience with creating area plans. If you feel as though you could use some more practice before you begin a real project, there are five more floors in this model that you can work on. You can either work on your own or step back through this chapter's procedures.

Are You Experienced?

Now you can...

- ✔ **add rooms to the model**
- ✔ **add room separators to the model**
- ✔ **create color-scheme plans**
- ✔ **create area plans**
- ✔ **create room schedules**
- ✔ **update the rooms in the model directly from a room schedule**

INDEX

Index

Note to the Reader: Throughout this index **boldfaced** page numbers indicate primary discussions of a topic. *Italicized* page numbers indicate illustrations.

A

abbreviations
  commands, 35
  metric, 14
accuracy of temporary dimensions, **75–76**, *76*
activating views, 620, *620*
ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act) compliance, 472–474, *473–474*, 481–482
Add Parameter(s) To Label button, 634, *634*
Add Point button, 311, *312*, 314, 316
Add Split Line button, 311, 313
Add To Quick Access Toolbar option, 6, *6*
Align tool
  locking alignments, **193–194**, *193–194*
  overview, **188–193**
aligned dimensions
  angles, **220–222**, *221*
  overriding precision, **223–225**, *223–225*
  overview, **214–216**, *214–216*
  picking points for, **217–219**, *217–220*
  witness lines, **222–223**, *222*
Aligned To Selected Levels option, 206
  landings, 488
  railings, 485, *485*
  windows, 210
alignment
  floor plans, 210, *211*
  locking, **193–194**, *193–194*
  objects, **188–193**, *189–192*
  railing ends, 476, *476–477*
  textual notations, 571
  winding staircases, 488
alternate floor materials
  separating, **457–459**, *458*
  splitting, **283–286**, *283–285*
  tile, **459–461**, *459–461*
Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliance, 472–474, *473–474*, 481–482
Analyze tab, 655
angle objects, **557–558**, *558–559*
angles
  aligned dimensions, 214, **220–222**, *221*
  arrays, 178, *178*
  ceiling grids, 412, *413*
  grids, 358–359
  rotation, 175
  walls, 72, *73*, **75**
Angular Dimension Snap Increments option, 75
angular dimensions, **227–228**, *227–228*

Annotate tab
alignment, 234, *234*, 240, 242
arc length, 231
color fill, 662
Detail Component option, 532, 554, 557
detail groups, 583
detail lines
doors, 487–488, *487*
line size, 566, *566*
offsets, 573
roofs, 312, 314
trim, 577
diameters, 229, *230*
dimensions
aligned, 214, *214*, 217, 242
linear, 225
radial, 229
insulation, 585, *585*
lag bolts, 559
leader text, 250
leader type, *250*, 251
masking regions, 534, *534*
match lines, 607
repeating details, 536, *537*, 538, 540
revision clouds, 626, 628
text, 247, *248*
textual notations, 570
wall ties, 560
Annotation Objects tab, 606, *606*
annotations. *See also* text
callouts, 145
crop regions, **601–603**, *602–603*
elevations, **161–163**, *162*
match lines, 606, *606*
placing, **247–250**, *248–249*
appearance
levels, 111
match lines, **605–606**, *606–607*
Appears In Sheet List option, 636, *637*
Application icon, 3
Apply View Template dialog, 609, *609*
arc length dimensions, **230–232**, *231–232*
Architectural Template option, 3
Architecture tab
area plans, 659
ceilings, 408, 419
columns, 368, 370
components
bathrooms, 438
light fixtures, 432, *432*
openings, 98–99, *98*
doors
adding, 90, *90*
alignment, 192
hosted families, 39
openings, 98–99
families, 95
floors, 256, *256*, 266, 501
grids, 354, 358–359, 363
landings, 512
levels, 108, *108*, 296
line drawing, 357
Model Line option, 592
railings, 480, 498, 525
raised panels, 517–518
ramps, 520–521
reference planes, 47, *47*

adding, 171
linear arrays, 180
roofs, 340
stairs, 473
walls, 71–72
Ribbon, 4, *4*
roof extrusions, 341, *341*
roofs, 304, *305*, 321
room separators, 658, *658*
rooms, 642–643
Set option, 591, *591*
shafts, 298, *298*
soffits, 426
stairs, 465, *466*
custom, 507
reference planes, 473
winding, 493
walls, 7
interior, 58, 71–72
reference planes, 340
windows, 100, *100*, 181, 189
arcs
filled regions, 556
interior partitions, 67, *67*
landings, 468–469, *468*
mortar joints, 546
railings, 483, *483*
roof extrusions, 343, *344*
roofs, 592–593, *592*
winding staircases, **488–492**, *488–491*, 494
Area Boundary button, 659, *659*
area plans, **659–662**, *659–662*
arrays
linear, **180–185**, *180–184*
radial, **175–180**, *176–179*
winding staircase lines, **491–492**, *491*
arrows
flip, **267**, *267*
leaders, 251, *252*
slope, 334–335, *334–335*
At Grid Intersection tab, 374
attaching walls to roofs
extrusions, 345, *345–346*
pitched, **328**, *329*
sloping, 337–338, *337*
Auto Dimension Options dialog, 215–216, *215*
AutoCAD, files from, **589–590**
Automatic Beam System button, 381, *381*

B

background
filled regions, 545, *545*
sheets, 13
Baluster Per Tread setting, 505
balusters
placing, 475, *475*
railing systems, 505–506, *505*
base units, 452–454, *453–454*
bathroom plumbing fixtures, **435–442**, *436–442*
beam systems, **380–383**, *381–382*
BIM (Building Information Modeling)
benefits, 21
drafting, 490
file types, **36–37**
fully integrated models, 31
levels, 106
overview, 1

blank drafting views
2D and 3D lines, **590–593**, *591–592*
creating, **572–581**, *573–580*
detail groups, **581–586**, *582–586*
importing AutoCAD files into, **589–590**
sections for views, **587–588**, *588*
blocking
detail lines, 567–568, *568*
filled regions, **562–564**, *563*
bolts, 559, *560*
borders
crop regions, 139
plan regions, 418
boundaries
ceilings, 423–425, *424*
filled regions, 543, *543*
Rise/Run function, **467–468**, *467–468*
structures, 260
boxes, selection, **18**, *18*
bracing, **383–387**, *384–387*
break lines, 532–535, *533*, *535*
Bring To Front button, 535, *535*, 540
Browser Organization dialog, 405, *405*
bubbles
black, 111
callouts, 144
columns, 355, *355–356*
displaying, 117, *118*
elevations, 158
grids, 355–362, *356*, *360*, *362*, 366, 436
hiding, 117
levels, 107–108
roofs, 114
sections, 129, 623
walls, 363–364, *364*
Building Information Modeling (BIM)
benefits, 21
drafting, 490
file types, **36–37**
fully integrated models, 31
levels, 106
overview, 1
building sections, **121**
adding, **122–129**, *122–129*
modifications, **129–134**, *130–135*

C

cabinets, **450–457**, *453–455*
CAD, files from, **589–590**
callouts
creating, **143–148**, *143–148*
lavatories, **147–148**, *147–148*
cameras and camera views, **149**
adding, **149–151**, *149–150*
modifications, **151–152**, *151–152*
Cancel Edit Mode option, 195
casework, **447–457**, *447–457*
ceilings, **407**
creating, **407–410**, *408–410*
custom, **419–422**, *419–422*
in empty spaces, **423**, *423*
grids, **412–413**, *412–413*
light fixtures, **431–434**, *432–435*
lighting, 443, *443*
openings, **423–425**, *424–425*
plan regions, **417–419**, *417–418*

properties, **414–417**, *414–416*
soffits, **426–430**, *426–430*
summary, **462**
centerlines
beam, 380
doors, 194
dotted, 170
in mirroring, 95
offsets, 57, *57*
walls, 235, 277, *277*
windows, 190, 231
Chain option, 12, 50
chairs, adding, 448, *448*
Choose Space Type and Color Scheme dialog, 656, *656*, 662
Clean All Wall Joins option, 83
Clean Same Type Wall Joins option, 83
cleaning up floor slab sketches, **269–271**, *269–270*
clipboard
Copy/Paste tool, **205–208**, *206–207*
doors, 488
floors, 279, *279*
railings, 484–485, *484*
Close Hidden Windows option, 34
closing
hidden windows, 34
views, 34, *34*
clouds, revision, **625–628**, *626–628*
Coarse detail level, 25
color
filled regions, 548, *548*
schemes, 656–657, *656–657*
Color dialog, 548, *548*
Color Fill Legend button, 655, *656*
Color Fill Legends tab, 657, 662
color-fill plans, **655–657**, *656–657*
columns
adding, **368–375**, *368–375*
framing, **376–380**, *376–380*
grids, 354–355, *354–355*, 359, *360*
piers, **400–402**, *400–402*
commands, typing, **35**, *35*
Constrain option
copying, 169
moves, 167
constraints
dimensions for, **237–241**, *238–241*
levels, 115, *116*, 121
Copy command, **169–171**, *169–170*
Copy/Paste Aligned feature, 279, *279*
Copy/Paste tool, **205–208**, *206–207*
Copy To Clipboard button, 279, *279*
copying
floor layers, 279, *279*
in floor plans, 210, *211*
light fixtures, 433–434, *433*, *435*
with offset, **203–204**, *204–205*
with rotating, 175
walls, **169–171**, *169–170*
corridors
callouts, 143–145, *143–145*
camera views, 149, *150*
dimensions, 227–228, *227–228*
doors, 96, *98*
elevations, 153

grids, 359–361, *360–361*
lighting, 445–446, *446*
linear dimensions, 225–226, *226*
roof. *See* pitched roofs
walls, **68–69**, *68–69*, **71–72**, *73–74*
countertops, 450–451, *451*
cover sheets, **631–636**, *631–637*
Create Boundary tab, 286, 459
Create Detail Group dialog, 581
Create Extrusion Roof Profile tab, 343
Create Floor Boundary tab
Finish Edit Mode option, 278, 398
pick lines, 266
Pick Walls option, 270
slabs, 266
Create Ramp tab, 524
Create Revision Cloud Sketch tab, 626
Create Roof Footprint tab
Finish Edit Mode option, 327
perimeters, 304–306
trimming, 323
Create Shaft Opening Sketch tab, 298–299
Create Similar option, 21, *22*
Create Stair tab, 465, *466*, 471
Create tab
families, 551
filled regions, 547, *547*
groups, 581, *582*
labels, 633, *633*
lines, 546, 556
Create View Template From View option, 609
credenzas, *447*, 448
crop regions
callouts, 144–147, *145–146*
dependent views, **598–602**, *599–603*
detail sections, **139–140**, *139–140*
hiding, 621
stretching, 620–621, *620*
crossing windows, **18**, *18*
Ctrl key for unselecting items, 65
custom ceilings, **419–422**, *419–422*
custom stairs
creating, **507–511**, *507*, *509–511*
goosenecks, **513–520**, *514–520*
landings, **512**, *512–513*
cut profiles, **87–89**, *87–89*

D

Datum panel
grids, 354, *354*, 356
levels, 108, *108*
deactivating views, 621
Default 3D View button, 115, *115*
DefaultMetric.rte file, 3
Delete Inner Segment option, 77, *78*
dependent views
creating, **597–598**, *598*
crop regions, **598–603**, *599–603*
desks, *447*, 448
detail groups, **581–586**, *582–586*
Detail Groups tab, 585
Detail Items tab, 535–536, *535*, 562
Detail Level control, **25**, *25*

detail sections
creating, **138–139**, *138*
crop regions, **139–140**, *139–140*
splitting section segments, **140–143**, *141–142*
detailing, **529**
blank drafting views
2D and 3D lines, **590–593**, *591–592*
creating, **572–581**, *573–580*
detail groups, **581–586**, *582–586*
importing AutoCAD files into, **589–590**
sections for views, **587–588**, *588*
drafting on top of, **532**
components, **541–542**, *541*
detail lines, **566–568**, *566–568*
filled regions. *See* filled regions
masking regions, **534–536**, *534–536*
predefined detail components, **532**, *533*
repeating details, **536–541**, *537–541*
line weights, **529–531**, *530–531*
notes, **570–572**, *571–572*
summary, **593**
Dimension Text dialog, 245–246, *245–246*
dimensions, **213–214**
aligned
angles, **220–222**, *221*
overriding precision, **223–225**, *223–225*
overview, **214–216**, *214–216*
picking points for, **217–219**, *217–220*
witness lines, **222–223**, *222*
angular, **227–228**, *227–228*
arc length, **230–232**, *231–232*
as layout tool, **232–237**, *233–237*
constraining models, **237–241**, *238–241*
moving objects, **241–244**, *242–244*
text overrides, **244–246**, *245–247*
linear, **225–227**, *226*
locking, **240–241**, *240–241*
radial, **228–230**, *229–230*
stairs, 509, *509*
summary, **254**
temporary. *See* temporary dimensions
disallowing wall joins, **84–89**, *85–89*
Disjoin option, 167
doors, **90**
adding, **90–94**, *90–94*
alignments, **193–194**, *193–194*
corridor, 96, *98*
families, **95–96**, *95–97*
inserting, 39
lavatory, 96, *97*
tags, 90, **95**
wall openings, **98–99**, *98–99*
winding staircase, 487–488
wrapping materials, **92**, *92*
dormers, **347–352**, *348–351*
drafting on top of detail, **532**
components, **541–542**, *541*
detail lines, **566–568**, *566–568*
filled regions. *See* filled regions
masking regions, **534–536**, *534–536*
predefined detail components, **532**, *533*
repeating details, **536–541**, *537–541*

drafting views
2D and 3D lines, **590–593**, *591–592*
creating, **572–581**, *573–580*
detail groups, **581–586**, *582–586*
importing AutoCAD files into, **589–590**
sections for views, **587–588**, *588*
drains
flat roofs, **310–311**
pitching floors to, **291–294**, *291–295*
Draw panel for sketch options, 12
Draw tab for lines, 658
drawing detail lines, **566–568**, *566–568*
Duplicate button, 10
duplicate views, **595–597**, *596*

E

Edit Assembly dialog
floors
layers, 273–276, *274*, *276*
materials, 284
slabs, 260–261, *260*
roofs
extrusions, 343, *343*
flat, 308, *308–309*, 310
pitched, 320, *320*
Edit Baluster Placement dialog, 475, *476*, 505, *505*
Edit Boundary tab, 282
Edit Color Scheme dialog, 657
edit commands, **166**
Copy, **169–171**, *169–170*
Move, **166–168**, *167–168*
Rotate, **171–175**, *171–175*
Edit Footprint tab, 324, 348
Edit Group toolbar, 586, *586*
Edit Label dialog
rooms, 652, *652*
tags, 634, *634*
Edit Profile tab
Finish Edit Mode option, 133, 198, *199*
pick lines, 197
splitting elements, 195, *195*
walls, 130
Edit Type button, 10, *11*, 92, *92*, 98
Edit Wall Joins command, 79
elbows for grids, **361–362**, *362*
elements, splitting, **194–198**, *195–199*
elevations
annotation properties, **161–163**, *162*
creating, **152–156**, *153–155*
interior, **156–159**, *156–159*
kitchen items, 452–454, *453*
Project Browser, 32–33, *33*
properties, **159–161**, *160–161*
roof extrusions, 339, *340*
elevator shafts
footing slabs, **396–398**, *397*, *399*
laying out, **58–60**, *59*
mirroring, 64–65, *65*
openings, **296–300**, *296–301*
empty spaces, ceilings in, **423**, *423*
"Ends of the sketched loop don't lie on the boundary of the face being modified" option, 89
entertainment center, 448

EQ button
aligned dimensions, 219, *219*
constraining objects, 238
wall dimensions, 237, *237*
existing geometry, building on, **21–24**, *22–24*
Extend Into Wall core option, 265
extending railings, **474–479**, *474–479*
Exterior - Brick And CMU On MTL. Stud option, 7, *8*, 14
exterior walls, **45–46**, *46*
extrusions, roofs, **338–347**, *339–347*

F

façade anchoring, **557**, *558*
families
doors, **95–96**, *95–97*
hosted, **38–40**, *39–41*
loading, **95–96**, *95–97*
Revit family files, **42–43**, *42*
Revit template files, **41–42**, *42*
stairs and railings, **501–502**, *501–502*
system, **37–38**
feet, 169
fields in schedules, 653, *653*
Fields tab, 653, *653*
File Save Options dialog, settings, 36, *37*
file types. *See* families
files
printing to, 637
saving, **36–37**, *36–37*
template, **41–42**, *42*
Fill Patterns dialog, 548, *548*
filled regions
angle object, **557–558**, *558–559*
blank drafting views, 579–580, *579*
blocking, **562–564**, *563*
façade anchoring, **557**, *558*
mortar joints, **546**, *547*
overview, **542–546**, *542–546*
repeated detail, **554–556**, *555–557*
shading, **547–552**, *547–553*
wall ties, **560–562**, *561–562*
fillers for base cabinets, 454–455, *455*
Filter dialog, 284, *284*
filters for floor materials, 284, *284*
Fine detail level, 25
Finish Edit Mode button
command completion, 89, *89*
warning, 200
Finish Face: Exterior option, 12, *12*
Fit To Page button, 639
fixtures
light, **431–434**, *432–435*
plumbing, **435–442**, *436–442*
flat roofs
creating, **307–310**, *308–309*
drains, **310–311**
overview, **304–307**, *305–306*
tapering, **310–319**, *311–319*
flip arrows, **267**, *267*
flip grips, 123–124, *124*
floor plans, **208–212**, *209–211*
floors, **255**
floor slabs, **255–256**
corridor, **266–268**, *266–268*
creating, **256–261**, *256–261*

picking walls, **262–264**, *262–265*
trimming, **269–271**, *269–270*
layers, **271**
adding, **273–282**, *274–282*
materials, **272–273**, *272*
materials
alternate, **457–461**, *457–461*
splitting, **283–291**, *283–290*
pitching to drains, **291–294**, *291–295*
separating, **457–459**, *458*
shaft openings, **296–300**, *296–301*
summary, **302**
fonts, 253
footings
adding, **393–396**, *394–395*
piers, **400–402**, *400–402*
structural slabs, **396–400**, *396–399*
footprints
flat roofs
creating, **307–310**, *308–309*
drains, **310–311**
overview, **304–307**, *305–306*
tapering, **310–319**, *311–319*
pitched roofs. *See* pitched roofs
formatting aligned dimensions, 224, *225*
foundation systems, **387–393**, *388–393*
fractions, 169
framing
beam systems, **380–383**, *381–382*
bracing, **383–387**, *384–387*
working with, **376–380**, *376–380*
furniture
kitchen, **450–457**, *451–457*
office, **447–449**, *447–448*
perspective view, **449**, *449–450*

G

gable ends, **322**, *323*
gaps
sections, 124, *125*
with splits, 197–198
walls, 54, 69
Gaps in Segments button, 124
Generic Models tab, 478
ghosted objects, 415
Go To Primary View option, 599
goosenecks for stairs, **513–520**, *514–520*
grab bars, 439, *440*
Graphic Display Options dialog, 446, *446*
Graphics tab
floor slabs, 260, *261*
materials, 428, *429*
patterns, 564
grids, **353–354**
ceilings, **412–413**, *412–413*
columns, 372–374, *373–374*
elbows, **361–362**, *362*
placing, **354–361**, *354–361*
radial, **366–368**, *367*
vertical, **363–366**, *363–366*
visibility, 378
grips
aligned dimensions, 220–221
building sections, 123–124, *125*, 132, *133*
callouts, 144, *144–145*
crop regions, 139, *139*

elbows, 361, *362*
elevations, 155, *157*
flip, 123–124, *124*
leader text, 244, *244*
levels, 107–108, *107*, 113, *113*, 118, *119*
match lines, 608
reference planes, 48, *48*
sheets, 613
stretch lines, 198, *199*
temporary dimensions, 70
text, 250, 253
views, 601, *601*
witness lines, 222–223, *222*
groups, detail, **581–586**, *582–586*
guide grids for sheets, 613, *613*

H

height of columns, 370, *370*
hidden windows, closing, 34
Hide Bubble option, 117
Hide Crop Region option, 621
Hide Unreferenced View Tags option, 639
hiding crop regions, 621
hosted families, **38–40**, *39–41*, 90, *91*

I

Import dialog, 589
importing AutoCAD files into drafting views, **589–590**
inches, 169
Insert tab
blocking, 560
CAD files, 589
casework, 447, 450
families, 437
fixtures, 436
lighting, 443
plumbing, 440
railings, 503
rod family, 383
sconces, 445
wall ties, 561
instances, Ribbon, **9**, *10*
insulation, 308, 310, 585–586, *586*
interface, **2–3**, *3–4*
existing geometry, **21–24**, *22–24*
modifying and mirroring, **19–21**, *19–21*
object selection, **17–18**, *17–18*
Ribbon. *See* Ribbon
summary, **43**
view control and object display, **24–31**, *24–31*
view window, **13–17**, *14–16*
workflow, **4–5**, *4–5*
interior design, **435**
alternate floor materials, **457–461**, *457–461*
casework and furniture
kitchen, **450–457**, *451–457*
office, **447–449**, *447–448*
perspective view, **449**, *449–450*
parabolic troffers, **443–447**, *443–446*
plumbing fixtures, **435–442**, *436–442*
summary, **462**
interior elevations, **156–159**, *156–159*
interior partitions, **66–68**, *66–69*

interior walls
adding, **58–60**, *59*
temporary dimensions. *See* temporary dimensions
intersections
columns at, 374, *375*
wall joins, 80–82, *81–82*
Invalid Dimension Value message, 245, *245*

J

jogs, **140–143**, *141–142*
joins, wall
disallowing, **84–89**, *85–89*
displaying, **82–83**, *83–84*
editing, **79–82**, *79–82*
joints, mortar, **546**, *547*
justification, walls, 12

K

keyboard shortcuts, 35, *35*

L

labels, sheets, 634, *634*
lag bolts, 559, *560*
landings
boundaries, 467–468, *468*
custom, **512**, *512–513*
railings, **479–483**, *480–482*, **515–516**, *516*
winding staircases, **486–487**, *487*, 498–501, *498–501*
lavatories
adding, **70**, *70–71*
callouts, **147–148**, *147–148*
doors, 96, *97*
pitching floors to drains, **291–294**, *291–295*
plumbing fixtures, **435–442**, *436–442*
layers for floors, **271**
adding, **273–282**, *274–282*
materials, **272–273**, *272*
layout tool, dimensions as, **232–237**, *233–237*
constraining models, **237–241**, *238–241*
moving objects, **241–244**, *242–244*
text overrides, **244–246**, *245–247*
leaders
text, 244, *244*, **250–251**, *250*
textual notations, 571, *571*
type, **251**, *251–252*
legends, area, 662, *662*
Length Dimension Snap Increment option, 75
levels
adding, **108–110**, *108–110*
adjustments, **114–122**, *114–122*
composition, **110–114**, *111–114*
constraints, 115, *116*, 121
creating, **105–108**, *107–108*
names, 111, *112*
in pasting, 206, *207*
stairs, 466–467
lighting
ceiling fixtures, **431–434**, *432–435*
ceilings, 443, *443*
corridors, 445–446, *446*
Line Styles dialog, 569, *569*

line weights
detail lines, **568–569**, *569*
working with, **529–531**, *530–531*
Line Weights dialog, 570, *570*
linear arrays, **180–185**, *180–184*
linear dimensions, **225–227**, *226*
lines
2D and 3D, **590–593**, *591–592*
blank drafting views, 574, *574*, 577–579
detail, **566–568**, *566–568*
drains, 292–294, *292–293*
filled regions, 543–544
masking regions, 534–535, *534*
match
adding, **604**, *604–605*
appearance, **605–606**, *606–607*
dependent views, 597
summary, **610**
radial grid, **366–368**, *367*
shaft openings, 298–299, *298*
sketch, 263
thin, **28–29**, *28*, 568, 578
winding staircases, 491–493, *491*
witness
aligned dimensions, **222–223**, *222*
doors, 94, *94*
temporary dimensions, 60, *60*, 70
Load Family dialog, hosted families, 39
loading families, **95–96**, *95–97*
Location Line menu, 12
locking
alignments, **193–194**, *193–194*
dimensions, **240–241**, *240–241*
orientation, 31, *31*

M

Make Plan View option, 109
Make Wall Bearing button, 379
Manage tab
details, 565
elevations, 161
line styles, 569
match lines, 605
object styles, 530, *530*
project information, 629, *629*
project standards, 411
snaps, 75
temporary dimensions, 61, *62*, 93
tile material, 459, *459*
masking regions, **534–536**, *534–536*
match lines
adding, **604**, *604–605*
appearance, **605–606**, *606–607*
dependent views, 597
summary, **610**
Material Browser
ceilings, 420–421, *420*
floors
layers, 275, *275*
painting, 289, *290*
slabs, 260–261, *261*
plywood, 564–565, *564*
soffits, 428, *429*
materials
ceilings, 419–422, *420*
floors, **272–273**, *272*
alternate, **457–461**, *457–461*
splitting, **283–291**, *283–290*

goosenecks, 515
soffits, 428, *429*
tile, **459–461**, *459–461*
wrapping by doors, **92**, *92*
Maximize 3D Extents option, 128, *128*
Measure Between Two References button, 71
Measure panel, 58, *58*
Medium detail level, 25
medium lines
blank drafting views, 574
detail, 566, *566*, 568
memory for shadows, 30, *30*
men's lavatory, plumbing fixtures for, **435–442**, *436–442*
metric abbreviations, 14
midpoints for walls, 19
Mirror command, **185–187**, *186–188*
Mirror-Draw Axis button, 19, *19*
Mirror Pick Axis button, 75
mirroring
interface for, **19–21**, *19–21*
objects, **185–187**, *186–188*
stairs, **497**, *498*
walls, **75**, *75*
mitered joins
pitched roofs, **327–328**, *328*
walls, 82, *82*
model creation, **45**
doors, **90**
adding, **90–94**, *90–94*
wall openings, **98–99**, *98–99*
interior walls
adding, **58–60**, *59*
temporary dimensions. *See* temporary dimensions
reference planes
walls, **49–57**, *49–57*
working with, **46–48**, *47–48*
summary, **104**
wall joins
disallowing, **84–89**, *85–89*
displaying, **82–83**, *83–84*
editing, **79–82**, *79–82*
wall placement, **45–46**, *46*
windows, **100–103**, *100–103*
Modify Lighting Fixtures tab, 433
Modify-Place Component tab, 518
Modify Sub Elements button, 314, *314*, 316
Modify tab
aligning to levels, 279, *280*
beams, 380
cabinet alignment, 456
extensions, 202
foundation splitting, 393
Join Geometry option, 392, *392*
light fixtures, 444
measurements, 58, *58*
offsets, 203, *204*
Paint option, 460, *460*
rotation, 172
Split Face option, 286, *286*, 457, *458*
splitting elements, 77, *77*
trimming, 200, *201*, 575
wall joins, 81, *81*, 328
wall-roof joins, 345, *346*
modifying, interface for, **19–21**, *19–21*
mortar joints, **546**, *547*

mouse, 23
Move command, **166–168**, *167–168*
Move To: Last option, 177
Move To: Second option, 177
moving
  ceiling grids, **412–413**, *412–413*
  dimensions for, **241–244**, *242–244*
  walls, **166–168**, *167–168*
Multi-Select tab
  copying, 206
  filters, 284
  groups, 581
  mirroring, 497
  pasting, 206

N

Name dialog
  aligned dimensions, 224
  view templates, 609
  wall openings, 99
names
  aligned dimensions, 224
  bubbles, 364
  building sections, 127, *127*
  levels, 111, *112*
  printers, 637
  rooms, 644, *645*
  sheets, 614, *615*, 631, *632*
  view templates, 609
  wall openings, 99
Navigation bar, **26–28**, *26*
New Area Plan dialog, 660
New Drafting View dialog, 573, *573*
New Family - Select Template File dialog, 42, *42*
New Project dialog, 3, *4*
  project standards, 411
  templates, 42, *42*
New Schedule dialog, 653
New Sheet dialog, 612–613, 635, *636*
notches, 197, *197*
notes, **570–572**, *571–572*
numbering
  doors, **95**
  rooms, 644, 646

O

Object Styles dialog
  details, 565, *565*
  line weights, 530–531, *530*
  match lines, 606, *606*
objects
  aligning, **188–193**, *189–192*
  displaying, **24–31**, *24–31*
  ghosted, 415
  mirroring, **185–187**, *186–188*
  moving with dimensions, **241–244**, *242–244*
  selecting, **17–18**, *17–18*
  trimming, **200–202**, *201–203*
Offset command, **203–204**, *204–205*
offsets
  lines, 577, *577–578*
  walls, 53, *53*, **203–204**, *204–205*
opening windows, 34
openings
  ceilings, **423–425**, *424–425*

doors, **98–99**, *98–99*
shafts, **296–300**, *296–301*
Options bar, **12**, *12*
aligned dimensions, 214–216, *215*
arrays, 176, *176*
blank drafting views, 574–575
columns, 370, *370*
detail lines, 566
sections, 587
orientation
locking, 31, *31*
rotating, **171–175**, *171–175*
origins
detail groups, 581, *582*
elevation, 33
rotating, 173, *173*
overhangs, 322, 341, *342*
overrides
precision, **223–225**, *223–225*
text, **244–246**, *245–247*

P

painting floor materials, **286–291**, *286–290*, 460, *460*
panning, 27
paper, 639
parabolic troffers, **443–447**, *443–446*
parameters
Ribbon, **9**
sheets, **629–631**, *629*
partitions, **66–68**, *66–69*
pasting, **205–208**, *206–207*
performance, shadows, 30
perspective view for winding staircase, **495–496**, *497*
Pick Axis button, 64, *64*
Pick Lines
blank drafting views, 574, *575*
offsets, 53, *53*
Pick Lines button, 52, *53*
picking points
aligned dimensions, **217–219**, *217–220*
grids, 357–358, *357–358*
piers, **400–402**, *400–402*
pilasters, **400–402**, *400–402*
pitched roofs, **319–321**, *320–321*
adding to corridor, **321–322**, *322*
attaching to walls, **328**, *329*
gable ends, **322**, *323*
joining, **324–327**, *324–327*
mitered joins, **327–328**, *328*
plan regions, **330–332**, *330–332*
trimming, **323–324**
pitching floors to drains, **291–294**, *291–295*
pivot points for arrays, 177, *177*
Place Door tab, 39, 92, 95, *95*
Place Grid tab, 354
Place Level tab, 108, *109*
Place Text tab, 571
Place Wall tab, 22
Plan Region tab, 430
plan regions
ceilings, **417–419**, *417–418*
pitched roofs in, **330–332**, *330–332*

plans
area, **659–662**, *659–662*
color-fill, **655–657**, *656–657*
floor, **208–212**, *209–211*
plumbing fixtures, **435–442**, *436–442*
plywood settings, 564–565, *564*
points
aligned dimensions, **217–219**, *217–220*
blank drafting views, 575, *575*
grids, 357–358, *357–358*
ramps, 523, *524*
repeating details, 537–539, *537*
populating sheets, **611–614**, *612–614*
precision, overriding, **223–225**, *223–225*
predefined detail components, **532**, *533*
preview window, 310, *310*
previewing
files, 37
pitched roofs, 320, *320*
roof systems, 310, *310*
Print dialog, 637–638, *638*
printing, **637–639**, *638*
profiles
stairs, **467–468**
walls
cuts, **87–89**, *87–89*
roof attachments, **337–338**, *337*
sections, **130–134**, *130–135*
split elements, **194–198**, *195–199*
Project Browser
building sections, 126–127, *126*
elevations, 155
groups, 587, *587*
levels, 106, *106*
overview, **31–33**, *32–33*
plans, 208
railing systems, 503–506, *503–504*
sheets, 612, *612*, 614–616, *615*
views, 404–405, *404*
windows, **33–35**, *34–35*
project parameters on sheets, **629–631**, *629*
Project Properties dialog, 630
projects, standards, transferring, **411**, *411*
Propagate Extents button, 378
properties and Properties dialog
AutoCAD files, 589
blank drafting views, 573, 577, 579–581
ceilings, 408, *409*, **414–417**, *414–416*
columns, 371
crop regions, 603, *603*
detail sections, 138–139
detailing, 532
dimensions
aligned, 223–224
locking, 240
dormers, 349
elevations, **159–161**, *160–161*
families, 39, *40*
filled regions, 547, 553
floors
materials, 272, 284
slabs, 256, *257*
footing slabs, 398
footings, 394, *395*
foundation systems, 388, *388*
framing, 376, *376*

landings, 512, *513*
levels, 116, *116*, 121
match lines, 604
overview, **7–9**, *8–9*
piers, 402
plan regions, 331, *331*, 418
plans, 209, *209*
ramps, 520, 522, *523*, 525
repeating details, 537, 540
Ribbon interface, **7**, *7*
roofs
  extrusions, 338–339, 341, 343–344, *344*
  flat, 304, *305*, 307, 310
  pitched, 319
  sloping, 335–336, *335–336*
rooms, **646–651**, *647–650*
shaft openings, 297–299, *298*, *300*
sheets, 613, 618, 634, 636, *637*
soffits, 430
stairs, 465, *466*
  custom, 507–508, *507*
  goosenecks, 513
  railings, 473
  winding, 491, 493
text, **253–254**, *254*
troffers, 445
viewports, **624–625**, *625*
views, 404, *404*
walls, 14, 92, *92*
  constraints, 134, *134*
  openings, 98–99
  sections, 135, *136*
windows, **102–104**, *102–103*

Q

Quick Access toolbar, **6**, *6*

R

radial arrays, **175–180**, *176–179*
radial dimensions, **228–230**, *229–230*
radial grid lines, **366–368**, *367*
radial wall elevations, 155
Railing dialog, 471, *471*
Railing Type dialog, 524
railings
  configuring, **470–474**, *470–474*
  extending, **474–479**, *474–479*
  families, **501–502**, *501–502*
  goosenecks, **513–520**, *514–520*
  landings, **479–483**, *480–482*, **515–516**, *516*
  raised-panel stiles, **517–520**, *517–520*
  systems, **502–507**, *503–506*
  winding staircases, **498–501**, *498–501*
raised-panel stiles, **517–520**, *517–520*
RAM for shadows, 30, *30*
ramps, adding, **520–526**, *521–526*
ranges
  print, 637
  view. *See* view range and View Range dialog
Recent Files window, 3, *3*
Ref Plane button, 47, *47*
reference planes
  alignment, 189–190, *191*
  arrays
    linear, 180–181, *180–181*
    radial, 176–179, *176*, *179*

railings, 473–474, *473*
roofs
extrusions, 340–341, *340*, *342*
flat, 312, *313*
rotating, **171–173**, *172*
walls
adding, **49–54**, *49–54*
trimming, **54–57**, *54–57*
working with, **46–48**, *47–48*
references for match lines, **606–608**, *608*
regions
crop
callouts, 144–147, *145–146*
dependent views, **598–601**, *599–600*, *602–603*
detail sections, **139–140**, *139–140*
stretching, 620–621, *620*
filled. *See* filled regions
masking, **534–536**, *534–536*
plan
ceilings, **417–419**, *417–418*
pitched roofs in, **330–332**, *330–332*
renaming
building sections, 127, *127*
levels, 111, *112*
rooms, 644, *645*
sheets, 614, *615*
repeating details
adding, **536–541**, *537–541*
filled regions, **554–556**, *555–557*
Reset Shape tool, 296
Revision Cloud button, 626
revision clouds, **625–628**, *626–628*
revisions of sheets, **625–628**, *626–628*
Rewind option, 27
.rfa families, **38–40**, *39–41*
.rft files, **42–43**, *42*
Ribbon
instance properties, **9**, *10*
Options bar, **12**, *12*
overview, **4–5**, *4*
Properties dialog interface, **7–9**, *7–9*
type properties, **10–12**, *11–13*
working with, **5–6**, *6*
ridges for flat roofs, **311–312**, *313*
Rise/Run function
boundaries, **467–468**, *467–468*
overview, **463–467**, *464–466*
railings. *See* railings
rods, bracing, **383–387**, *384–387*
roofs, **303**
arcs, 592–593, *592*
dormers, **347–352**, *348–351*
extrusions, **338–347**, *339–347*
flat
creating, **307–310**, *308–309*
drains, **310–311**
overview, **304–307**, *305–306*
tapering, **310–319**, *311–319*
levels, 114, *114*
pitched. *See* pitched roofs
sloping
creating, **332–333**, *333–334*
slope, **334–336**, *335*
view range, **336–337**, *336–337*
walls, **337–338**, *337*
summary, **352**
transparent, 414–415

Room & Area panel, 644–645
room-bounding properties, **650–651**, *650*
rooms, **641**
  color-fill plans, **655–657**, *656–657*
  creating, **641–646**, *642–646*
  names, 644, *645*
  properties, **646–651**, *647–650*
  schedules, **652–655**, *653–654*
  separators, **657–659**, *658–659*
  summary, **663**
  tags, 644, **651–652**, *651–652*
  unwanted, **655**
Rotate command, **171–175**, *171–175*
rotating
  ceiling grids, 412, *413*
  light fixtures, 434, *435*
  match lines, 607
  orientation, **171–175**, *171–175*
Rounding menu, 224, *225*
.rte files, **41–42**, *42*
.rvt files, 37

S

Save As dialog, 36, *36*
saving
  files, **36–37**, *36–37*
  reminders, 630, *630*
scale, changing, 24, *25*
Scale tool, 24, *25*
Schedule Properties dialog, 653–654, *653*
schedules
  fields, 653, *653*
  rooms, **652–655**, *653–654*
  sheets, 631–632, *631*
  sorting, 654
schemes, color, 656–657, *656–657*
sconces, corridors, 445–446, *445*
Section command, 122, *122*
sections
  building, **121**
    adding, **122–129**, *122–129*
    modifications, **129–134**, *130–135*
  detail
    creating, **138–139**, *138*
    crop regions, **139–140**, *139–140*
    splitting section segments, **140–143**, *141–142*
  segment splitting, **140–143**, *141–142*
  for views, **587–588**, *588*
  walls, **135–137**, *136–137*
Select Items To Copy dialog, 411, *411*
Select Levels dialog
  floor layers, 281
  in pasting, 206, *207*
Selected Views/Sheets option, 637
selecting objects, **17–18**, *17–18*
semi-transparent objects, 415
Send To Back button, 550, *551*
separating floors, **457–459**, *458*
separators, rooms, **657–659**, *658–659*
shading filled regions, **547–552**, *547–553*
shadows, 30
shafts, elevator
  footing slabs, **396–398**, *397*, *399*
  laying out, **58–60**, *59*
  mirroring, 64–65, *65*
  openings, **296–300**, *296–301*

Sheet Issues/Revisions dialog, 627–628, *627*
Sheet List Properties dialog, 631, *631*
sheets, **611**
  cover, **631–636**, *631–637*
  creating and populating, **611–614**, *612–614*
  names, 614, *615*, 631, *632*
  organization, **614–619**, *615–618*
  project parameters, **629–631**, *629*
  revisions, **625–628**, *626–628*
  summary, **640**
  viewports
    modifying, **619–624**, *619–623*
    properties, **624–625**, *625*
Shift key
  for navigating, 30
  unselecting items, 65
shortcuts, keyboard, 35, *35*
Show Bubble option, 117
Show Camera option, 151, *151*
SHX fonts, 254
sinks
  lavatory, 441–442, *442*
  office, 452
size
  paper, 639
  text, 253
Sketch Ceiling button, 423, *423*
Sketch mode
  cut profiles, 89
  stairs, 465, *466*, 494
sketch options in Draw panel, 12
sketching floor slab, **262**
  corridor, **266–268**, *266–268*
  picking walls, **262–264**, *262–265*
  trimming, **269–271**, *269–270*
slabs
  floor, **255–256**
    corridor, **266–268**, *266–268*
    creating, **256–261**, *256–261*
    picking walls, **262–264**, *262–265*
    trimming, **269–271**, *269–270*
  footings, **396–400**, *396–399*
slope
  dormers, 348–350
  pitched roofs, 321–322
  sloping roofs, **334–336**, *335*
Slope Arrow button, 334, *334*
slope arrows
  dormers, 349, *350*
  sloping roofs, 334–335, *334–335*
sloping roofs
  creating, **332–333**, *333–334*
  slope, **334–336**, *335*
  view range, **336–337**, *336–337*
  walls, **337–338**, *337*
snaps, 20, *20*
  finding, 172
  intervals, 50
  tangent, 23
  temporary dimensions, **75–76**, *76*
  wall centers, 172, 358
  wall midpoints, 47
soffits, **426–430**, *426–430*
Sorting/Grouping tab
  schedules, 654
  sheets, 631
sorting schedules, 654

Specify Types dialog, 377
Spindle category, 506, *506*
Split Element command, **194–198**, *195–199*
Split Face button, 286, *286*, 457, *458*
split lines for drains, 292–293, *292*
Split With Gap option, 197
splitting
  floor materials, **283**
    alternate, **283–286**, *283–285*
    painting, **286–291**, *286–290*
  roofs, 311–313, *311*
  section segments, **140–143**, *141–142*
  walls, **77–79**, *77–78*
spread footings, **400–402**, *400–402*
stairs, **463**
  custom, **507–511**, *507*, *509–511*
  families, **501–502**, *501–502*
  goosenecks, **513–520**, *514–520*
  landings. *See* landings
  mirroring, **497**, *498*
  ramps, **520–526**, *521–526*
  Rise/Run function
    boundaries, **467–468**, *467–468*
    overview, **463–467**, *464–466*
    railings. *See* railings
  summary, **526**
  winding. *See* winding staircases
stalls, lavatory, 438–439, *438–439*
standards, transferring, **411**, *411*
Start-End-Radius Arc option
  filled regions, 556
  interior partitions, 67, *67*
  landings, 468, *468*
  mortar joints, 546
  radial walls, 51, *51*
  railings, 483, *483*
  roof extrusions, 343
  roofs, 592, *592*
  walls, 22, *22*
  winding staircases, 488, *488*
steering wheel, **26–27**, *27*
stiles, raised-panel, **517–520**, *517–520*
stretching
  crop regions, 620–621, *620*
  views, 601, *601*
stringers, 471
structural items, **353**
  columns, **368–375**, *368–375*
  footings
    adding, **393–396**, *394–395*
    piers and spread footings, **400–402**, *400–402*
    slabs, **396–400**, *396–399*
  foundation systems, **387–393**, *388–393*
  framing
    beam systems, **380–383**, *381–382*
    bracing, **383–387**, *384–387*
    working with, **376–380**, *376–380*
  grids. *See* grids
  summary, **406**
  views, **403–405**, *403–405*
Structure row for floor slabs, 260–261, *260*
sweeps for pitched roofs, 321, *321*

Switch Windows menu, 34, *34*
switching windows, 34, *34*
system families, **37–38**

T

Tab key
  filled regions, 584
  filters, 423
  grips, 222
  selections
    circles, 427
    lines, 549, *549*
    points, 220, *221*
  walls
    connecting, 395
    filters, 234–236, *234–235*
    selection, 115, 305
tabs, Ribbon, 4, *4*
Tag On Placement button, 90, *91*, 92
tags
  doors, 90, **95**
  rooms, 644, **651–652**, *651–652*
tapering flat roofs, **310–319**, *311–319*
Template File menu, 3
template files, **41–42**, *42*
templates for views, **609–610**, *609*
Temporary Dimension Properties dialog, 61, *62*
temporary dimensions, *60–61*
  accuracy, **75–76**, *76*
  doors, 93–94, *94*
  interior walls
    adding, **72–79**, *73–77*
    corridor, **68–69**, *68–69*, **71–72**, *73–74*
    lavatories, **70**, *70–71*
    partitions, **66–68**, *66–69*
    settings, **61–65**, *62–65*
    wall splitting, **77–79**, *77–78*
  moving objects, **241–244**, *242–244*
text. *See also* annotations
  leaders
    adding, **250–251**, *250*
    grips, 244, *244*
    text, **250–251**, *250*
  notations, **570–572**, *571–572*
  overrides, **244–246**, *245–247*
  overview, **247–250**, *248–249*
  placement, **253**
  properties, **253–254**, *254*
  summary, **254**
thick lines, 577, *578*
thickness of floor layer material, 275
thin lines
  blank drafting views, 578
  detail, 568
  displaying, **28–29**, *28*
Thin Lines icon, **28–29**, *28*
3D lines, **590–593**, *591–592*
3D View, **29–31**, *29–31*
tile material, **459–461**, *459–461*
title sheets, 635–636, *636*

titles and title blocks
sheets, 616–617, *616*, 633, *633*
views, 621–623, *622–623*
toilets, 438–439, *439*
tools, **165**
Align Tool
locking alignments, **193–194**, *193–194*
overview, **188–193**
Array command, **175**
linear arrays, **180–185**, *180–184*
radial arrays, **175–180**, *176–179*
Copy/Paste, **205–208**, *206–207*
edit commands, **166**
Copy, **169–171**, *169–170*
Move, **166–168**, *167–168*
Rotate, **171–175**, *171–175*
Mirror command, **185–187**, *186–188*
Offset command, **203–204**, *204–205*
plans, **208–212**, *209–211*
Split Element command, **194–198**, *195–199*
summary, **212**
Trim command, **200–202**, *201–203*
Top Constraint setting, 121
transferring project standards, **411**, *411*
transparent roofs, 414–415
Trim command, 54–55, *54–57*, **200–202**, *201–203*
trimming
blank drafting views, 576–577, *576*
floor slab sketches, **269–271**, *269–270*
objects, **200–202**, *201–203*
pitched roofs, **323–324**, *323*
walls, **54–57**, *54–57*
troffers, **443–447**, *443–446*
2D lines, **590–593**, *591–592*
Type Mark property, 103
Type Parameters for viewports, 625
Type Properties dialog
aligned dimensions, 223–224, *224*
elevations, 161, *162*
floor materials, 272, *272*
floor slabs, 257, *259*
leaders, 251, *252*
overview, **10–12**, *11–13*
railings, 475, *475*
ramps, 522, *522*
text, 253, *254*
windows, 103, *103*
Type Selector drop-down, 7–8, *8*
typing commands, **35**, *35*

U

unconstraining walls, **238–239**, *238–239*
units, metric, 14
unselecting items, 65
unwanted rooms, **655**
urinals, 440–441, *441*
Use Actual Value option, 246, *246*
Use Project Settings option, 224
user interface, **2–3**, *3–4*
existing geometry, **21–24**, *22–24*

modifying and mirroring, **19–21**, *19–21*
object selection, **17–18**, *17–18*
Ribbon. *See* Ribbon
summary, **43**
view control and object display, **24–31**, *24–31*
view window, **13–17**, *14–16*
workflow, **4–5**, *4–5*

V

vertical grids, **363–366**, *363–366*
View Control bar
crop regions, 599, *600*
tools, **24–26**, *25*
view range and View Range dialog
ceilings, 418, *418*
footings, 393–394, *394*
framing, 376, *376*
offsets, 513
plan regions, 331, *331*
sloping roofs, 336–337, *336–337*
View/Sheet Set dialog, 638
View-Specific Element Graphics dialog, 414, *415*
View tab
callouts, 143, *143–144*
camera views, 149
cut profiles, 87–88, *88*
drafting views, 573, *573*, 589
elevations, 154, *154*
guide grids, 613
keyboard shortcuts, 35
kitchen, 452
match lines, 604, *604*
office, 449
options, **26**, *26*
plan regions, 417, *417*
raised panels, 517
roofs
extrusions, 339
pitched, 330, *330*
sections, 317
schedule properties, 653
sections, 122, *122*, 587
sheets, 627
composition, 608
cover, 631, *631*
thin lines, **28–29**, *28*
winding staircase, 495
window switching, 34
View Templates dialog, 609
view window, **13–17**, *14–16*
ViewCube, 30, *30*
viewports
modifying, **619–624**, *619–623*
properties, **624–625**, *625*
views, **105**, **595**
activating, 620, *620*
blank drafting. *See* blank drafting views
building sections, **121**
adding, **122–129**, *122–129*
modifications in, **129–134**, *130–135*

callouts, **143–148**, *143–148*
camera, **149**
  adding, **149–151**, *149–150*
  modifying, **151–152**, *151–152*
closing, 34, *34*
control, **24–31**, *24–31*
deactivating, 621
dependent
  creating, **597–598**, *598*
  crop regions, **598–603**, *599–600*, *602–603*
detail sections, **138–139**, *138*
  crop regions, **139–140**, *139–140*
  splitting section segments, **140–143**, *141–142*
duplicating, **595–597**, *596*
elevations
  annotation properties, **161–163**, *162*
  creating, **152–156**, *153–155*
  interior, **156–159**, *156–159*
  properties, **159–161**, *160–161*
levels
  adding, **108–110**, *108–110*
  adjustments, **114–122**, *114–122*
  composition, **110–114**, *111–114*
  creating, **105–108**, *107–108*
sections
  adding, **587–588**, *588*
  wall, **135–137**, *136–137*
stretching, 601, *601*
  structural, **403–405**, *403–405*
  summary, **163**, **610**
  templates, **609–610**, *609*
Visibility/Graphics Overrides dialog
  site components, 597
  view templates, 609
visibility of grids, 378
Visual Style button, 29, *29*

W

Wall Sweeps dialog, 321, *321*
wall ties, **560–562**, *561–562*
walls, **45**
  adding, **49–54**, *49–54*
  angles, 72, *73*, **75**
  cabinets, 455–457, *456–457*
  ceilings, 409, *409*, 415–416
  copying, **169–171**, *169–170*
  corridor, **68–69**, *68–69*, **71–72**, *73–74*
  dimensions
    aligned, 214–216, *216*
    as layout tool, 232–237, *233–237*
    radial, **228–230**, *229–230*
  door openings, **98–99**, *98–99*
  drawing, **13–17**, *14–16*
  elevations, 155
  exterior, **45–46**, *46*
  floor slabs, **262–264**, *262–265*
  footing slabs, **396–398**, *397*

foundation systems, **387–393**, *388–393*
interior
adding, **58–60**, *59*
temporary dimensions. *See* temporary dimensions
joins
disallowing, **84–89**, *85–89*
displaying, **82–83**, *83–84*
editing, **79–82**, *79–82*
justification, 12
levels, 115, *116*
midpoints, 19
mirroring, **19–21**, *19–21*, **75**, *75*
moving, **166–168**, *167–168*
offsets, 53, *53*, **203–204**, *204–205*
for roofs
extrusions, 338–340, *339*, 345, *345–346*
pitched, 322–323, *323*, *329*
sloping, 332–333, *333–334*, 337–338, *337*
sections
adding, **135–137**, *136–137*
building, **129–134**, *130–135*
soffits, 426, *426*
splitting, **77–79**, *77–78*
sweeps for pitched roofs, 321, *321*
trimming, **54–57**, *54–57*
unconstraining, **238–239**, *238–239*
vertical grids, 363–366, *363–366*
Walls tab, 19
Warning dialog for pasting, 208, *208*
wheel button, 23
wide lines, 569, *569*
width
lines, 13
text, 253
winding staircases, **486**
door, 487–488
landing, **486–487**, *487*
line arrays, **491–492**, *491*
perspective view, **495–496**, *497*
railings, **498–501**, *498–501*
stairs
adding, **494–495**, *494–495*
creating, **488–490**, *488–490*
mirroring, **497**, *498*
modeling, **493**, *494*
windows, **90**
adding, **100–103**, *100–103*
aligning, **188–193**, *189–192*
arrays, **181–185**, *182–184*
crossing, **18**, *18*
mirroring, **185–187**, *186–188*
Project Browser, **33–35**, *34–35*
properties, **102–104**, *102–103*
switching, 34, *34*
Windows Explorer, 3
Windows tab, 191

witness lines
aligned dimensions, **222–223**, *222*
doors, 94, *94*
temporary dimensions, 60, *60*, 70
women's lavatory, 442, *442*
Work Plane dialog
bracing, 383, *384*
lines, 591
raised panels, 518
Work Plane panel, 342, *342*
workflow, **4–5**, *4–5*
wrapping
materials by doors, **92**, *92*
textual notations, 572, *572*
Wrapping At Inserts setting, 92, *92*

Z

ZA command, 17
zooming
commands, 17, **27–28**, *28*
with steering wheel, 27, *27*